SINAMICS G150

Converter Cabinet Units 75 kW to 1500 kW

Operating Instructions · 03/2013

SINAMICS

SIEMENS

SIEMENS

SINAMICS

SINAMICS G150
Converter cabinet units

Operating Instructions

Foreword

Safety information 1

Device Overview 2

Mechanical installation 3

Electrical installation 4

Commissioning 5

Operation 6

Setpoint channel and closed-loop control 7

Output terminals 8

Functions, Monitoring, and Protective Functions 9

Diagnosis / faults and alarms 10

Maintenance and servicing 11

Technical specifications 12

Appendix A

Control version V4.6

03/2013

A5E03263466A

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

⚠ DANGER
indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ WARNING
indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ CAUTION
indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE
indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

⚠ WARNING
Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Industry Sector
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E03263466A
℗ 06/2013 Technical data subject to change

Copyright © Siemens AG 2003 - 2013.
All rights reserved

Foreword

User documentation

⚠ WARNING
Before installing and commissioning the converter, make sure that you read all the safety notes and warnings carefully, including the warning labels on the equipment itself. The warning labels must always be legible. Missing or damaged labels must be replaced.

Structure of this documentation

The customer documentation comprises general and individual documentation.

The general documentation describes the topics that apply to all cabinet units:

- **Operating Instructions**
  The Operating Instructions consist of the following sections:
  - Device description
  - Mechanical installation
  - Electrical installation
  - Commissioning guide
  - Description of function
  - Maintenance instructions
  - Technical data
- **Overview diagrams**
  These provide a general overview of the functionality of the cabinet units.
- **List Manual**
  The List Manual consists of the following sections:
  - Parameter list
  - Function diagrams
  - Fault / warning list
- **Documentation for Drive Control Chart (DCC)**
  - Programming and Operating Manual: DCC Editor description
  - Function Manual: Description of the standard DCC blocks

The individual documentation describes precisely one customized cabinet unit and contains the following:

- **Dimension drawing**
  The dimension drawing documents the dimensions of the ordered cabinet unit.
- **Layout diagram**
  The components installed in the ordered cabinet units are shown in the layout diagram with the equipment and location codes.
- **Circuit diagram**
  The circuit diagram shows the electrical components installed in the ordered cabinet unit with the equipment and location codes, their interconnections and the customer interfaces.
- **Terminal diagram**
  The terminal diagram shows all the customer terminals in the ordered cabinet unit, and the associated internal wiring in the cabinet unit. This diagram documents the line-side target wiring.
- **Spare parts list**
  All of the available spare parts for the ordered cabinet units are listed in the spare parts list with the equipment and the location codes.
- **Additional operating instructions**
  The instructions for OEM components installed in the ordered cabinet unit are supplied as OEM documentation.

Documentation in the Internet

The documentation for SINAMICS G150 can be found on the Internet at:
http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/11735760/133300

Technical support

Time zone Europe/Africa	
Phone	+49 (0) 911 895 7222
Fax	+49 (0) 911 895 7223
Internet	http://www.siemens.com/automation/support-request

Time zone America	
Phone	+1 423 262 2522
Fax	+1 423 262 2200
Internet	techsupport.sea@siemens.com

Time zone Asia/Pacific	
Phone	+86 1064 757 575
Fax	+86 1064 747 474
Internet	support.asia.automation@siemens.com

Spare parts

You will find spare parts on the Internet at:
http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/16612315.

Internet address

Information about SINAMICS can be found on the Internet at the following address:
http://www.siemens.com/sinamics

EMC limit values for South Korea

이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
For sellers or other user, please keep in mind that this device in an A-grade electromagnetic wave device.
This device is intended to be used in areas other than home.

The EMC limit values that have to be observed for Korea correspond to the limit values of the EMC product standard for variable-speed electric drives EN 61800-3 of category C2 or the limit value class A, Group 1 according to EN 55011.
With suitable additional measures the limit values to category C2 or to limit class A, Group 1, are maintained. Additional measures, such as the use of an additional RFI suppression filter (EMC filter), may be necessary.
In addition, measures for a correct EMC-compliant configuration of the plant are described in detail in this manual and the "SINAMICS Low Voltage Configuration Manual".

Table of contents

Foreword 3

1 Safety information 17

1.1 Warnings 17

1.2 Safety and operating instructions 18

1.3 Components that can be destroyed by electrostatic discharge (ESD) 19

1.4 Residual risks of power drive systems 20

1.5 Warning about electromagnetic fields 22

2 Device Overview 23

2.1 Chapter content 23

2.2 Applications, features 23
2.2.1 Field of applications 23
2.2.2 Characteristics, quality, service 24

2.3 Design 25
2.3.1 Version A 26
2.3.2 Version C 29

2.4 Wiring Principle 30

2.5 Type plate 35

3 Mechanical installation 41

3.1 Chapter content 41

3.2 Transportation and storage 42

3.3 Assembly 44
3.3.1 Mechanical installation: checklist 45
3.3.2 Preparation 46
3.3.2.1 Requirements on the installation location 46
3.3.2.2 Requirements on the levelness of the floor 46
3.3.2.3 Shipping and handling monitors 48
3.3.2.4 Unpacking 50
3.3.2.5 Required tools 50
3.3.3 Installation 51
3.3.3.1 Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet 51
3.3.3.2 Removing the crane transport aids 52
3.3.3.3 Connection to the foundation 54
3.3.4 Mechanical connection of units that are connected in parallel 54
3.3.5 Fitting additional canopies (option M21) or hoods (option M23, M43, M54) 58
3.3.6 Line connection from above (option M13), motor connection from above (option M78) 64

4 Electrical installation 67

4.1 Chapter content 67

4.2 Checklist for electrical installation 68

4.3 Insulation test 74

4.4 Important safety precautions 76

4.5 Introduction to EMC 77

4.6 EMC compliant design 79

4.7 Electrical connection of units that are connected in parallel 81
4.7.1 Connecting the PE busbars 82
4.7.2 Establishing the DC link connections 83
4.7.3 Connecting the power supply and the signal cables 84
4.7.4 The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected 84

4.8 Power connections 85
4.8.1 Cable lugs 85
4.8.2 Connection cross-sections, cable lengths 86
4.8.3 Connecting the motor and power cables 88
4.8.4 Adjusting the fan voltage (-T1-T10) 90
4.8.5 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system) 92

4.9 External Supply of the Auxiliary Supply from a Secure Line 97
4.9.1 230 V AC auxiliary supply 98
4.9.2 24 V DC auxiliary supply 98

4.10 Signal connections 98
4.10.1 Control Unit CU320-2 DP 98
4.10.2 Customer terminal module TM31 (-A60) (option G60) 112

4.11 Other connections 121
4.11.1 Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact (Option L01) 121
4.11.2 dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07) 125
4.11.3 dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10) 128
4.11.4 Main Contactor (Option L13) 131
4.11.5 Sinusoidal Filter (Option L15) 132
4.11.6 Connection for External Auxiliary Equipment (Option L19) 134
4.11.7 Operation in the IT system (option L21) 136
4.11.8 Main switch incl. fuses or circuit breaker (option L26) 137
4.11.9 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door (option L45) 139
4.11.10 Cabinet illumination with service socket (option L50) 140
4.11.11 Cabinet anti-condensation heating (option L55) 141
4.11.12 EMERGENCY OFF category 0; 230 V AC or 24 V DC (option L57) 142
4.11.13 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 230 V AC (option L59) 144
4.11.14 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 24 V DC (option L60) 145
4.11.15 25 kW Braking Unit (Option L61); 50 kW Braking Unit (Option L62) 146
4.11.15.1 Commissioning 149
4.11.15.2 Diagnosis and duty cycles 151
4.11.15.3 Threshold switch 152
4.11.16 Option L01 Quick starting (option L76) 156
4.11.17 Thermistor Motor Protection Unit (Option L83/L84) 156
4.11.18 PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86) 157

4.11.19 Insulation Monitor (Option L87) 158
4.11.20 CBC10 CAN Communication Board (option G20) 160
4.11.21 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20 (Option G33) 163
4.11.22 TM150 temperature sensor module (option G51) 166
4.11.22.1 Description 166
4.11.22.2 Connecting 167
4.11.22.3 Connection examples 170
4.11.23 SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50) 172
4.11.23.1 Description 172
4.11.23.2 Connection 176
4.11.23.3 Connection examples 178
4.11.24 Voltage Sensing Module for determining the actual motor speed and the phase angle (option K51) 180
4.11.25 Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52) 181
4.11.26 Customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) 181
4.11.27 Additional customer terminal block TM31 (option G61) 182
4.11.28 Terminal Board TB30 (option G62) 182
4.11.29 Safety license for 1 axis (option K01) 188
4.11.30 Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74) 188
4.11.31 Terminal module for activation of "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1" (option K82) 190
4.11.32 Terminal Module TM54F (option K87) 191
4.11.33 Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC (option K88) 193
4.11.34 Control Unit CU320-2 PN (option K95) 195
4.11.35 NAMUR terminal block (option B00) 206
4.11.36 Separate 24 V DC power supply for NAMUR (option B02) 208
4.11.37 Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment for NAMUR (option B03) 208

5 Commissioning 209

5.1 Chapter content 209

5.2 STARTER commissioning tool 210
5.2.1 Installing the STARTER commissioning tool 212
5.2.2 Layout of the STARTER user interface 212

5.3 Procedure for commissioning via STARTER 213
5.3.1 Creating the project 213
5.3.2 Configure the drive unit 221
5.3.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel 244
5.3.4 Transferring the drive project 245
5.3.5 Commissioning with STARTER via Ethernet 248

5.4 The AOP30 operator panel 253

5.5 First commissioning with the AOP30 254
5.5.1 Initial ramp-up 254
5.5.2 Basic Commissioning 256
5.5.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel 265

5.6 Status after commissioning 267

5.7 Parameter reset to factory settings 268

6 Operation 271

6.1 Chapter content 271

6.2 General information about command and setpoint sources 272

6.3 Basic information about the drive system 273
6.3.1 Parameters 273
6.3.2 Drive objects 276
6.3.3 Data Sets 277
6.3.4 BICO technology: interconnecting signals 283
6.3.5 Propagation of faults 288

6.4 Command sources 289
6.4.1 "PROFIdrive" default setting 289
6.4.2 "TM31 terminals" default setting 291
6.4.3 "NAMUR" default setting 293
6.4.4 "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting 295

6.5 Setpoint sources 297
6.5.1 Analog inputs 297
6.5.2 Motorized potentiometer 299
6.5.3 Fixed speed setpoints 300

6.6 Control via the operator panel 302
6.6.1 Operator panel (AOP30) overview and menu structure 302
6.6.2 Operation screen menu 304
6.6.3 Parameterization menu 305
6.6.4 Menu: Fault/alarm memory 306
6.6.5 Menu commissioning / service 308
6.6.5.1 Drive commissioning 308
6.6.5.2 Device commissioning 308
6.6.5.3 Drive diagnostics 309
6.6.5.4 AOP settings 310
6.6.5.5 AOP diagnostics 316
6.6.6 Sprachauswahl/Language selection 317
6.6.7 Operation via the operator panel (LOCAL mode) 317
6.6.7.1 LOCAL/REMOTE key 318
6.6.7.2 ON key / OFF key 318
6.6.7.3 Switching between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation 319
6.6.7.4 Jog 319
6.6.7.5 Increase setpoint / decrease setpoint 320
6.6.7.6 AOP setpoint 320
6.6.7.7 Timeout monitoring 321
6.6.7.8 Operator input inhibit / parameterization inhibit 322
6.6.8 Faults and alarms 323
6.6.9 Saving the parameters permanently 325
6.6.10 Parameterization errors 325

6.7 Communication according to PROFIdrive 326
6.7.1 General information 326
6.7.2 Application classes 327
6.7.3 Cyclic communication 332
6.7.3.1 Telegrams and process data 333
6.7.3.2 Structure of the telegrams 335
6.7.3.3 Overview of control words and setpoints 336

6.7.3.4 Overview of status words and actual values....336
6.7.4 Acyclic communication....337
6.7.4.1 Structure of requests and responses....339
6.7.4.2 Determining the drive object numbers....345
6.7.4.3 Example 1: Reading parameters....345
6.7.4.4 Example 2: Writing parameters (multi-parameter request)....347
6.7.5 Further information about PROFIdrive communication....351
6.8 Communication via PROFIBUS DP....351
6.8.1 PROFIBUS connection....351
6.8.2 Control via PROFIBUS....356
6.8.3 Monitoring: Telegram failure....358
6.8.4 Further information about communication via PROFIBUS DP....359
6.9 Communication via PROFINET IO....360
6.9.1 Activating online operation: STARTER via PROFINET IO....360
6.9.2 General information about PROFINET IO....364
6.9.2.1 General information about PROFINET IO for SINAMICS....364
6.9.2.2 Real-time (RT) and isochronous real-time (IRT) communication....365
6.9.2.3 Addresses....366
6.9.2.4 Data transmission....368
6.9.2.5 Communication channels....369
6.9.3 PROFIenergy....370
6.9.4 Further information about communication via PROFINET IO....371
6.10 Communication via SINAMICS Link....371
6.10.1 Basic principles of SINAMICS Link....371
6.10.2 Topology....373
6.10.3 Configuring and commissioning....374
6.10.4 Example....375
6.10.5 Communication failure when booting or in cyclic operation....378
6.10.6 Parameter....378
6.11 Parallel operation of communication interfaces....379
6.12 Engineering Software Drive Control Chart (DCC)....383
7 Setpoint channel and closed-loop control....385
7.1 Chapter content....385
7.2 Setpoint channel....386
7.2.1 Setpoint addition....386
7.2.2 Direction reversal....387
7.2.3 Skip frequency bands and minimum speed....388
7.2.4 Speed limitation....389
7.2.5 Ramp-function generator....390
7.3 V/f control....393
7.3.1 Voltage Boost....396
7.3.2 Resonance damping....399
7.3.3 Slip compensation....400
7.4 Vector speed/torque control with/without encoder....402
7.4.1 Vector control without encoder....403
7.4.2 Vector control with encoder....410
7.4.3 Actual speed value filter....411

7.4.4 Speed controller ... 412
7.4.4.1 Speed controller pre-control (integrated pre-control with balancing) ... 415
7.4.4.2 Reference model ... 418
7.4.4.3 Speed controller adaptation ... 419
7.4.4.4 Droop Function ... 421
7.4.4.5 Open actual speed value ... 422
7.4.5 Closed-loop torque control ... 424
7.4.6 Torque limiting ... 426
7.4.7 Current setpoint filters ... 428
7.4.8 Permanent-magnet synchronous motors ... 429

8 Output terminals ... 433

8.1 Chapter content ... 433

8.2 Analog outputs ... 434
8.2.1 List of signals for the analog signals ... 435

8.3 Digital outputs ... 437

9 Functions, Monitoring, and Protective Functions ... 439

9.1 Chapter content ... 439

9.2 Drive Functions ... 440
9.2.1 Motor data identification and automatic speed controller optimization ... 440
9.2.1.1 Motor data identification ... 441
9.2.1.2 Rotating measurement and speed controller optimization ... 444
9.2.1.3 Shortened rotating measurement ... 446
9.2.1.4 Parameters ... 447
9.2.2 Efficiency optimization ... 448
9.2.3 Fast magnetization for induction motors ... 449
9.2.4 Vdc control ... 451
9.2.5 Automatic restart function ... 456
9.2.6 Flying restart ... 460
9.2.6.1 Flying restart without encoder ... 461
9.2.6.2 Flying restart with encoder ... 463
9.2.6.3 Parameters ... 464
9.2.7 Motor changeover/selection ... 465
9.2.7.1 Description ... 465
9.2.7.2 Example of changing over between two motors ... 465
9.2.7.3 Function diagram ... 466
9.2.7.4 Parameters ... 467
9.2.8 Friction characteristic curve ... 467
9.2.9 Armature short-circuit braking, DC braking ... 469
9.2.9.1 General ... 469
9.2.9.2 External armature short-circuit braking ... 469
9.2.9.3 Internal armature short-circuit braking ... 471
9.2.9.4 DC braking ... 472
9.2.10 Increasing the output frequency ... 474
9.2.10.1 Description ... 474
9.2.10.2 Default pulse frequencies ... 475
9.2.10.3 Increasing the pulse frequency ... 475
9.2.10.4 Maximum output frequency achieved by increasing the pulse frequency ... 476
9.2.10.5 Parameters ... 476
9.2.11 Derating behavior at increased pulse frequency ... 477

9.2.12 Pulse frequency wobbling 478
9.2.13 Runtime (operating hours counter) 480
9.2.14 Simulation operation 481
9.2.15 Direction reversal 482
9.2.16 Unit changeover 483
9.2.17 Simple brake control 485
9.2.18 Energy saving indicator for pumps, fans, and compressors 488
9.2.19 Write protection 491
9.2.20 Know-how protection 493
9.2.20.1 Description 493
9.2.20.2 Activating know-how protection 495
9.2.20.3 Deactivating know-how protection 496
9.2.20.4 Changing the know-how protection password 496
9.2.20.5 OEM exception list 497
9.2.20.6 Memory card copy protection 497
9.2.20.7 Replacing devices for know-how protection with copy protection 498
9.2.20.8 Overview of important parameters 499
9.2.21 Essential service mode 500
9.2.22 Web server 503
9.2.22.1 Description 503
9.2.22.2 Starting the web server 504
9.2.22.3 Web server configuration 507
9.2.22.4 Display areas 508
9.2.22.5 Overview of important parameters 509

9.3 Extended functions 510
9.3.1 Technology controller 510
9.3.2 Bypass function 513
9.3.2.1 Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1) 514
9.3.2.2 Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2) 517
9.3.2.3 Bypass without synchronizer (p1260 = 3) 518
9.3.2.4 Function diagram 521
9.3.2.5 Parameters 521
9.3.3 Extended brake control 522
9.3.4 Extended monitoring functions 526

9.4 Monitoring and protective functions 529
9.4.1 Protecting power components 529
9.4.2 Thermal monitoring and overload responses 530
9.4.3 Block protection 532
9.4.4 Stall protection (only for vector control) 533
9.4.5 Thermal motor protection 534
9.4.5.1 Description 534
9.4.5.2 Temperature sensor connection at the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) 534
9.4.5.3 Temperature sensor connection at a Sensor Module (option K50) 535
9.4.5.4 Temperature sensor connection directly to the Control Interface Module 535
9.4.5.5 Temperature sensor evaluation 536
9.4.5.6 Function diagram 538
9.4.5.7 Parameters 538
9.4.6 Temperature measurement via TM150 (option G51) 540
9.4.6.1 Description 540
9.4.6.2 Measurement with up to 6 channels 541
9.4.6.3 Measurement with up to 12 channels 542

9.4.6.4 Forming groups of temperature sensors ... 542
9.4.6.5 Evaluating temperature channels ... 543
9.4.6.6 Function diagram ... 544
9.4.6.7 Parameter ... 545

10 Diagnosis / faults and alarms ... 547

10.1 Chapter content ... 547

10.2 Diagnosis ... 548
10.2.1 Diagnostics using LEDs ... 548
10.2.2 Diagnostics via parameters ... 556
10.2.3 Indicating and rectifying faults ... 560

10.3 Overview of warnings and faults ... 561
10.3.1 "External alarm 1" ... 562
10.3.2 "External fault 1" ... 562
10.3.3 "External fault 2" ... 563
10.3.4 "External fault 3" ... 563

10.4 Service and Support ... 564
10.4.1 Spare parts ... 564

11 Maintenance and servicing ... 565

11.1 Chapter content ... 565

11.2 Maintenance ... 566
11.2.1 Cleaning ... 566

11.3 Maintenance ... 567
11.3.1 Installation device ... 568
11.3.2 Using crane lifting lugs to transport power blocks ... 569

11.4 Replacing components ... 571
11.4.1 Replacing the filter mats ... 572
11.4.2 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX ... 573
11.4.3 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX ... 575
11.4.4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX ... 577
11.4.5 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX ... 579
11.4.6 Replacing the power block (type FX) ... 581
11.4.7 Replacing the power block (type GX) ... 583
11.4.8 Replacing the power block (type HX) ... 585
11.4.9 Replacing the power block (type JX) ... 589
11.4.10 Replacing the fan (type FX) ... 593
11.4.11 Replacing the fan (type GX) ... 595
11.4.12 Replacing the fan (type HX) ... 597
11.4.13 Replacing the fan (type JX) ... 601
11.4.14 Replacing cylindrical fuses ... 605
11.4.15 Replacing the LV HRC fuses ... 606
11.4.16 Replacing the cabinet operator panel ... 608
11.4.17 Replacing the Backup Battery for the Cabinet Operator Panel ... 608

11.5 Forming the DC link capacitors ... 610

11.6 Messages after replacing DRIVE-CLiQ components ... 611

11.7 Upgrading the cabinet unit firmware ... 612

11.8 Load the new operator panel firmware from the PC. 613

12 Technical specifications 615

12.1 Chapter content 615

12.2 General data 616
12.2.1 Derating data 617
12.2.2 Overload capability 622

12.3 Technical specifications 623
12.3.1 Cabinet unit version A, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC 624
12.3.2 Cabinet unit version C, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC 632
12.3.3 Cabinet unit version A, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC 638
12.3.4 Cabinet unit version C, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC 646
12.3.5 Cabinet unit version A, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC 652
12.3.6 Cabinet unit version C, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC 664

A Appendix 675

A.1 List of abbreviations 675

A.2 Parameter macros 677

Index 689

Safety information

1

1.1 Warnings

⚠ WARNING

Dangerous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present when electrical equipment is in operation.
Severe personal injury or substantial material damage may result if these warnings are not observed.
Only qualified personnel are permitted to work on or around the equipment.
These personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures described in these operating instructions.
The successful and safe operation of this device is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance.
National safety guidelines must be observed.

⚠ DANGER

Five safety rules

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the "five safety rules" according to EN 50110 must always be observed:

1. Disconnect the system.
2. Protect against reconnection.
3. Make sure that the equipment is de-energized.
4. Ground and short-circuit.
5. Cover or enclose adjacent components that are still live.

Certification

The following certificates:

- EC declaration of conformity
- Certificate of compliance with order

can be found under "Safety and Operating Instructions" in the documentation folder.

1.2 Safety and operating instructions

⚠DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage

This equipment is used in industrial high-voltage installations. During operation, this equipment contains rotating and live, bare parts. For this reason, it could cause severe injury or significant material damage if the required covers are removed without authorization, if the equipment is used or operated incorrectly, or if it has not been properly maintained.
When the machines are used in non-industrial areas, the installation location must be protected against unauthorized access (protective fencing, appropriate signs).

Preconditions

The persons responsible for the safety of the plant must ensure that the following conditions are met:

- Basic planning work for the system and all work relating to transportation, assembly, installation, commissioning, maintenance and repairs is carried out by qualified personnel and checked by responsible, suitably skilled personnel.
- The Operating Instructions and machine documentation are always available.
- The technical specifications regarding the applicable installation, connection, environmental, and operating conditions are always observed.
- The plant-specific assembly and safety guidelines are observed and personal protection equipment is used.
- Unqualified personnel are forbidden from using these machines and working near them.

These Operating Instructions are intended for qualified personnel and only contain information and notes relating to the intended purpose of the machines.

The Operating Instructions and machine documentation are written in different languages as specified in the delivery contracts.

Note

Support by SIEMENS service centers

We recommend engaging the support and services of your local Siemens service center for all planning, installation, commissioning and maintenance work.

1.3 Components that can be destroyed by electrostatic discharge (ESD)

⚠ CAUTION

Components sensitive to electrostatic charge

The board contains components that can be destroyed by electrostatic discharge. These components can be easily destroyed if not handled properly. If you do have to use electronic boards, however, please observe the following:

- You should only touch electronic boards if absolutely necessary.
- When you touch boards, however, your body must be electrically discharged beforehand.
- Boards must not come into contact with highly insulating materials (such as plastic parts, insulated desktops, articles of clothing manufactured from man-made fibers).
- Boards must only be placed on conductive surfaces.
- Boards and components should only be stored and transported in conductive packaging (such as metalized plastic boxes or metal containers).
- If the packaging material is not conductive, the boards must be wrapped with a conductive packaging material (such as conductive foam rubber or household aluminum foil).

The necessary ESD protective measures are clearly illustrated in the following diagram:

- a = conductive floor surface
- b = ESD table
- c = ESD shoes
- d = ESD overall
- e = ESD wristband
- f = cabinet ground connection
- g = contact with conductive flooring

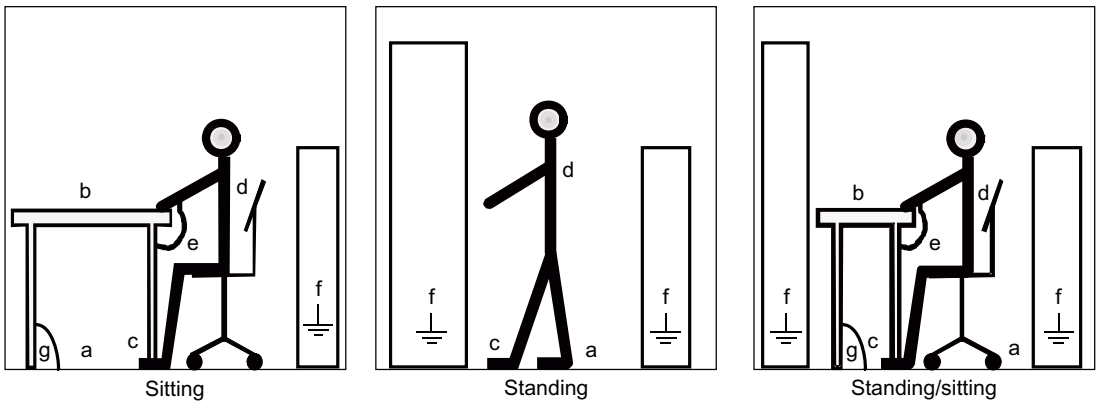


Figure 1-1 ESD protective measures

1.4 Residual risks of power drive systems

The control and drive components of a power drive system (PDS) are approved for industrial and commercial use in industrial line supplies. Their use in public line supplies requires a different configuration and/or additional measures.

These components may only be operated in closed housings or in higher-level control cabinets with protective covers that are closed, and when all of the protective devices are used.

These components may only be handled by qualified and trained technical personnel who are knowledgeable and observe all of the safety information and instructions on the components and in the associated technical user documentation.

When carrying out a risk assessment of the machine/plant in accordance with the EU Machinery Directive, the machine manufacturer/plant operator must consider the following residual risks associated with the control and drive components of a power drive system (PDS).

1. Unintentional movements of driven machine components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example:
   - Hardware defects and/or software errors in the sensors, controllers, actuators, and connection technology
   - Response times of the controller and drive
   - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside of the specification
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
   - Use of radio devices/cellular phones in the immediate vicinity of the controller
   - External influences/damage
2. In the event of a fault, exceptionally high temperatures, including an open fire, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. can occur inside and outside the inverter, e.g.:
   - Component malfunctions
   - Software errors
   - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside of the specification
   - External influences/damage

     Inverters of the Open Type/IP20 degree of protection must be installed in a control cabinet (or protected by another equivalent measure) in such a way that contact with fire inside and outside the inverter is prevented.

3. Hazardous shock voltages caused by, for example:
   - Component malfunctions
   - Influence of electrostatic charging
   - Induction of voltages in moving motors
   - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside of the specification
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - External influences/damage
4. Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc. if they are too close.
5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly.

Note

The components must be protected against conductive pollution (e.g. by installing them in a cabinet with degree of protection IP54B acc. to EN 60529).
Provided conductive pollution can be prevented at the installation site, the degree of protection for the cabinet can be decreased accordingly.

For more information about residual risks of the Power Drive System components, see the relevant chapters in the technical user documentation.

1.5 Warning about electromagnetic fields

⚠WARNING

Electromagnetic fields "electro smog"

Electromagnetic fields are generated by the operation of electrical power engineering installations such as transformers, converters or motors.

Electromagnetic fields can interfere with electronic devices, which could cause them to malfunction. For example, the operation of heart pacemakers can be impaired, potentially leading to damage to a person's health or even death. It is therefore forbidden for persons with heart pacemakers to enter these areas.

The plant operator is responsible for taking appropriate measures (labels and hazard warnings) to adequately protect operating personnel and others against any possible risk.

- Observe the relevant nationally applicable health and safety regulations. In Germany, "electromagnetic fields" are subject to regulations BGV B11 and BGR B11 stipulated by the German statutory industrial accident insurance institution.
- Display adequate hazard warning notices.

- Place barriers around hazardous areas.
- Take measures, e.g. using shields, to reduce electromagnetic fields at their source.
- Make sure that personnel are wearing the appropriate protective gear.

Device Overview

2

2.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Introduction to the cabinet units
- The main components and features of the cabinet unit
- The cabinet unit wiring
- Explanation of the type plate

2.2 Applications, features

2.2.1 Field of applications

SINAMICS G150 drive converter cabinet units are specially designed to meet the requirements of drives with a quadratic and constant load characteristic, medium performance requirements, and no regenerative feedback. Applications include:

- Pumps and fans
- Compressors
- Extruders and mixers
- Mills

2.2.2 Characteristics, quality, service

Features

The accuracy of sensorless vector control ensures that the system can be used for a wide variety of applications and, as a result, an additional speed sensor is not required.

Optionally, applications with system-specific requirements for an encoder can use an encoder evaluator.

SINAMICS G150 takes this into account and, as a result, offers a low-cost drive solution tailored to actual requirements.

In addition, factors have been considered to ensure easy handling of the drive from the planning and design phase through to operation. These factors include:

- Compact, modular, service-friendly design
- Straightforward planning/design and commissioning thanks to the SIZER and STARTER tools.
- Ready to connect to facilitate the installation process
- Quick, menu-driven commissioning with no complex parameterization
- Clear and convenient drive monitoring/diagnostics, commissioning and operation via a user-friendly graphical operator panel with measured values displayed in plain text or in a quasi-analog bar display.
- SINAMICS is an integral part of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA). The TIA concept offers an optimized range of products for automation and drive technology. This concept is characterized by planning / design, communication, and data management procedures that are consistent throughout the product range. SINAMICS is totally integrated in the TIA concept.
  Separate S7/PCS7 blocks and faceplates for WinCC are available.
- Integration in SIMATIC H systems is possible via a Y link.
- Drive Control Chart (DCC)
  Drive Control Chart (DCC) expands the facility for the simplest possible configuring of technological functions for the SINAMICS drive system.
  The block library encompasses a large selection of closed-loop, arithmetic and logic function blocks, as well as more comprehensive open-loop and closed-loop control functions. The user-friendly DCC editor enables easy graphical configuration and a clear representation of control loop structures as well as a high degree of reusability of existing diagrams. DCC is an add-on to the STARTER commissioning tool.

Quality

The SINAMICS G150 drive converter cabinet units are manufactured to meet high standards of quality and exacting demands.

This results in a high level of reliability, availability, and functionality for our products.

The development, design, and manufacturing processes, as well as order processing and the logistics supply center have been certified to DIN ISO 9001 by an independent authority.

Service

Our worldwide sales and service network offers our customers consulting services tailored to their needs, provides support with planning and design, and offers a range of training courses.

For detailed contact information and the current link to our Internet pages, refer to chapter "Diagnosis / faults and alarms", section "Service and Support".

2.3 Design

The SINAMICS G150 cabinet units are characterized by their compact, modular, and service-friendly design.

A wide range of electrical and mechanical components enable the drive system to be optimized for the appropriate requirements.

Two cabinet unit versions are available depending on the options that are chosen.

2.3.1 Version A

All the required power supply connection components, such as the main circuit breaker, circuit breakers, main contactor, line fuses, radio interference suppression filter, motor components, and additional protection and monitoring devices, can be installed as required.

The cabinet unit comprises up to two cabinet panels with a total width of between 800 and 1600 mm, depending on the output, and 3200 mm for units connected in parallel.

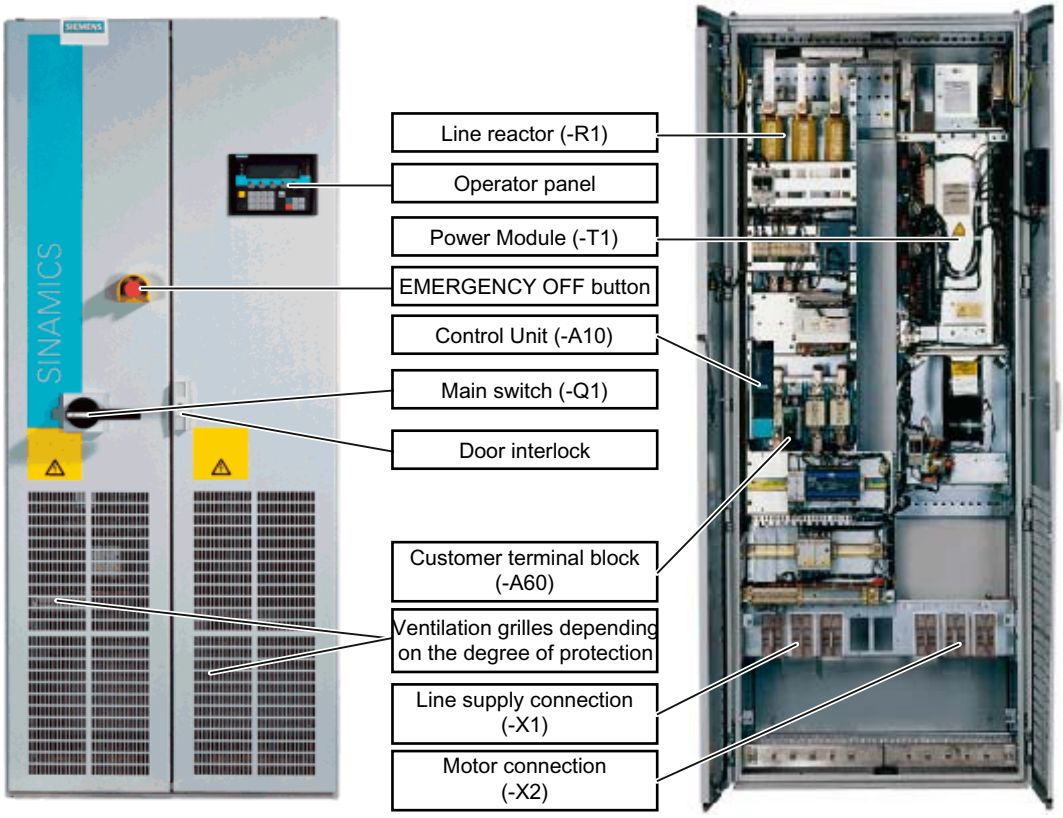


Figure 2-1 Example of the cabinet drive, version A (e.g., 132 kW, 400 V 3 AC) (layout and components shown may vary according to version)

Version A, units connected in parallel

For very high power ratings, the cabinet drive comprises two cabinet units that combined drive a motor in a parallel connection:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

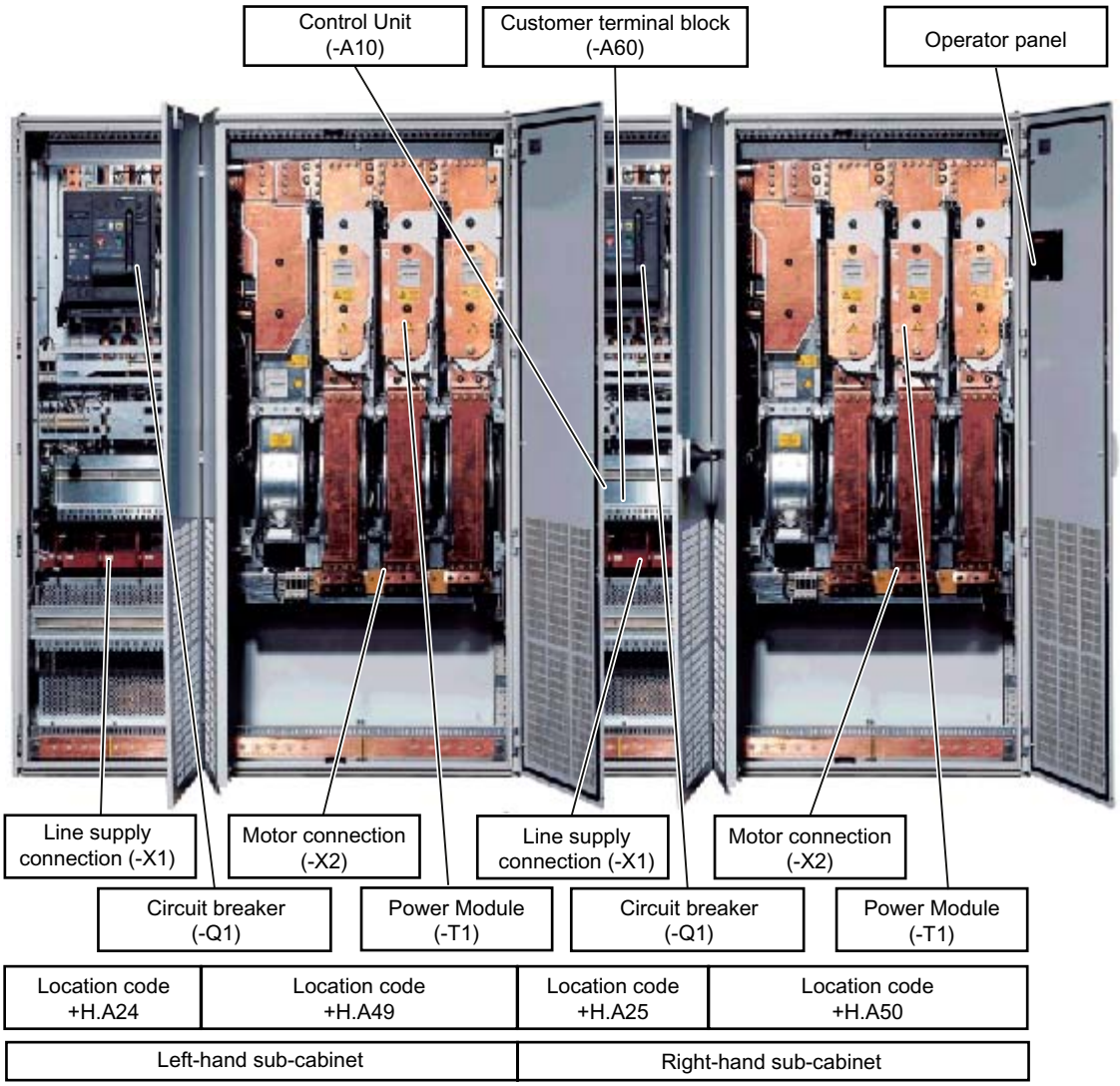


Figure 2-2 Example of the cabinet drive, version A (e.g., 1500 kW, 690 V 3 AC) (layout and components shown may vary according to version)

Special features when connecting-up and operating units connected in parallel

The DC links of the sub-cabinets connected in parallel must always be connected by the connecting cables (cable numbers -W001 and -W002).

The cabinet drive units can be connected to the line supply in either a 6-pulse or 12-pulse connection.

For a 12-pulse connection, the following special considerations must be taken into account:

- The 12-pulse connection to the line supply is only possible using a double-tier transformer with three winding systems.
  Transformer vector groups Dy5d0 or Dy11d0 should preferably be selected.
  When using sub-windings that are electrically offset with respect to one another, the line harmonics are reduced with respect to the 6-pulse infeed.

  Requirements for the transformer:

  – The no-load voltages of the two secondary windings must not differ from each other by more than 0.5% (with reference to the rated voltage).
  – The differences between the short-circuit voltages of the two secondary windings must be less than 5% of the rated value.
  – The minimum short-circuit voltage of the transformer should be 4%.
- The checkback contacts of the main contactors and the circuit breakers are connected in series in the factory and wired to digital input 5 of the Control Unit.
  When the drive unit is being commissioned, the checkback signal monitoring function must be activated.
  This is realized using parameter p0860{VECTOR} = 722.5{CONTROL_UNIT}.

Motors with two electrically isolated winding systems and also motors with one winding system can be used.

- When connecting a motor with one winding system, the following special considerations must be taken into account:
  – The motor connections of the Power Modules can be connected to one another at the motor per phase. Parameter p7003 (winding system) must be set to "0" (one winding system).
  – If a motor reactor is not being used (option L08), the minimum cable lengths must be complied with (see "Electrical installation").
- When connecting a motor with separate winding systems, the following special considerations must be taken into account:
  – Every Power Module motor connection must be connected to its own winding system. Parameter p7003 (winding system) must be set to "1" (multiple separate winding systems or motors).

⚠DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage

During connection, installation and repair work on units connected in parallel, it must be ensured that both sub-cabinets are electrically disconnected from the power supply.

2.3.2 Version C

This version is particularly compact in design with an in-built line reactor.

This version can be used, for example, when the power supply connection components, such as the main contactor and main circuit breaker with fuses for conductor protection and semi-conductor protection, are installed in an existing central low-voltage distribution unit.

Line fuses are required for conductor protection. Line fuses can also be used to protect the semiconductors of the converter.

NOTICE
Use of line fuses The protection of the cabinet units with type 3NE line fuses is urgently recommended. The recommended fuses can be found in the technical data.

The cabinet unit simply comprises a single cabinet with a width of 400 mm, 600 mm, or 1000 mm.

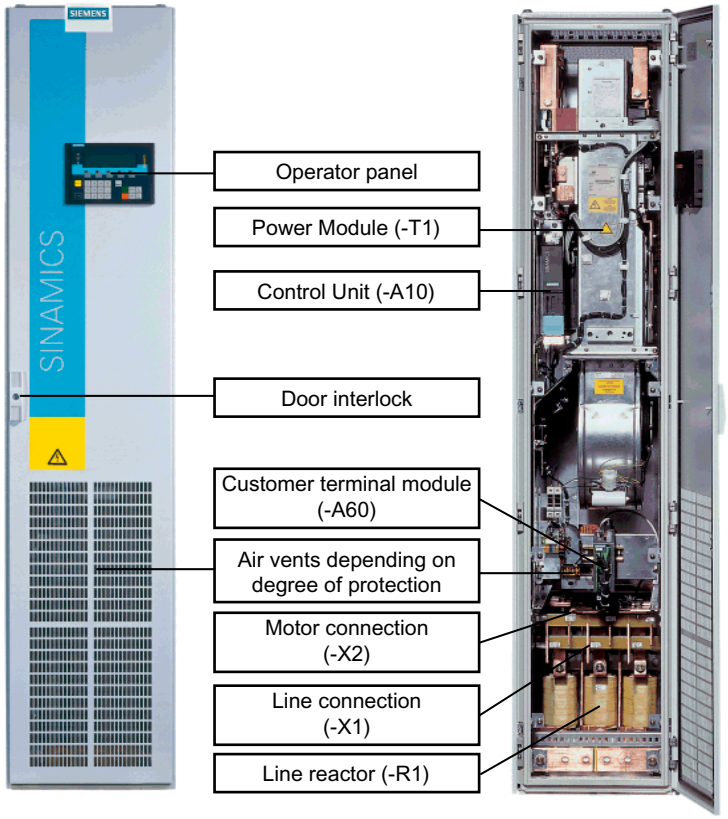
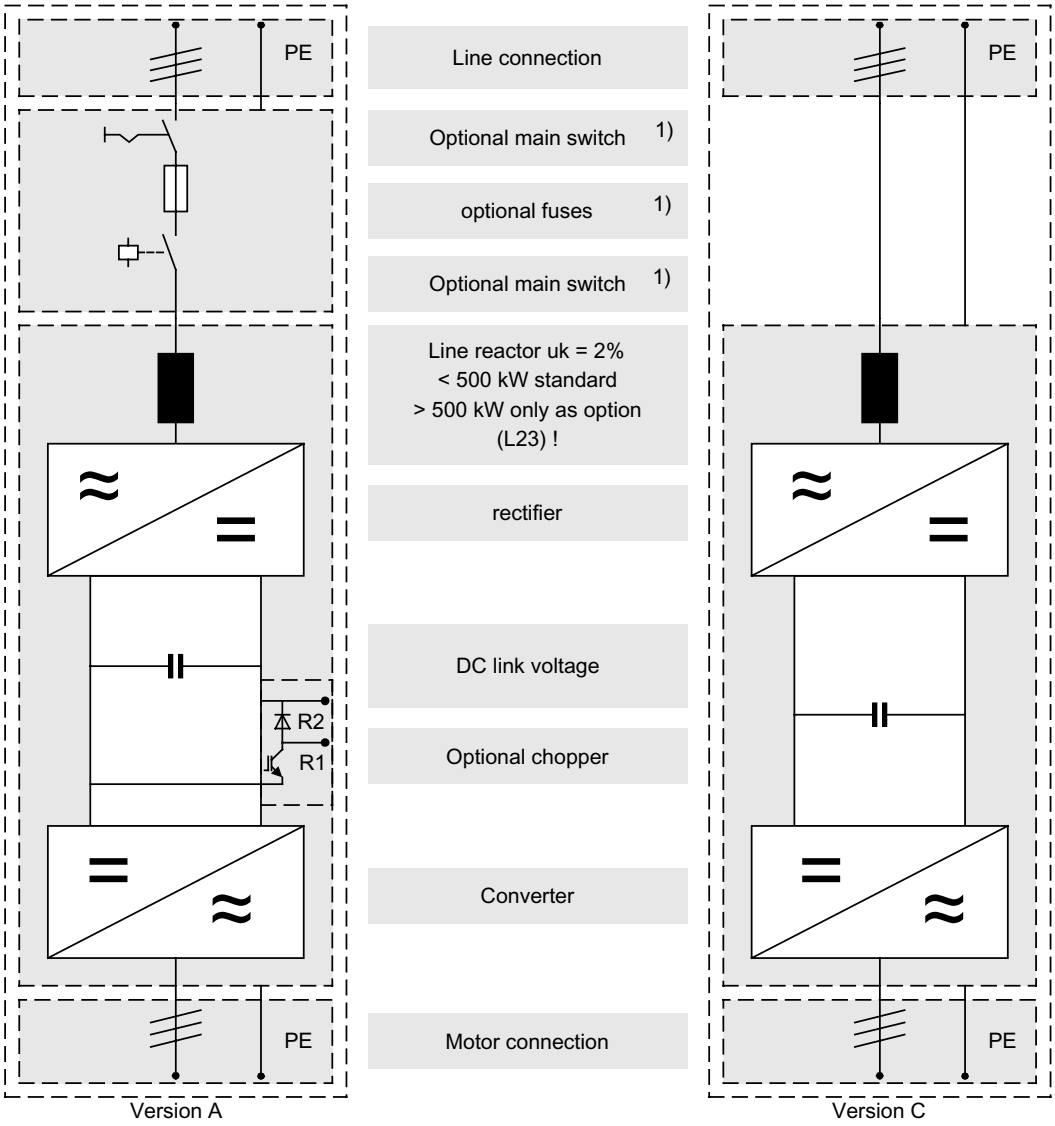


Figure 2-3 Example of the cabinet drive, version C (e.g., 315 kW, 690 V 3 AC) (layout and components shown may vary according to version)

2.4 Wiring Principle

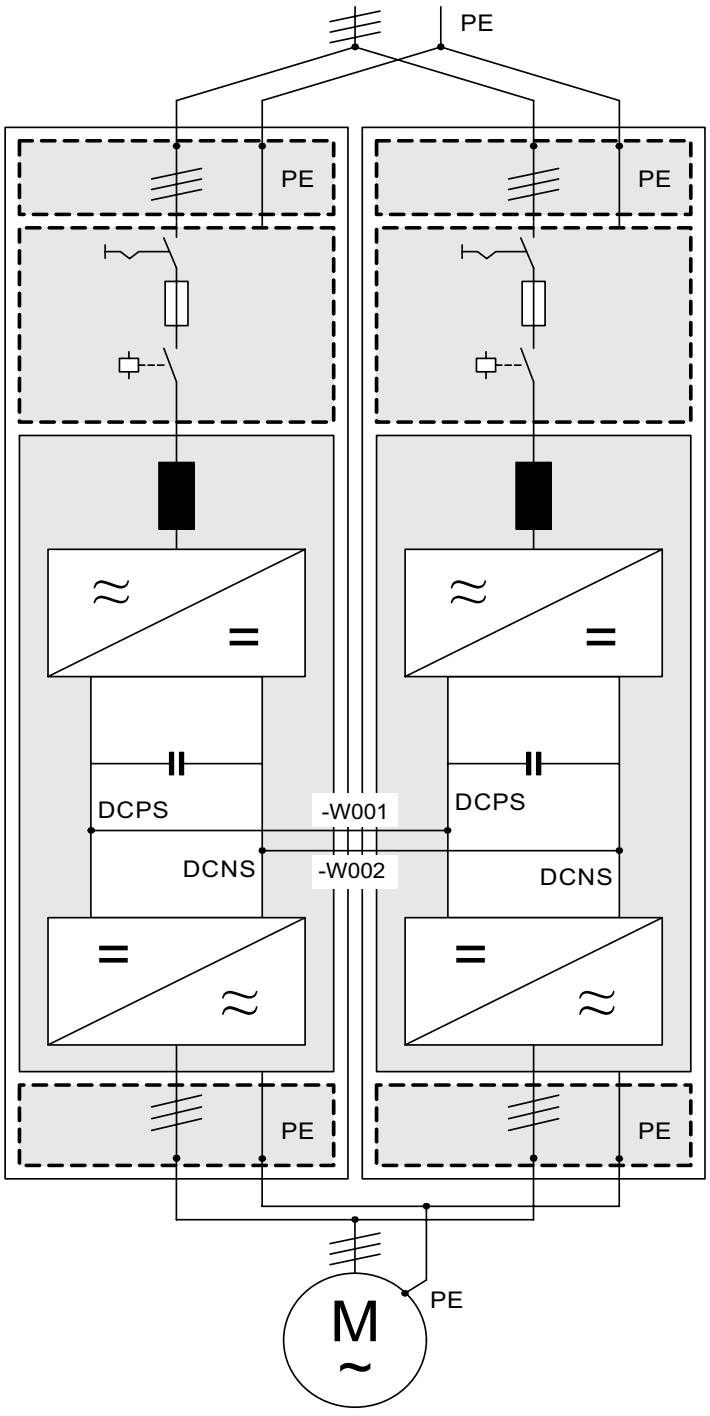
Circuit principle, versions A and C



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for output currents > > 800 A.

Figure 2-4 Circuit principle, versions A and C

Circuit principle for version A, units that are connected in parallel with 6-pulse infeed, motor with one winding system



6-pulse infeed

Line connection

Optional main switch 1)

Optional fuses 1)

Optional line contactor 1)

Line reactor uk = 2%

Rectifier

Connected voltage source DC-link

Inverter

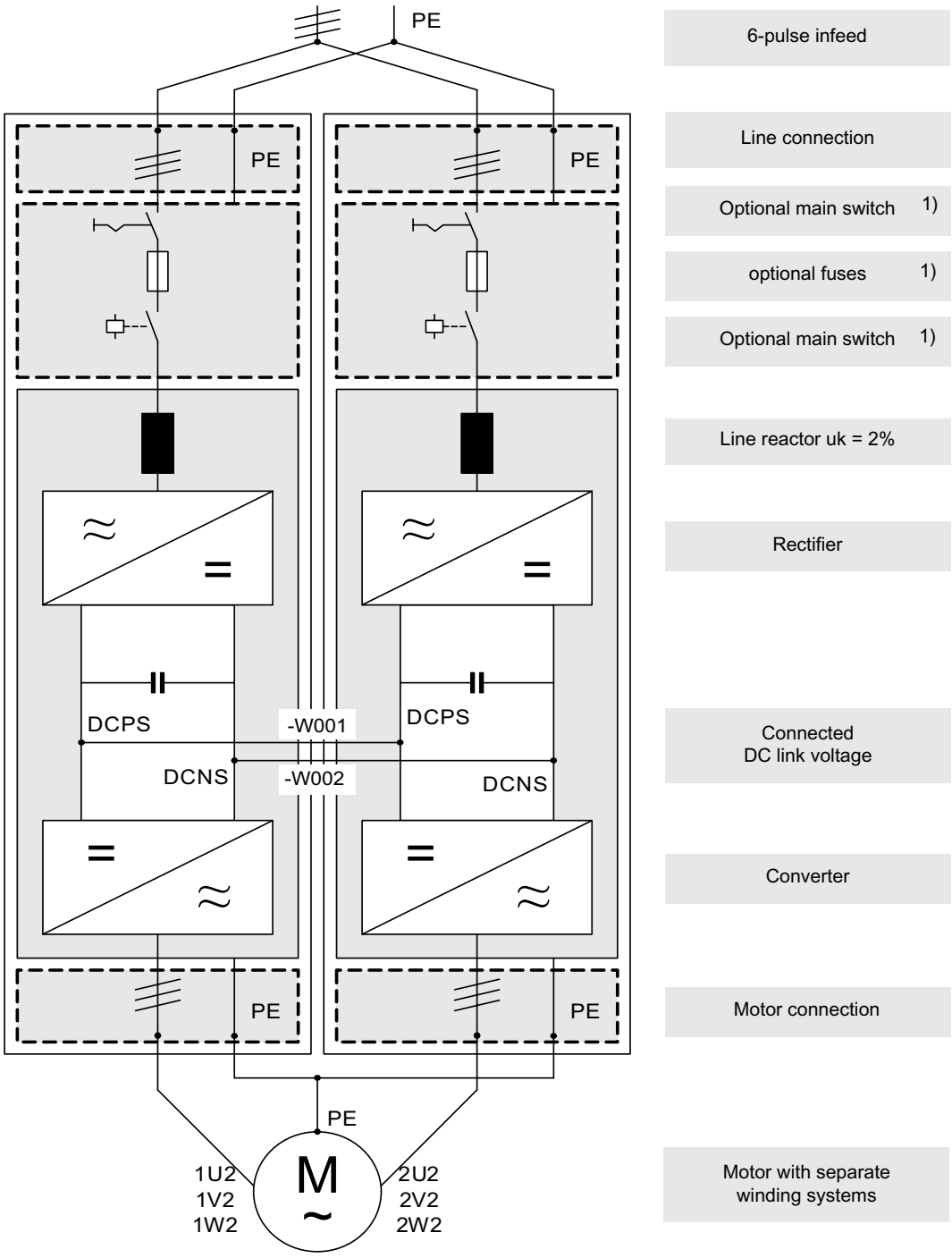
Motor connection

Motor with one winding system

1) The functions mains switch, fuses and line contactor are implemented by means of a circuit breaker for output current of > 800 A.

Figure 2-5 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 6-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with one winding system.

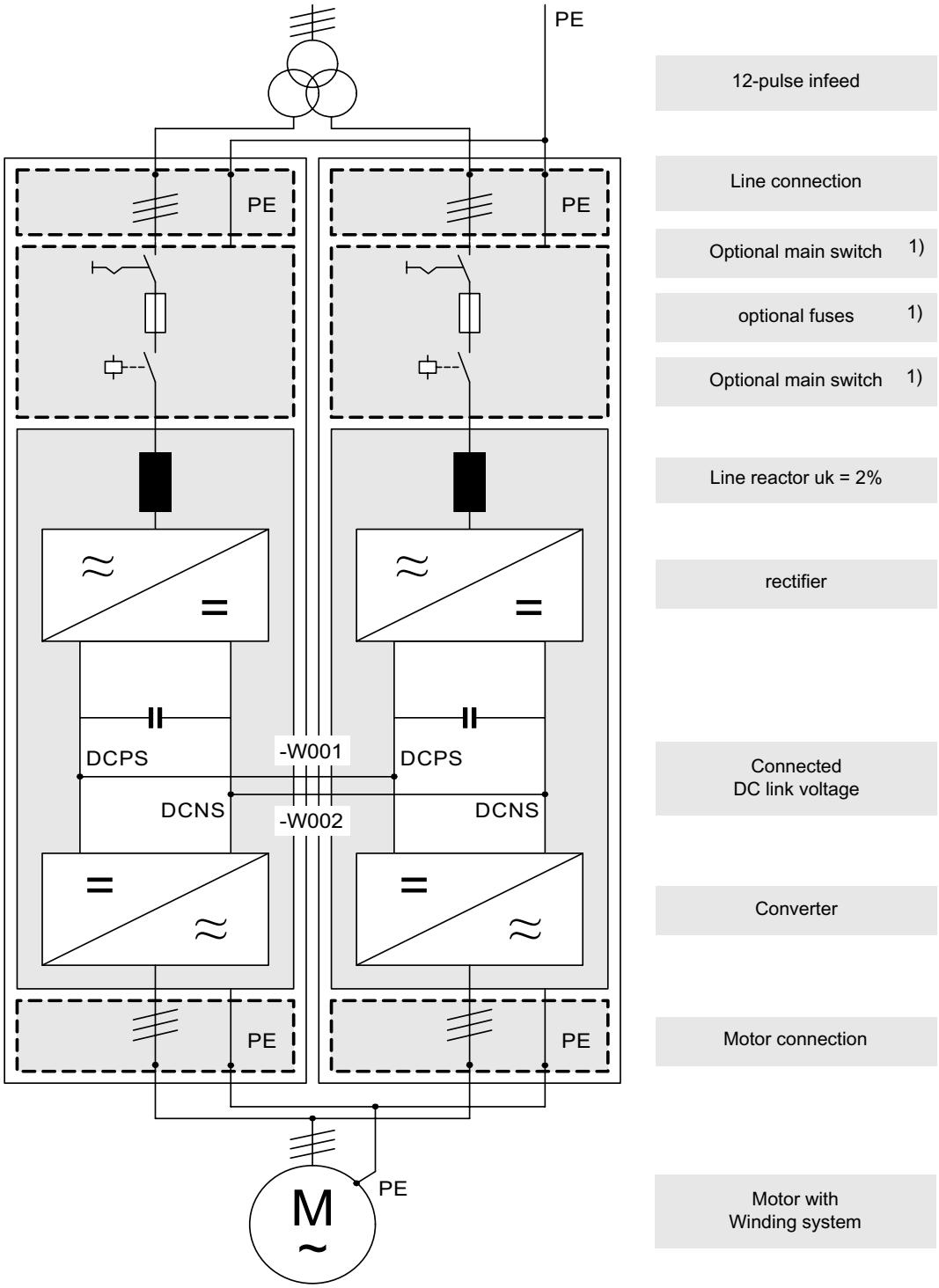
Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection with 6-pulse infeed, motor with separate winding systems



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for circuit breaker for output currents ≥ 1500 A.

Figure 2-6 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 6-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with separate winding systems.

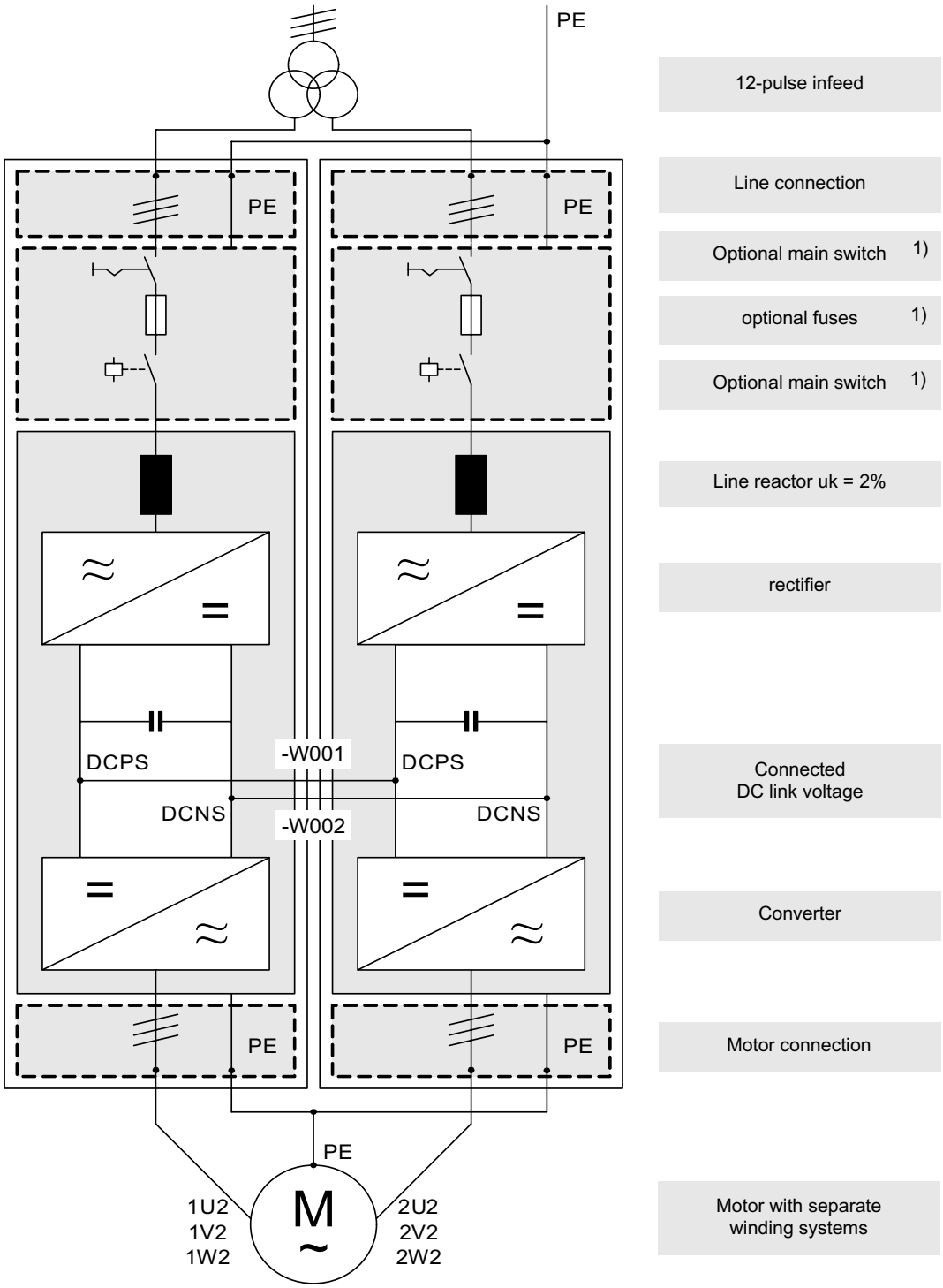
Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection with 12-pulse infeed, motor with one winding system



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for circuit breaker for output currents ≥ 1500 A.

Figure 2-7 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 12-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with one winding system.

Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection with 12-pulse infeed, motor with separate winding systems



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for circuit breaker for output currents ≥ 1500 A.

Figure 2-8 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 12-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with separate winding systems.

Note

PE connection of the motor

The PE connection at the motor must be fed back directly to the cabinet unit.

2.5 Type plate

Specifications on the type plate

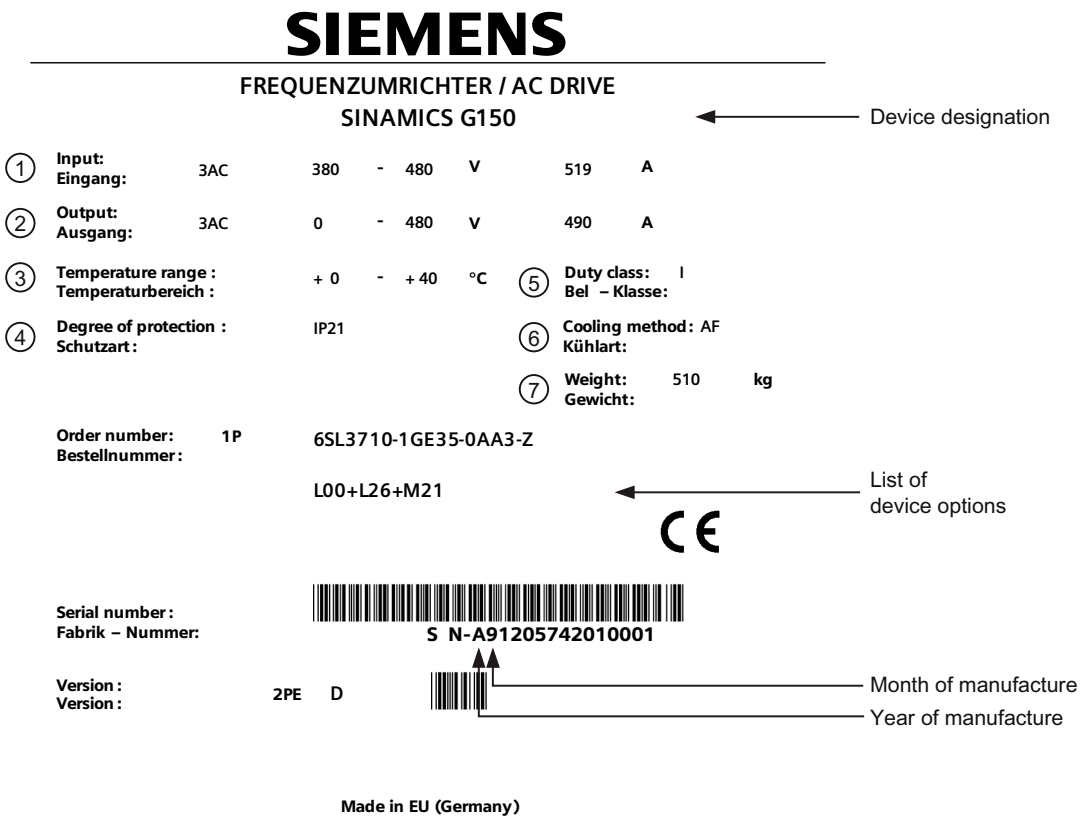


Figure 2-9 Type plate for the cabinet unit

Type plate specifications (from type plate above)

Position	Specification	Value	Explanation
①	Input	3 AC 380 ... 480 V 519 A	Three-phase connection Rated input voltage Rated input current
②	Output	3 AC 0 ... 480 V 490 A	Three-phase connection Rated output voltage Rated output current
③	Temperature range	0 ... 40 °C	Ambient temperature range within which the enclosed drive can operate under 100 % load
④	Degree of protection	IP21	Degree of protection
⑤	Duty class load class	I	I: Duty class I to EN 60146-1-1 = 100 % (continuously) (with the specified current values, the cabinet unit can operate continuously under 100 % load)
⑥	Cooling method	AF	A: Cooling medium: air F: Circulation method: forced cooling, drive unit (fan) in the device
⑦	Weight	510 kg	Weight of the enclosed drive

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture can be determined as follows:

Table 2- 1 Production year and month

Letter/number	Year of manufacture		Letter/number	Month of manufacture
W	2008		1 ... 9	January to September
X	2009		O	October
A	2010		N	November
B	2011		D	December
C	2012			
D	2013			
E	2014			

Explanation of the option short codes

Table 2- 2 Explanation of the option short codes

		Version A	Version C
Line-side options			
L00	Line filter for use in the first environment to EN 61800-3, category C2 (TN/TT systems with grounded neutral point)	✓	–
L01	Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact	✓	-
L13	Main contactor	✓	–
L21	Operation in an IT system	✓	–
L22	Line reactor not included in scope of delivery	✓	✓
L23	Line reactor uk = 2%	✓	✓
L26	Main circuit breaker (incl. fuses/circuit breakers)	✓	–
L76	Option L01 Quick starting	✓	✓
Motor-side options			
L07	dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter	✓	–
L08	Motor reactor	✓	–
L10	dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter	✓	–
L15	Sine-wave filter (only for 380 to 480 V 3 AC up to 250 kW and for 500 to 600 V 3 AC up to 132 kW)	✓	–
Line-side and motor-side options			
M70	EMC shield bus	✓	✓
Motor protection and safety functions			
L45	EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door	✓	–
L57	EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 V AC or 24 V DC	✓	–
L59	EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 230 V AC	✓	–
L60	EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 24 V AC	✓	–
L83	Thermistor motor protection unit (alarm)	✓	–
L84	Thermistor motor protection unit (shutdown)	✓	–
L86	PT100 evaluation unit	✓	–
L87	Insulation monitoring	✓	–
M60	Additional shock protection	✓	✓
Increase in degree of protection			
M21	Degree of protection IP21	✓	✓
M23	Degree of protection IP23	✓	✓
M43	Degree of protection IP43	✓	✓
M54	Degree of protection IP54	✓	✓
Mechanical options			
M06	Base 100 mm high, RAL 7022	✓	✓
M07	Cable compartment 200 mm high, RAL 7035	✓	✓
M13	Line connection from above	✓	–
M78	Motor connection from above	✓	–

		Version A	Version C
M90	Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	✓	✓
Other options			
G20	CBC10 Communication Board	✓	✓
G33	CBE20 Communication Board	✓	✓
G51	TM150 temperature sensor module	✓	✓
G60	TM31 customer terminal block	✓	✓
G61	Additional TM31 customer terminal block	✓	–
G62	TB30 Terminal Board	✓	✓
K01	Safety license for 1 axis	✓	-
K50	SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted	✓	✓
K51	VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module Cabinet-Mounted	✓	–
K52	Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	✓	-
K74	Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC	✓	-
K82	Terminal module for controlling the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" safety functions	✓	–
K87	TM54F Terminal Module	✓	-
K88	SBA Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC	✓	–
L19	Connection for external auxiliary equipment	✓	–
L50	Cabinet lighting with service socket	✓	–
L55	Cabinet anti-condensation heating	✓	✓
L61	Braking unit 25 kW / 125 kW	✓	–
L62	Braking unit 50 kW / 250 kW	✓	–
Y09	Special paint finish for cabinet	✓	✓
Documentation (standard: English / German)			
D02	Customer documentation (circuit diagram, terminal diagram, layout diagram) in DXF format	✓	✓
D04	Customer documentation as hard copy	✓	✓
D14	Draft of customer documentation	✓	✓
D58	Documentation language: English / French	✓	✓
D60	Documentation language: English / Spanish	✓	✓
D80	Documentation language: English / Italian	✓	✓
Languages (standard: English / German)			
T58	Rating plate data in English / French	✓	✓
T60	Rating plate data in English / Spanish	✓	✓
T80	Rating plate data in English / Italian	✓	✓
Industry-specific options (chemicals)			
B00	NAMUR terminal block	✓	–
B02	Protective separation for 24 V supply (PELV)	✓	–
B03	Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment (uncontrolled)	✓	–
Options specific to the shipbuilding industry			
M66	Marine version	✓	✓
E11	Individual certificate from Germanischer Lloyd (GL)	✓	✓

		Version A	Version C
E21	Individual certificate from Lloyds Register (LR)	✓	✓
E31	Individual certificate from Bureau Veritas (BV)	✓	✓
E51	Individual certificate from Det Norske Veritas (DNV)	✓	✓
E61	Individual certificate from American Bureau of Shipping (ABS)	✓	✓
Converter acceptance in customer's absence (not shown on the rating plate)			
F03	Visual acceptance	✓	✓
F71	Function test of the converter without motor connected	✓	✓
F75	Function test of the converter with test bay motor (no load)	✓	✓
F77	Insulation test on converter	✓	✓
F97	Customer-specific converter acceptance inspections (on request)	✓	✓

✓ indicates that this option is available for that version.

– indicates that this option is not available for that version.

Mechanical installation

3

3.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- The conditions for transporting, storing, and installing the cabinet unit
- Preparing and installing the cabinet unit

3.2 Transportation and storage

Transportation

⚠WARNING

Transportation of the devices

The following must be taken into account when the devices are transported:

- The devices are heavy or generally top heavy. The center of gravity is marked on the devices.
- Suitable hoisting gear operated by trained personnel is essential due to the weight of the devices.
- The devices must only be transported in the upright position indicated. The devices must not be transported upside down or horizontally.
- Serious injury or even death and substantial material damage can occur if the devices are not lifted or transported properly.

Note

Notes regarding transportation

- The devices are packaged by the manufacturer in accordance with the climatic conditions and stress encountered during transit and in the recipient country.
- The notes on the packaging for transportation, storage, and proper handling must be observed.
- For transportation using forklifts, the devices must be set down on a wooden pallet.
- When the devices are unpacked, they can be transported using the optional transport eyebolts (option M90) or rails on the cabinet unit. The load must be distributed evenly. Heavy blows or impacts must be avoided during transit and when the devices are being set down, for example.
- Shock / tilt indicators are affixed to the packaging to detect unacceptable impact or tilting of the cabinet unit during transport (see Chapter "Transport Indicators").
- Permissible ambient temperatures:
  Ventilation: -25 to +70°C, class 2K3 to IEC 60721-3-2
  Briefly down to -40°C for max. 24 hours

Note

Notes regarding damage in transit

- Carry out a thorough visual inspection of the device before accepting the delivery from the transportation company. Pay special attention to transport damage that is not readily apparent but indicated by the tilt and shock indicators.
- Ensure that you have received all the items specified on the delivery note.
- Notify the transportation company immediately of any missing components or damage.
- If you identify any hidden defects or damage, contact the transportation company immediately and ask them to examine the device.
- If you fail to contact them immediately, you may lose your right to claim compensation for the defects and damage.
- If necessary, you can request the support of your local Siemens office.

⚠ WARNING

Transport damage

Damage in transit indicates that the device was subject to unreasonable stress. The electrical safety of the device can no longer be ensured.

Non-observance can result in death, severe personal injury or substantial material damage.

Storage

The devices must be stored in clean, dry rooms. Temperatures between –25 and +70°C are permissible. Temperature variations greater than 20 K per hour are not permitted.

If the cabinet is stored for a prolonged period once it has been unpacked, cover it or take other appropriate measures to ensure that it does not become dirty and that it is protected against environmental influences. If such measures are not taken, the warranty becomes invalid in the event of a claim for damages.

⚠ WARNING

Forming the DC link capacitors

The device should not be stored for more than two years. If the device is stored for more than two years, the DC link capacitors of the devices must be reformed during commissioning.

The reforming procedure is described in "Maintenance and servicing".

NOTICE

Do not apply mechanical loads to the hoods!

The hoods are delivered separately and must be installed on site.

The hoods must not be subjected to mechanical loads; otherwise they could be destroyed.

3.3 Assembly

⚠WARNING

Safe operation of the devices

To ensure that the devices operate safely and reliably, they must be properly installed and commissioned by qualified personnel, taking into account the warnings provided in these operating instructions.

In particular, the general and national installation and safety guidelines for high-voltage installations (e.g. VDE – the Union of German Technical Engineers) as well as the guidelines relating to the proper use of tools and personal protective equipment must be observed.

Death, serious injury, or substantial material damage can result if these factors are not taken into account.

3.3.1 Mechanical installation: checklist

Use the following checklist to guide you through the mechanical installation procedure for the cabinet unit. Read the "Safety instructions" section at the start of these Operating Instructions before you start working on the device.

Note

Checking the checklist

Check the boxes accordingly in the right-hand column if the activity applies to the cabinet unit in your scope of supply. In the same way, check the boxes once you have finished the installation procedure to confirm that the activities are complete.

Item	Activity	Yes	Completed
1	Check the shipping and handling monitors prior to assembly. Refer to "Mechanical installation/Assembly/Preparatory steps/Shipping and handling monitors".	☐	☐
2	The ambient conditions must be permissible. See "Technical data/General technical data". The cabinet unit must be firmly attached to the fixing points provided. With version C with a width of 400 mm, the cabinet unit can, if required, be secured to a non-flammable vertical surface by means of the wall support supplied (see "Mechanical installation/preparation"). The cooling air can flow unobstructed.	☐	☐
3	The minimum ceiling height (for unhindered air outlet) specified in the Operating Instructions must be observed. The cooling air supply must be not be obstructed (see "Mechanical installation/preparation").	☐	☐
4	Transport units separately shipped must be connected to one another (refer to Chapter "Mechanical installation / Mechanically connecting units connected in parallel").	☐	☐
5	Components that are supplied separately for transport reasons (canopy or hood) must be fitted (see "Mechanical installation/Fitting additional canopies (option M21) or hoods (option M23, M43, M54)").	☐	☐
6	The clearance around an open door (escape route) specified in the applicable accident prevention guidelines must be observed.	☐	☐
7	With option M13/M78: Choose the required metric screw connections or conduit thread connections on the basis of the cable cross-section and drill the required holes in the blanking plates. When the cable is fed in from above, ensure that enough room is available if the cable has to be bent because of the cable feeder and cross-sections. The cable entries should be fed in vertically to minimize transverse forces on the entries (see "Mechanical installation / line connection from above (option M13), motor connection from above (option M78)").	☐	☐

3.3.2 Preparation

3.3.2.1 Requirements on the installation location

The cabinet units are designed for installation in closed, electrical operating areas in compliance with EN 61800-5-1. A closed electrical operating area is a room or area containing electrical equipment that can be accessed by trained personnel only. Access is controlled by a door or other form of barrier that can be opened only by means of a key or other tool. The room or area is also clearly marked with appropriate warning notices.

The operating areas must be dry and free of dust. The air supplied must not contain any electrically conductive gas, vapors, or dust, which could impair operation. It may be necessary to filter the air supplied to the room where the equipment is installed. If the air contains dust, filter mats (option M54) can be installed in front of the ventilation grills of the cabinet doors and also in front of the optional hoods. Option M54 offers additional protection against water sprayed against the housing from any direction and corresponds to degree of protection IP54.

The permissible values for climatic ambient conditions must be taken into account.

At temperatures > 40°C (104°F) and altitudes > 2000 m, the devices must be derated.

The basic version of the cabinet units complies with the IP20 degree of protection in accordance with EN 60529.

Installation is realized in accordance with the dimension drawings supplied. The clearance between the top of the cabinet and the ceiling is also specified in the dimension drawings.

The cooling air for the power unit is drawn in from the front through the ventilation grills in the lower part of the cabinet doors. The hot air is discharged through the perforated top cover or the ventilation grilles in the top cover (with option M13/M23/M43/M54/M78). Cooling air can also be supplied from below through raised/intermediate floors or air ducts, for example. To allow this, openings must be made in the 3-section bottom panel or individual bottom panels must be removed.

According to EN 61800-3, the cabinet units are not intended for use in low-voltage public line supplies that supply residential buildings. High-frequency interference may occur if it is used in this type of line supply.
Additional measures (e.g. line filter, option L00) can be fitted for use in the first environment to EN 61800--3 Category C2.

3.3.2.2 Requirements on the levelness of the floor

The foundation at the installation location of the cabinet devices must be level to ensure proper functioning of the cabinet units.

- Care must be taken to ensure that the doors can be opened and closed and that the locking systems work properly.
- Flat sections (such as doors, side panels and hoods) must be sealed correctly to ensure compliance with the specified degree of protection.
- When cabinets are connected (e.g., transport units), air must be prevented from entering through the gaps.

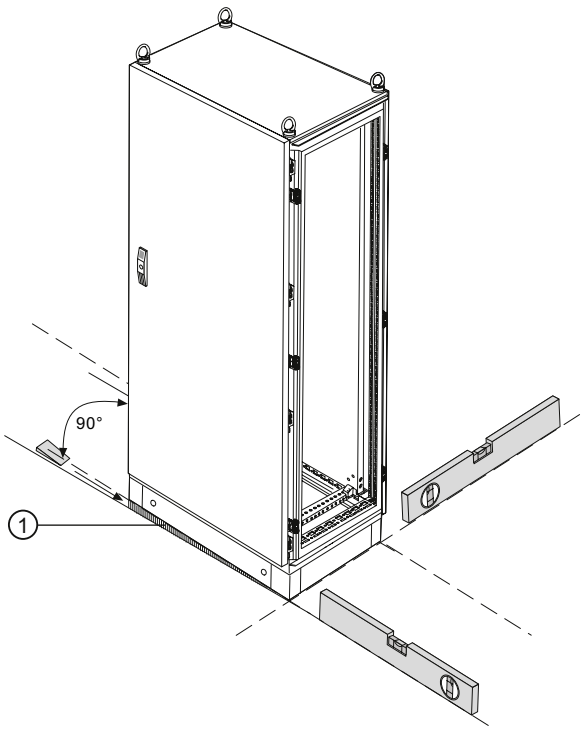


Figure 3-1 Requirements on the levelness of the floor

The following points must be observed to ensure full functionality of the cabinet units:

- The foundation must be level.
- Irregularities must be leveled out.
- Gaps where air can enter caused by leveling measures (e.g.: ① in the diagram) must be sealed.

3.3.2.3 Shipping and handling monitors

The cabinet units are equipped with tilt and shock indicators to monitor for damage during transit.

Figure 3-2 Tilt indicator

Figure 3-3 Shock indicator

Position of the shipping and handling monitors

The tilt indicators are affixed to the top of the cabinet unit inside the doors.

The shock indicators are affixed to the bottom of the cabinet unit inside the doors.

Checking the shipping and handling monitors prior to commissioning

It is essential to check the shipping and handling monitors prior to commissioning the converter.

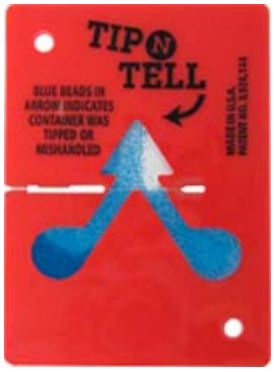


Figure 3-4 Tilt indicator tripped

The tilt indicator provides immediate visible evidence of whether the cabinet units have been handled and stored upright. Blue-colored quartz sand begins to flow into the arrow-shaped indicator area. The tilt indicator has tripped when the blue color extends beyond the middle line of the arrowhead.

Figure 3-5 Shock indicator tripped

The shock indicator shows if an acceleration has exceeded 98.1 m/s^2 (10 x g) and indicates the direction of acceleration. The black color of the arrows indicates that an impermissible shock load has occurred in the direction of the arrow.

⚠ WARNING

Inform Technical Support (hotline)

Commissioning must not be carried out, if an indicator has tripped. Please contact Technical Support immediately.
You will find the contact information in the preface to this document.

If commissioning is carried out without prior inspection of the indicators, safe operation of the converter cannot be guaranteed. This can result in death, serious personal injury or material damage.

Removing the shipping and handling monitors prior to commissioning

NOTICE
Removing the shipping and handling indicators prior to commissioning
The shipping and handling monitors must be removed before commissioning the converter.
Failure to observe the transport indicators during operation of the converter may cause damage to the equipment.

3.3.2.4 Unpacking

Unpacking

Check the delivery against the delivery note to ensure that all the items have been delivered. Check that the cabinet is intact and has not been damaged.

The packaging material must be disposed of in accordance with the applicable country-specific guidelines and rules.

3.3.2.5 Required tools

To install the connections, you will require:

- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench from 5 Nm to 50 Nm
- Screwdriver, size 2
- Screwdriver Torx T20
- Screwdriver Torx T30

A socket wrench kit with two long extensions is recommended.

3.3.3 Installation

3.3.3.1 Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet

Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet

The applicable local guidelines regarding the transportation of the cabinet from the transport palette to the installation location must be observed.

A crane transport assembly (option M90) can also be fitted on the top of the cabinet.

The fixing screws of the transport pallets can be removed without having to lift the cabinet unit. The positions of the fixing screws are indicated by red markings on the outside of the pallets.

Figure 3-6 Lifting from the transport pallet (left: without base; right: with base)

For cabinet units without base (in the figure on the left), the fixing screws of the transport pallets must be removed from the underside of the pallet.
For cabinet units with base (in the figure on the right), the fixing screws of the transport pallet are accessible only after the cover is opened. They can then be loosened and removed directly from the front.

⚠WARNING

Pay attention to the weight and center of gravity!

The weight specified on the packaging and the designated center of gravity must always be taken into account when the cabinet is lifted and transported.

Particular attention must be paid to this potential danger once you have unscrewed the cabinet units from the transport pallet.

Center of gravity of cabinet

The diagram below shows the center of gravity of the cabinet (for all sizes), which must always be taken into account when lifting and installing the cabinet.

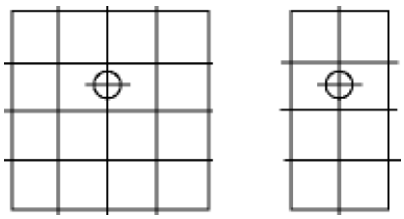


Figure 3-7 Center of gravity of the cabinet

Note

Center of gravity of the cabinet

A label with the precise position of the center of gravity of the cabinet is attached to each cabinet or each transport unit.

3.3.3.2 Removing the crane transport aids

With option M90 (crane transport aids), the cabinet units are equipped with either transport eyebolts or beams.

Figure 3-8 Option M90, transport beams

Removal

The transport eyebolts can be unscrewed and removed. Depending on the length of the cabinet or transport unit, the support rails can have a varying number of fastening screws. These must be unscrewed and removed before the rails can be removed.

⚠ WARNING

Careful handling of the support rails

The support rails are heavy and must be removed very carefully.

Screws can fall into the unit as it is disassembled and cause serious damage when the equipment is started up.

Original roof screws

Figure 3-9 Original roof screws, accessory kit

After removing the crane transport aids, the removed transport eyebolts or the fixing screws of the transport beam must be replaced by the original roof screws from the accessories pack supplied in order to ensure compliance with the degree of protection and proper grounding of the cabinet.

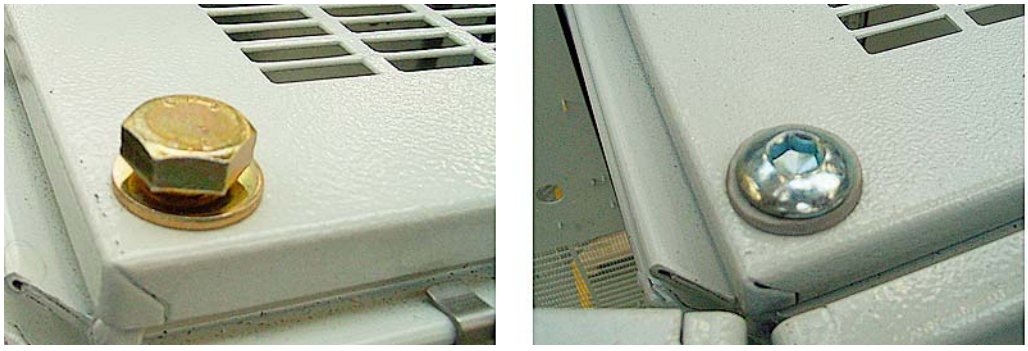


Figure 3-10 Delivery state (left), original roof screws (right)

3.3.3.3 Connection to the foundation

Connection to the foundation

For the connection to the foundation, four holes are provided on each cabinet panel for M12 screws (see pictures in the next section). The fixing dimensions are specified in the dimension drawings.

Every cabinet panel must be attached to the ground using at least two opposing attachment points (1 screw each in the front and rear part of the cabinet panel).
If this is not possible for reasons of accessibility, then the attachment points of the adjacent cabinet panels must be correspondingly raised.
Generally, as many attachment points as possible should be used.

Two wall supports for attaching the top of the cabinet to the wall are also supplied for 400 mm-wide cabinets to provide extra security.

3.3.4 Mechanical connection of units that are connected in parallel

The following cabinet units (units connected in parallel) are supplied in two separate transport units:

- 3 AC 380 up to 480 V:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- 3 AC 500 up to 600 V:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- 3 AC 660 up to 690 V:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

The left-hand sub-cabinet has the locator code "+H.A24" and "+H.A49" and the right-hand sub-cabinet has the locator code "+H.A25" and "+H.A50". The cabinet operator panel is also mounted here.

An accessories kit is provided with each transport unit for mechanically connecting the sub-cabinet units. The table below shows the content of this accessories kit for connecting the cabinet units.

Table 3- 1 Content of the accessories kit for connecting the cabinet units

Quantity	Material	Fig.	Notes
1 x	Sealing strip		The sealing strip must be attached to the cabinets before connecting them together.
3 x	Outer cabinet connector including mounting material		The cabinet connector is attached from the outside and screwed tight from the outside. Tightening torque: 9 Nm
3 x	Inner cabinet connector including mounting material		The cabinet connector is attached using 4 screws. Tightening torque: 5 Nm

Mounting

1. Attach the sealing strip to the cabinet frames of the cabinets to be connected.
2. Push the cabinets together, they must completely come together at the front and the rear sides. The distance between the cabinets must be approximately 3 mm.
3. Mount the cabinet connectors at the outside and inside corresponding to the following drawing.
4. If necessary, reattach the protective covers and doors. The ground connections must also be attached to the doors.

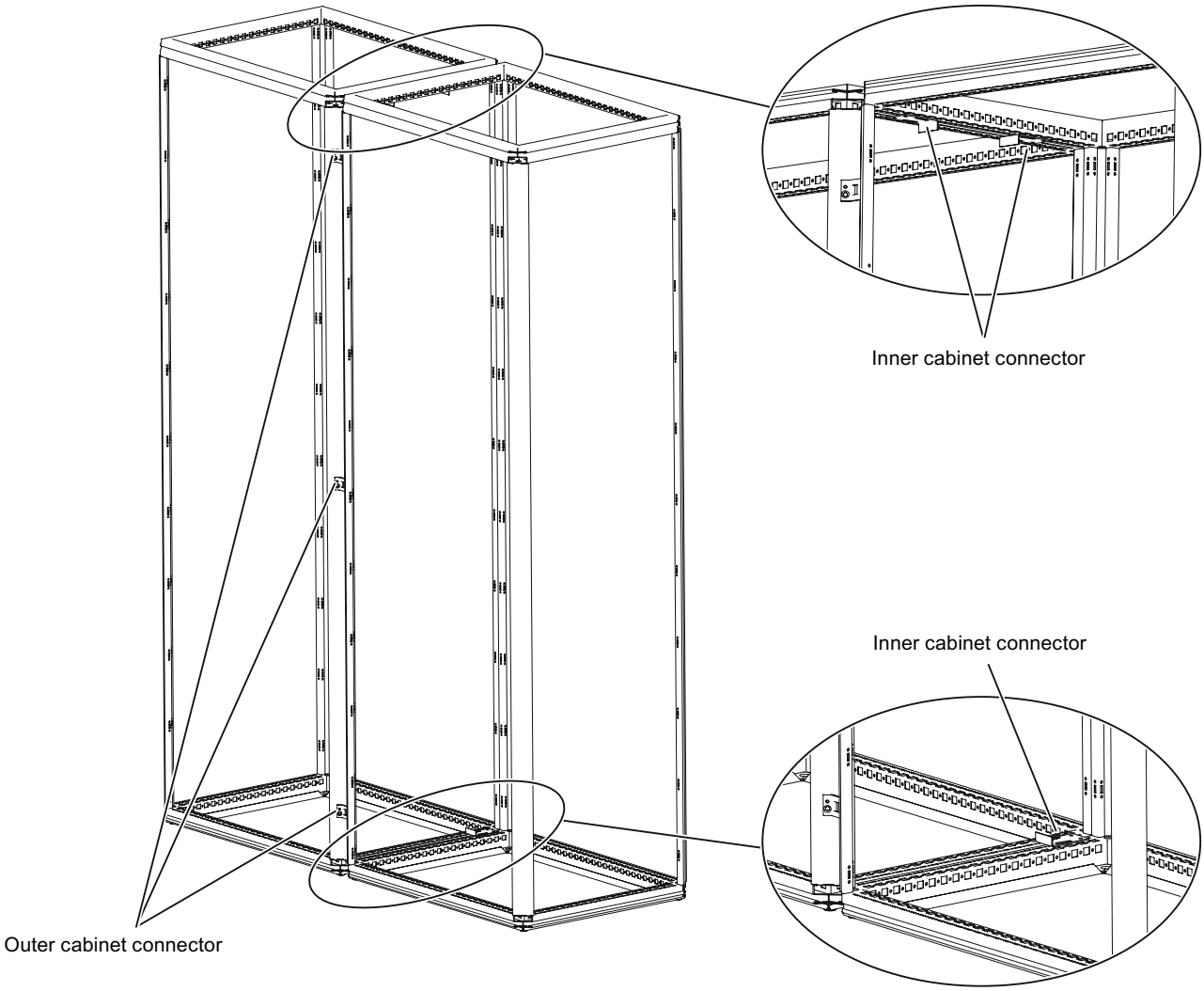


Figure 3-11 Positions of the cabinet connectors

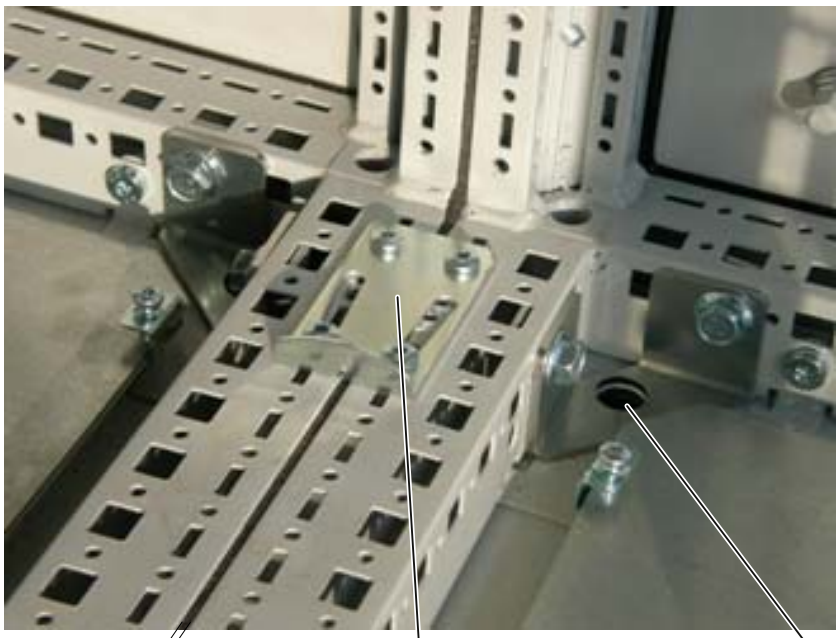


Figure 3-12 Cabinet connectors at the inside at the lower cabinet frame

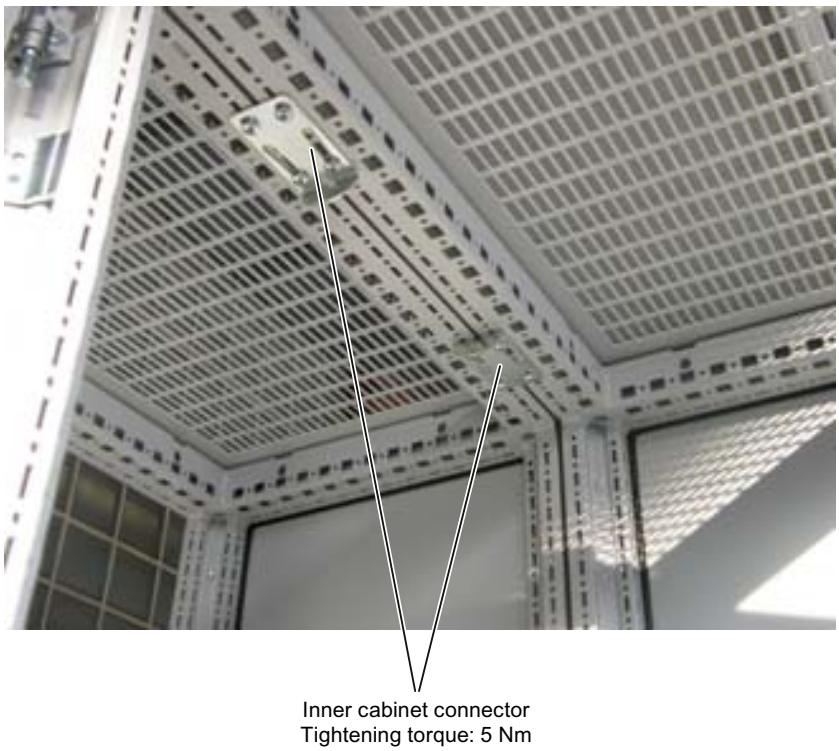


Figure 3-13 Cabinet connectors at the inside at the upper cabinet frame

Figure 3-14 Outer cabinet connector

3.3.5 Fitting additional canopies (option M21) or hoods (option M23, M43, M54)

To increase the degree of protection of the cabinets from IP20 (standard) to IP21, IP23, IP43, or IP54, additional canopies or hoods are supplied. These must be fitted once the cabinets have been installed.

Description

Degree of protection IP21

The degree of protection can be increased to IP21 by fitting an additional canopy. The canopy is mounted protruding above the cabinet on spacers, 250 mm above the top cover of the cabinet. Fitting a canopy increases the height of all cabinets by 250 mm.

Degree of protection IP23

Cabinet units with degree of protection IP23 are supplied with additional hoods, as well as plastic ventilation grilles and braided plastic in the air inlet (doors) and outlet (hoods). The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back. The hood is secured via the four crane hook holes in the cabinet. Hoods increase the height of the cabinet by 400 mm.

Degree of protection IP43

Cabinet units with degree of protection IP43 are supplied with additional hoods, as well as plastic ventilation grilles and close-meshed braided plastic in the air inlet (doors) and outlet (hoods). The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back. The hood is secured via the four crane hook holes in the cabinet. Attaching the hoods increases the height of the cabinet units by 400 mm.
Compliance with degree of protection IP43 requires an intact filter medium, which must be serviced at regular intervals depending on the prevailing ambient conditions.

Degree of protection IP54

Cabinet units with degree of protection IP54 are supplied with additional hoods, plastic ventilation grilles, and a filter medium in the air inlet (doors) and outlet (hoods). The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back. The hood is secured via the four crane hook holes in the cabinet. Hoods increase the height of the cabinet by 400 mm.
Compliance with degree of protection IP54 requires an intact filter medium, which must be replaced at regular intervals dependiing on the prevailing ambient conditions. Filters can be fitted and replaced from outside the cabinet relatively easily.

Note

Early mounting of the canopy or hood!

It is recommended to attach the canopy or hood at an early stage to prevent foreign matter entering the cabinet devices.

Attaching a canopy to increase the degree of protection to IP21 (option M21)

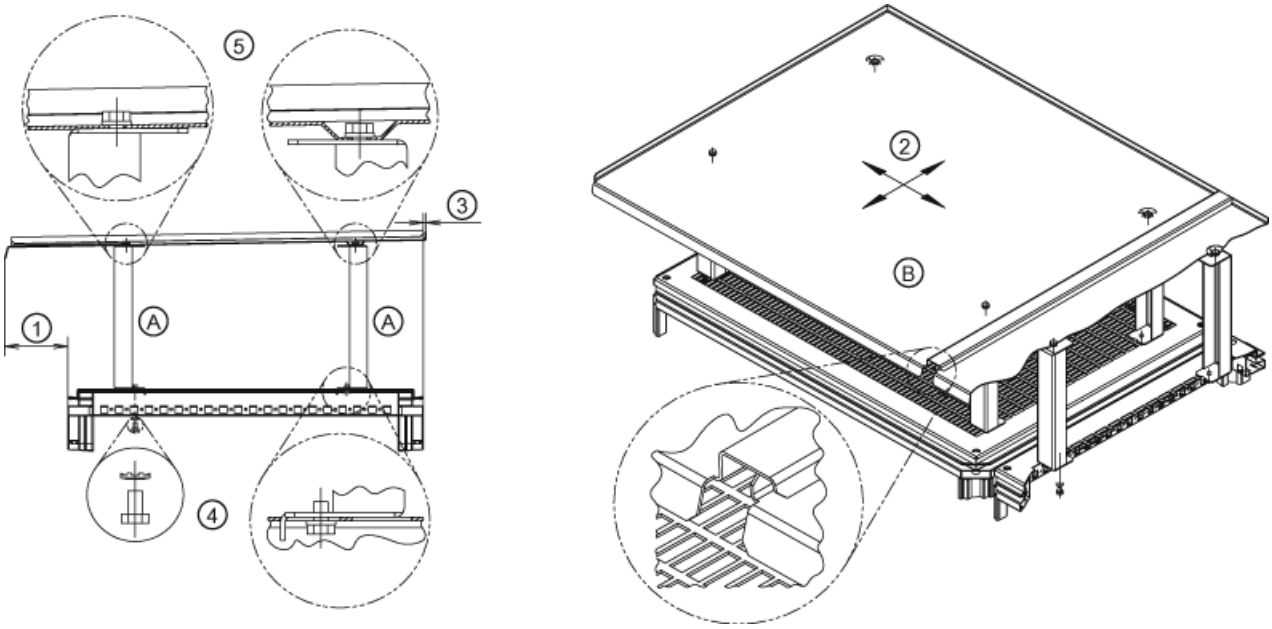


Figure 3-15 Fitting a canopy

The canopy ② can be installed variably in both directions (on the side and to the front or back) on the top of the cabinet.
The arrangement can be adapted to the various installation conditions for the cabinets. This produces an adjustable protrusion of the canopy at the front ① and rear ③.
In this way, it is possible to have a circumferential protrusion of the canopy, or direct contact with the wall or between the canopies in back-to-back installation. If necessary, the contact point with the wall or back-to-back installation must be sealed.

- Remove any existing crane transport assemblies.
- Attach the spacers (A) to the roof of the cabinet at the positions specified.
  Tighten the screws ④ with contact discs applied from the bottom through the protective guard (tightening torque: 13 Nm for M6).

Note

Mounting the protective guard

The protective guard is fastened to the cabinet unit from the top using four screws. To facilitate assembly, it may be necessary to remove the protective guard, which must be reattached on completion of assembly work.

- Install the canopy (B) on the spacers.
  Attach the screws ⑤ with the contact washers from above through the canopy (tightening torque: 13 Nm for M6).

Note

Installing the canopies with cabinets connected in series

There are overlaps on the sides of the canopies to prevent water dripping into the spaces between cabinets connected in series. When fitting the canopies, make sure these overlaps engage.

Fitting a hood to increase the degree of protection to IP23/IP43/IP54 (option M23/M43/M54)

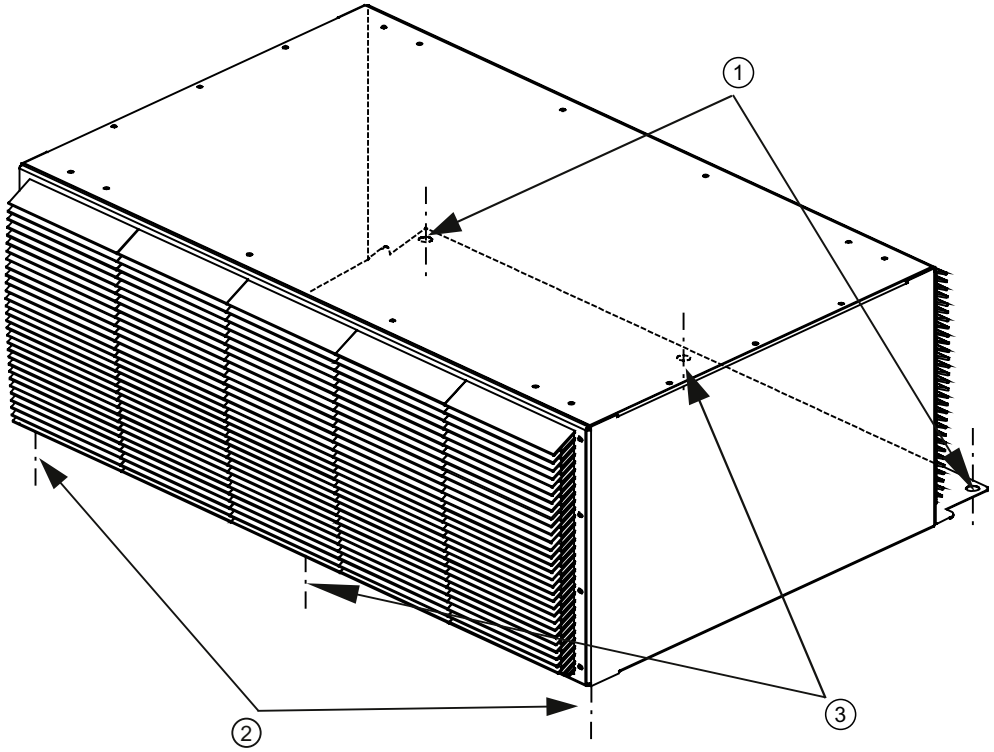


Figure 3-16 Attaching a hood

1. Remove the crane transport assembly (if fitted).
2. Make sure that a perforated top cover is not fitted on the top of the cabinet (depending on production requirements, this can be fitted at a later stage). If a top cover is installed, it must be removed.

3. Options M43 and M54 only:
   Use the sealing tape provided to attach the contact surfaces of the hood to the top of the cabinet.

Figure 3-17 Hood with attached sealing tape

4. Place the washers of the original roof screws between the cabinet upper side and the hood at the contact points of the cabinet front side. This prevents the hood from being pressed down too far when the screws are tightened and so the opening of the doors blocked.

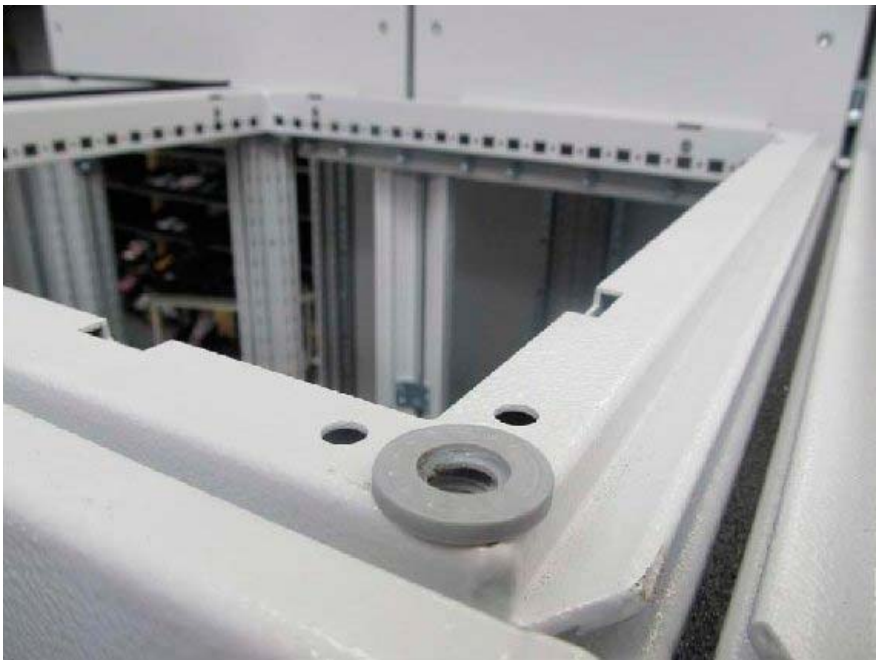


Figure 3-18 Attaching the washers

5. Attach the hood to the cabinet roof at the specified positions.
6. Attach the original M12 ① roof screws from above at the rear side.
7. Attach the M6 screws and washers at the front side (sequence: screw, spring-lock element, small washer, large washer) ② from below.
8. If the hood is very wide, insert additional screws in the center of the hood (front and rear) ③.

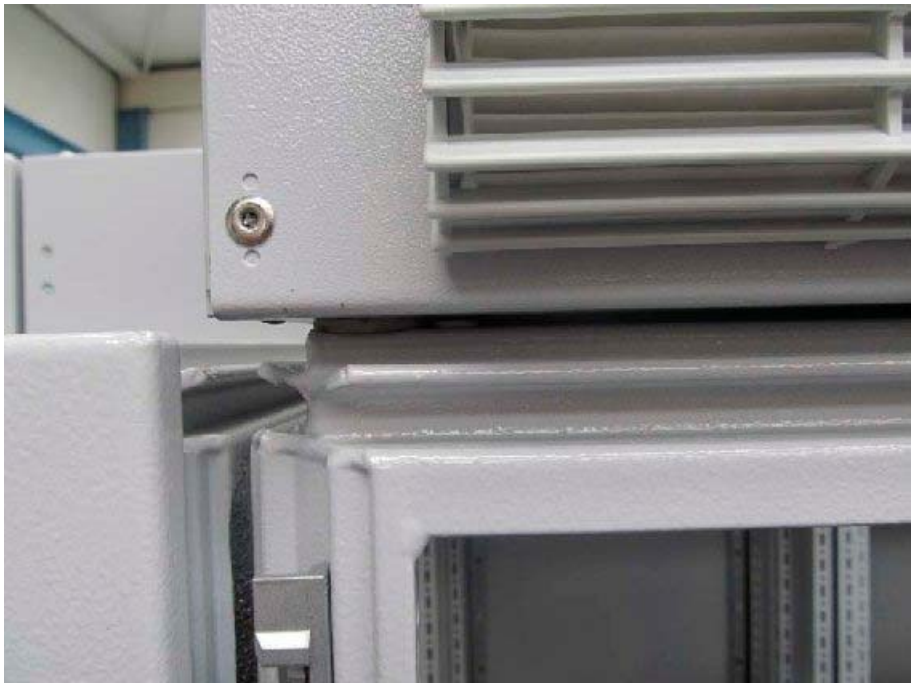


Figure 3-19 View with opened cabinet door

Figure 3-20 View with closed cabinet door

3.3.6 Line connection from above (option M13), motor connection from above (option M78)

Description

With options M13 and M78, the cabinet unit is equipped with an additional hood. The connection straps for the power cables, the clamping bar for mechanically securing the cables, an EMC shield bus, and a PE busbar are located within the hood.

The hood adds an extra 405 mm to the cabinet height. The busbars for connection from above are fully mounted when the system is delivered. For transport reasons, the hoods are delivered separately and must be mounted on site. With options M23, M43 and M54, plastic ventilation grilles and filter mats are also supplied.

A 5 mm aluminum mounting plate (with no holes) is fitted in the roof of the cover for feeding in the cables. Depending on the number of cables and the cross-sections used, holes for attaching cable glands for feeding in the cables must be drilled in this mounting plate on site.

Note

Connecting the control cables

The control cables and optional brake resistors are connected as before from below.

Attaching the Hood

1. Remove the crane transport assembly (if fitted).
2. Options M43 and M54 only:
   Use the sealing tape provided to attach the contact surfaces of the hood to the top of the cabinet.
3. Fit the hood to the roof of the cabinet at the positions specified (fixing points for the crane transport assembly).
4. To secure the power cables, remove the front panel of the hood.

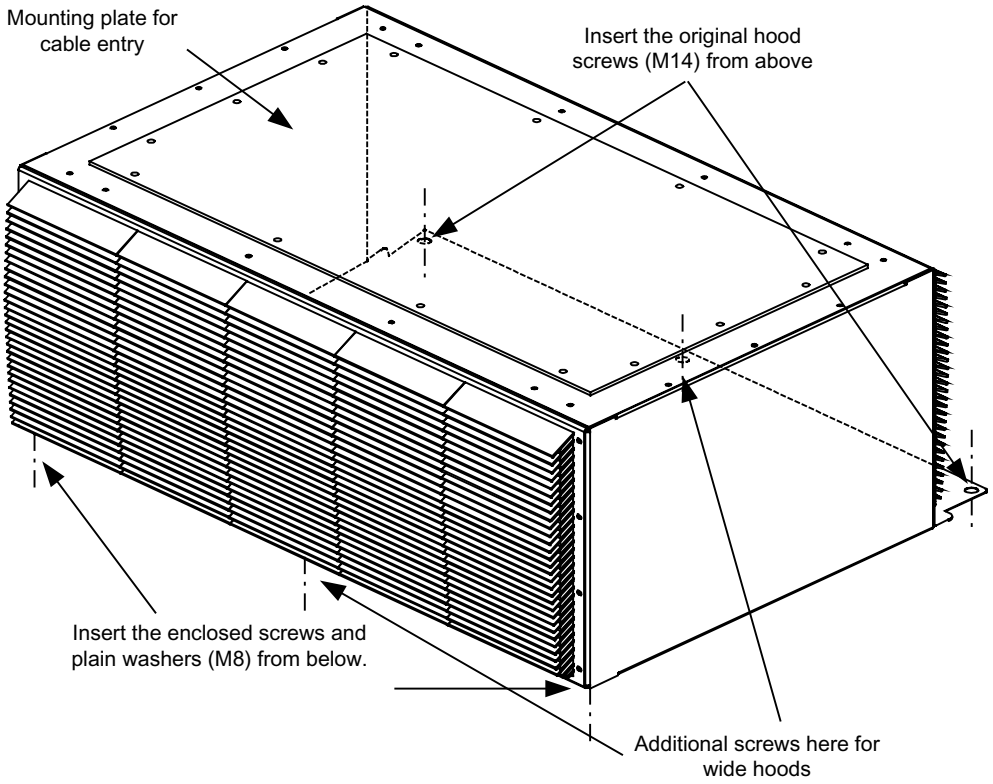


Figure 3-21 Attaching the hood with M13 / M78

Electrical installation

4

4.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Establishing the electrical connections for the cabinet unit
- Adjusting the fan voltage and the internal power supply to local conditions (supply voltage)
- The customer terminal block and its interfaces
- The interfaces for additional options

4.2 Checklist for electrical installation

Use the following checklist to guide you through the electrical installation procedure for the cabinet unit. Read the "Safety instructions" section at the start of these Operating Instructions before you start working on the device.

Note

Checking the checklist

Check the boxes accordingly in the right-hand column if the activity applies to the cabinet unit in your scope of supply. In the same way, check the boxes once you have finished the installation procedure to confirm that the activities are complete.

Item	Activity	Yes	Completed
Power connections			
1	The electrical connections of the two sub-cabinets must be established for transport units that have been shipped separately (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Electrical connection of units connected in parallel").	☐	☐
2	The line-side and motor-side power cables must be dimensioned and routed in accordance with the ambient and routing conditions. The maximum permissible cable lengths between the converter and motor must be observed depending on the type of cable used (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Connection cross-sections and cable lengths"). The correct and uniform phase sequence must be observed in both sub-cabinets when connecting cabinet units in parallel. The PE ground at the motor must be fed back directly to the cabinet unit. The cables must be properly connected to the cabinet unit terminals and tightened with a torque of 50 Nm. The cables for the motor and low-voltage switchgear must also be connected and tightened with the required torques.	☐	☐
3	For units connected in parallel, the connecting cables (-W001, -W002) for the DC links on the two sub-cabinets must be closed (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Connection of DC link connectors").	☐	☐
4	The cables between the low-voltage switchgear and the cabinet unit must be protected with line fuses to provide adequate conductor protection (DIN VDE 100, Part 430 and/or IEC 60364-4-43) With version C, combined fuses must be used for conductor and semi-conductor protection (EN 60269-4). See "Technical data" for the appropriate fuses.	☐	☐
5	For strain relief, the cables must be clamped on the cable propping bar (C-type mounting bar).	☐	☐
6	When EMC-shielded cables are used, screwed glands that connect the shield to ground with the greatest possible surface area must be provided on the motor terminal box. On the cabinet, the cables must be grounded with the clips supplied with the EMC shield bus with the greatest possible surface area (shield bus supplied with option L00 or can be ordered separately with option M70 – see "Electrical installation / EMC-compliant installation").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
7	The cable shields must be properly applied and the cabinet properly grounded at the appropriate points (see "Electrical installation / EMC-compliant installation").		☐	☐
8	The voltage of the fan transformer (-T1-T10) must be adapted to the supply voltage for the cabinet unit. Larger cabinet units have 2 fan transformers (-T1 -T10/-T20), which must be set together. For units connected in parallel, the fan transformers must be set together in each sub-cabinet (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Adjusting the fan voltage (-T1 -T10)").		☐	☐
9	A yellow warning label is attached to the basic interference suppression module at each connection clip. • The warning label must removed from the connection clip (by pulling it off) if the connection clip is to remain in the unit (operation on a grounded line supply). • The warning label must be removed together with the connection clip if the unit is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system). (See "Electrical installation/Power connections/Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)").		☐	☐
10	The rating plate can be used to ascertain the date of manufacture. If the period from the date of manufacture to initial commissioning or the cabinet unit downtime is less than 2 years, the DC link capacitors do not have to be re-formed. If the downtime period is longer than 2 years, they must be reformed in accordance with the description found in the section "Maintenance and servicing / Reforming the DC link capacitors."		☐	☐
11	With an external auxiliary supply, the cable for the 230 V AC supply must be connected to terminal –X40, while the cable for the 24 V DC supply must be connected to terminal –X9 (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / External supply of the auxiliary supply from a secure line").		☐	☐
12	Option L07 dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter	During commissioning, the filter must be selected via STARTER or AOP30. You are advised to check the selection by ensuring that p0230 is set to 2. The required parameters are set automatically (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07)").	☐	☐
13	Option L10 dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter	During commissioning, the filter must be selected via STARTER or AOP30. You are advised to check the selection by ensuring that p0230 is set to 2. The required parameters are set automatically (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10)").	☐	☐
14	Option L15 Sine-wave filter	During commissioning, the filter must be selected via STARTER or AOP30. You are advised to check the selection by ensuring that p0230 is set to 3. The required parameters are set automatically (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/Sine-wave filter (option L15)").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
15	Option L19 Connection for external auxiliary equipment	To supply auxiliary equipment (e.g. separately-driven fan for motor), the drive must be properly connected to terminals -X155:1 (L1) to -X155:3 (L3). The supply voltage of the auxiliary equipment must match the input voltage of the cabinet unit. The load current must not exceed 10 A and must be set at -Q155 in accordance with the load connected (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Connection for external auxiliary equipment (option L19)").	☐ Set value: _____	☐
16	Option L21 Operation in an IT system	The monitoring of the surge arresters and the line-side fuses must be connected to terminal -X700 (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/operation on an IT line supply (option L21)").	☐	☐
17	Option L26 Main circuit breaker (incl. fuses/circuit breakers)	In equipment with main circuit breaker, the release current must be set to match the installation requirements (see "Electrical Installation / Other connections / Main switch incl. fuses or main circuit breaker (option L26)").	☐	☐
18	Option L50 Cabinet lighting with service socket	The 230 V auxiliary supply for the cabinet lighting with an integrated service socket must be connected to terminal -X390 and protected with a fuse (max. 10 A) on site (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Cabinet lighting with service socket (option L50)").	☐	☐
19	Option L55 Cabinet anti-condensation heating	The 230 V auxiliary supply for the anti-condensation heating for the cabinet (230 V / 50 Hz, 100 W / or 230 V / 50 Hz 2 x 100 W for cabinets with a width of 800 ... 1200 mm) must be connected to terminals -X240: 1 to 3 and protected with fuses (max. 16 A) (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Anti-condensation heating for cabinet (option L55)").	☐	☐
20	Option K74 Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC	The voltage of the auxiliary power supply (-T10) must be adapted to the supply voltage of the cabinet unit (see Chapter "Electrical installation/additional connections/auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74)").	☐	☐
Signal connections				
20	Cabinet unit operation by higher-level controller / control room. The control cables must be connected in accordance with the interface assignment and the shield applied. Taking into account electrical interference and the distance from power cables, the digital and analog signals must be routed with separate cables.		☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
21	Option G60 TM31 customer terminal block	The TM31 Terminal Module is used to extend the customer terminals. This provides the following additional interfaces: • 8 digital inputs • 4 bidirectional digital inputs/outputs • 2 relay outputs with changeover contact • 2 analog inputs • 2 analog outputs • 1 temperature sensor input (KTY84-130/PTC) Integration of the interfaces takes place using pre-interconnections prepared in the factory, which can be selected during commissioning. When the analog inputs on the TM31 are used as current or voltage inputs, selectors S5.0 and S5.1 must be set accordingly (see "Electrical installation / Signal connections / Customer terminal module (-A60)").	☐	☐
22	Option K50 SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted	The SMC30 Sensor Module is used for determining the actual motor speed. In conjunction with SINAMICS G150, the following encoders are supported by the SMC30 Sensor Module: • TTL encoder • HTL encoder The motor temperature can also be detected using KTY84-130 or PTC thermistors. In the factory setting, an HTL encoder is bipolar with 1024 pulses per revolution (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50)").	☐	☐
23	Option K52 Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	For reliable actual value acquisition when using the Safety Integrated Extended Functions, the additional SMC30 Sensor Module is used (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52)").	☐	☐
Connecting protection and monitoring devices				
24	Option G51 TM150 temperature sensor module	The TM150 Terminal Module can be connected to a maximum of 12 temperature sensors (PT100, PT1000, KTY84, PTC, bimetallic NC contact) (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/TM150 Temperature Module (option G51)").	☐	☐
25	Option L45 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door	The contacts for the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton are available at terminal -X120 and can be picked off so that they can be integrated in an on-site higher-level protection concept (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton, integrated in the door of the cabinet unit (option L45)").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
26	Option L57 EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 V AC or 24 V DC	EMERGENCY OFF category 0 stops the drive in an uncontrolled manner. No additional wiring is necessary when implemented in conjunction with option L45. If the cabinet unit is integrated in an external safety circuit, however, the contact must be looped in via terminal block -X120 (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 V AC/24 V DC (option L57)").	☐	☐
27	Option L59 EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 230 V AC	EMERGENCY STOP category 1 stops the drive in a controlled manner. It may be necessary to use braking units because of the load characteristic and the required shutdown times. No additional wiring is necessary when implemented in conjunction with option L45. If the cabinet unit is integrated in an external safety circuit, however, the contact must be looped in via terminal block –X120. The timer relay at -K121 must be adapted to match system requirements (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 230 V AC (option L59)").	☐	☐
28	Option L60 EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 24 V AC	EMERGENCY STOP category 1 stops the drive in a controlled manner. It may be necessary to use braking units because of the load characteristic and the required shutdown times. No additional wiring is necessary when implemented in conjunction with option L45. If the cabinet unit is integrated in an external safety circuit, however, the contact must be looped in via terminal block -X120. The timer relay at -K120 must be adapted to match system requirements (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 24 V AC (option L60)").	☐	☐
29	Option L61/L62 Braking unit 25 kW/125 kW 50 kW/250 kW	The connecting cables and ground for the braking resistor must be connected to terminal block –X5: 1/2. The braking resistor thermostatic switch and customer terminal block –A60 or the Control Unit must be connected. When commissioning via AOP30, the settings for evaluating "external fault 3" must be made. The settings for evaluating the thermostatic switch as "external fault 2" must be made (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Braking unit 25 kW / 125 kW (option L61); braking unit 50 kW / 250 kW (option L62)").	☐	☐
30	Option L83 Thermistor motor protection device (alarm)	The PTC thermistor sensors (PTC resistor type A) must be connected to the thermistor motor protection unit -F127 at terminals T1 and T2 for alarms (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Thermistor motor protection device (option L83/L84)").	☐	☐
31	Option L84 Thermistor motor protection device (shutdown)	The PTC thermistor sensors (PTC resistor type A) must be connected to the thermistor motor protection unit -F125 at terminals T1 and T2 for shutdown (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Thermistor motor protection device (option L83/L84)").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
32	Option L86 PT100 evaluation unit	The resistor thermometers must be connected to evaluation units -B140, -B141 for the PT100 evaluation. A two-wire or three-wire system can be used here to connect the PT100 sensors. The sensors are divided into two groups (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / PT100 evaluation unit (option L86)"). This must be taken into account for the evaluation (factory setting).	☐	☐
33	Option L87 Insulation monitoring	The insulation monitor can only be operated on an ungrounded line supply (IT system). Only one insulation monitor can be used in an electrically-connected network. For in-plant control, the signaling relays must be connected accordingly or, with individual drives (the cabinet unit is fed via a converter transformer assigned to the cabinet unit), integrated in the cabinet unit alarm chain (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Insulation monitoring (option L87)"). Point 9 must also be observed: "Before the drive is operated on an ungrounded line supply (IT system), the connecting clip to the basic interference suppression module must be removed" (see "Electrical installation/Power connections/Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on ungrounded line supplies (IT systems)").	☐	☐
Safety Integrated				
34	Option K01 Safety license for 1 axis	A license is required for each axis with safety functions in the case of Safety Integrated Extended Functions. With Option K01, the safety license for 1 axis is contained in and activated on the compact flash card (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Safety license for 1 axis (option K01)").	☐	☐
35	Option K82 "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" safety functions	The terminal block -X41 must be connected on site, the safety functions must be activated prior to use via parameter assignment, in addition an acceptance test must be performed and an acceptance report must be drawn up (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" (option K82)").	☐	☐
36	Option K87 TM54F Terminal Module	The terminal blocks of TM54F Terminal Module must be connected line-side; the Safety Integrated Extended Functions must be activated prior to use via parameter assignment; in addition an acceptance test must be performed and an acceptance report must be drawn up (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / TM54F Terminal Module (option K87)").	☐	☐
37	Option K88 Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC	To control the brake, a connection must be established between -X14 on the Safe Brake Adapter and the holding brake (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / SBA Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC (option K88)").	☐	☐

Required tools

To install the connections, you will require:

- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench up to 50 Nm
- Screwdriver, size 2
- Screwdriver Torx T20
- Screwdriver Torx T30

4.3 Insulation test

Insulation test

In accordance with EN 60204-1, an insulation test must be performed on the machine/system.

The test may be done with one of the following tests:

- Insulation resistance test
- Voltage test

⚠ WARNING
Disconnect from power supply
Disconnect the machine/system from the line supply prior to testing.

Insulation resistance testing

Insulation resistance testing should be preferably carried out. The insulation resistance when carrying out the test must not be less than 1 MΩ Testing is carried out with 500 V DC between the main-circuit conductors [1)] and the protective conductor system. Testing may be carried out on individual sections of the system.

Exception: A lower resistance value is permissible for certain components of the electrical equipment; however, the value must not be lower than 50 kΩ.

SINAMICS cabinet units are covered by this exception. They must therefore be disconnected during testing and tested separately.

1) Main circuits are circuits that are electrically connected to the line voltage.

Voltage test

⚠ WARNING

Test equipment

Test equipment to EN 61180-2 should be used for voltage testing.

The rated frequency for the test voltage must be 50 Hz or 60 Hz.

The maximum test voltage must be either twice the rated voltage value for the equipment power supply or 1000 V. The higher of the two values should be used. The maximum test voltage must be applied between the conductors of the main circuits [1)] and the protective conductor system for approx. 1 s.

Components and devices that are not rated to withstand this test voltage must be disconnected prior to testing.

Components and devices that have been voltage tested according to their product standard may be disconnected during testing.

The SINAMICS cabinet units are voltage tested in accordance with EN 61800-5-1 and are to be disconnected during this test.
If they cannot be disconnected, input and output terminals must be short-circuited and a bypass installed. In this case, a DC voltage that is 1.5 times the AC test voltage should be used for testing.

1) Main circuits are circuits that are electrically connected to the line voltage.

4.4 Important safety precautions

⚠WARNING

Dangerous electrical voltage

The cabinet units are operated with high voltages.
All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized.
All work on the device must be carried out by trained personnel only.
Non-observance of these warnings can result in death, serious personal injury, or substantial property damage.

Work on an open device must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.
Dangerously high voltage levels are still present in the device up to five minutes after it has been disconnected due to the DC link capacitors. For this reason, the unit should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

Reforming the DC link capacitors:
The storage period should not exceed two years. If the device is stored for more than two years, the DC link capacitors of the devices must be reformed during commissioning.
The reforming procedure is described in "Maintenance and servicing".

The user is responsible for ensuring that the motor, converter, and other devices are installed and connected in accordance with recognized engineering practice in the country of installation and in compliance with applicable regional regulations. Special attention should be paid to cable dimensioning, fuses, grounding, shutdown, disconnection, and overcurrent protection.

If a protective device trips in a current branch, then it is possible that a fault current has been disconnected. To reduce the risk of fire or an electric shock, the current-conducting parts and other components in the cabinet unit should be inspected and damaged parts replaced. When an item of protective gear trips, the cause of the trip must be identified and rectified.

Note

Touch protection

The standard version of the cabinet units, when the cabinet door is opened, includes touch protection according to BGV A3 in accordance with EN 50274.

The version with option M60 features additional protective covers that offer a higher level of touch protection for current-conducting parts when the cabinet door is open.
These protective covers may have to be removed during installation and connection procedures. Once work has been completed, the protective covers must be properly refitted.

Note

Limitation of overvoltages

On systems with a grounded phase conductor and a line voltage >600 V AC, line-side components should be installed to limit overvoltages to overvoltage category II in accordance with IEC 61800-5-1.

NOTICE
Use only original DRIVE-CLiQ cables
Only original DRIVE-CLiQ cables may be used for wiring the DRIVE-CLiQ nodes.

4.5 Introduction to EMC

What is meant by EMC?

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) describes the capability of an electrical device to function satisfactorily in an electromagnetic environment without itself causing interference unacceptable for other devices in the environment.

EMC therefore represents a quality feature for the

- Internal noise immunity: Resistance to internal electrical disturbances
- External noise immunity: resistance against external electromagnetic disturbances
- Noise emission level: environmental effects caused by electromagnetic emissions

To ensure that the cabinet unit functions satisfactorily in the system, the environment subject to interference must not be neglected. For this reason, special requirements exist regarding the structure and the EMC of the system.

Operational reliability and noise immunity

In order to achieve the greatest possible operational reliability and immunity to noise of a complete system (converter, automation, drive machines etc.), measures must be taken by the converter manufacturer and the user. Only when all these measures are fulfilled can the faultless functioning of the converter be guaranteed and the specified legal requirements (2004/108/EC) be met.

Noise emissions

Product standard EN 61800–3 outlines the EMC requirements for variable-speed drive systems. It specifies requirements for converters with operating voltages of less than 1000 V. Different environments and categories are defined depending on where the drive system is installed.

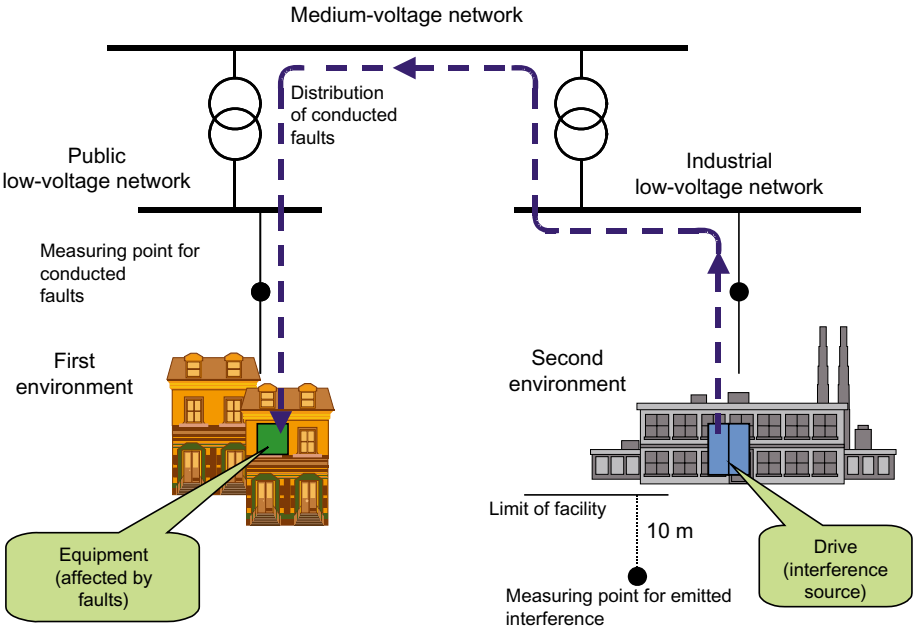


Figure 4-1 Definition of the first and second environments

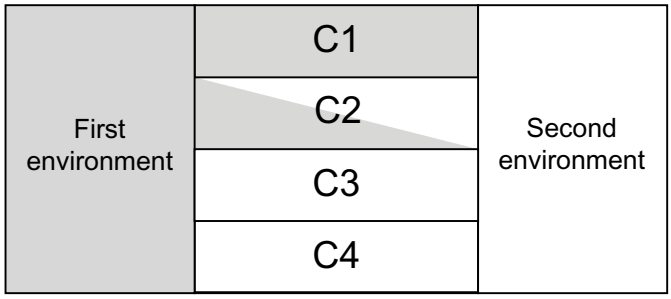


Figure 4-2 Definition of categories C1 to C4

Table 4- 1 Definition of the first and second environments

Definition of the first and second environments	
First environment	Residential buildings or locations at which the drive system is connected to a public low-voltage supply network without a transformer.
Second environment	Industrial locations supplied by a medium-voltage network via a separate transformer.

Table 4- 2 Definition of categories C1 ... C4

Definition of categories C1 ... C4	
Category C1	Rated voltage <1000 V; unrestricted use in the first environment.
Category C2	Rated voltage for stationary drive systems <1000 V; for use in the second environment. For use in the first environment only when sold and installed by skilled personnel.
Category C3	Rated voltage <1000 V; use in the second environment only.
Category C4	Rated voltage ≥1000 V or for rated currents ≥ 400 A in complex systems in the second environment.

4.6 EMC compliant design

The following section provides some basic information and guidelines that will help you comply with the EMC and CE guidelines.

cabinet assembly

- Connect painted or anodized metal components using toothed self-locking screws or remove the insulating layer.
- Use unpainted, de-oiled mounting plates.
- Establish a central connection between ground and the protective conductor system (ground).

Shield gaps

- Bridge shield gaps (at terminals, circuit breakers, contactors, and so on) with minimum impedance and the greatest possible surface area.

Using large cross-sections

- Use underground and grounding cables with large cross-sections or, better still, with litz wires or flexible cables.

Laying the motor supply cable separately

- The distance between the motor cable and signal cable should be > 20 cm. Do not lay signal cables and motor cables in parallel to each other.

Laying the equipotential bonding cable

- It is recommended to lay the equipotential bonding cable parallel to the control lines with a minimum cross-section of 16 mm^2.

Use anti-interference elements

- If relays, contactors, and inductive or capacitive loads are connected, the switching relays or contactors must be provided with anti-interference elements.

Cable installation

- Cables that are subject to or sensitive to interference should be laid as far apart from each other as possible.
- All cables are to be laid as close as possible to grounded enclosure parts such as mounting plates or cabinet frames. This reduces both noise radiation and interference injection.
- Reserve cores of signal and data cables must be grounded at both ends to achieve an additional shielding effect.
- Long cables should be shortened or laid in noise resistant areas to avoid additional connecting points.
- If it is impossible to avoid crossing cables, conductors or cables that carry signals of different classes must cross at right angles, especially if they carry sensitive signals that are subject to interference.
  - Class 1:
    unshielded cables for ≤ 60 V DC
    unshielded cables for ≤ 25 V AC
    shielded analog signal cables
    shielded bus and data cables
    operator panel interfaces, incremental/absolute encoder lines
  - Class 2:
    unshielded cables for > 60 V DC and ≤ 230 V DC
    unshielded cables for > 25 V AC and ≤ 230 V AC
  - Class 3:
    unshielded cables for > 230 V AC/DC and ≤ 1000 V AC/DC

Shield connection

- Shields must not be used to conduct electricity. In other words, they must not simultaneously act as neutral or PE conductors.
- Apply the shield so that it covers the greatest possible surface area. You can use ground clamps, ground terminals, or ground screw connections.
- Avoid extending the shield to the grounding point using a wire (pigtail) because this will reduce the effectiveness of the shield by up to 90%.
- Attach the shield to a shield bar directly after the line inlet into the cabinet. Insulate the entire shielded cable and route the shield up to the device connection, but do not connect it again.

I/O interfacing

- Create a low-impedance ground connection for additional cabinets, system components, and distributed devices with the largest possible cross-section (at least 16 mm²).
- Ground unused lines at one end in the cabinet.
- Choose the greatest possible clearance between the power and signal cables (at least 8" (20 cm)). The greater the distance over which the cables are routed in parallel, the greater the clearance must be. If a sufficient clearance cannot be maintained, you must install additional shields.
- Avoid unnecessarily long cable loops.

Filtering cables

- Line supply cables and power supply cables for devices and modules may have to be filtered in the cabinet to reduce incoming or outgoing disturbances.
- To reduce emissions, the device is equipped with a radio interference suppression filter as standard (in accordance with the limit values defined in category C3). Optional filters can be fitted for use in the first environment (category C2).

Protective ground conductors

- According to EN 61800-5-1, Section. 6.3.6.7, the minimum cross-section of the protective ground conductor must conform to the local safety regulations for protective ground conductors for equipment with a high leakage current.

4.7 Electrical connection of units that are connected in parallel

Description

After the mechanical installation has been completed, the following electrical connections must be established between the right-hand and left-hand sub-cabinets for units connected in parallel:

- The PE buses must be connected
- Connecting the DC link connections
- The 24 V DC, 230 V AC power supply and signal cables must be connected
- The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected

⚠ DANGER

Disconnection from the line

During connection, installation and repair work on units connected in parallel, it must be ensured that both sub-cabinets are electrically disconnected from the power supply.

4.7.1 Connecting the PE busbars

A connector jumper is provided loose to connect the PE buses of the two sub-cabinets.

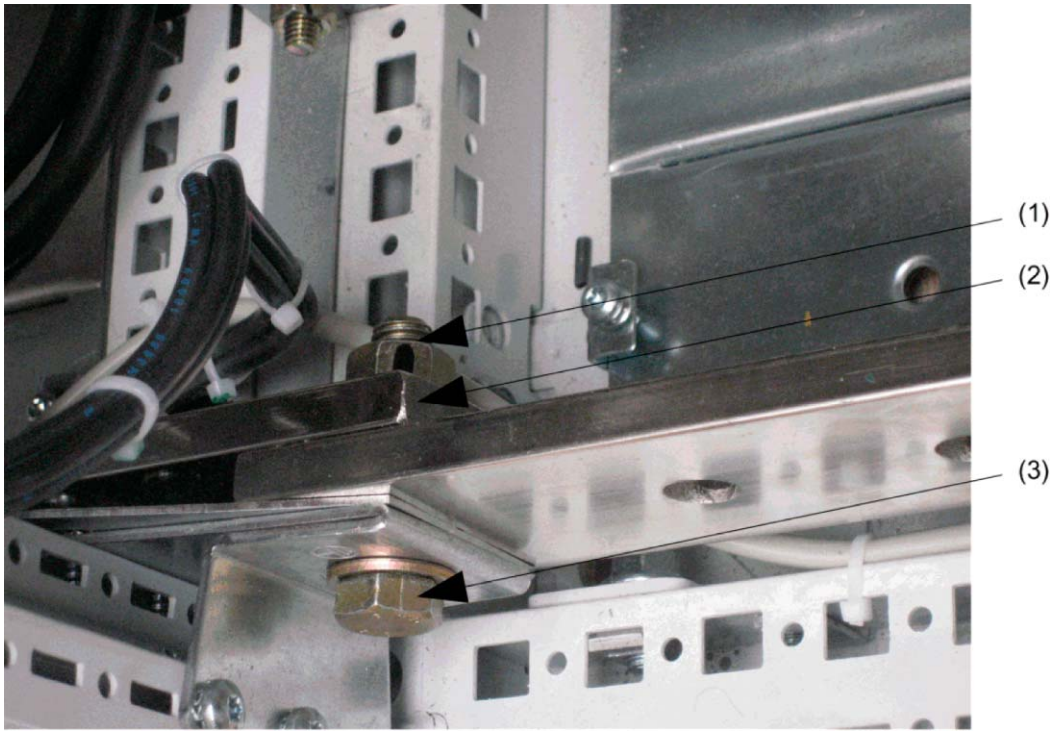


Figure 4-3 Connecting the PE busbars

Establishing the connection

1. At the right-hand side of the left sub-cabinet, release 1 x M12 nut of the PE busbar.
2. Remove the nut, washer ① and screw ③.
3. At the left-hand side of the right sub-cabinet, release 1 x M12 nut of the PE busbar.
4. Remove the nut, washer and screw.
5. Locate the connection clip ② at the rear of the PE busbars of the sub-cabinets to be connected.
6. Insert the bolts from the front into the grounding lugs of the PE buses.
7. Reattach the washers and nuts.
8. Tighten the nuts (tightening torque: 50 Nm).

4.7.2 Establishing the DC link connections

Connecting the DC link connections

The DC link connection of the two sub-cabinets must be made using preassembled cables; these must be connected from the right-hand sub-cabinet (+H.A25/50) to the left-hand sub-cabinet (+H.A49).

The following connecting cables must be connected:

- Cable number -W001:
  Connection from the DCPS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A25/50 to the DCPS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A49.
- Cable number -W002:
  Connection from the DCNS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A25/50 to the DCNS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A49.

Brackets to connect connecting cables are provided at the DCPS and DCNS connections in sub-cabinet +H.A49. The cables must be connected at the top of the brackets. When routing cables it must be ensured that sufficient voltage clearances are always maintained.

⚠ DANGER

Do not interchange the I/Os

Under no circumstances may the connections be interchanged or short-circuited!

The cabinet unit will be destroyed if the DC link connections are either interchanged or short-circuited!

Ensure that the DCPS / DCNS connections in the right-hand sub-cabinet are correctly connected with the DCPS / DCNS connections in the left-hand sub-cabinet.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of fire and damage to equipment due to short-circuit/ground fault

The DC link connections between the two sub-cabinets must be laid so that a ground fault or short-circuit is impossible. A ground fault can result in fire with the associated smoke.

- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.

In addition, apply one of the following measures:

- Use cables with double insulation.
- Maintain adequate clearance, using spacers, for example.
- Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

4.7.3 Connecting the power supply and the signal cables

Connecting the power supply and the signal cables

The connecting cables for 24 V DC and 230 V AC to supply the left-hand sub-cabinet with power and for the signal cables must be connected. Depending on the installed options, this will involve up to 3 connecting cables that must be connected from the right-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet panel +H.A25) to the lower connector sections in the left-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet panel +H.A24):

1. Connecting cable with the connector designation –X97 in the lower connector section –X97.
2. Connecting cable with the connector designation –X98 in the lower connector section –X98.
3. Connecting cable with the connector designation –X99 in the lower connector section –X99.

The cables must be routed so that the connecting cables are not disturbed by interference from the power cables.
To achieve this, the cables should be routed along the PE busbar in cabinet panel +H.A49 and then along the cabinet frame up to the respective connection points.

4.7.4 The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected

The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected

The DRIVE-CLiQ connection from the Control Unit (cabinet field +H.A25) to the Power Module in the left-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet field +H.A49) must be established.

The DRIVE-CLiQ cable (cable number –W003) is inserted in the factory in the DRIVE-CLiQ socket –X100 of the Control Unit (in cabinet panel +H.A25), and must be inserted in the DRIVE-CLiQ socket –X400 of the Power Module in the left-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet panel +H.A49). The cables must be routed so that the DRIVE-CLiQ connection is not disturbed by interference from the power cables.
To achieve this, the cables should be routed along the PE busbar in cabinet panel +H.A49 and then along the cabinet frame up to the DRIVE-CLiQ socket -X400.

4.8 Power connections

⚠ DANGER
Connecting the device
Swapping the input and output terminals can destroy the device!
Swapping or short-circuiting the DC link terminals can destroy the device!
The contactor and relay operating coils that are connected to the same supply network as the device or are located near the device must be connected to overvoltage limiters (e.g. RC elements).
The device must not be operated via a ground-fault circuit interrupter (EN 61800-5-1).

4.8.1 Cable lugs

Cable lugs

The cable connections on the devices are designed for cable lugs according to DIN 46234 or DIN 46235.

For connection of alternative cable lugs, the maximum dimensions are listed in the table below.
These cable lugs are not to exceed these dimensions, as mechanical fastening and adherence to the voltage distances is not guaranteed otherwise.

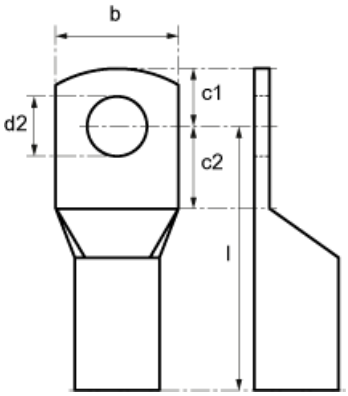


Figure 4-4 Dimensions of the cable lugs

Table 4- 3 Dimensions of the cable lugs

Screw / bolts	Connection cross-section [mm²]	d2 [mm]	b [mm]	l [mm]	c1 [mm]	c2 [mm]
M8	70	8.4	24	55	13	10
M10	185	10.5	37	82	15	12
M10	240	13	42	92	16	13
M12	95	13	28	65	16	13
M12	185	13	37	82	16	13
M12	240	13	42	92	16	13
M16	240	17	42	92	19	16

4.8.2 Connection cross-sections, cable lengths

Connection cross-sections

The connection cross-sections for the line connection, motor connection, and ground connection for your device are specified in the tables provided in the "Technical specifications" section.

Cable lengths

The maximum permissible cable lengths are specified for standard cable types or cable types recommended by SIEMENS. Longer cables can only be used after consultation.

The listed cable length represents the actual distance between the converter and the motor, taking account factors such as parallel laying, current-carrying capacity, and the laying factor.

- Unshielded cable (e.g. Protodur NYY): max. 450 m
- Shielded cable (e.g., Protodur NYCWY, Protoflex EMV 3 Plus): max. 300 m.

Note
Cable lengths

The cable lengths specified are also valid if a motor choke is in use (option L08).

Note

Shielded cables

The PROTOFLEX-EMV-3 PLUS shielded cable recommended by Siemens is the protective conductor and comprises three symmetrically-arranged protective conductors. The individual protective conductors must each be provided with cable eyes and be connected to ground. The cable also has a concentric flexible braided copper shield. To comply with EN 61800-3 regarding radio interference suppression, the shield must be grounded at both ends with the greatest possible surface area.

On the motor side, cable glands that contact the shield with the greatest possible surface area are recommended for the terminal boxes.

Minimum cable lengths for motor connection to a motor with one-winding system for units connected in parallel

For units connected in parallel for connection to a motor with one-winding system, the following minimum cable lengths must be adhered to, if a motor reactor (option L08) is not being used. It must also be ensured that the individual cables have the same length.

Table 4- 4 Minimum cable lengths

Order number	Unit rating [kW]	Minimum cable length [m]
3 AC 380 ... 480 V		
6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx	630	13
6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx	710	10
6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx	900	9
3 AC 500 ... 600 V		
6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx	630	18
6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx	710	15
6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx	1000	13
3 AC 660 ... 690 V		
6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx	1000	20
6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx	1350	18
6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx	1500	15

4.8.3 Connecting the motor and power cables

Connecting the motor and power cables on the cabinet unit

Note

Position of the connections

For the location of the connections, see the layout diagrams.

1. Open the cabinet, remove the covers (if necessary) in front of the connection panel for motor cables (terminals U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3; X2) and power cables (terminals U1/L1, V1/L2, W1/L3; X1).
2. Move or remove the bottom plate below the connection panel through which the motor cables are fed.
3. Screw the protective earth (PE) into the appropriate terminal (with earth symbol) (50 Nm for M12) at the points provided in the cabinet.

Note

Connection sequence for version C

With version C, connect the power cables first and then the motor cables.

4. Connect the motor cables to the connections.
   Make sure that you connect the conductors in the correct sequence: U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3 and U1/L1, V1/L2, W1/L3!

NOTICE

Pay attention to the torque

Tighten the screws with the appropriate torque (50 Nm for M12), otherwise the terminal contacts could catch fire during operation.

Note

PE connection of the motor

The PE connection on the motor must be guided back directly to the cabinet unit and connected there.

Direction of motor rotation

EN 60034-7 defines the two ends of an electric motor as follows:

- DE (Drive End): usually the drive end of the motor
- NDE (Non-Drive End): usually the non-drive end of the motor

An electric motor rotates clockwise if the shaft rotates in the clockwise direction when viewing the drive end.

For electric motors with 2 shaft ends, the direction of rotation must be determined based on the shaft end specified as the drive end.

For clockwise rotation, the electric motor must be connected according to the following table.

Table 4- 5 Cabinet unit and motor connection terminals

Cabinet unit (connection terminals)	Motor (connection terminals)
U2/T1	U
V2/T2	V
W2/T3	W

In contrast to the connection for the clockwise phase sequence, two phases have to be reversed with a counter-clockwise phase sequence (looking at the drive shaft).

Note

Information on the phase sequence

If an incorrect phase sequence was connected when the motor was connected, p1821 (phase sequence direction reversal) can be used to correct the incorrect phase sequence without physically changing it over (see "Functions, monitoring and protective functions/direction reversal").

The correct phase sequence must be observed in both sub-cabinets when connecting cabinet units in parallel, since it is not possible to use converter functions to correct different connection sequences in the two sub-cabinets at a later stage.

With motors that can be star-connected or delta-connected, it must be ensured that the windings are interconnected consistent with the operating voltage indicated on the rating plate or in the motor documentation. Make sure that the winding insulation of the connected motor has sufficient insulation strength to meet the requirements for converter operation.

4.8.4 Adjusting the fan voltage (-T1-T10)

The power supply for the device fan (230 V 1 AC) in the Power Module (-T1 -T10) is drawn from the line supply system through a transformer.
The location of the transformer is indicated in the layout diagrams supplied.
The transformer is fitted with primary taps so that it can be fine-tuned to the line voltage.

If necessary, the connection fitted in the factory, shown with a dashed line, must be reconnected to the actual line voltage.

Note

Cabinet units with two transformers

Two transformers (-T1, -T10, and -T20) are installed in the following cabinet units. The two primary terminals on these devices must be set together.

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC: 6SL3710-1GE41-0_Ax
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC: 6SL3710-1GF37-4_Ax, 6SL3710-1GF38-1_Ax
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC: 6SL3710-1GH37-4_Ax, 6SL3710-1GH38-1_Ax

Note

Units connected in parallel

For units connected in parallel, the setting terminals must be set jointly in both sub-cabinets:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

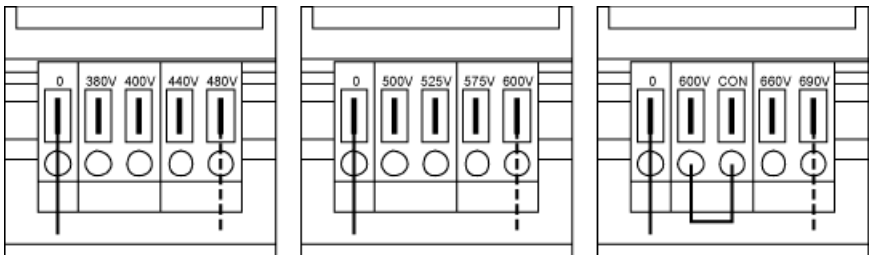


Figure 4-5 Setting terminals for the fan transformer
(380 to 480 V 3 AC / 500 to 600 V 3 AC / 660 to 690 V 3 AC)

The line voltage assignments for making the appropriate setting on the fan transformer are indicated in the following tables.

Note

Fan transformer for 660 to 690 V 3 AC

With the 660 V to 690 V 3 AC fan transformer, a jumper is inserted between the "600 V" terminal and "CON" terminal. The "600V" and "CON" terminals are for internal use.

NOTICE

Consequences of unadjusted fan transformers

If the terminals are not reconnected to the actual line voltage, the following responses can occur.

- The required cooling capacity cannot be provided because the fan rotates too slowly.
- The fan fuses may blow due to an overcurrent.

Note

Order numbers for fan fuses

The order numbers for fan fuses that have blown can be found in the spare parts list.

Table 4- 6 Line voltage assignment for the setting at the fan transformer (380 ... 480 V 3 AC)

Line voltage	Taps of the fan transformer (-T1 -T10)
380 V ± 10%	380 V
400 V ± 10%	400 V
440 V ± 10%	440 V
480 V ± 10%	480 V

Table 4- 7 Line voltage assignment for the setting at the fan transformer (500 ... 600 V 3 AC)

Line voltage	Taps of the fan transformer (-T1 -T10)
500 V ± 10%	500 V
525 V ± 10%	525 V
575 V ± 10%	575 V
600 V ± 10%	600 V

Table 4- 8 Line voltage assignment for the setting at the fan transformer (660 ... 690 V 3 AC)

Line voltage	Taps of the fan transformer (-T1 -T10)
660 V ± 10%	660 V
690 V ± 10%	690 V

4.8.5 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)

If the cabinet unit is operated on an ungrounded line supply (IT system), the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module of the converter (-T1) must be removed.

Note

Warning label on the connection clip

A yellow warning label is attached to each connection clip so that it is easier to find.

- The warning label must removed from the connection clip (by pulling it off) if the connection clip is to remain in the unit (operation on a grounded line supply).
- The warning label must be removed together with the connection clip if the unit is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system).

Figure 4-6 Warning label on the connection clip

⚠ WARNING

Consequences of not removing IT system connection brackets

Failure to remove the connection clip for the basic interference suppression module on an ungrounded line supply (IT system) can cause significant damage to the device.

Note

Connection bracket in units connected in parallel

For units connected in parallel, the connection bracket must be removed in both sub-cabinets:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

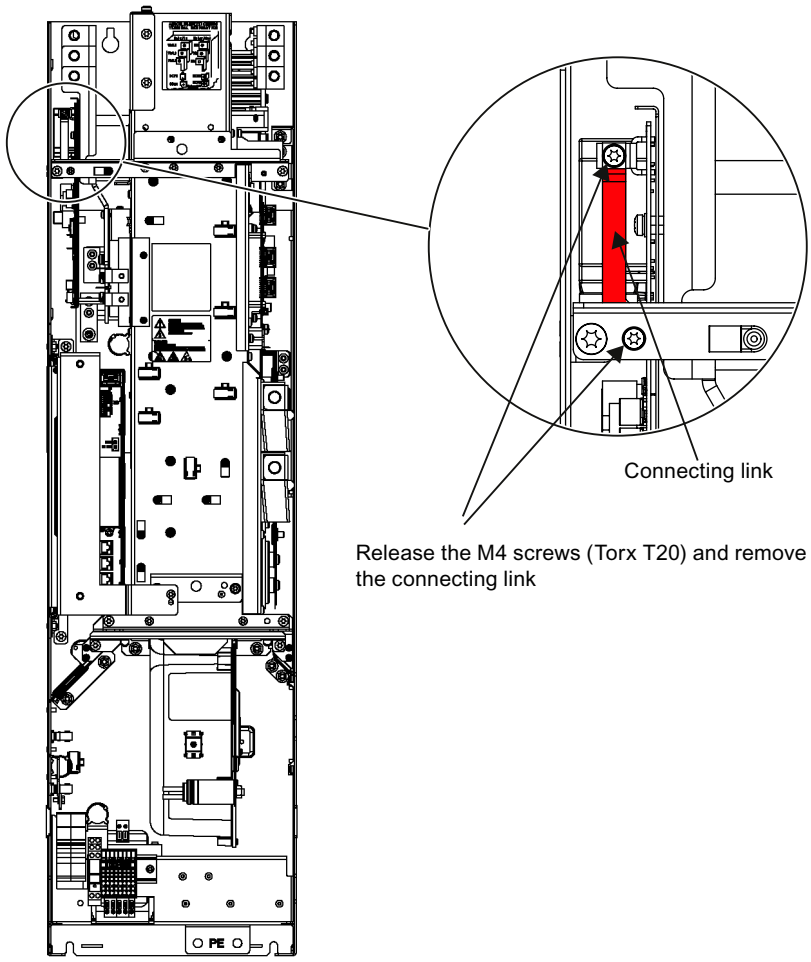


Figure 4-7 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size FX

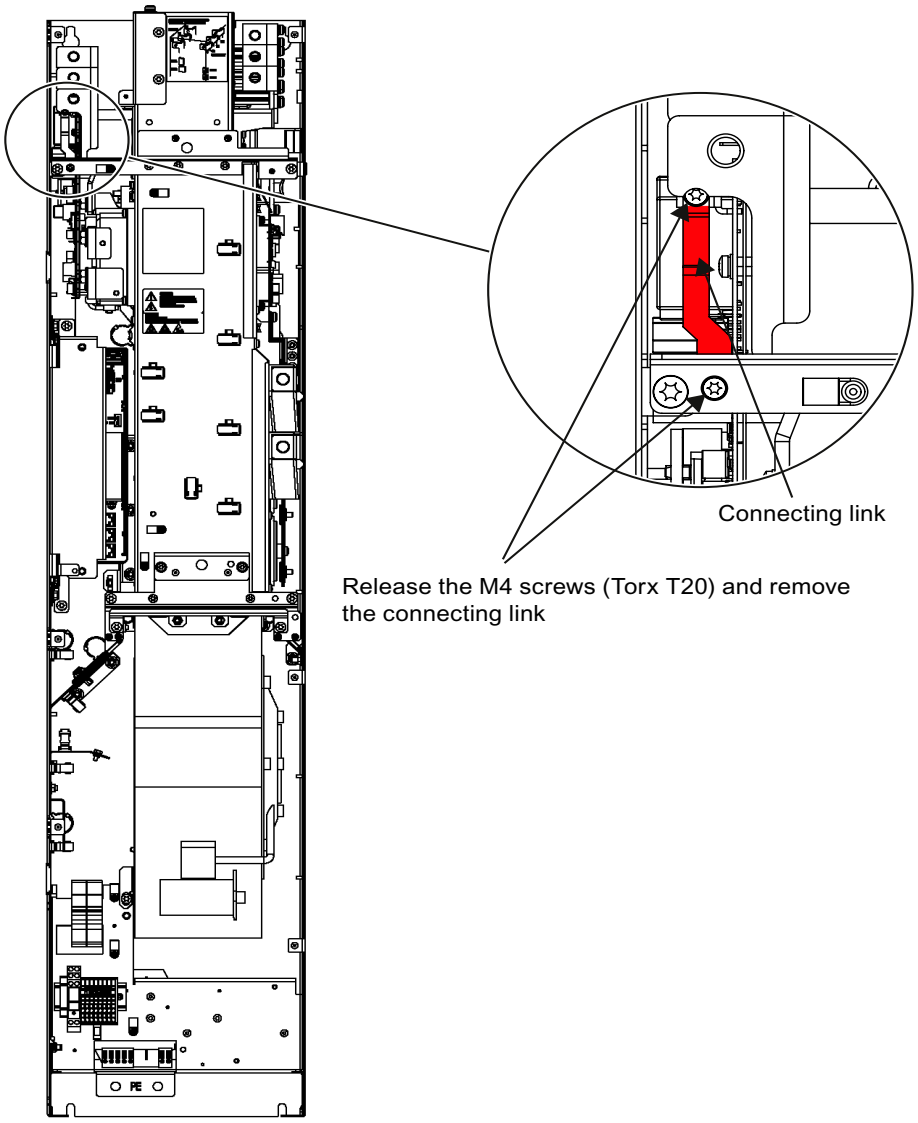


Figure 4-8 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size GX

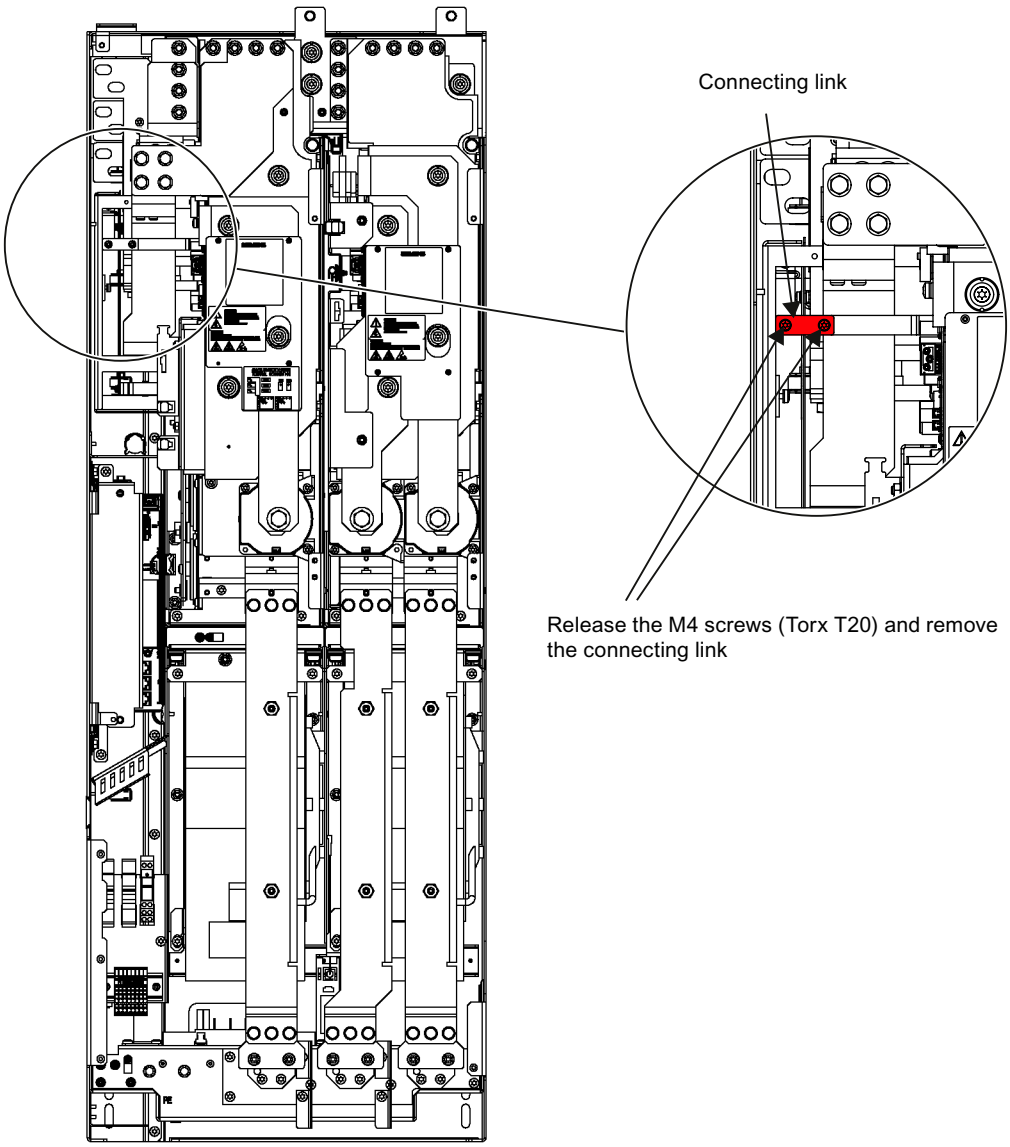


Figure 4-9 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size HX

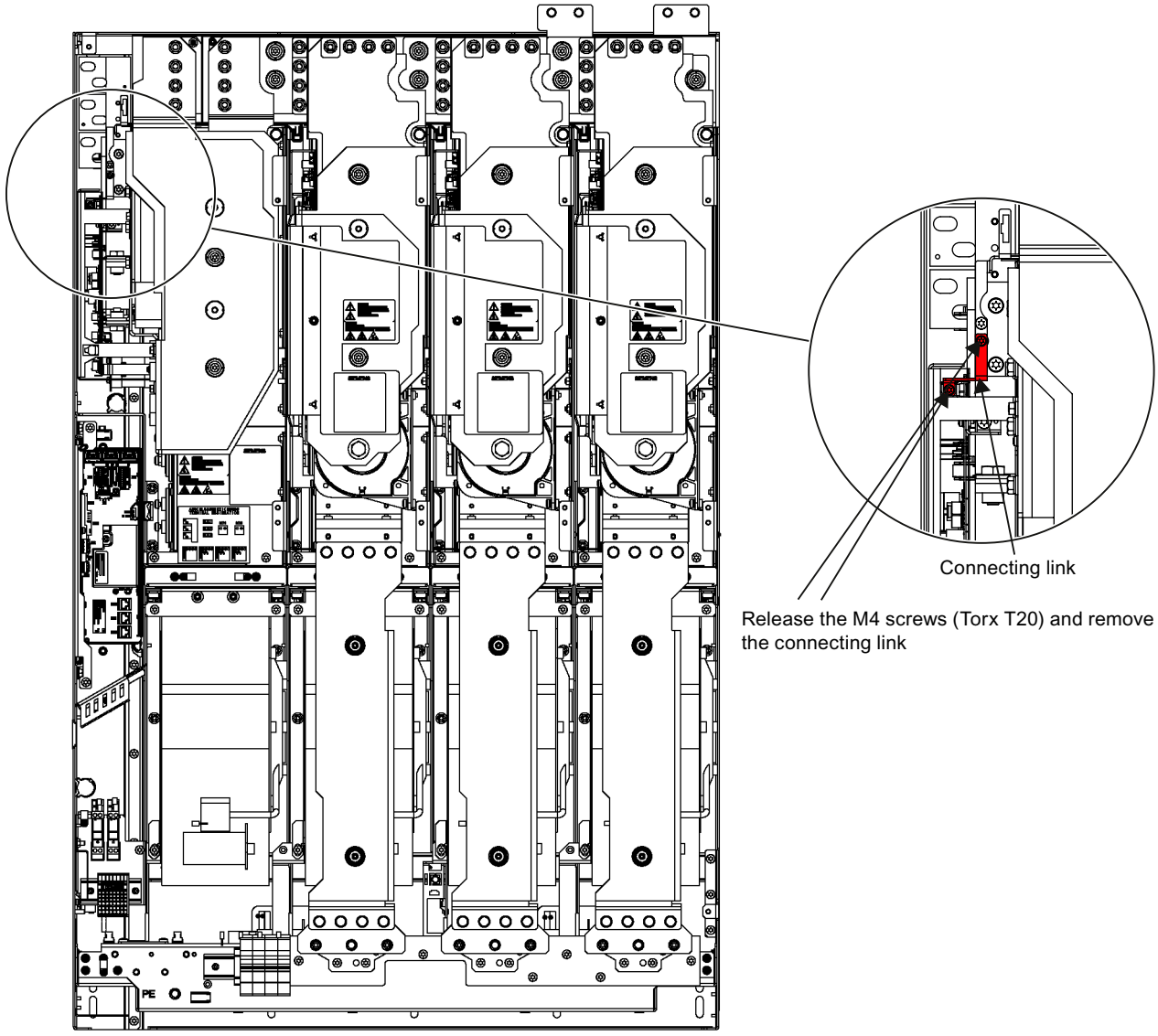


Figure 4-10 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size JX

4.9 External Supply of the Auxiliary Supply from a Secure Line

Description

An external auxiliary supply is always recommended if communication and closed-loop control are to be independent of the supply system. An external auxiliary supply is particularly recommended for low-power lines susceptible to short-time voltage dips or power failures.

With an external supply independent of the main supply, warnings and fault messages may still be displayed on the operator panel and internal protection and monitoring devices if the main supply fails.

⚠ DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage

When the external auxiliary supply is connected, dangerous voltages are present in the cabinet unit even when the main circuit breaker is open.

Note

External auxiliary supply for automatic restart

An external auxiliary supply (infeed) must always be used if the automatic restart (WEA) function is to be used with integrated EMERGENCY OFF option (L57) or EMERGENCY STOP option (L59, L60).
Otherwise, the automatic restart function does not work.

Table 4- 9 Connection options for the external auxiliary voltage depending on the selected options.

Cabinet unit option	External supply of auxiliary voltage independent of the main supply			
	24 V DC Terminal –X9	230 V AC Terminal –X40	230 V AC (terminal –X40) [1]	230 V AC (terminal –X40) with options L13 / L26 (when I > 800 A)
- With no further options - Version C	X			
L13		X		
L26 (when I > 800 A)		X		
L83			X	X
L84			X	X
L86			X	X
L87			X	X

[1] This is required not only when the open and closed-loop control but also when 230 V AC loads (thermistor motor protection, PT100 evaluation, or insulation monitor) are to remain in operation if the main supply fails.

4.9.1 230 V AC auxiliary supply

The fuse must not exceed 16 A.

The connection is protected inside the cabinet with 3 A or 5 A.

Connection

- On terminal block -X40, remove the jumpers between terminals 1 and 2 as well as 5 and 6.
- Connect the external 230 V AC supply to terminals 2 (L1) and 6 (N).

Maximum connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

4.9.2 24 V DC auxiliary supply

The power requirement is 5 A.

Connection

Connect the external 24 V DC supply to terminals 1 (P 24 V) and 2 (M_{ext}) of terminal block –X9.

Maximum connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

4.10 Signal connections

4.10.1 Control Unit CU320-2 DP

In the standard version, the cabinet unit contains a CU320-2 DP control unit, which handles the communication and open-loop/closed-loop control functions.

A PROFIBUS interface is available for higher-level communication.

Connection overview

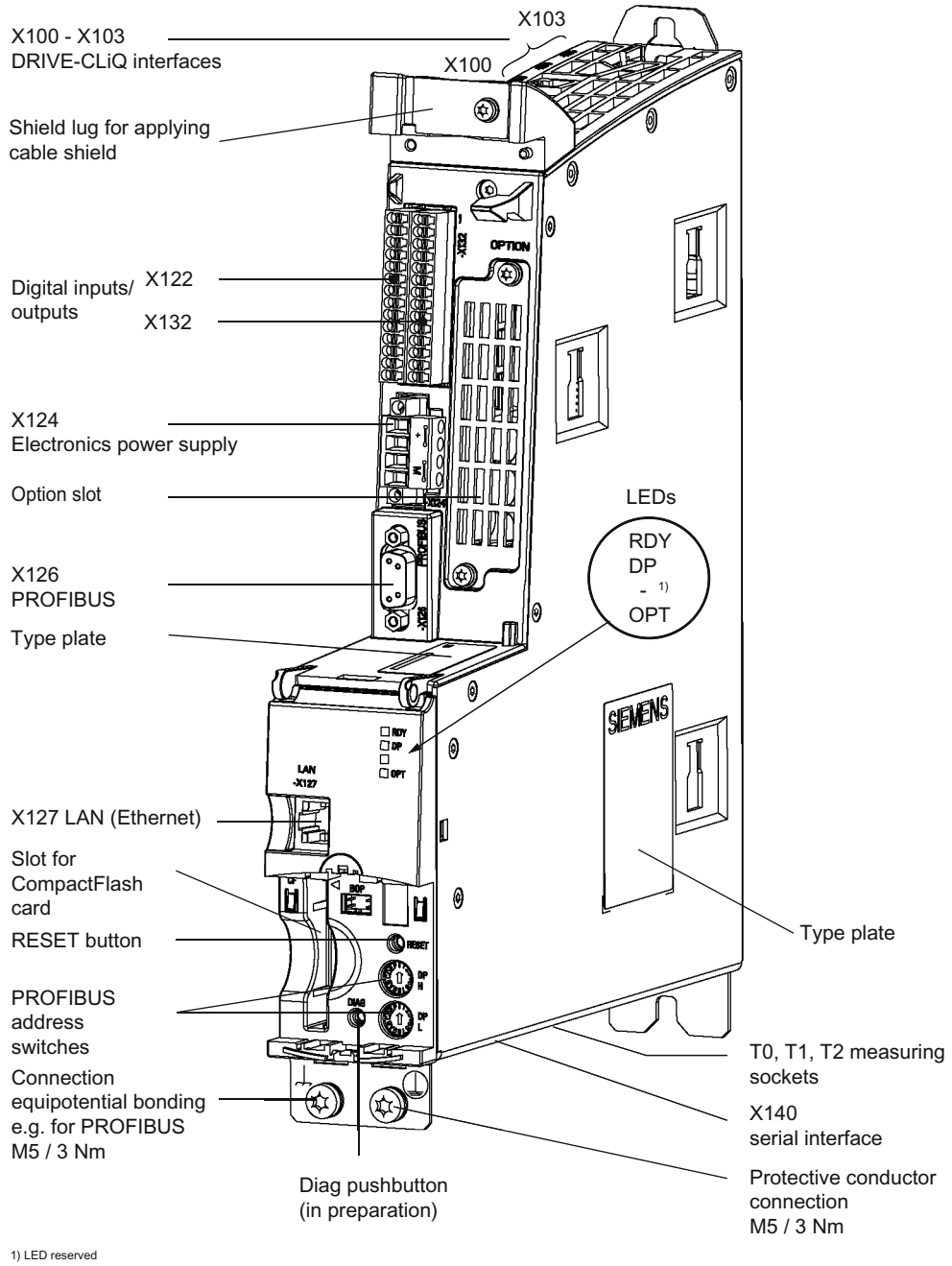


Figure 4-11 Connection overview of the CU320-2 DP Control Unit (without cover)

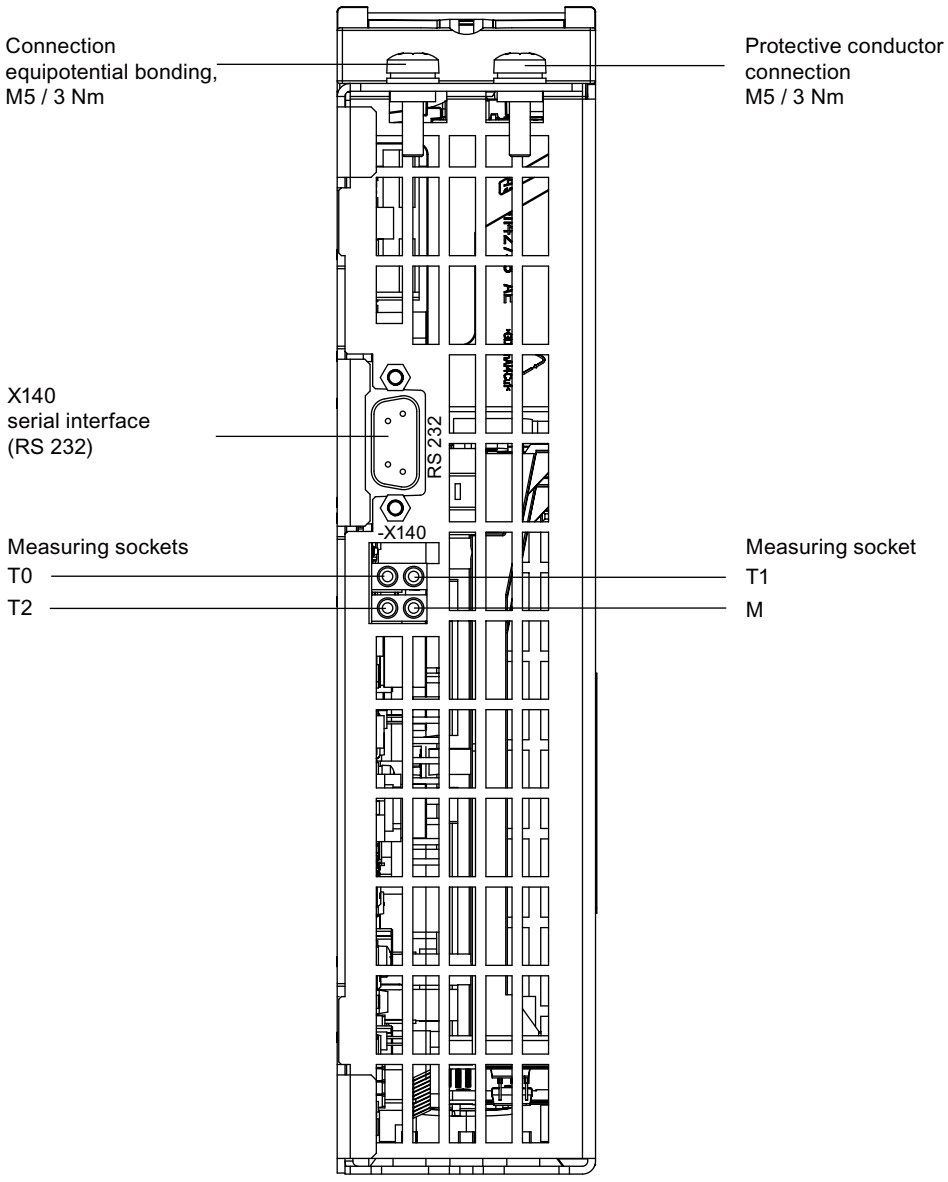


Figure 4-12 Interface X140 and measuring sockets T0 to T2 - CU320-2 DP (view from below)

NOTICE
Remove or insert CompactFlash card only in a voltage-free state
The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed when the Control Unit is in a no-voltage condition.
Non-compliance can result in a loss of data during operation and possibly a plant standstill.

NOTICE
Observe ESD regulations The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

NOTICE
Remove or insert option board only in a de-energized state The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the Control Unit and Option Board are disconnected from the power supply.

Connection example

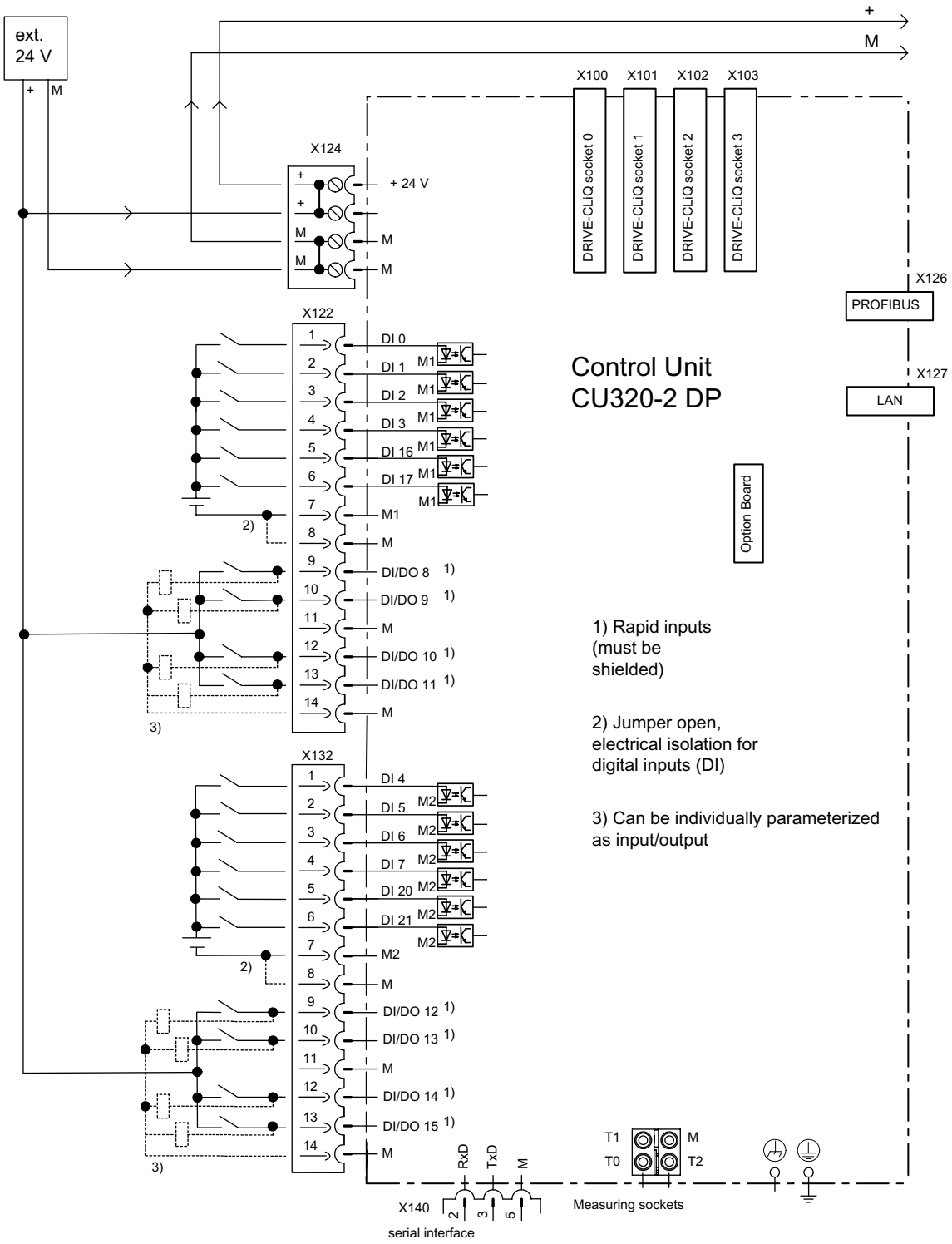


Figure 4-13 Connection example of CU320-2 DP

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

In the circuit example, the power for the digital inputs (terminals -X122 and -X132) is supplied from the internal 24 V supply of the Control Unit (terminal -X124).

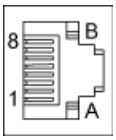
The two groups of digital inputs (optocoupler inputs) each have a common reference potential (ground reference M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the ground references M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is not supplied from the internal 24 V supply (terminal -X124), the jumper between grounds M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed to avoid potential current loops. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 and M2.

The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

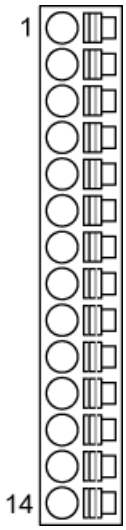
X100 to X103: DRIVE-CLiQ interface

Table 4- 10 DRIVE-CLiQ interface X100 – X103

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	A	+ (24 V)	Power supply
	B	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Connector type: RJ45 socket Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) Order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0			

X122: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 11 Terminal block X122

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical specifications
	1	DI 0	Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Electrical isolation: reference potential is terminal M1 Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 50 µs H -> L: approx. 150 µs
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	DI 16	
	6	DI 17	
	7	M1	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Ground
	9	DI/DO 8	**As input:** Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V DI/DO 8, 9, 10, and 11 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 5 µs H -> L: approx. 50 µs **As output:** Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA, continued-short-circuit-proof Output delay (typ./max.): [3] for "0" -> "1": 150 µs/400 µs For 1" -> "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 9	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 10	
	13	DI/DO 11	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: Bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground M1: Ground reference

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

[3] Data for: V_{cc}= 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

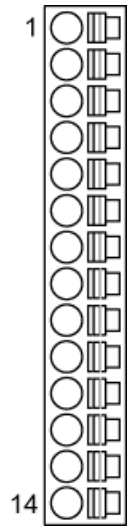
Note

Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X132: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 12 Terminal block X132

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 4	Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Electrical isolation: The reference potential is terminal M2 Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 50 µs H -> L: approx. 150 µs
	2	DI 5	
	3	DI 6	
	4	DI 7	
	5	DI 20	
	6	DI 21	
	7	M2	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Ground
	9	DI/DO 12	**As input:** Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V DI/DO 12, 13, 14, and 15 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 5 µs H -> L: approx. 50 µs **As output:** Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA, continued-short-circuit-proof Output delay (typ./max.): [3] for "0" -> "1": 150 µs/400 µs For 1" -> "0": 75 µs/100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 13	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 14	
	13	DI/DO 15	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: Bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground; M2: Ground reference

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

[3] Data for: V_{cc}= 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

Note

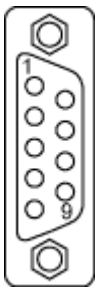
Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X126: PROFIBUS connection

The PROFIBUS is connected by means of a 9-pin SUB D socket (X126). The connections are electrically isolated.

Table 4- 13 PROFIBUS interface X126

	Pin	Signal name	Meaning	Range
	1	-	Not assigned	
	2	M24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice, ground	0 V
	3	RxD/TxD–P	Receive/transmit data P (B)	RS485
	4	CNTR–P	Control signal	TTL
	5	DGND	PROFIBUS data reference potential	
	6	VP	Supply voltage plus	5 V ± 10%
	7	P24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice, + (24 V)	24 V (20.4 ... 28.8 V)
	8	RxD/TxD–N	Receive/transmit data N (A)	RS485
	9	-	Not assigned	

Note

Remote diagnostics

A teleservice adapter can be connected to the PROFIBUS interface (X126) for remote diagnosis purposes.
The power supply for the teleservice terminals 2 and 7 withstands a max. load and continued short-circuit current of 150 mA.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not connect CAN cables to interface X126

No CAN cables must be connected to interface X126.
If CAN cables are connected, the Control Unit and other CAN bus nodes may be destroyed.

⚠ CAUTION

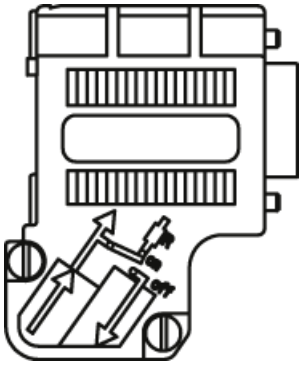
Use equipotential bonding conductor

An equipotential bonding conductor with a cross-section of at least 25 mm² must be used between components in a system that are located a considerable distance from each other. If an equipotential bonding conductor is not used, high leakage currents that could destroy the Control Unit or other PROFIBUS nodes can be conducted via the PROFIBUS cable.

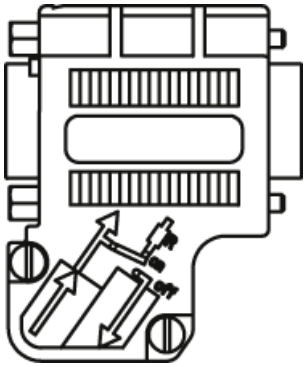
Connectors

The cables must be connected via PROFIBUS connectors as they contain the necessary terminating resistors.

The figure below shows suitable PROFIBUS connectors with/without a PG/PC connector.



PROFIBUS connector
without PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0



PROFIBUS connector
with PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0

Bus terminating resistor

The bus terminating resistor must be switched on or off depending on its position in the bus, otherwise the data will not be transmitted properly.

The terminating resistors for the first and last nodes in a line must be switched on; the resistors must be switched off at all other connectors.

The cable shield must be connected at both ends over large-surface area contacts.

Note

Connector type

Depending on the connector type, the correct assignment of the connector must be ensured (IN/OUT) in conjunction with the terminating resistor.

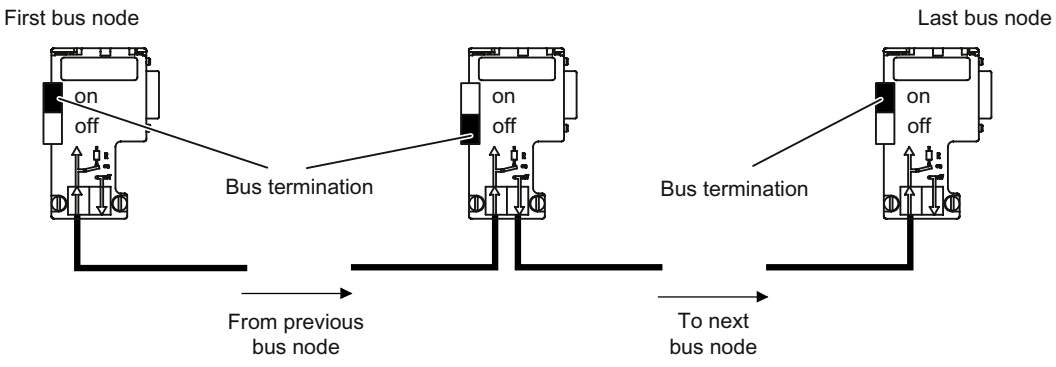
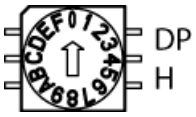
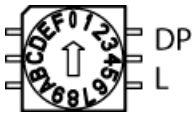


Figure 4-14 Position of the bus terminating resistors

PROFIBUS address switches

The PROFIBUS address is set as a hexadecimal value via two rotary coding switches. Values between 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$) can be set as the address. The upper rotary coding switch (H) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^1 and the lower rotary coding switch (L) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^0.

Table 4- 14 PROFIBUS address switches

Rotary coding switches	Significance	Examples		
		21_{dec}	**35_{dec}**	**126_{dec}**
		15_{hex}	**23_{hex}**	**$7E_{hex}$**
	$16^1 = 16$	1	2	7
	$16^0 = 1$	5	3	E

Setting the PROFIBUS address

The factory setting for the rotary coding switches is 0_{dec} (00_{hex}).

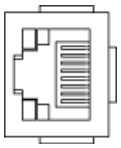
There are two ways to set the PROFIBUS address:

1. Via p0918
   - To set the bus address for a PROFIBUS node using STARTER, first set the rotary code switches to 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$).
   - Then use parameter p0918 to set the address to a value between 1 and 126.
2. Via the PROFIBUS address switches on the Control Unit
   - The address is set manually to values between 1 and 126 using the rotary coding switches. In this case, p0918 is only used to read the address.

The address switch is behind the blanking plate. The blanking plate is part of the scope of supply.

X127: LAN (Ethernet)

Table 4- 15 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	TXP	Ethernet transmit data +
	2	TXN	Ethernet transmit data -
	3	RXP	Ethernet receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Ethernet receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: RJ45 socket			

Note

Support during commissioning

The X127 interface supports commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

For diagnostic purposes, the X127 LAN interface features a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

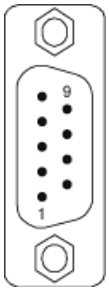
Table 4- 16 LED statuses for the X127 LAN interface

LED	State	Description
Green	On	10 or 100 Mbit link available
	Off	Missing or faulty link
Yellow	On	Sending or receiving
	Off	No activity

X140: serial interface (RS232)

The AOP30 operator panel for operating/parameterizing the device can be connected via the serial interface. The interface is located on the underside of the Control Unit.

Table 4- 17 Serial interface (RS232) X140

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	2	RxD	Receive data
	3	TxD	Transmit data
	5	Ground	Ground reference
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector			

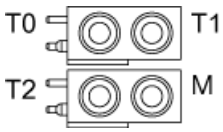
NOTICE

Connecting cable to the AOP30

The connection cable to AOP30 may only contain the three contacts which are shown in the drawing; a completely allocated cable may not be used.

T0, T1, T2: Measuring sockets

Table 4- 18 Measuring sockets T0, T1, T2

	Socket	Function	Technical data
	T0	Measuring socket 0	Voltage: 0 ... 5 V Resolution: 8 bits Load current: max. 3 mA Continued-short-circuit-proof The reference potential is terminal M
	T1	Measuring socket 1	
	T2	Measuring socket 2	
	M	Ground	
The measurement sockets are only suitable for bunch pin plugs with a diameter of 2 mm.			

Note

Support for commissioning and diagnostics

The measuring sockets support commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

The use of the measuring sockets is shown in function diagram FP8134 in the List Manual.

Slot for the CompactFlash card

Figure 4-15 CompactFlash card slot

NOTICE
Remove or insert CompactFlash card only in a voltage-free state The CompactFlash card may only be removed and inserted when the Control Unit is in a voltage-free state; doing this during operation instead could result in a loss of data and, where applicable, a plant standstill. The CompactFlash card may only be inserted as shown in the photo above (arrow at top right).

NOTICE
Observe ESD regulations The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

Note

Returned item

When returning a defective Control Unit, remove the CompactFlash card and keep it for insertion in the replacement unit. This is important otherwise the data on the CompactFlash card (parameters, firmware, licenses, and so on) may be lost.

Note

Only use SIEMENS CompactFlash cards

Please note that only SIEMENS CompactFlash cards can be used to operate the Control Unit.

4.10.2 Customer terminal module TM31 (-A60) (option G60)

Note

Preassignment and position of the customer terminal block

The factory setting and description of the customer terminal blocks can be found in the circuit diagrams.

The location of the customer terminal block in the cabinet unit is indicated in the layout diagram.

Shield connection

The shield connection of shielded control cables on the customer terminal block –A60 is established in the immediate vicinity of the terminal block. For this purpose, the customer terminal block –A60 and the mounting plates have cut-out sections which are used to snap the enclosed shield springs into place. The shields of incoming and outgoing cables must be applied directly to these shield connections. It is important here to establish the greatest possible area of contact and a good conductive connection.

Note

Shield springs

These shield springs can be used for all control cables in the cabinet unit because all the shield connections are identical in design.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of cuts

Shield springs inherently have sharp edges resulting in the risk of cuts!

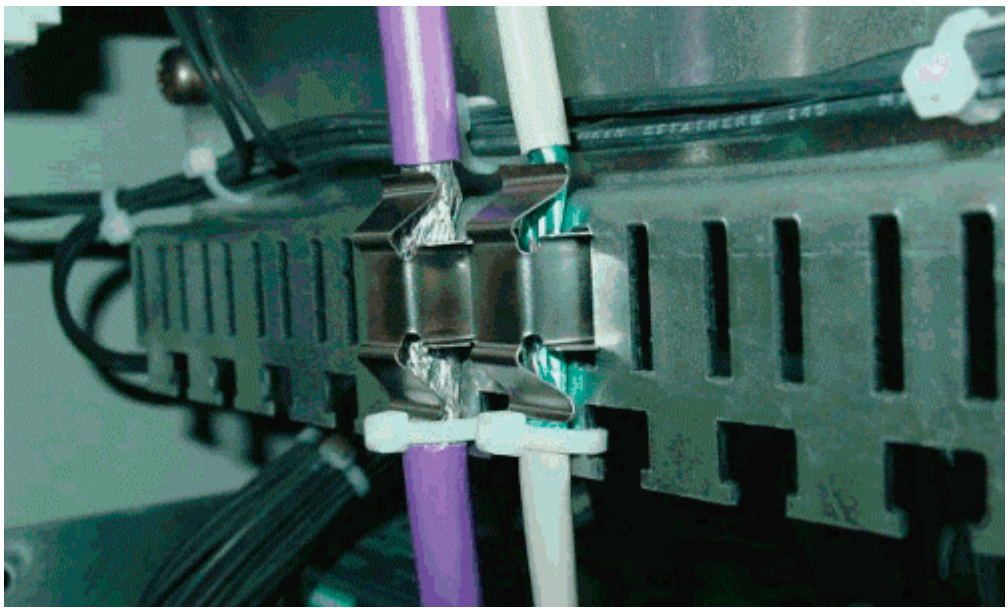


Figure 4-16 Shield support

Overview

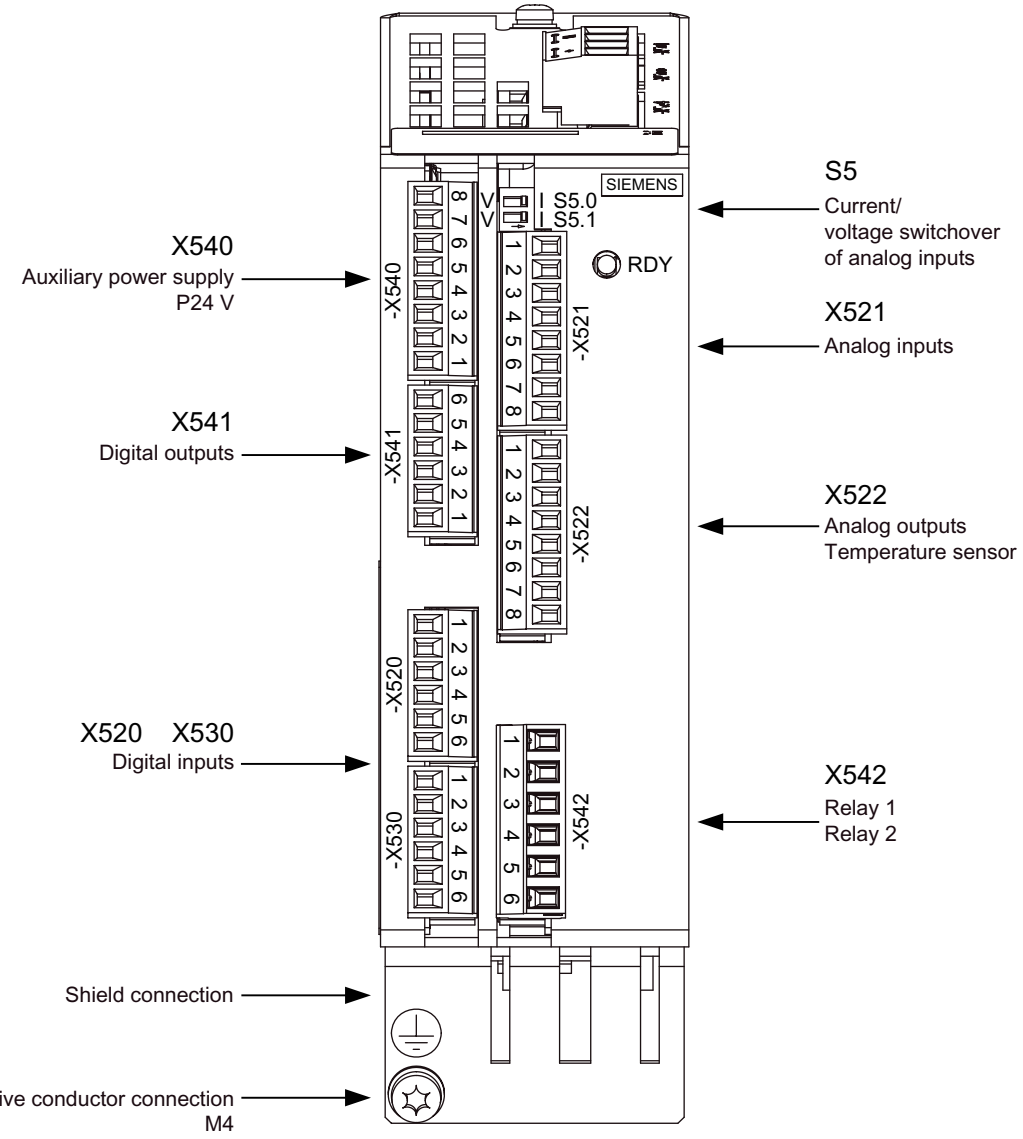


Figure 4-17 TM31 customer terminal block

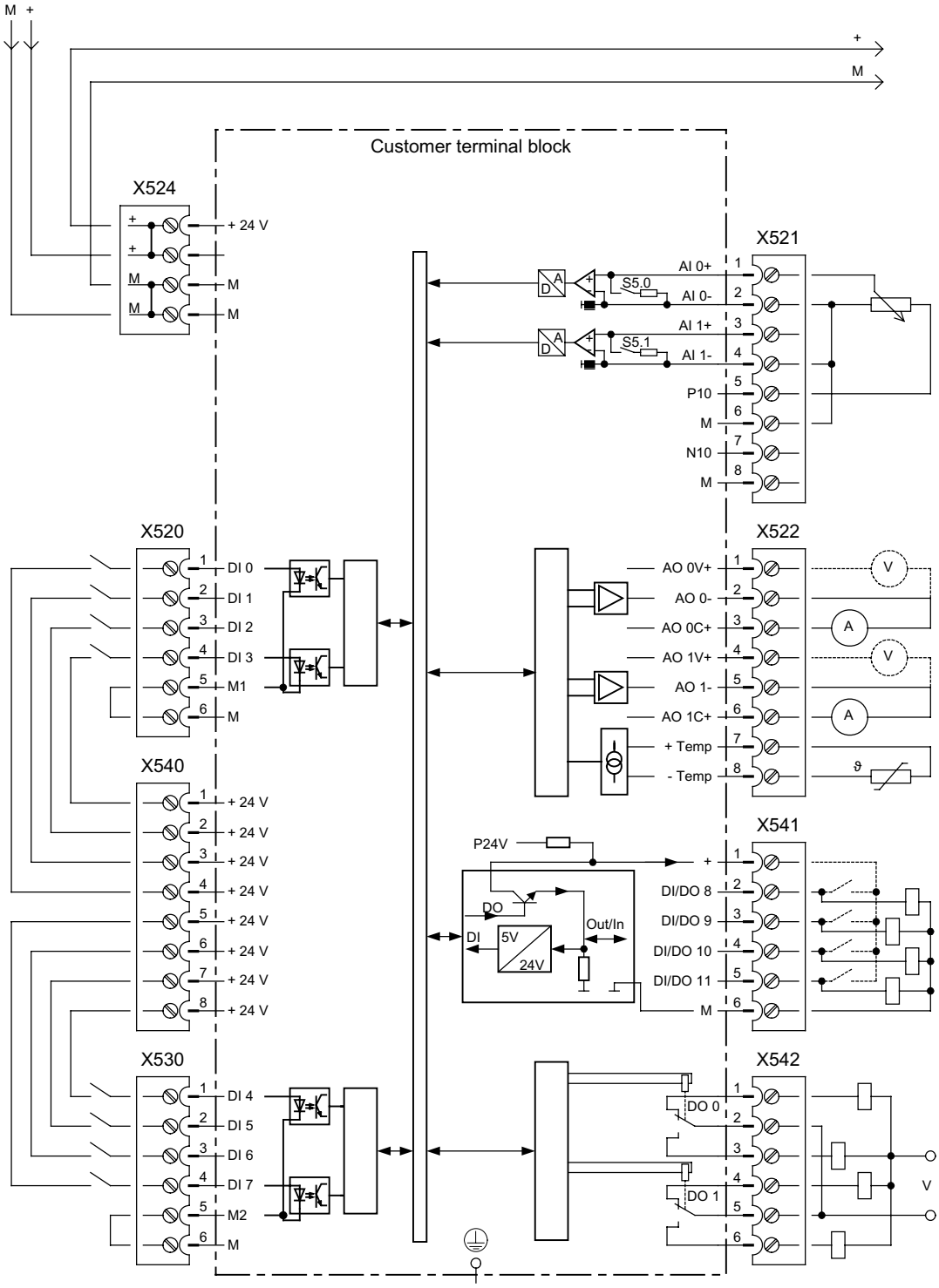


Figure 4-18 Connection overview of TM31 customer terminal block

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

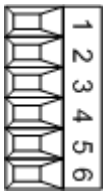
The digital inputs (terminals -X520 and -X530) in the example are powered by the internal 24 V supply of the customer terminal module (terminal -X540).

The two groups of digital inputs (optocoupler inputs) each have a common reference potential (ground reference M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the ground references M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is not supplied from the internal 24 V supply (terminal –X540), the jumper between grounds M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed to avoid potential current loops. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 and M2.

X520: 4 digital inputs

Table 4- 19 Terminal block X520

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 0	Voltage: - 3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 10 mA at 24 V Reference potential is always terminal M1 Level: - High level: 15 ... 30 V - Low level: -3 ... 5 V
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	M1	Ground reference
	6	M	Electronics ground

[1] DI: digital input; M1: ground reference; M: Electronics ground

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

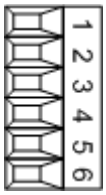
Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as "low".

X530: 4 digital inputs

Table 4- 20 Terminal block X530

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 4	Voltage: - 3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 10 mA at 24 V Reference potential is always terminal M2 Level: - High level: 15 ... 30 V - Low level: -3 ... 5 V
	2	DI 5	
	3	DI 6	
	4	DI 7	
	5	M2	Ground reference
	6	M	Electronics ground

[1] DI: digital input; M2: ground reference; M: Electronics ground

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

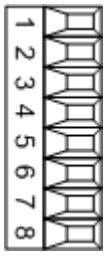
Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as "low".

X521: 2 analog inputs (differential inputs)

Table 4- 21 Terminal block X521

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	AI 0+	**As voltage input:** -10 to +10 V, Ri = 100 kΩ Resolution: 11 bits + sign **As current input:** +4 to +20 mA/-20 to +20 mA/0 to +20 mA, Ri = 250 Ω Resolution: 10 bits + sign
	2	AI 0-	
	3	AI 1+	
	4	AI 1-	
	5	P10	Auxiliary voltage +10 V, continued short-circuit proof
	6	M	Ground reference
	7	N10	Auxiliary voltage -10 V, continued short-circuit proof
	8	M	Ground reference

[1] AI: analog input; P10/N10: auxiliary voltage, M: Ground reference

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

NOTICE

Note the maximum input current

If the analog inputs are connected as current inputs, the input current must not exceed 35 mA.

S5: Selector for voltage/current AI0, AI1

Table 4- 22 Selector for voltage/current S5

	Switch	Function
	S5.0	Selector voltage (V) / current (I) AI0
	S5.1	Selector voltage (V) / current (I) AI1

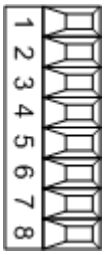
Note

Delivery condition

When delivered, both switches are set to current measurement (switch set to "I").

X522: 2 analog outputs, temperature sensor connection

Table 4- 23 Terminal block X522

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	AO 0V+	-10 ... +10 V (max. 3 mA)
	2	AO 0-	+4 ... +20 mA (max. load resistance ≤ 500 Ω)
	3	AO 0C+	-20 ... +20 mA (max. load resistance ≤ 500 Ω)
	4	AO 1V+	0 ... +20 mA (max. load resistance ≤ 500 Ω)
	5	AO 1-	Resolution: 11 bits + sign
	6	AO 1C+	continued short-circuit proof
	7	+Temp	Temperature sensor connection: - KTY84-1C130 - PTC
	8	-Temp	

[1] AO xV: analog output voltage; AO xC: Analog output current

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

⚠DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

If these instructions are not complied with, there is a risk of electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection:

- KTY84-1C130
- PTC

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity.
If the sensor is connected with the incorrect polarity, it cannot detect if a motor overheats.

NOTICE
Permissible back EMF
The permissible back EMF at the outputs is ±15 V.

X540: Joint auxiliary voltage for the digital inputs

Table 4- 24 Terminal block X540

	Terminal	Designation	Technical specifications
	8	P24	24 V DC
	7	P24	Max. total load current of +24 V auxiliary voltage of terminal blocks X540 and X541 combined: 150 mA
	6	P24	continued short-circuit proof
	5	P24	
	4	P24	
	3	P24	
	2	P24	
	1	P24	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Note

Use of the power supply

This voltage supply is only for powering the digital inputs.

X541: 4 non-floating digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 25 Terminal strip X541

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	6	M	Electronics ground
	5	DI/DO 11	**As input:**
	4	DI/DO 10	Voltage: -3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 10 mA at 24 V DC
	3	DI/DO 9	
	2	DI/DO 8	**As output:** The summation current of the four outputs (including the currents of the inputs) is limited to 100 mA (continued-short-circuit-proof) in the delivery condition.
	1	P24	Auxiliary voltage: +24 V DC Max. total load current of +24 V auxiliary voltage of terminal blocks X540 and X541 combined: 150 mA

[1] DI/DO: Digital input/output: M: Electronics ground

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm^2

Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as "low".

When externally generated 24 V DC signals are connected to a digital input, the ground reference of the external signal must also be connected.

NOTICE

Aggregate limitation of the output currents

Due to the limitation of the aggregate of the output currents an over-current can cause a short circuit on an output terminal or even intrusion of the signal of a different terminal.

X542: 2 relay outputs (two-way contact)

Table 4- 26 Terminal block X542

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DO 0.NC	Contact type: Changeover contact max. load current: 8 A
	2	DO 0.COM	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC, 30 V DC
	3	DO 0.NO	Max. switching voltage: - at 250 V AC: 2000 VA (cosϕ = 1) - at 250 V AC: 750 VA (cosϕ = 0.4) - at 30 V DC: 240 W (ohmic load)
	4	DO 1.NC	
	5	DO 1.COM	
	6	DO 1.NO	Required minimum current: 100 mA

[1] DO: digital output, NO: normally-open contact, NC: normally-closed contact, COM: mid-position contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Note

Additional protective conductor

If 230 V AC is applied to the relay outputs, the Terminal Module must also be grounded via a 6 mm² protective conductor.

4.11 Other connections

Depending on the options installed, further connections have to be established, for example, dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter, main contactor, sine-wave filter, connection for external auxiliary equipment, main circuit-breaker including fuses or circuit-breaker, EMERGENCY OFF button, cabinet illumination with service socket, anti-condensation heating for cabinet, contactor safety combinations (EMERGENCY OFF / EMERGENCY STOP), thermistor motor protection unit, braking unit, PT100 evaluation unit, insulation monitor, communication modules, encoder evaluator, and NAMUR option.

Detailed information on connecting individual options with interfaces can be found on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.1 Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact (Option L01)

Description

Line Harmonics Filter compact reduce the converter's low-frequency line harmonic to a level that complies with standard EN 61000-2-4, Class 2 and correspond to IEEE 519:1992.

Installation location, total width and total weight for Option L01

The Line Harmonics Filter compact is installed fully wired in an auxiliary cabinet. A 400 mm or 600 mm wide cabinet is used depending on the unit rating and the voltage level. This therefore increases the total width and the total weight of the cabinet.

Table 4- 27 Total width and total weight for Option L01

Order number	Unit rating of the converter [kW]	Overall width [mm]	Total weight [kg]
Line voltage 3 AC 380 V -10% to 480 V +10% at 50 Hz 3 AC 380 V -10% to 480 V +8% at 60 Hz			
6SL3710-1GE32-1AAx	110	1200	540
6SL3710-1GE32-6AAx	132	1200	540
6SL3710-1GE33-1AAx	160	1200	640
6SL3710-1GE33-8AAx	200	1400	730
6SL3710-1GE35-0AAx	250	1400	770
6SL3710-1GE36-1AAx	315	1800	1300
6SL3710-1GE37-5AAx	400	1800	1345
6SL3710-1GE38-4AAx	450	1800	1555
6SL3710-1GE41-0AAx	560	2200	1840
6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx	630	3600	2580
6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx	710	3600	2670
6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx	900	3600	3090
Line voltage 3 AC 500 V -10% to 600 V +10% at 50 Hz 3 AC 500 V -10% to 600 V +10% at 60 Hz			
6SL3710-1GF31-8AAx	110	1200	670
6SL3710-1GF32-2AAx	132	1200	670
6SL3710-1GF32-6AAx	160	1200	710
6SL3710-1GF33-3AAx	200	1200	710
6SL3710-1GF34-1AAx	250	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GF34-7AAx	315	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GF35-8AAx	400	1200	1340
6SL3710-1GF37-4AAx	500	2200	2000
6SL3710-1GF38-1AAx	560	2200	2040
6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx	630	3600	2660
6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx	710	3600	2660
6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx	1000	4400	3980

Order number	Unit rating of the converter [kW]	Overall width [mm]	Total weight [kg]
Line voltage 3 AC 660 V -10% to 690 V +10% at 50 Hz 3 AC 660 V -10% to 690 V +8% at 60 Hz			
6SL3710-1GH28-5AAx	75	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-0AAx	90	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-2AAx	110	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-5AAx	132	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-8AAx	160	1200	670
6SL3710-1GH32-2AAx	200	1200	670
6SL3710-1GH32-6AAx	250	1200	710
6SL3710-1GH33-3AAx	315	1200	710
6SL3710-1GH34-1AAx	400	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GH34-7AAx	450	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GH35-8AAx	560	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GH37-4AAx	710	2200	2000
6SL3710-1GH38-1AAx	800	2200	2040
6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx	1000	3600	2660
6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx	1350	4400	3980
6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx	1500	4400	4060

Line system configurations

The Line Harmonics Filter compact may be connected to grounded TN/TT line supplies or non-grounded IT line supplies according to IEC 60364-1.

Restrictions

Note

Relative short-circuit power RSC

The relative short-circuit power (RSC) of the supply system must be at least equal to the value of RSC = 10.

Note

Supply systems with a grounded phase conductor and a line voltage >600 V AC

On systems with a grounded phase conductor and a line voltage >600 V AC, line-side components should be installed to limit overvoltages to overvoltage category II in accordance with IEC 61800-5-1.

NOTICE

Please observe the switching frequency!

If the switching frequency (once every 3 minutes) defined in the technical specifications is not adhered to, severe damage to the connected Power Module may result.

NOTICE
Observe the waiting time when restarting! After the converter has been switched off, a wait time of at least 30 seconds must be maintained before switching on again. This wait time is implemented using an internal timer relay, which prevents the unit from being switched on again. If a restart command is given before the waiting period has expired, fault F30027 "Power unit: Time monitoring for DC link pre-charging" is issued.

Note

Operation with high voltages

The Line Harmonics Filter increases the input voltage of the Power Module slightly compared to the connection voltage.
For a connection voltage in the uppermost tolerance range (480 V +8%, 600 V +10% or 690 V +8%), the internal monitoring of the DC link voltage can initiate fault F06310.
Use parameters p2118 and p2119 to reparameterize this fault as an alarm.

Note

Operation with braking unit (option L61 / L62)

If a braking unit is used and the connection voltage lies in the uppermost tolerance range (480 V +8%, 600 V +10% or 690 V +8%), the threshold value switch must only be set to the high response threshold in each case.
The chopper could otherwise trip inadvertently during normal operation.

Temperature evaluation

The Line Harmonics Filter compact is forced cooled via fans. In the event of fan failure, the integrated temperature sensors protect the Line Harmonics Filter compact against overheating.

- The temperature sensor for triggering the warning level is interconnected to digital input DI0 of the Control Unit. When the temperature sensor trips, "external alarm 1" (A7850) is triggered.
- The temperature sensor for triggering the fault threshold is interconnected to the line contactor or circuit breaker via a contactor relay. When the temperature sensor trips, the cabinet unit is shut down.
  The signal from the temperature sensor is also interconnected to digital input DI1 of the Control Unit. In this way, if the temperature sensor trips, "external fault 1" (F7860) is triggered.

4.11.2 dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07)

Description

The dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter comprises two components: the dV/dt reactor and the voltage-limiting network (Voltage Peak Limiter), which cuts off the voltage peaks and feeds back the energy into the DC link. The dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is designed for use with motors for which the voltage strength of the insulation system is unknown or insufficient.

The dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage load on the motor cables to values in accordance with the limit value curve A in compliance with IEC/TS 60034-25:2007.

The rate of voltage rise is limited to < 1600 V/µs, the peak voltages are limited to < 1400 V.

Restrictions

The following constraints should be noted when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to no more than 150 Hz.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
  - Shielded cable: max. 100 m
  - Unshielded cable: max. 150 m

⚠ WARNING

Load at low output frequencies

When a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the drive must not be continuously operated with an output frequency lower than 10 Hz.

A maximum load duration of 5 minutes at an output frequency lower than 10 Hz is permissible, provided that the drive is operated with an output frequency higher than 10 Hz for a period of 5 minutes thereafter, or deactivated..

Uninterrupted duty at an output frequency less than 10 Hz can produce thermal overload and destroy the dV/dt filter.

⚠ WARNING

Maximum pulse frequency

When a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the pulse frequency of the Power Module must not exceed 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz. Setting a higher pulse frequency can lead to destruction of the dV/dt filter.

NOTICE

Do not operate without a connected motor

When a du/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the drive must not be operated without a connected motor, otherwise the filter could be destroyed.

Note

Setting of pulse frequencies

It is permissible to set pulse frequencies in the range between the rated pulse frequency and the relevant maximum pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used. "Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency" of the converter must be observed here (refer to the Technical data).

Table 4- 28 Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 2 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE32-1AAx	110	210	4 kHz
1GE32-6AAx	132	260	4 kHz
1GE33-1AAx	160	310	4 kHz
1GE33-8AAx	200	380	4 kHz
1GE35-0AAx	250	490	4 kHz

Table 4- 29 Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE36-1AAx	315	605	2.5 kHz
1GE37-5AAx	400	745	2.5 kHz
1GE38-4AAx	450	840	2.5 kHz
1GE41-0AAx	560	985	2.5 kHz
2GE41-1AAx	630	1120	2.5 kHz
2GE41-4AAx	710	1380	2.5 kHz
2GE41-6AAx	900	1580	2.5 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 500 ... 600 V AC			
1GF31-8AAx	110	175	2.5 kHz
1GF32-2AAx	132	215	2.5 kHz
1GF32-6AAx	160	260	2.5 kHz
1GF33-3AAx	200	330	2.5 kHz
1GF34-1AAx	250	410	2.5 kHz
1GF34-7AAx	315	465	2.5 kHz
1GF35-8AAx	400	575	2.5 kHz
1GF37-4AAx	500	735	2.5 kHz
1GF38-1AAx	560	810	2.5 kHz
2GF38-6AAx	630	860	2.5 kHz
2GF41-1AAx	710	1070	2.5 kHz
2GF41-4AAx	1000	1360	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 660 ... 690 V AC			
1GH28-5AAx	75	85	2.5 kHz
1GH31-0AAx	90	100	2.5 kHz
1GH31-2AAx	110	120	2.5 kHz
1GH31-5AAx	132	150	2.5 kHz
1GH31-8AAx	160	175	2.5 kHz
1GH32-2AAx	200	215	2.5 kHz
1GH32-6AAx	250	260	2.5 kHz
1GH33-3AAx	315	330	2.5 kHz
1GH34-1AAx	400	410	2.5 kHz
1GH34-7aAx	450	465	2.5 kHz
1GH35-8AAx	560	575	2.5 kHz
1GH37-4AAx	710	735	2.5 kHz
1GH38-1aAx	800	810	2.5 kHz
2GH41-1AAx	1000	1070	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1350	1360	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1500	1500	2.5 kHz

Commissioning

During commissioning, the dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be logged on using STARTER or the AOP30 operator panel (p0230 = 2).

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

When the factory settings are restored, parameter p0230 is reset.
The parameter must be reset if the system is commissioned again.

4.11.3 dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10)

Description

The dV/dt filter plus voltage peak limiter comprises two components: the dV/dt reactor and the **V**oltage **P**eak **L**imiter, which cuts off the voltage peaks and returns the energy to the DC link.

The dv/dt filters plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be used for motors for which the proof voltage of the insulation system is unknown or insufficient. Standard motors of the 1LA5, 1LA6 and 1LA8 series only require them at supply voltages > 500 V +10%.

The dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage gradient to values < 500 V/µs and the typical transients to the values below (with motor cable lengths of < 150 m):

- < 1000 V at U_{line} < 575 V
- < 1250 V at 660 V < U_{line} < 690 V.

Depending on the converter power, option L10 can be accommodated in the drive converter cabinet unit or an additional cabinet with a width 400 mm is required.

Table 4- 30 Accommodating the voltage limiting network in the cabinet or in an additional cabinet

Voltage range	Installation of the dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter within the converter cabinet unit	Installation of the VPL in an additional cabinet
3 AC 380 ... 480 V	6SL3710-1GE32-1AAx 6SL3710-1GE32-6AAx 6SL3710-1GE33-1AAx 6SL3710-1GE33-8AAx 6SL3710-1GE35-0AAx	6SL3710-1GE36-1AAx 6SL3710-1GE37-5AAx 6SL3710-1GE38-4AAx 6SL3710-1GE41-0AAx 6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx [1]
3 AC 500 ... 600 V	6SL3710-1GF31-8AAx 6SL3710-1GF32-2AAx 6SL3710-1GF32-6AAx 6SL3710-1GF33-3AAx	6SL3710-1GF34-1AAx 6SL3710-1GF34-7AAx 6SL3710-1GF35-8AAx 6SL3710-1GF37-4AAx 6SL3710-1GF38-1AAx 6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx [1]
3 AC 660 ... 690 V	6SL3710-1GH28-5AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-0AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-2AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-5AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-8AAx 6SL3710-1GH32-2AAx 6SL3710-1GH32-6AAx 6SL3710-1GH33-3AAx	6SL3710-1GH34-1AAx 6SL3710-1GH34-7AAx 6SL3710-1GH35-8AAx 6SL3710-1GH37-4AAx 6SL3710-1GH38-1AAx 6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx [1]

[1] With units that are connected in parallel, each individual sub-cabinet has a separate auxiliary cabinet for the Voltage Peak Limiter.

Restrictions

The following restrictions should be noted when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to no more than 150 Hz.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
  - Shielded cable: max. 300 m
  - Unshielded cable: max. 450 m

⚠ WARNING

Maximum pulse frequency

When a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the pulse frequency of the Power Module must not exceed 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz. Setting a higher pulse frequency can lead to destruction of the dV/dt filter.

NOTICE

Do not operate without connected motor

When a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the drive must not be operated without a connected motor, otherwise the filter can be destroyed.

Note

Setting of pulse frequencies

It is permissible to set pulse frequencies in the range between the rated pulse frequency and the relevant maximum pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used. When so doing, take into account the "Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency; see Technical data.

Table 4- 31 Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 2 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE32-1AAx	110	210	4 kHz
1GE32-6AAx	132	260	4 kHz
1GE33-1AAx	160	310	4 kHz
1GE33-8AAx	200	380	4 kHz
1GE35-0AAx	250	490	4 kHz

Table 4- 32 Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE36-1AAx	315	605	2.5 kHz
1GE37-5AAx	400	745	2.5 kHz
1GE38-4AAx	450	840	2.5 kHz
1GE41-0AAx	560	985	2.5 kHz
2GE41-1AAx	630	1120	2.5 kHz
2GE41-4AAx	710	1380	2.5 kHz
2GE41-6AAx	900	1580	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 500 ... 600 V AC			
1GF31-8AAx	110	175	2.5 kHz
1GF32-2AAx	132	215	2.5 kHz
1GF32-6AAx	160	260	2.5 kHz
1GF33-3AAx	200	330	2.5 kHz
1GF34-1AAx	250	410	2.5 kHz
1GF34-7AAx	315	465	2.5 kHz
1GF35-8AAx	400	575	2.5 kHz
1GF37-4AAx	500	735	2.5 kHz
1GF38-1AAx	560	810	2.5 kHz
2GF38-6AAx	630	860	2.5 kHz
2GF41-1AAx	710	1070	2.5 kHz
2GF41-4AAx	1000	1360	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 660 ... 690 V AC			
1GH28-5AAx	75	85	2.5 kHz
1GH31-0AAx	90	100	2.5 kHz
1GH31-2AAx	110	120	2.5 kHz
1GH31-5AAx	132	150	2.5 kHz
1GH31-8AAx	160	175	2.5 kHz
1GH32-2AAx	200	215	2.5 kHz
1GH32-6AAx	250	260	2.5 kHz
1GH33-3AAx	315	330	2.5 kHz
1GH34-1AAx	400	410	2.5 kHz
1GH34-7aAx	450	465	2.5 kHz
1GH35-8AAx	560	575	2.5 kHz
1GH37-4AAx	710	735	2.5 kHz
1GH38-1aAx	800	810	2.5 kHz
2GH41-1AAx	1000	1070	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1350	1360	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1500	1500	2.5 kHz

Commissioning

During commissioning, the dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be logged on using STARTER or the AOP30 operator panel (p0230 = 2).

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

When the factory settings are restored, parameter p0230 is reset.
The parameter must be reset if the system is commissioned again.

4.11.4 Main Contactor (Option L13)

Description

The cabinet unit is designed as standard without a line contactor. Option L13 (main contactor) is needed if a switching element is required for disconnecting the cabinet from the supply (necessary with EMERGENCY OFF). The contactor is energized and supplied within the cabinet.

Connection

Table 4- 33 Terminal block X50 – checkback contact "main contactor closed"

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical specifications
4	NO	Max. load current: 10 A
5	NC	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC
6	COM	Max. switching capacity: 250 VA
		Required minimum load: ≥1 mA

[1] NO: normally-open contact, NC: normally-closed contact, COM: mid-position contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

4.11.5 Sinusoidal Filter (Option L15)

Description

The sine-wave filter limits the voltage gradient and the capacitive charge/discharge currents which usually occur with inverter operation. It also prevents additional noise caused by the pulse frequency. The service life of the motor is as long as that attained with direct mains operation.

NOTICE
Activation during commissioning If a sine-wave filter is connected to the converter, the converter must be activated during commissioning to prevent the filter from being destroyed (see "Commissioning").

NOTICE
Do not operate without a connected motor When using a sine-wave filter, the drive must not be operated without a connected motor as otherwise the filter could be destroyed.

Restrictions

The following restrictions must be taken into account when a sine-wave filter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to max. 115 Hz (at 500 to 600 V) and 150 Hz (at 380 to 480 V).
- The modulation type is permanently set to space-vector modulation without overmodulation.
- The maximum output frequency is limited to 85% of the input frequency.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
  - Unshielded cable: max. 450 m
  - Shielded cable: max. 300 m
- During commissioning, the pulse frequency rises to double the factory setting. This induces current derating, which must be applied to the cabinet unit rated currents listed in the technical data.

Note

No sine-wave filter possible

If a sine-wave filter cannot be parameterized (p0230 ≠ 3), this means that a filter has not been provided for the cabinet unit. In this case, the cabinet unit must not be operated with a sine-wave filter.

Table 4- 34 Technical data for sine-wave filters with SINAMICS G150

Order no. SINAMICS G150	Voltage [V]	Pulse frequency [kHz]	Output current [A] 1).
6SL3710-1GE32-1AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	172 A
6SL3710-1GE32-6AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	216 A
6SL3710-1GE33-1AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	273 A
6SL3710-1GE33-8AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	331 A
6SL3710-1GE35-0AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	382 A
6SL3710-1GF31-8AAx	3 AC 500 ... 600	2,5	152 A
6SL3710-1GF32-2AAx	3 AC 500 ... 600	2,5	187 A

1) The values apply to operation with a sine-wave filter and do not correspond with the rated current on the type plate.

Commissioning

When commissioning using the STARTER or AOP30, the sine-wave filter must be activated by means of appropriate selection screenforms or dialog boxes (p0230 = 3), see section "Commissioning".

The following parameters are changed automatically during commissioning.

Table 4- 35 Parameter settings for sine-wave filters with SINAMICS G150

Parameter	Name	Setting
p0230	Drive filter type, motor side	3: Siemens sine-wave filter
p0233	Power unit motor reactor	Filter inductance
p0234	Power unit sine-wave filter capacitance	Filter capacitance
p0290	Power unit overload response	Disable pulse frequency reduction
p1082	Maximum speed	Fmax filter / pole pair number
p1800	Pulse frequency	Nominal pulse frequency of the filter (see previous table)
p1802	Modulator mode	Space-vector modulation without overmodulation
p1909	Motor data identification, control word	Rs measurement only

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

When the factory settings are restored, parameter p0230 is reset.
The parameter must be reset if the system is commissioned again.

4.11.6 Connection for External Auxiliary Equipment (Option L19)

Description

This option includes an outgoing circuit fused at max. 10 A for external auxiliary equipment (e.g. separately-driven fan for motor). The voltage is tapped at the converter input upstream of the main contactor/circuit-breaker and, therefore, has the same level as the supply voltage. The outgoing circuit can be switched within the converter or externally.

Connecting

Table 4- 36 Terminal block X155 - Connection for external auxiliary equipment

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	L1	3 AC 380 ... 480 V 3 AC 500 ... 600 V 3 AC 660 ... 690 V
2	L2	
3	L3	
11	Contactor control	230 V AC
12		
13	NO: Checkback motor circuit breaker	230 V AC / 0.5 A 24 V DC / 2 A
14		
15	NO: Checkback from contactor	240 V AC / 6 A
16		
PE	PE	PE

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Note

Protection setting

The connection for external auxiliary equipment must be set in accordance with the connected consumer (-Q155).

Circuit proposal for controlling the auxiliary contactor from within the converter

Circuit proposal as standard

A free digital output of the Control Unit can be used to control the auxiliary contactor; it uses a line-side relay to control auxiliary contactor -K155.

Signal r0899.11 (pulses enabled) must also be interconnected to the selected digital output of the Control Unit.

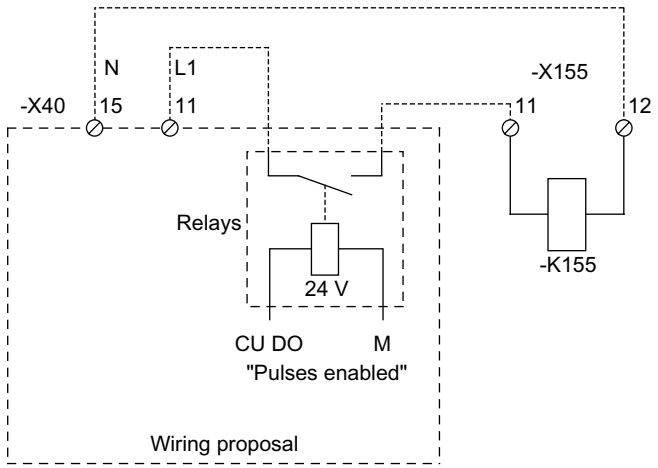


Figure 4-19 Circuit proposal for control via the Control Unit

Circuit proposal with customer terminal module TM31 (option G60)

The following circuit proposal can be used to control the auxiliary contactor for example. The "Pulses enabled" signal at terminal-X542 of the TM31 is then no longer available for other purposes.

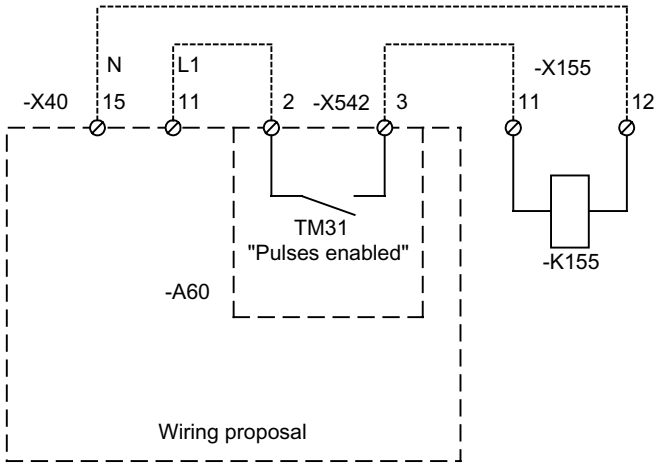


Figure 4-20 Circuit proposal for control via the TM31

Note

Additional protective conductor

If 230 V AC is applied to the relay outputs, the TM31 must also be grounded via a 6 mm² protective conductor.

4.11.7 Operation in the IT system (option L21)

Description

The option includes the installation of surge arresters and upstream fuses for every phase. The signaling contacts of the surge arrester and fuse monitoring are connected in series and connected to a customer interface.

For this option, the connection clips to the interference-suppression capacitor are removed from the respective cabinet units and included in the accessory kit.

Installation of the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor for operation in a TN system

When the devices are operated in a TN system, the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor must be reinstalled in the relevant cabinet units.

The connection clips are included in the accessories pack for the cabinets.

For the positions of the connection clip in the respective cabinet units, see "Removing the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

X700 - monitoring surge arresters and fuses

Table 4- 37 Terminal block X700, monitoring surge arresters and fuses

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	NC	Max. load current: - At 24 V DC: 1 A - At 230 V AC: 0.5 A
4	NC	
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²		

[1] NC: normally-closed contact

Reason why the monitoring responded

After the monitoring function responds at terminal block X700:1/4, the cause must be identified:

- Surge arresters (-A703, -A704-, A705) have a display showing the operating state.
- The upstream fuses (-Q700) are monitored using phase failure monitoring (-B700), which has an LED status display. In the event of a fault as a result of a defective fuse, the fuses (-Q700) must be checked, and if required, replaced after removing the fault.

Replacement of the surge arresters

In the event of a fault, the surge arresters must be replaced:

- Cabinet units 3 AC 380 - 480 V:
  Remove the insert (protection module) by withdrawing the defective insert and inserting the replacement part.
- Cabinet units 3 AC 500 - 600 V and 3 AC 660 - 690 V:
  Replacing the complete surge arrester.

4.11.8 Main switch incl. fuses or circuit breaker (option L26)

Description

For rated currents up to 800 A (single units) and up to 1380 A (units that are connected in parallel), a switch disconnector with externally-mounted fuses is used as the main circuit breaker. For rated currents above 800 A (single units) and above 1380 A (units that are connected in parallel), the standard circuit breaker is used to disconnect the voltage and provide overload and short-circuit protection. The circuit breaker is controlled and supplied within the converter.

⚠ CAUTION

Switching at input

Cabinet units with circuit breaker may be powered up only once every 3 minutes. Failure to observe this rule can cause damage to the cabinet unit.

Connecting

Table 4- 38 Terminal block X50 – checkback contact "main/circuit breaker closed"

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	NO	Max. load current: 10 A Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC Max. switching capacity: 250 VA Required minimum load: ≥ 1mA
2	NC	
3	COM	

[1] NO: normally-open contact, NC: normally-closed contact, COM: mid-position contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

⚠DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage

For rated currents of more than 800 A (single units) and above 1380 A (units that are connected in parallel) and with a live line voltage, dangerous voltages are present in the cabinet unit even when the circuit breaker is open. The cabinet unit must be completely deenergized when carry out work (observe the 5 safety rules).

Setting the release current for the circuit breaker

When delivered, the circuit breakers are set to the rated current of the cabinet unit on the line side. Depending on the plant configuration, it can make sense to set lower values. The appropriate specifications are given in the operating instructions supplied with the circuit breaker.

In the delivery condition, the tripping current is set as follows:

Table 4- 39 Delivery condition of the overcurrent tripping unit

Order number	Output current	Overcurrent trip (L)	Short-circuit trip, non-delayed (I)
6SL3710-1GE38-4AAx	840 A	1,0	2
6SL3710-1GE41-0AAx	985 A	0,9	2
6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx	1560 A	1.0 (both switches)	2 (both switches)
6SL3710-1GF38-1AAx	810 A	1,0	2
6SL3710-1GH38-1AAx	810 A	1,0	2
6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx	1500 A	0.9 (both switches)	2 (both switches)

NOTICE

Check the settings

The settings specified above should be checked. Incorrect settings can cause unwanted or delayed tripping of the circuit breaker and result in damage to the cabinet unit.

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults are described in the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.9 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door (option L45)

Description

The EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton with protective collar is integrated in the door of the cabinet unit. The contacts of the pushbutton are connected to terminal block –X120. In conjunction with options L57, L59, and L60, EMERGENCY OFF of category 0 and EMERGENCY STOP of category 1 can be activated.

A braking unit may be necessary to achieve the required shutdown times.

Note

Pressing the EMERGENCY OFF button

When the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton is pressed, the motor coasts to a standstill and the main motor voltage is disconnected (to EN 60204-1 (VDE 0113)) in conjunction with options L57, L59 and L60. Auxiliary voltages (e.g. for separately-driven fans or anti-condensation heating) may still be present. Certain sections of the converter (e.g., the closed-loop controller or any auxiliary equipment) may also remain live. If all the voltages have to be completely disconnected, the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton must be integrated in a protection concept, which must be implemented on the line side. For this purpose, an NC contact is installed at terminal block -X120.

Connecting

Table 4- 40 Terminal block X120 –checkback contact "EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the cabinet door"

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	NC 1	Checkback contacts of EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in cabinet door Max. load current: 10 A Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC Max. switching capacity: 250 VA Required minimum load: ≥1 mA
2		
3	NC 2 [2]	
4		

[1] NC: Normally-closed contact

[2] Factory setting in converter for options L57, L59, and L60

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm^2

4.11.10 Cabinet illumination with service socket (option L50)

Description

Option L50 includes cabinet lighting with an additional service socket for grounding socket-outlet (connector type F) according to CEE 7/4. The power supply for the cabinet lighting and the service socket is external and must be fuse-protected for max. 10 A.

It is an LED flashlight with an on/off switch, magnetic holders, and an approx. 3-m connecting cable. In the as-delivered condition, the flashlight is already positioned at the defined marks in the cabinet door and the connecting cable is wound on the holder.

Note

During operation of the cabinet unit, the cabinet lighting must remain attached in its position on the cabinet door. The position on the cabinet door is marked by an adhesive label. The connecting cable must be wound on its holder.

Connection

Table 4- 41 Terminal block X390 – connection for cabinet lighting with service socket

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	L1	230 V AC power supply
2	N	
3	PE	Protective conductor

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm^2

4.11.11 Cabinet anti-condensation heating (option L55)

Description

The anti-condensation heating is used at low ambient temperatures and high levels of humidity to prevent condensation forming.

One 100 W heater is installed for a 400 mm and 600 mm cabinet panel, and two 100 W heaters for an 800/1000 and 1200 mm cabinet panel. The power supply (110 to 230 V AC) must be provided externally and protected with a fuse of up to 16 A.

⚠DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage

When the supply voltage for the cabinet anti-condensation heating is connected, dangerous voltages are present in the cabinet unit even when the main circuit breaker is open.

Note

Provide power supply

The supply voltage can be provided using a temperature control to avoid unnecessarily operating the anti-condensation heating for higher ambient temperatures.

Connecting

Table 4- 42 Terminal block X240 – connection for cabinet anti-condensation heating

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	L1	110 to 230 V AC Power supply
2	N	
3	PE	Protective conductor

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm^2

4.11.12 EMERGENCY OFF category 0; 230 V AC or 24 V DC (option L57)

Description

EMERGENCY OFF category 0 for uncontrolled stop according to EN 60204-1. This function disconnects the cabinet unit from the power supply via the line contactor, while bypassing the electronics by means of a safety combination according to EN 60204-1. The motor then coasts to a stop. To prevent the main contactor from switching under load, an OFF2 is triggered simultaneously. The operational status is indicated by means of three LEDs (-K120).

When delivered, the type with 230 V AC pushbutton circuit is set.

Note

Pressing the EMERGENCY OFF button

When the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton is pressed, an uncontrolled stop of the motor takes place and the main motor voltage is disconnected in accordance with EN 60204-1. Auxiliary voltages (e.g. for separately-driven fans or anti-condensation heating) may still be present. Certain sections of the converter (e.g., the closed-loop controller or any auxiliary equipment) also remain live. If all the voltages have to be completely disconnected, the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton must be integrated in a protection concept, which must be implemented on the line side. For this purpose, an NC contact is installed at terminal -X120.

Connecting

Table 4- 43 Terminal block X120 – connection for EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 V AC and 24 V DC

Terminal	230 V AC and 24 V DC button circuit
4	Jumper wired in the factory
5	
7	Loop in EMERGENCY OFF button from line side, remove jumpers 7-8 and connect button
8	
9	Jumper wired in the factory
10	
11	Jumper wired in the factory
14	
12	Jumper wired in the factory
13	
15	"On" for monitored start: Remove jumpers 15–16 and connect button
16	
17	NO [1]: Checkback "trip safety combination"
18	

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm^2

Reconnection to the 24 V DC Button Circuit

When using the 24 V DC pushbutton circuit, you must remove the following jumpers at terminal block -X120:

- 4-5, 9-10, and 11-14

You must also insert the following jumpers at terminal block -X120:

- 4-11, 5-10, and 9-14

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -K120) are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions" of the Operating Instructions.

4.11.13 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 230 V AC (option L59)

Description

EMERGENCY STOP category 1 for controlled stopping according to EN 60204-1. This function stops the drive by means of a quick stop along a deceleration ramp that must be parameterized. The cabinet unit is then disconnected from the power supply via the line contactor, while bypassing the electronics by means of a safety combination (according to EN 60204-1).
The operating state and the function are indicated by eight LEDs (-K120, -K121).

Connecting

Table 4- 44 Terminal block X120 – connection for EMERGENCY STOP category 1 (230 V AC)

Terminal	Technical data
4	Jumper wired in the factory
5	
7	Loop in EMERGENCY OFF button from line side, remove jumpers 7-8 and connect button
8	
9	Jumper wired in the factory
10	
11	Jumper wired in the factory
14	
12	Jumper wired in the factory
13	
15	"On" for monitored start: Remove jumpers 15–16 and connect button.
16	
17	NO [1]: Checkback "trip safety combination"
18	

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Setting

The time (0.5 to 30 s) set for the contactor safety combination (-K121) should be longer than (or at least equal to) the time that the drive requires to reach a standstill via the quick stop (OFF3 ramp-down time, p1135), as the converter is disconnected from the power supply when the time expires (at -K121).

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -K120, -K121) are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions" of the Operating Instructions.

4.11.14 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 24 V DC (option L60)

Description

EMERGENCY STOP category 1 for controlled stopping according to EN 60204-1. This function stops the drive by means of a quick stop along a deceleration ramp that must be parameterized. The cabinet unit is then disconnected from the power supply via the line contactor, while bypassing the electronics by means of a safety combination in accordance with EN 60204-1).
The operating state and the function are indicated by five LEDs (-K120).

Connecting

Table 4- 45 Terminal block X120 – connection for EMERGENCY STOP category 1 (24 V DC)

Terminal	Technical data
4	Jumper wired in the factory
11	
5	Jumper wired in the factory
10	
7	Loop in EMERGENCY OFF button from line side, remove jumpers 7-8 and connect button
8	
9	Jumper wired in the factory
14	
12	Jumper wired in the factory
13	
15	"On" for monitored start: Remove jumpers 15–16 and connect button.
16	
17	NO [1]: Checkback "trip safety combination"
18	

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Setting

The time (0.5 to 30 s) set for the contactor safety combination (-K120) should be longer than (or at least equal to) the time that the drive requires to reach a standstill via the quick stop (OFF3 ramp-down time, p1135), as the converter is disconnected from the power supply when the time expires (at -K120).

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -K120) are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions" of the Operating Instructions.

4.11.15 25 kW Braking Unit (Option L61); 50 kW Braking Unit (Option L62)

Description

Braking units are used when regenerative energy occurs occasionally and briefly, for example when the brake is applied to the drive (EMERGENCY STOP). The braking units comprise a chopper power unit and a load resistor, which must be attached externally. To monitor the braking resistor, it has an integrated thermostatic switch, which is included in the shutdown circuit of the cabinet unit.

Table 4- 46 Load data for the braking units

Line voltage	Continuous chopper power P_{DB}	Peak chopper output P_{15}	Chopper P_{20} output P_{20}	Chopper P_{40} output P_{40}	Braking resistor R_B	Max. current
380 V ... 480 V	25 kW	125 kW	100 kW	50 kW	4.4 Ω ± 7.5%	189 A
380 V ... 480 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	2.2 Ω ± 7.5%	378 A
500 V ... 600 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	3.4 Ω ± 7.5%	306 A
660 V ... 690 V	25 kW	125 kW	100 kW	50 kW	9.8 Ω ± 7.5%	127 A
660 V ... 690 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	4.9 Ω ± 7.5%	255 A

Installing the braking resistor

The braking resistor should not be installed in the vicinity of the converter. The installation location must fulfill the following conditions:

- The braking resistors are only suitable for floor mounting.
- The maximum cable length between the cabinet unit and braking resistor is 100 m.
- Sufficient space must be available for dissipating the energy converted by the braking resistor.
- A sufficient distance from flammable objects must be maintained.
- The braking resistor must be installed as a free-standing unit.
- Objects must not be placed on or anywhere above the braking resistor.
- The braking resistor should not be installed underneath fire detection systems, since these could be triggered by the resulting heat.
- For outdoor installation, a hood must be provided to protect the braking resistor from precipitation (in accordance with degree of protection IP20).

NOTICE
Maintain ventilation clearances A ventilation clearance of 200 m must be maintained on all sides of the braking resistor (with ventilation grilles).

NOTICE
Hot surfaces The surface temperature of the braking resistors may exceed 80 °C.

Table 4- 47 Dimensions of the braking resistors

	Unit	25 kW resistor (option L61)	50 kW resistor (option L62)
Width	mm	740	810
Height	mm	605	1325
Depth	mm	485	485

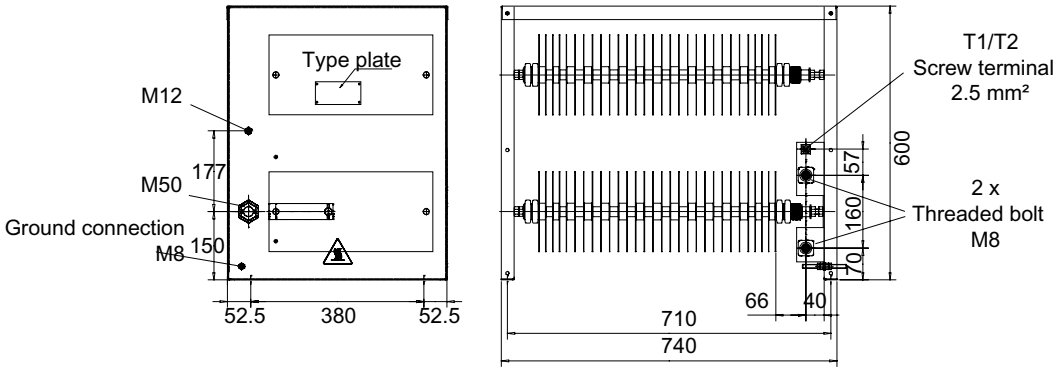


Figure 4-21 Dimension drawing for braking resistor (25 kW)

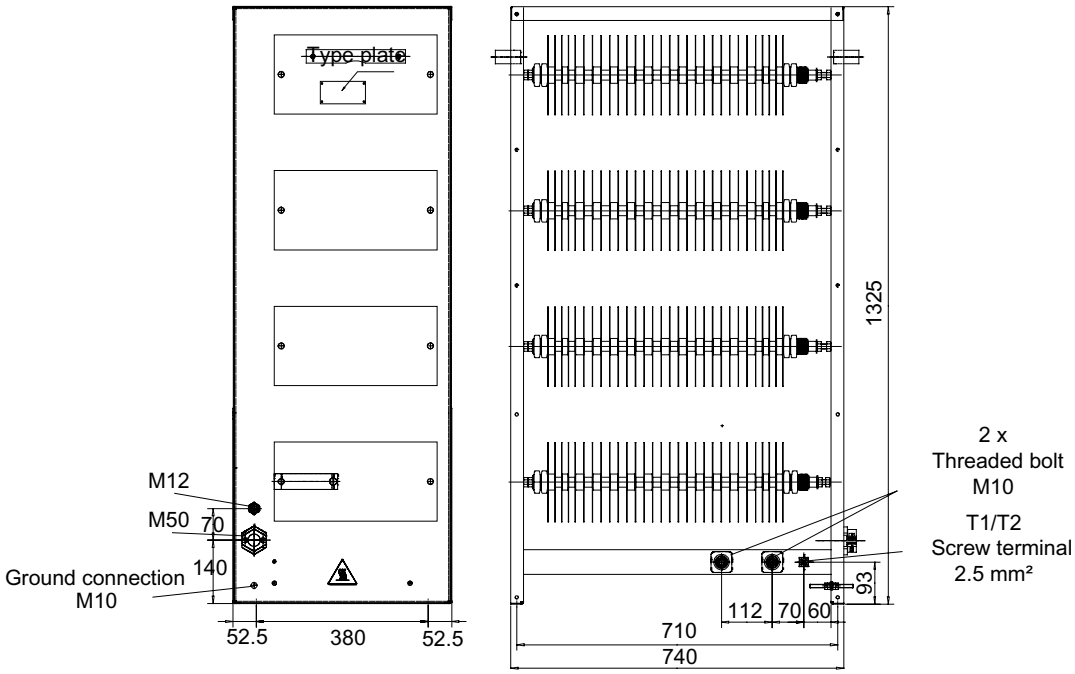


Figure 4-22 Dimension drawing for braking resistor (50 kW)

Connecting the braking resistor

⚠WARNING

Connecting terminal block -X5

The cables must only be connected to terminal block -X5 when the cabinet unit is switched off and the DC link capacitors are discharged.

⚠WARNING

Risk of fire and damage to equipment due to short-circuit/ground fault

The cables to the braking resistor must be routed so that a ground fault or short circuit can be ruled out. A ground fault can result in fire with the associated smoke.

- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.

In addition, apply one of the following measures:

- Use cables with double insulation.
- Maintain adequate clearance, using spacers, for example.
- Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

NOTICE

Maximum cable length

The maximum cable length between the cabinet unit and braking resistor is 100 m.

Table 4- 48 Terminal block -X5 – connection for external braking resistor

Terminal	Description of function
1	Braking resistor connection
2	Braking resistor connection

Max. connectable cross-section: 70 mm²

Recommended cable cross-sections:

- For L61 (25 kW): 35 mm²
- For L62 (50 kW): 50 mm²

Connecting the thermostatic switch

Table 4- 49 Installing the thermostatic switch for the external braking resistor in the monitoring circuit of the cabinet unit by connecting to the Control Unit (without option G60)

Terminal	Description of function
T1	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X132:9 (DO12)
T2	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X122:5 (DI16)

Max. connectable cross-section (due to CU320-2): 1.5 mm²

Table 4- 50 Installing the thermostatic switch for the external braking resistor in the monitoring circuit of the cabinet unit by connecting to the TM31 (with option G60)

Terminal	Description of function
T1	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X541:1 (P24 V)
T2	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X541:5 (DI11)

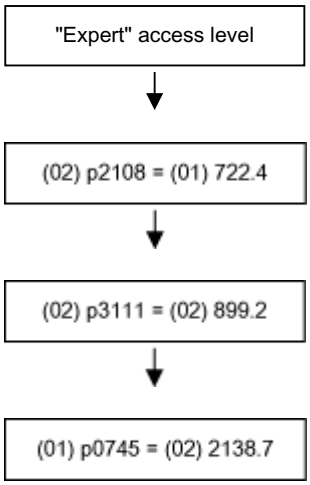
Max. connectable cross-section (due to TM31): 1.5 mm²

4.11.15.1 Commissioning

Commissioning

When commissioning via STARTER, parameters are assigned to "external fault 3" and acknowledged automatically when option L61 or L62 are selected.

When commissioning via AOP30, the parameter entries required have to be set subsequently.



Set the "Expert" access level on the operator panel
<Key pushbutton> - <Access level> - Set "Expert" and confirm.

Connect digital input 4 (DI4) on the Control Unit to the first input of "External fault 3."

Connect the "Operation" signal to the second input of "External fault 3."

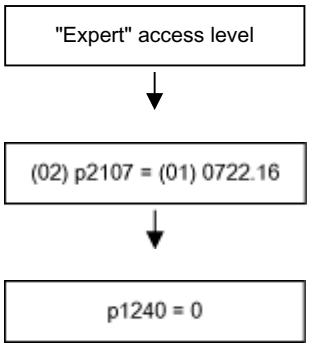
Connect "Acknowledge fault" to digital output 15 (DO15) on the Control Unit.

Cabinet unit settings

If the thermostatic switch for the braking resistor is connected, appropriate settings have to be made so that the drive is brought to a standstill if a fault occurs.

Once the device has been successfully commissioned, you have to make the following changes:

Connect the thermostatic switch of the braking resistor to DI 16 of the Control Unit

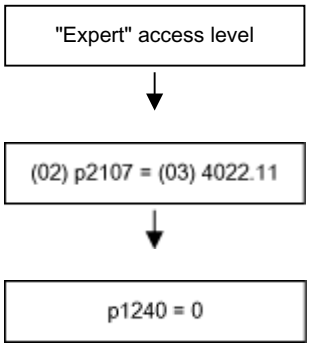


Set the "Expert" access level on the operator panel
<Key pushbutton> - <Access level> - Set "Expert" and confirm.

Interconnect external fault 2 to DI 16 of the Control Unit.

Disabling the Vdc-max controller
When the brake chopper is used, the Vdc-max controller must be switched off.

Connect the thermostatic switch of the braking resistor to DI 11 of the TM31 (option G60)



Set the "Expert" access level on the operator panel
<Key pushbutton> - <Access level> - Set "Expert" and confirm.

Interconnect external fault 2 to DI 11 of the TM31.

Disabling the Vdc-max controller
When the brake chopper is used, the Vdc-max controller must be switched off.

4.11.15.2 Diagnosis and duty cycles

Diagnosis

If the thermostat is opened due to a thermal overload on the braking resistor, fault F7861 ("External Fault 2") is triggered and the drive is switched off with OFF2.

If the brake chopper triggers a fault, fault F7862 "External fault 3" is triggered in the drive.

You can acknowledge malfunctions in the braking unit by pressing the "Acknowledge" button on the operator panel when the DC link voltage is present).

Duty cycles

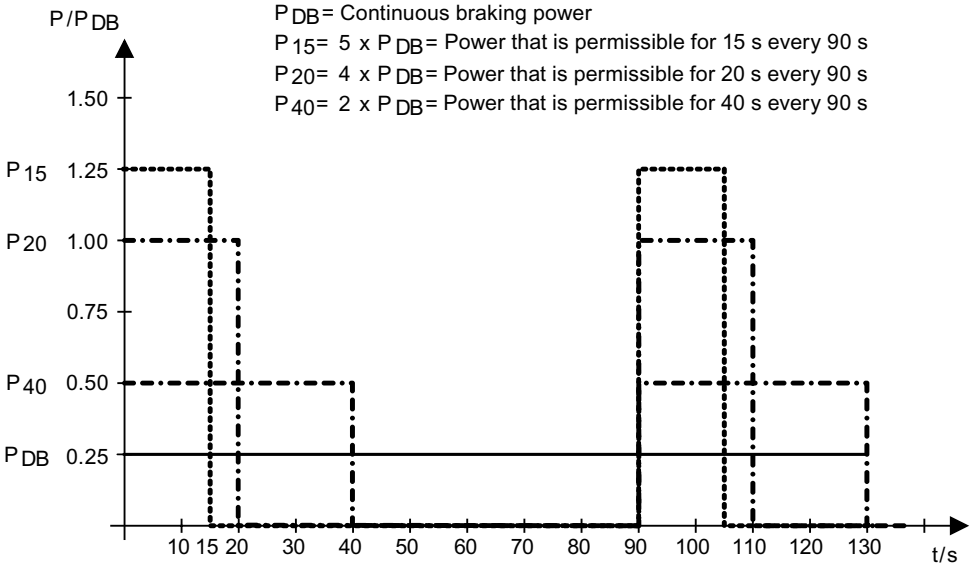


Figure 4-23 Duty cycles for the braking resistors

4.11.15.3 Threshold switch

The response threshold at which the braking unit is activated and the DC link voltage generated during braking are specified in the following table.

⚠WARNING

Switching of the threshold switch

The threshold switch must only be used when the cabinet unit is switched off and the DC link capacitors are discharged.

Table 4- 51 Response thresholds of the braking units

Rated voltage	Response threshold	Switch position	Comment
380 ... 480 V	673 V	1	774 V is the delivery condition setting. With line voltages of between 380 V and 400 V, the response threshold can be set to 673 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and drive. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (673/774)² = 0.75. The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 75%.
	774 V	2	
500 ... 600 V	841 V	1	967 V is the delivery condition setting. With a line voltage of 500 V, the response threshold can be set to 841 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (841/967)² = 0.75. The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 75%.
	967 V	2	
660 ... 690 V	1070 V	1	1158 V is the delivery condition setting. With a line voltage of 660 V, the response threshold can be set to 1070 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (1070/1158)² = 0.85. The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 85%.
	1158 V	2	

Position of the threshold switch

The Braking Module is located in the top section of the cabinet unit in the discharged air duct of the Power Module. The position of the threshold switch can be taken from the figures below.

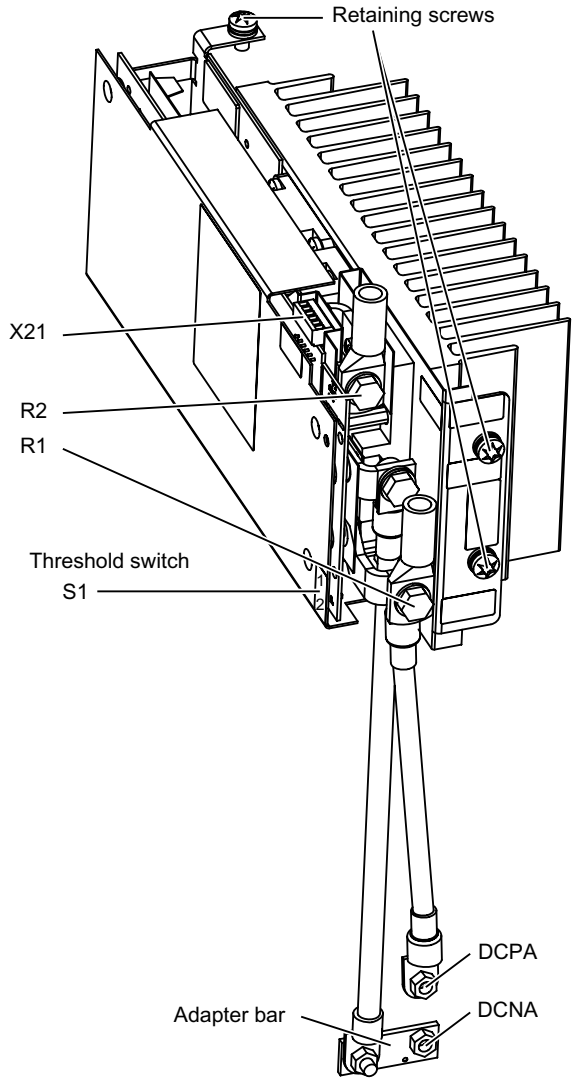


Figure 4-24 Braking Modules for frame size FX

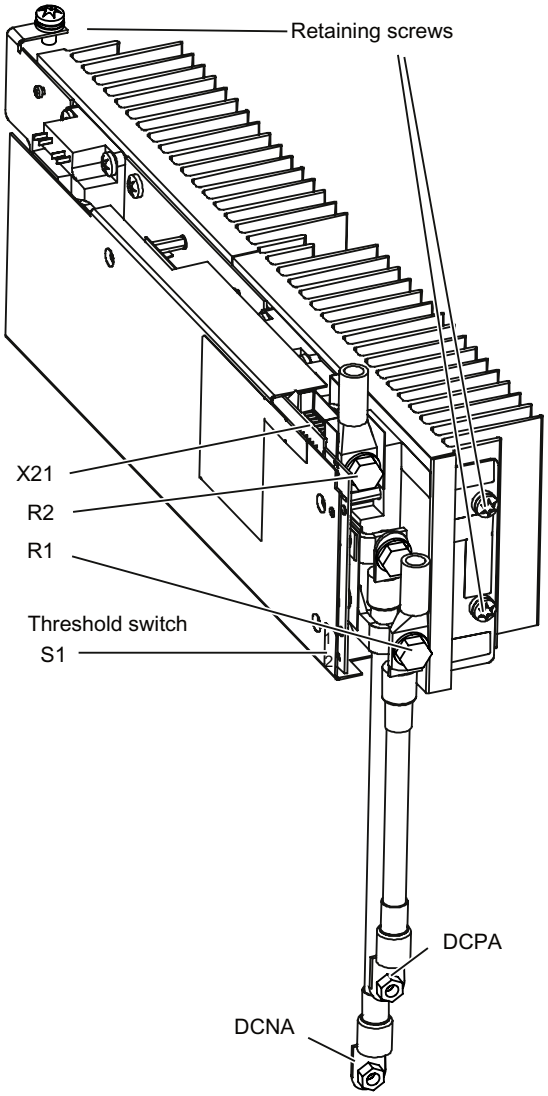


Figure 4-25 Braking Modules for frame size GX

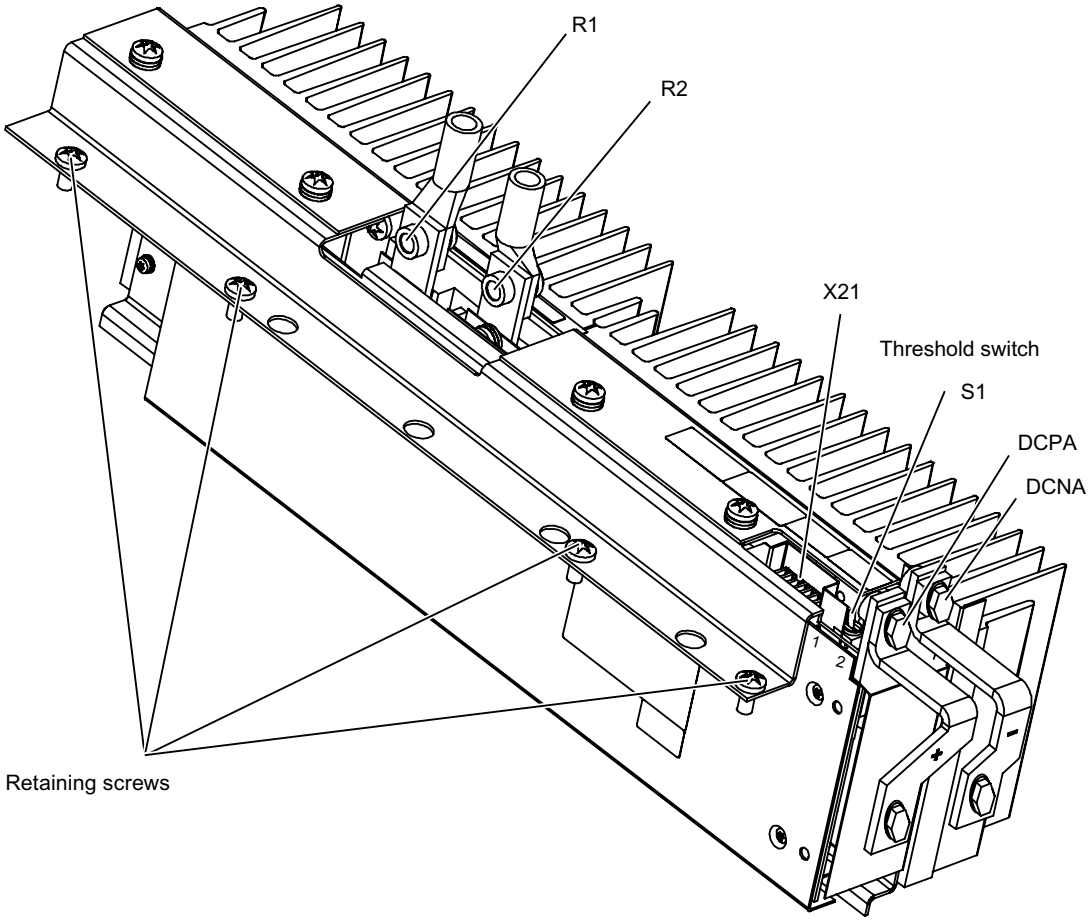


Figure 4-26 Braking Modules for frame sizes HX and JX

Position of the threshold switch

Note

Switch positions

The threshold switches for the Braking Modules are positioned on the panel as follows:

- Braking Modules for frame sizes FX and GX: position "1" is up; position "2" is down
- Braking Modules for frame sizes HX and JX: position "1" is back; position "2" is front

4.11.16 Option L01 Quick starting (option L76)

Description

If L01 (line harmonics filter) is in use, after the converter has been switched off, as a result of the principle of operation, a waiting period of at least 30 seconds must be allowed to elapse before switching on again. If a restart command is given before the waiting period has expired, fault F30027 "Power unit: time monitoring for DC link pre-charging" is output.

With option L76, the additional waiting period before the next switch-on is not required.

4.11.17 Thermistor Motor Protection Unit (Option L83/L84)

Description

This option includes the thermistor motor protection unit (with PTB approval) for PTC thermistor sensors (PTC resistor type A) for warning and shutdown. The power supply for the thermistor motor protection unit is provided inside the converter where the evaluation is also performed.

Option L83 triggers the "external alarm 1" (A7850) if a fault occurs.

Option L84 triggers the "external fault 1" (F7860) if a fault occurs.

Connection

Table 4- 52 -B127/B125 – connection for thermistor motor protection device

Equipment designation	Description of function
-B127: T1, T2	Thermistor motor protection (alarm)
-B125: T1, T2	Thermistor motor protection (shutdown)

The PTC thermistor sensors are connected directly to terminals T1 and T2 of the evaluation unit.

Table 4- 53 Maximum cable length for the sensor circuit

Line cross-section in mm²	Line length in m
2.5	2 x 2800
1.5	2 x 1500
0.5	2 x 500

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -B125, B127) are described in the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the equipment.

4.11.18 PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86)

Description

Note

Additional operating instructions

The PT100 evaluation unit and the parameters for the measurement channels are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions".

The PT100 evaluation unit can monitor up to six sensors. The sensors can be connected in a two or three-wire system. With the two-wire system, inputs xT1 and xT3 must be assigned. With the three-wire system, input xT2 must also be connected to -B140, -B141 (x = 1, 2, 3). The limit values can be freely programmed for each channel. Shielded signal cables are recommended. If this is not possible, however, the sensor cables should at least be twisted in pairs.

In the delivery condition, the measurement channels are divided into two groups of 3 channels each. With motors, for example, this means that three PT100s in the stator windings and two PT100s in the motor bearings can be monitored. Unused channels can be suppressed via parameters.

The output relays are integrated in the internal fault and alarm train of the cabinet unit. The power for the PT100 evaluation unit is supplied and the evaluation itself executed within the converter.

When the temperature set for "alarm" is exceeded, "external alarm 1" (A7850) is triggered. When the temperature set for "fault" is exceeded, "external fault 1" (F7860) is triggered.

Connecting

Table 4- 54 Terminals -B140, -B141 – connection for PT100 evaluation unit

Terminal	Technical data
-B140: 1T1-1T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 1; group 1
-B140: 2T1-2T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 2; group 1
-B140: 3T1-3T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 3; group 1
-B141: 1T1-1T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 1; group 2
-B141: 2T1-2T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 2; group 2
-B141: 3T1-3T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 3; group 2

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -B140, B141) are described in the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.19 Insulation Monitor (Option L87)

Description

In non-grounded systems (IT systems), the insulation monitor checks the entire electrically-connected circuit for insulation faults. The insulation resistance as well as all the insulation faults from the mains supply to the motor in the cabinet are detected. Two response values (between 1 kΩ and 10 MΩ) can be set. If a response value in undershot, an alarm is output to the terminal. A system fault is output via the signaling relay system.

When the cabinet unit is delivered, the plant configuration (one or several loads in one electrically-connected network) and the protection philosophy (immediate shutdown in the event of an insulation fault or restricted continued motion) can vary. This means that the signaling relays of the insulation monitor must be integrated by the customer in the fault and warning sequence.

Safety information

Note

Number of insulation monitors

Only one insulation monitor can be used within the same electrically-connected network.

Note

Removing the connection bracket for the interference-suppression capacitor

When the insulation monitor is used, the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor must be removed (see "Electrical installation / Removing the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor with operation from an ungrounded line supply (IT system)").

Controls and displays on the insulation monitor

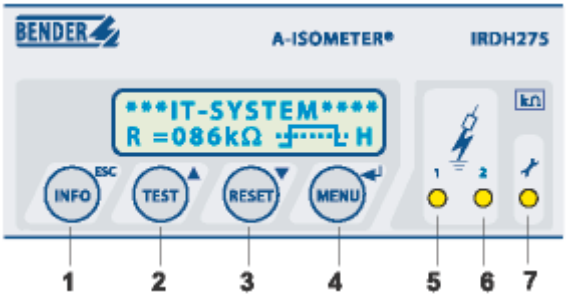


Figure 4-27 Controls and displays on the insulation monitor

Table 4- 55 Meaning of the controls and displays on the insulation monitor

Position	Meaning
1	INFO key: To request standard information/ ESC key: Back menu function
2	TEST key: Call up self-test Arrow key up: Parameter change, scroll
3	RESET button: Delete insulation and fault messages Arrow key down: Parameter change, scroll
4	Menu key: Call up menu system Enter key: Confirm parameter change
5	Alarm LED 1 lights up: Insulation fault, first alarm threshold reached
6	Alarm LED 2 lights up: Insulation fault, second alarm threshold reached
7	LED lights up: System error present

Connecting

Table 4- 56 Connections on insulation monitor

Terminal	Technical data
A1	Supply voltage via 6 A melting fuse:
A2	88 to 264 V AC, 77 to 286 V DC
L1	Connection of the 3 AC system to be monitored
L2	
AK	Connection to coupling device
KE	PE connection
T1	External test button
T2	External test button
R1	External reset key (NC contact or wire jumper otherwise the fault code is not stored)
R2	External reset key (NC contact or wire jumper)
F1	STANDBY with aid of F1, F2 function input:
F2	
M+	External kΩ display, analog output (0 ... 400 µA)
M-	External kΩ display, analog output (0 ... 400 µA)
A	Serial interface RS 485
B	(termination by means of 120 ohm resistor)
11	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (mid-position contact)
12	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (NC contact)
14	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (NO contact)
21	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (mid-position contact)
22	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (NC contact)
24	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (NO contact)

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Diagnostics

For a description of messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -B101), consult the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.20 CBC10 CAN Communication Board (option G20)

Description

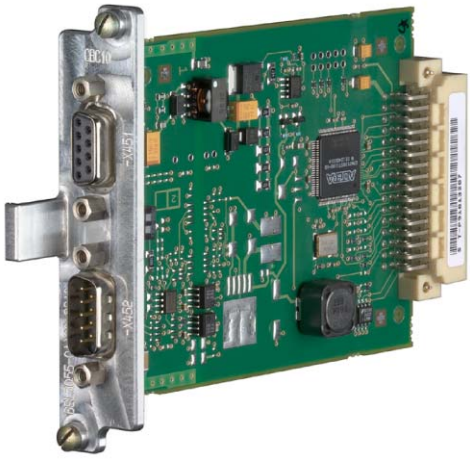


Figure 4-28 CAN CBC10 Communication Board

The CBC10 CANopen communication board (CAN Communication Board) is used to connect drives in the SINAMICS drive system to higher-level automation systems with a CAN bus.

The CANopen Option Board uses two 9-pin SUB D connectors for the connection to the CAN bus system.

The connectors can be used as inputs or outputs. Unused pins are plated through.

Among others, the following transmission rates are supported: 10, 20, 50, 125, 250, 500, 800 kBaud, and 1 Mbaud.

NOTICE
Remove or insert Option Board only in a de-energized state The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the Control Unit and Option Board are disconnected from the power supply. The CBC10 must only be operated by qualified personnel. The ESD notices must be observed.

The module is inserted in the option slot of the Control Unit at the factory.

Interface overview

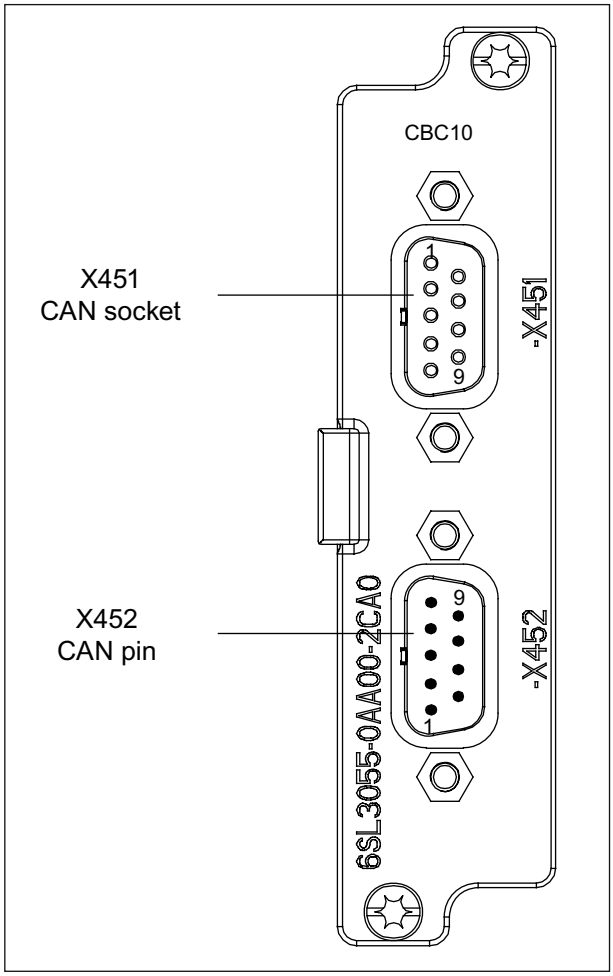
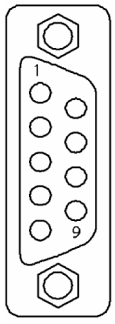


Figure 4-29 CAN CBC10 Communication Board

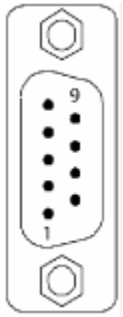
CAN bus interface -X451

Table 4- 57 CAN bus interface -X451

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	Reserved, do not use	
	2	CAN_L	CAN signal (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	CAN ground
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	CAN_SHLD	Optional shield
	6	GND	CAN ground
	7	CAN_H	CAN signal
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	9	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: 9-pin Sub-D socket			

CAN bus interface -X452

Table 4- 58 CAN bus interface -X452

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	Reserved, do not use	
	2	CAN_L	CAN signal (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	CAN ground
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	CAN_SHLD	Optional shield
	6	GND	CAN ground
	7	CAN_H	CAN signal
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	9	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector (pins)			

Further information about communication via CAN bus

Note

Further information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the CANopen interface can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the accompanying customer DVD.

4.11.21 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20 (Option G33)

Description

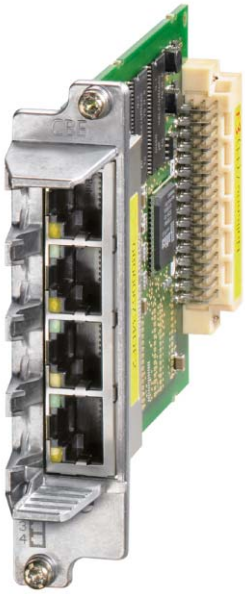


Figure 4-30 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20

Interface module CBE20 is used for communication via PROFINET.

The module is inserted in the option slot of the Control Unit at the factory.

4 Ethernet interfaces are available on the module. Diagnosis of the function mode and communication are possible via LEDs.

Interface overview

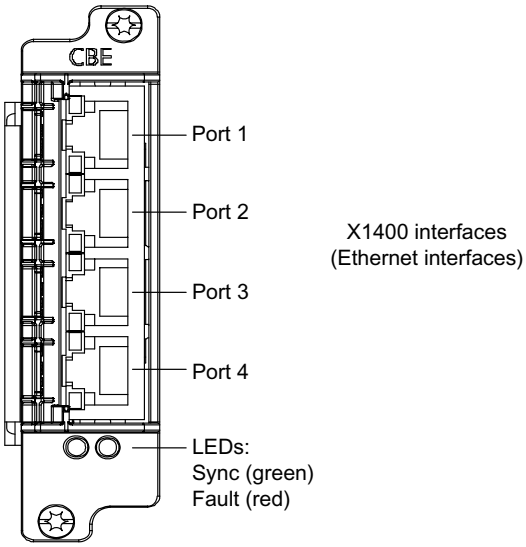


Figure 4-31 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20

MAC address

The MAC address of the Ethernet interfaces is indicated on the upper side of the CBE20. The plate is not visible when the module is installed.

Note

Note the MAC address

Remove the module from the option slot of the Control Unit and note down the MAC address so that it is available during subsequent commissioning.

Removal/installation

NOTICE
Remove or insert Option Board only in a de-energized state The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the Control Unit and Option Board are disconnected from the power supply.

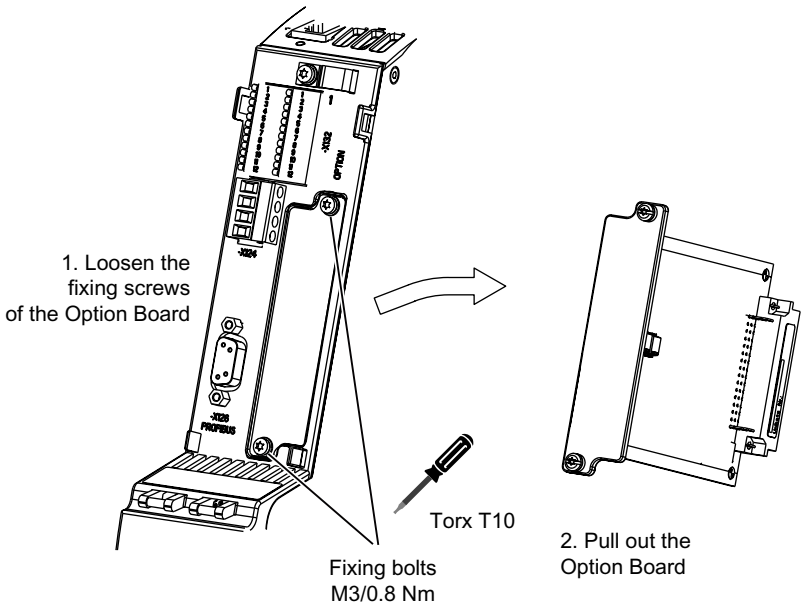
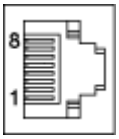


Figure 4-32 Removing the CBE20 from the option slot on the Control Unit

X1400 Ethernet interface

Table 4- 59 Connector X1400, port 1 - 4

	Pin	Signal name	Technical specifications
	1	RX+	Receive data +
	2	RX-	Receive data -
	3	TX+	Transmit data +
	4	---	Reserved, do not use
	5	---	Reserved, do not use
	6	TX-	Transmit data -
	7	---	Reserved, do not use
	8	---	Reserved, do not use
	Screened backshell	M_EXT	Screen, permanently connected

4.11.22 TM150 temperature sensor module (option G51)

4.11.22.1 Description

Terminal Module TM150 is used for sensing and evaluating several temperature sensors. The temperature is measured in a temperature range from -99 °C to +250 °C for the following temperature sensors:

- PT100 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- PT1000 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- KTY84 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- PTC (with short-circuit monitoring)
- Bimetallic NC contact (without monitoring)

For the temperature sensor inputs, for each terminal block the evaluation can be parameterized for 1x2-wire, 2x2-wire, 3-wire or 4-wire. There is no galvanic isolation in the TM150.

A maximum of 12 temperature sensors can be connected at the TM150 Terminal Module.

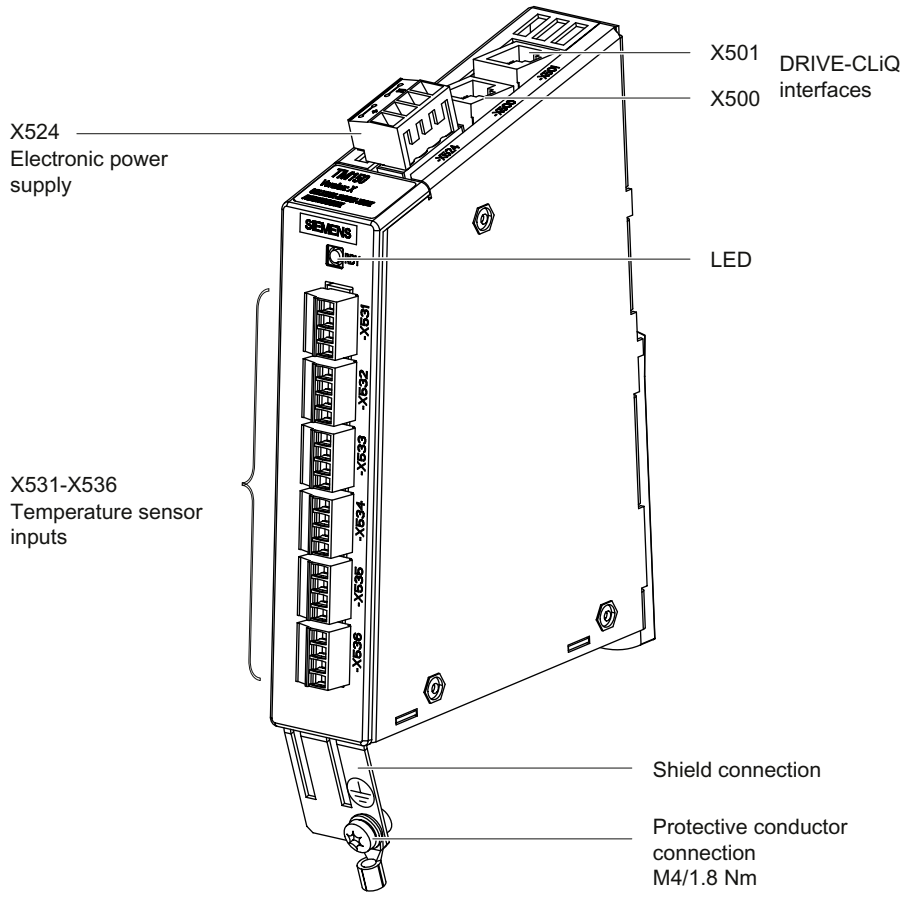
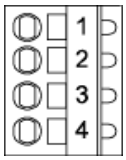


Figure 4-33 Terminal Module TM150

4.11.22.2 Connecting

Temperature sensor connections

Table 4- 60 X531-X536 temperature sensor inputs

	Terminal	Function 1x2-/2x2-wire	Function 3 and 4-wire	Technical data
	1	+ Temp (channel x)	+ (channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 1x2 wires Connection of the 2nd measurement cable for sensors with 4-wires
	2	- Temp (channel x)	- (channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 1x2 wires Connection of the 1st measurement cable for sensors with 3 and 4-wires.
	3	+ Temp (channel y)	+ I_c (constant current, positive channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 2x2, 3 and 4-wires
	4	- Temp (channel y)	- I_c (constant current, negative channel x)	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm^2

Measuring current via temperature sensor connection: approx. 0.83 mA

When connecting temperature sensors with 3 wires, a jumper must be inserted between X53x.2 and X53x.4.

Table 4- 61 Channel assignment

Terminal	Channel number [x] for 1x2, 3 and 4-wires	Channel number [y] for 2x2 wires
X531	0	6
X532	1	7
X533	2	8
X534	3	9
X535	4	10
X536	5	11

⚠DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

If these instructions are not complied with, there is a risk of electric shock!

⚠ CAUTION

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. A sensor connected up with the incorrect polarity cannot detect if the motor overheats.

⚠ CAUTION

Connecting several temperature sensors

When connecting several temperature sensors, the individual sensors must be separately connected to "+ Temp" and "- Temp".

It is not permissible to jumper the "+ Temp" and "- Temp" signals between the individual terminal blocks!

⚠ CAUTION

Cable length and cross section

Cable length and cross-section might influence the temperature measurement (10 Ω cable resistance for a PT100, can falsify the measurement result by 10%).
For cable lengths > 100 m, cables with a cross-section of ≥ 1 mm^2 must be used.

The maximum cable length is 300 m.

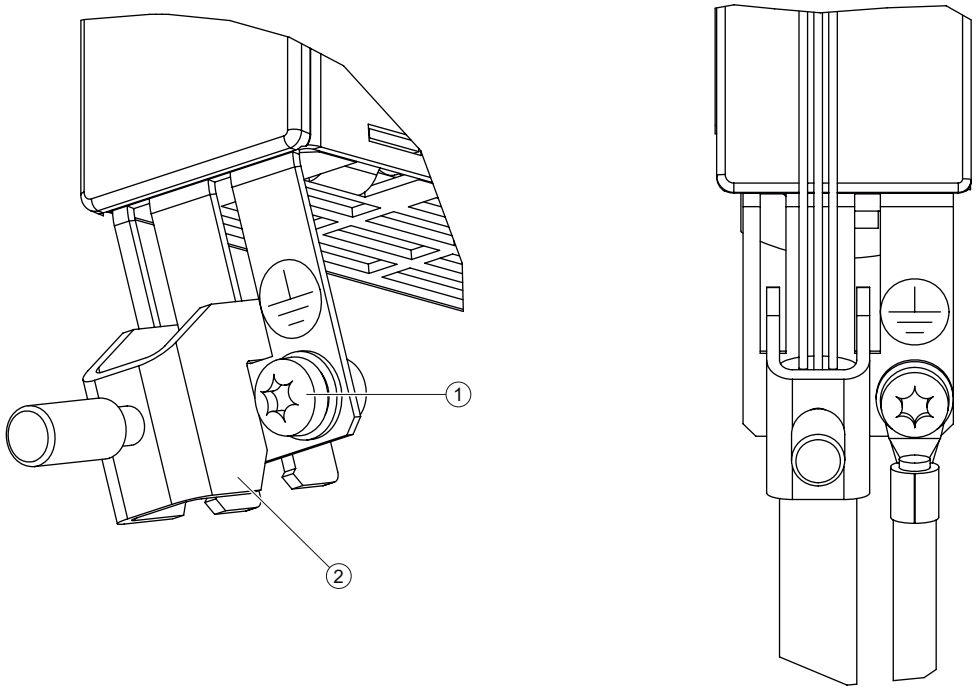
⚠ CAUTION

Route shielded temperature sensor cables

Temperature sensors must always be connected up using shielded cables. The cable shield must be connected to the ground potential at both ends through a large surface area. Temperature sensor cables that are routed together with the motor cable must be twisted in pairs and shielded separately.

Protective conductor connection and shield support

The following diagram shows a typical Weidmüller shield connection clamp for the shield supports.



① Protective conductor connection M4/1.8 Nm
② Shield connection terminal, Weidmüller company, type: KLBÜ CO1, order number: 1753311001

Figure 4-34 Shield support and protective conductor connection of the TM150

⚠ CAUTION

Faulty operation in the event of incorrect shielding

If the shielding procedures described and the permissible cable lengths are not observed, the machine may malfunction.

4.11.22.3 Connection examples

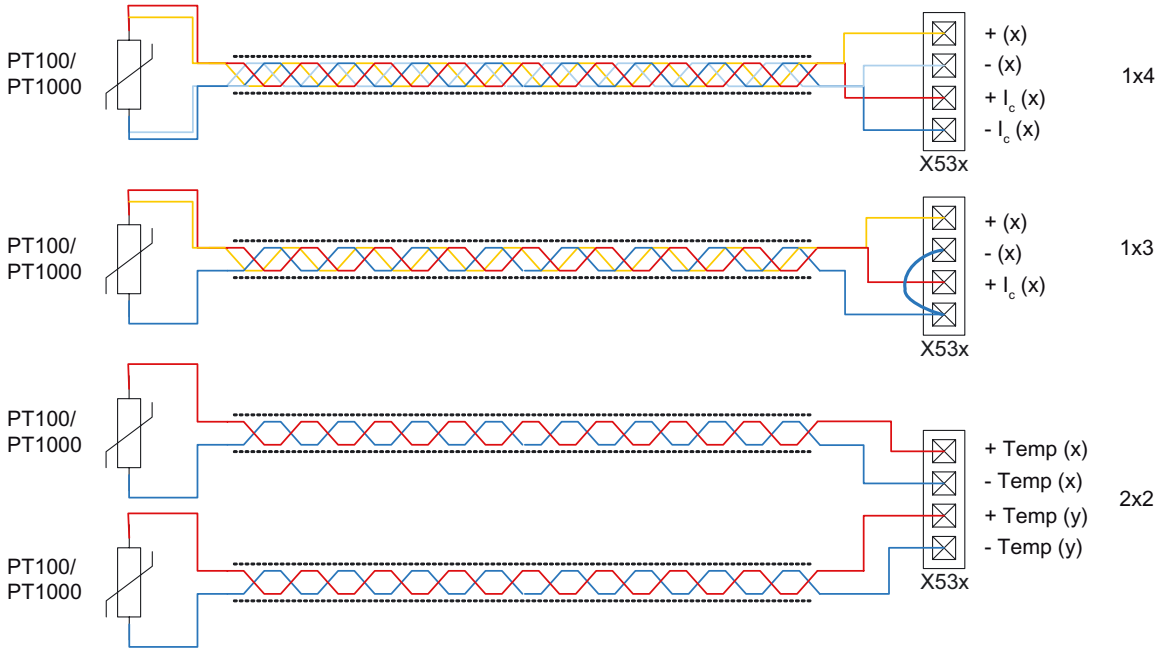


Figure 4-35 Connecting a PT100/PT1000 with 2x2, 3 and 4-wires to the temperature sensor inputs X53x of Terminal Module TM150

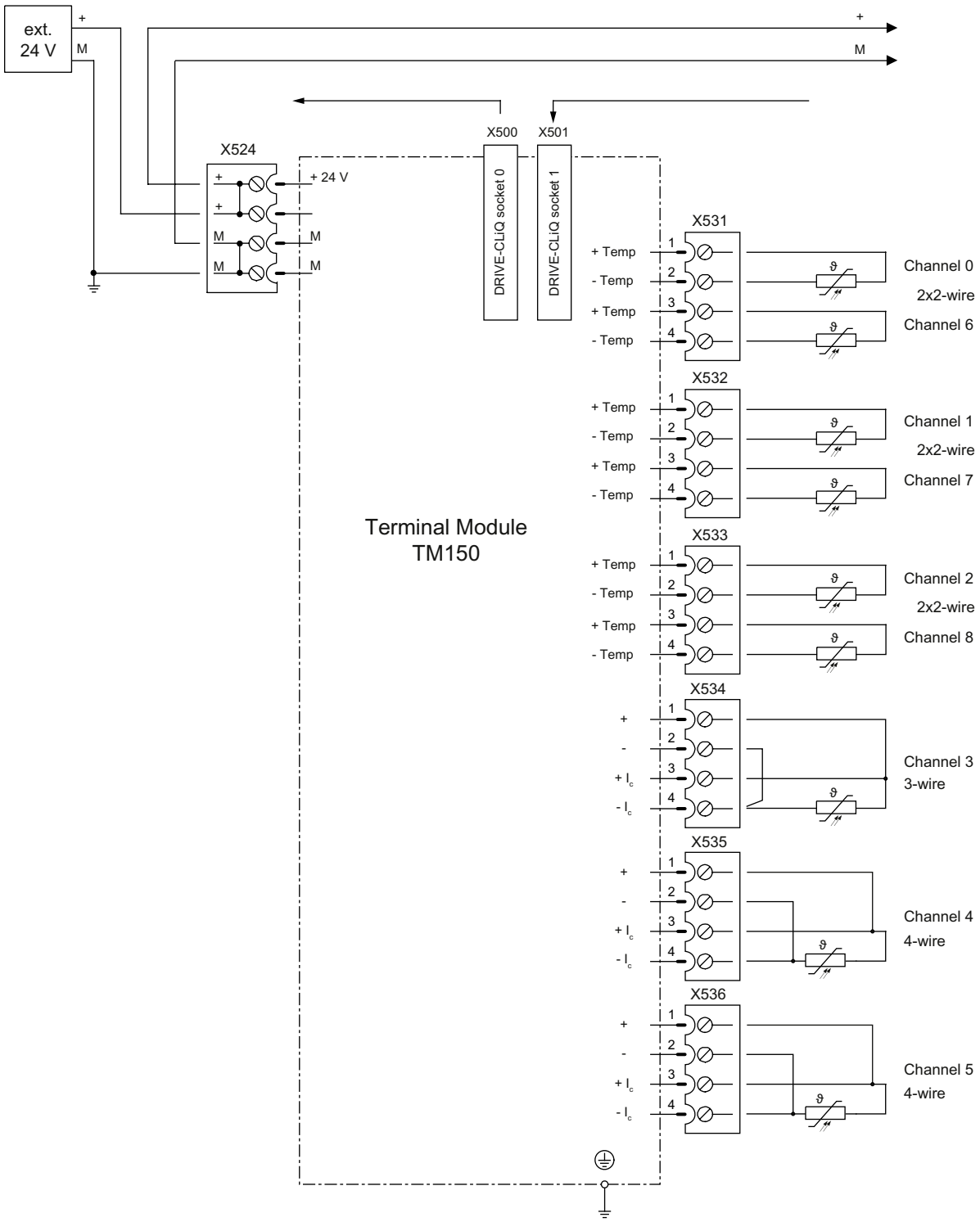


Figure 4-36 Connection example for a Terminal Module TM150

4.11.23 SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50)

4.11.23.1 Description

The SMC30 Sensor Module is used for determining the actual motor speed. The signals emitted by the rotary pulse encoder are converted here and made available to the closed-loop controller via the DRIVE-CLiQ interface for evaluation purposes.

In conjunction with SINAMICS G150 the following encoders can be connected to the SMC30 Sensor Module:

- TTL encoder
- HTL encoder
- KTY or PTC temperature sensor

Table 4- 62 Connectable encoders with supply voltage

Encoder type	X520 (SUB-D)	X521 (terminal)	X531 (terminal)	Open-circuit monitoring	Remote sense
HTL bipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
HTL unipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
TTL bipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
TTL bipolar 5 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	To X520
TTL unipolar	No	No	No	No	No

Table 4- 63 Maximum signal cable lengths

Encoder type	Maximum signal cable length in m
TTL	100
HTL unipolar	100
HTL bipolar	300

Note

Prefer a bipolar connection

Because the physical transmission media is more robust, the bipolar connection should always be used for HTL encoders. The unipolar connection should only be used if the encoder type does not output push-pull signals.

Note

Only connect one encoder system

Only one encoder system may be connected to the encoder module, either at X520 or at X521/X531. The corresponding unused interface must not be used.

Table 4- 64 Specification of measuring systems that can be connected

Parameter	Designation	Threshold [4]	Min.	Max.	Unit
High signal level (TTL bipolar at X520 or X521/X531) [1]	U_{Hdiff}		2	5	V
Low signal level (TTL bipolar to X520 or X521/X531) [1]	U_{Ldiff}		-5	-2	V
High signal level (HTL unipolar)	U_H [4]	High	17	V_{CC}	V
		Low	10	V_{CC}	V
Low signal level (HTL unipolar)	U_L [4]	High	0	7	V
		Low	0	2	V
High signal level (HTL bipolar) [2]	U_{Hdiff}		3	V_{CC}	V
Low signal level (HTL bipolar) [2]	U_{Ldiff}		$-V_{CC}$	-3	V
Signal frequency	f_S		-	300	kHz
Edge spacing	t_{min}		100	-	ns
Zero pulse inactive time (before and after A=B=high)	t_{Lo}		640	$(t_{ALo\text{-}BHi} - t_{Hi})/2$ [3]	ns
Zero pulse active time (while A=B=high and beyond)	t_{Hi}		640	$t_{ALo\text{-}BHi} - 2 \times t_{Lo}$ [3]	ns

[1] Other signal levels according to the RS 422 standard.

[2] The absolute level of the individual signals varies between 0 V and V_{CC} of the measuring system.

[3] $t_{ALo\text{-}BHi}$ is not a specified value, but is the time between the falling edge of track A and the next but one rising edge of track B.

[4] The threshold can be set via p0405.04 (switching threshold); the setting on delivery is "Low."

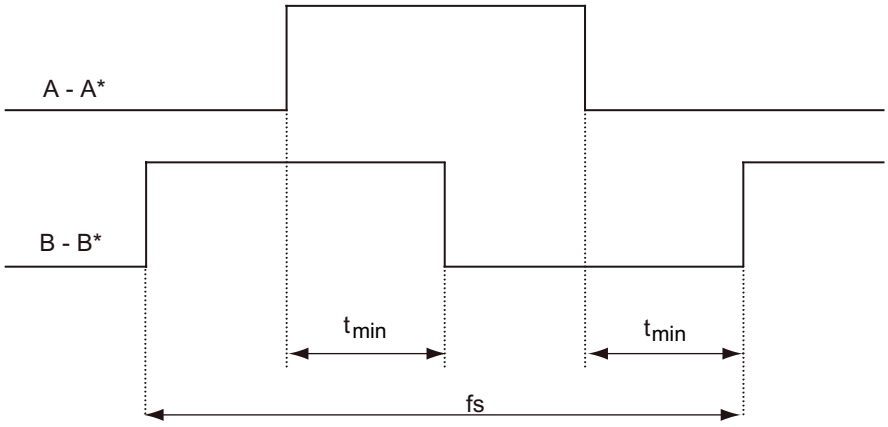


Figure 4-37 Signal characteristic of the A and B track between two edges: time between two edges with pulse encoders

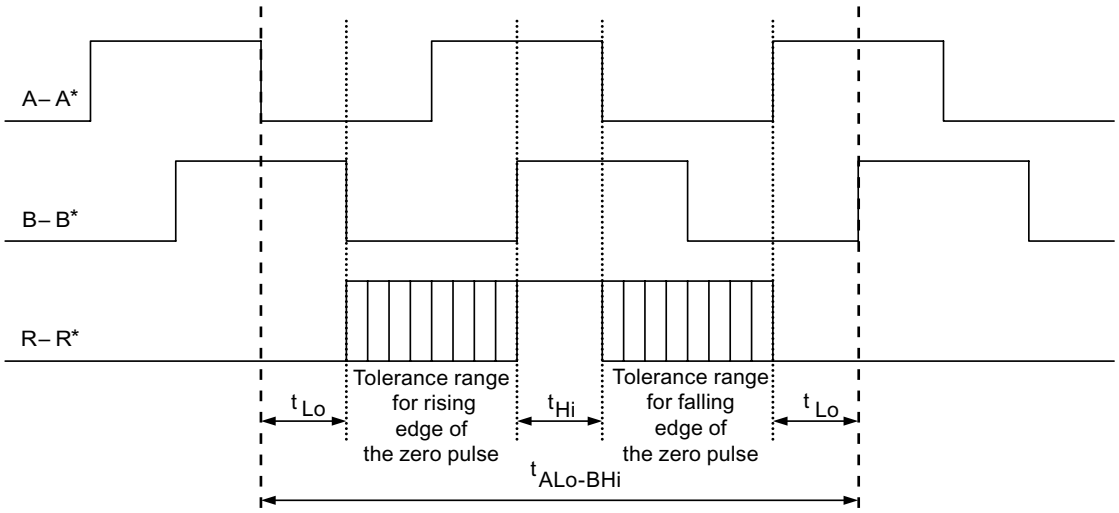


Figure 4-38 Position of the zero pulse to the track signals

For encoders with a 5-V supply at X521/X531, the cable length is dependent on the encoder current (this applies cable cross-sections of 0.5 mm²):

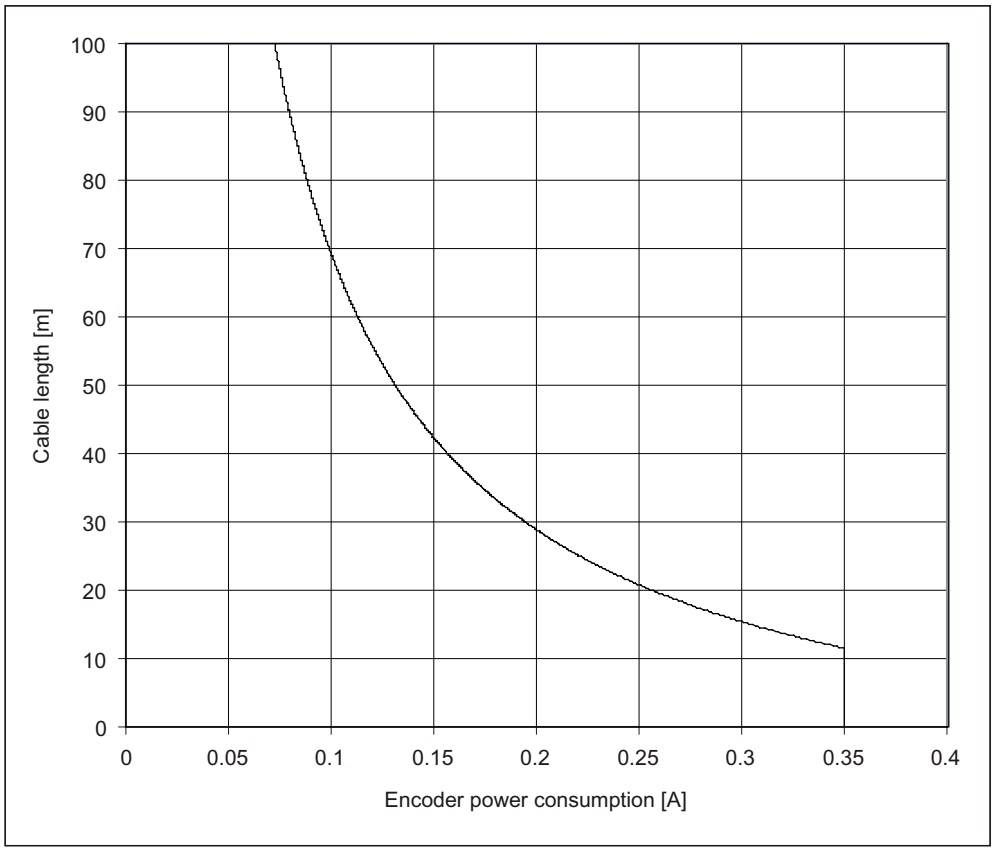


Figure 4-39 Signal cable length as a function of the encoder current consumption

For encoders without Remote Sense the permissible cable length is restricted to 100 m (reason: the voltage drop depends on the cable length and the encoder current).

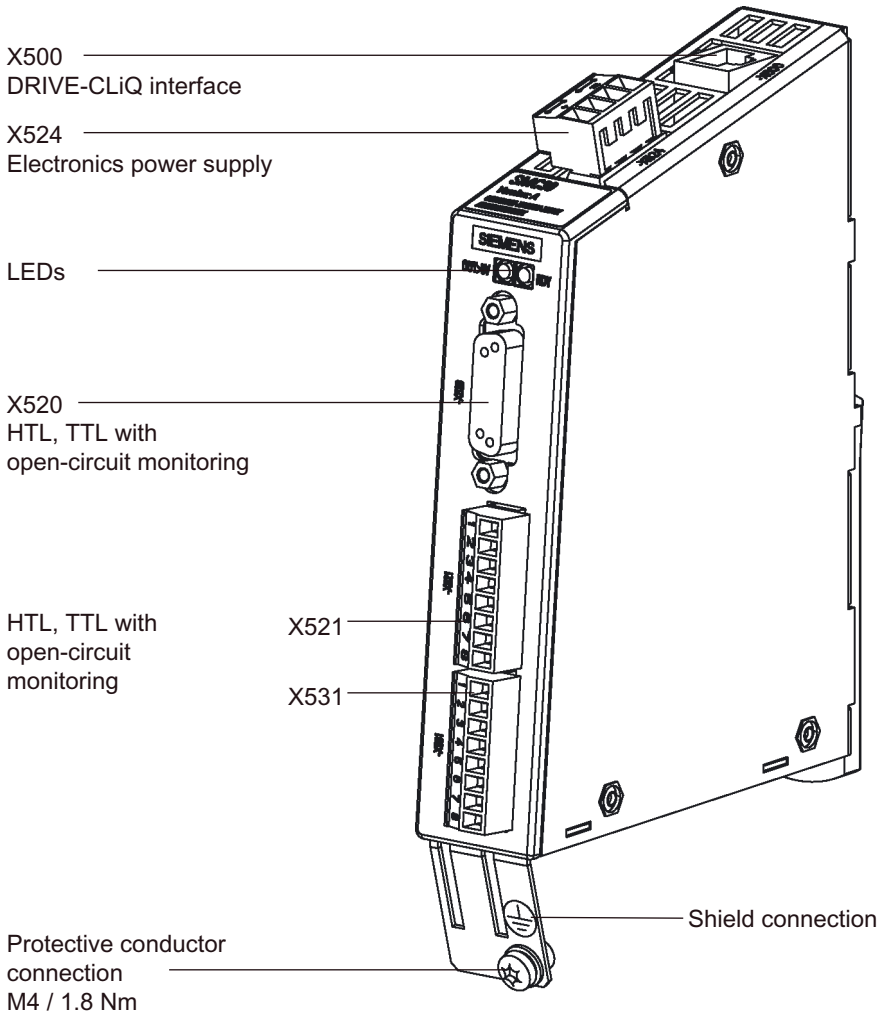
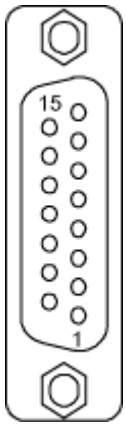


Figure 4-40 SMC30 Sensor Module

4.11.23.2 Connection

X520: Encoder connection 1 for HTL/TTL encoder with open-circuit monitoring

Table 4- 65 Encoder connection X520

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	+Temp	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	2	Reserved, do not use	
	3	Reserved, do not use	
	4	P encoder 5 V/24 V	Encoder supply
	5	P encoder 5 V/24 V	Encoder supply
	6	P sense	Sense input encoder power supply
	7	M encoder (M)	Ground for encoder power supply
	8	-Temp	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	9	M sense	Ground sense input
	10	R	Reference signal R
	11	R*	Inverse reference signal R
	12	B*	Inverse incremental signal B
	13	B	Incremental signal B
	14	A*	Inverse incremental signal A
	15	A	Incremental signal A
Connector type: 15-pin Sub-D socket			

⚠ DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp."

If these instructions are not complied with, there is a risk of electric shock!

NOTICE

Set encoder power supply

The encoder power supply can be parameterized to 5 V or 24 V. The encoder may be destroyed if you enter the wrong parameter.

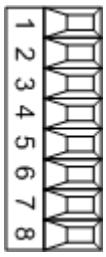
Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity.
If the sensor is connected with the incorrect polarity, it cannot detect if a motor overheats.

X521 / X531: Encoder connection 2 for HTL/TTL encoder with open-circuit monitoring

Table 4- 66 Encoder connection X521

	Terminal	Signal name	Technical data
	1	A	Incremental signal A
	2	A*	Inverse incremental signal A
	3	B	Incremental signal B
	4	B*	Inverse incremental signal B
	5	R	Reference signal R
	6	R*	Inverse reference signal R
	7	CTRL	Control signal
	8	M	Ground via inductivity

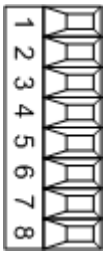
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Note

Operation of unipolar HTL encoders

When unipolar HTL encoders are used, A*, B*, and R* on the terminal block must be jumpered with M_Encoder (X531).

Table 4- 67 Encoder connection X531

	Terminal	Signal name	Technical data
	1	P encoder 5 V/24 V	Encoder supply
	2	M encoder	Ground for encoder power supply
	3	-Temp	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	4	+Temp	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	Reserved, do not use	
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

⚠ DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp."

If these instructions are not complied with, there is a risk of electric shock!

Note

Cable shield for the encoder connection via terminals

Note that when the encoder is connected via terminals, the cable shield must be applied to the module.

NOTICE

Risk of equalization currents via the electronics ground

Make sure there is no electrical connection between the encoder system housing and the signal lines and the sensor system electronics.
If this is not observed, the system may not achieve the necessary noise immunity (risk of equalizing current via electronic ground).

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity.
If the sensor is connected with the incorrect polarity, it cannot detect if a motor overheats.

4.11.23.3 Connection examples

Connection example 1: HTL encoder, bipolar, without zero marker -> p0405 = 9 (hex)

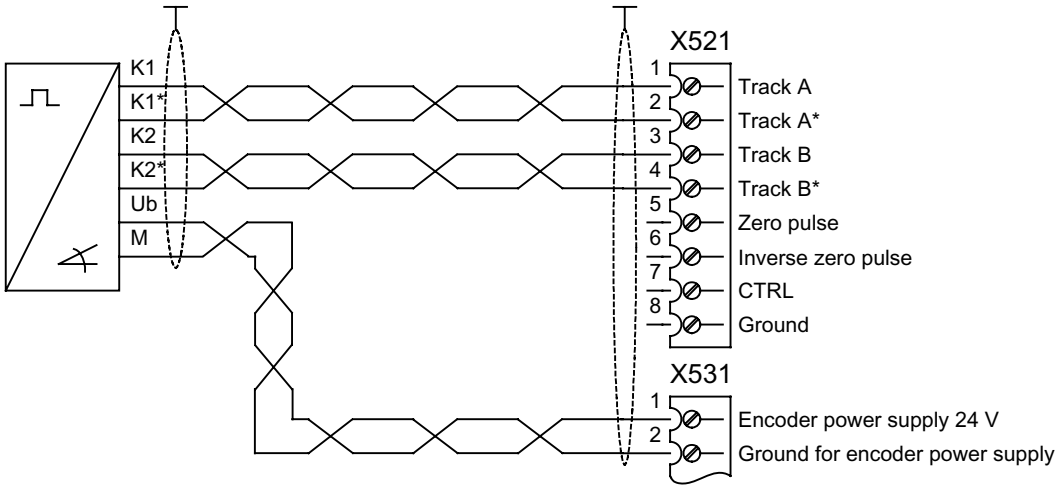


Figure 4-41 Connection example 1: HTL encoder, bipolar, without zero marker

Connection example 2: TTL encoder, unipolar, without zero marker -> p0405 = A (hex)

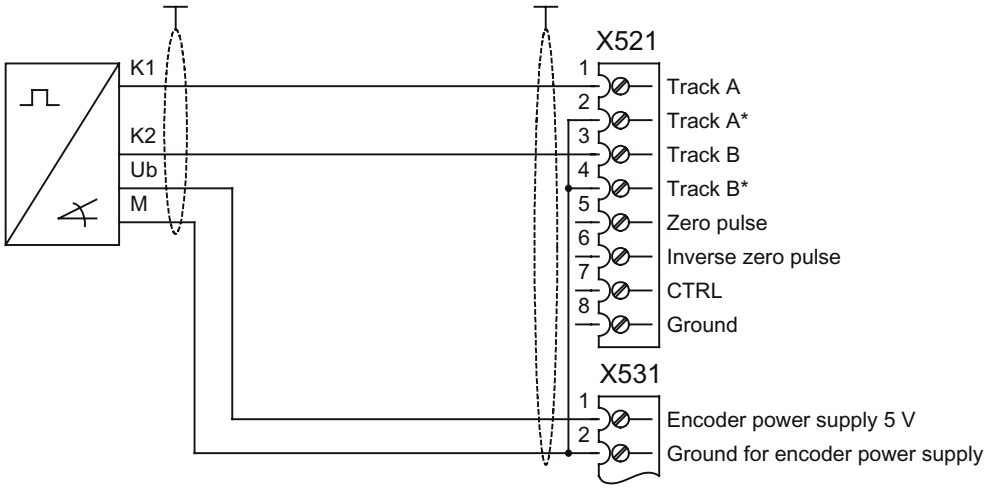


Figure 4-42 Connection example 2: TTL encoder, unipolar, without zero marker

4.11.24 Voltage Sensing Module for determining the actual motor speed and the phase angle (option K51)

Description

VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module is used to operate a permanent-magnet synchronous machine without an encoder with the requirement for switching to a machine which is already rotating (capture function).

The terminals on the Voltage Sensing Module (-B51) are pre-assigned in the factory and must not be changed by the customer.

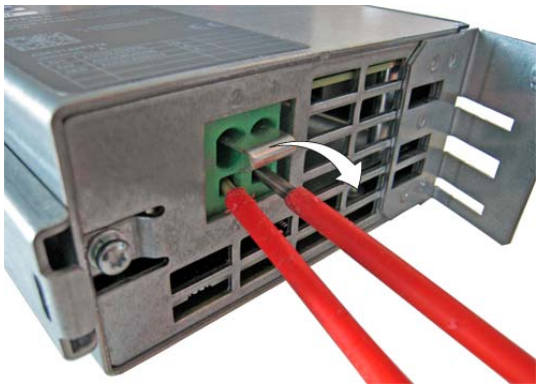
To commission the function, the permanent-field synchronous machine without encoder must be input and "Flying restart" activated with p1200.

Removing the connector jumper in the VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module

The connector jumper in terminal X530 on the underside of the component must be removed if you are using the cabinet unit on an ungrounded line supply (IT system) on the Voltage Sensing Module (VSM10).

Use two screwdrivers or a suitable tool in order to relieve the holding springs in the terminal and then withdraw the connector jumper.

Terminal X530 with connector jumper



Relieve the springs and withdraw the connector jumper

4.11.25 Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52)

Description

With option K50, an SMC30 Sensor Module is included in the cabinet unit. The additional SMC30 Sensor Module enables reliable actual-value acquisition when using Safety Integrated Extended Functions (requires a license: option K01).

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

A detailed description of the full functionality and handling of the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.26 Customer terminal block TM31 (option G60)

Description

With option G60, a TM31 interface module (customer terminal block –A60) is already installed in the cabinet unit. This provides the following interfaces:

- 8 digital inputs
- 4 bidirectional digital inputs/outputs
- 2 relay outputs with changeover contact
- 2 analog inputs
- 2 analog outputs
- 1 temperature sensor input (KTY84-130/PTC)

The description of the interfaces is given in the Chapter "Electrical Installation/Signal connections"

Integration of the interfaces takes place using pre-interconnections prepared in the factory, which can be selected during commissioning.

4.11.27 Additional customer terminal block TM31 (option G61)

Description

With option G60, a TM31 interface module (customer terminal block –A60) is already installed in the cabinet unit. A second module (–A61) provides the following additional digital and analog inputs/outputs in the drive system:

- 8 digital inputs
- 4 bidirectional digital inputs/outputs
- 2 relay outputs with changeover contact
- 2 analog inputs
- 2 analog outputs
- 1 temperature sensor input (KTY84-130/PTC)

The second TM31 must be installed on the system side. Default settings are not provided.

4.11.28 Terminal Board TB30 (option G62)

Description

Figure 4-43 TB30 Terminal Board

The TB30 Terminal Board supports the addition of digital inputs/digital outputs and analog inputs/analog outputs to the Control Unit.

The following are located on the TB30 Terminal Board:

- Power supply for digital inputs/digital outputs
- 4 digital inputs
- 4 digital outputs
- 2 analog inputs
- 2 analog outputs

The TB30 Terminal Board plugs into the option slot on the Control Unit.

A shield connection for the signal cable shield is located on the Control Unit.

NOTICE
Remove or insert Option Board only in a de-energized state
The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the Control Unit and Option Board are disconnected from the power supply.

The module is inserted in the option slot of the Control Unit at the factory.

Interface overview

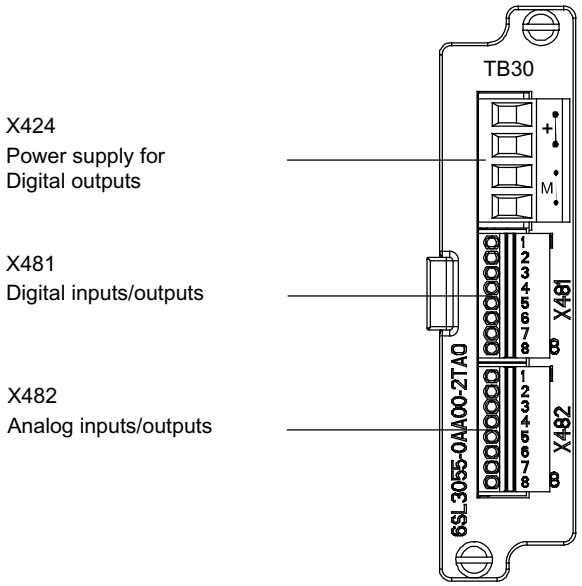


Figure 4-44 TB30 terminal board interface overview

Connection overview

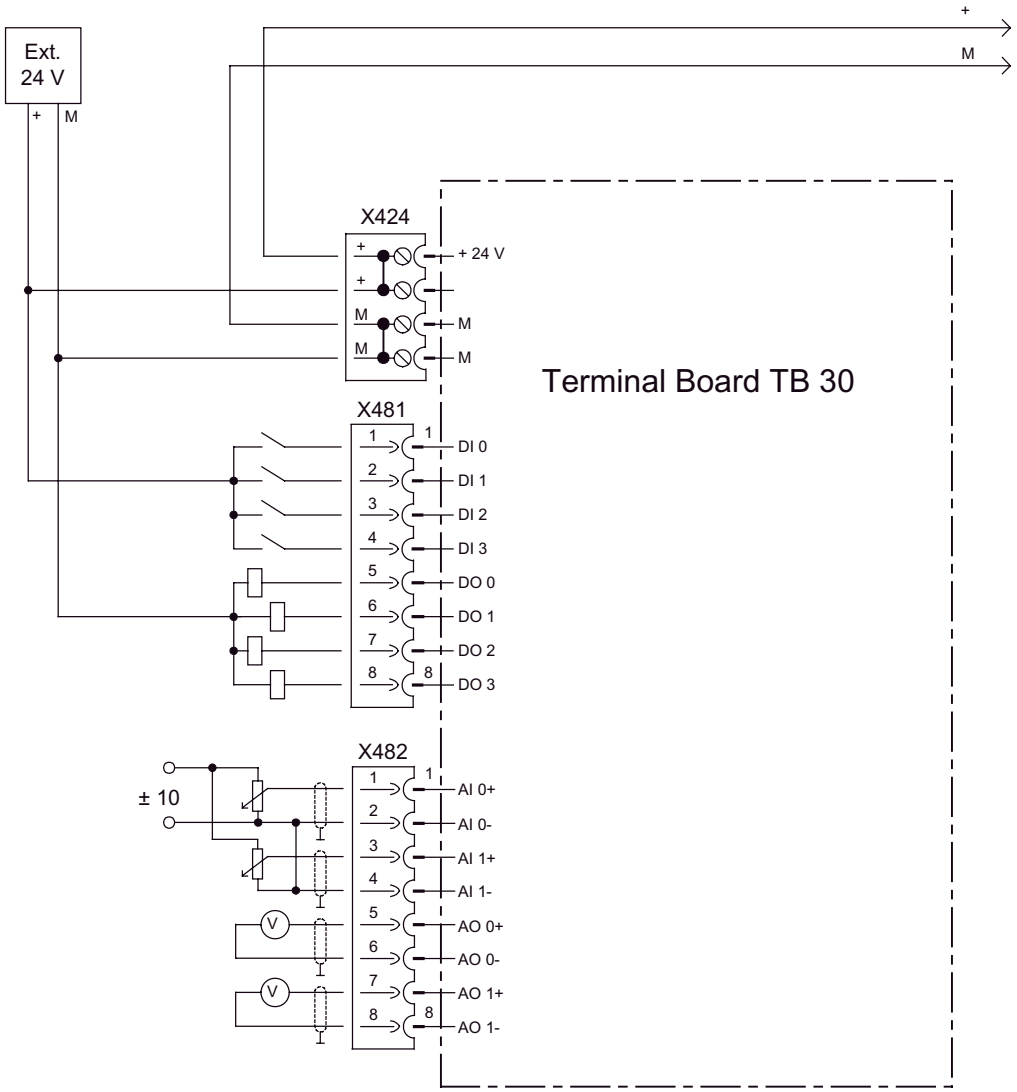
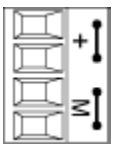


Figure 4-45 Connection overview TB30 Terminal Board

X424 power supply, digital outputs

Table 4- 68 Terminal block X424

	Terminal	Function	Technical data
	+	Power supply	Voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 to 28.8 V) Current consumption: Max. 4 A (per digital output max. 0.5 A) Max. current via jumper in connector: 20 A at 55°C
	+	Power supply	
	M	Ground	
	M	Ground	

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm^2

Note

Looping through the supply voltage

The two "+" and "M" terminals are jumpered in the connector. This ensures that the supply voltage is looped through.

This power supply is required for the digital outputs only. The electronics power supply and the power supply for the analog inputs/outputs are drawn via the option slot of the Control Unit.

Note

Electrical isolation

The power supply of the digital outputs and the electronic power supply of the Control Unit are isolated.

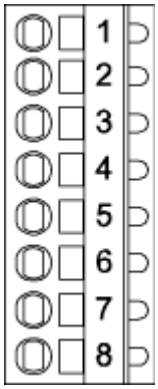
Note

Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X481 Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 69 Terminal block X481

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 0	Voltage: - 3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 10 mA at 24 V DC Ground reference: X424. M Input delay: - for "0" to "1": 20 µs - for "1" to "0": 100 µs Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 ... 30 V Low level: -3 ... 5 V
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	DO 0	Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Ground reference: X424.M Continued-short-circuit-proof Output delay: - for "0" to "1": Typ. 150 µs at 0.5 A resistive load (500 µs maximum) - For "1" to "0": Typically 50 µs at 0.5 A ohmic load
	6	DO 1	
	7	DO 2	
	8	DO 3	

Max. connectable cross-section: 0.5 mm^2

[1] DI: digital input, DO: Digital output

Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as "low".

The power supply and the digital inputs/outputs are isolated from the Control Unit.

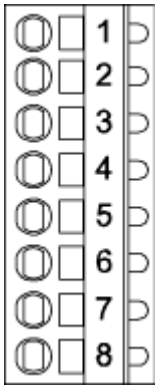
Note

Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X482 Analog inputs/outputs

Table 4- 70 Terminal block X482

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	AI 0+	Analog inputs (AI) Voltage: -10 ... +10 V internal resistance: 65 kΩ Resolution: 13 bits + sign
	2	AI 0-	
	3	AI 1+	
	4	AI 1-	
	5	AO 0+	Analog outputs (AO) Voltage range: -10 ... +10 V Load current: max. -3 to +3 mA Resolution: 11 bit + sign Continued-short-circuit-proof
	6	AO 0-	
	7	AO 1+	
	8	AO 1-	

Max. connectable cross-section: 0.5 mm^2

[1] AI: analog input, AO: Analog output

Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as approximately "0 V".

The power supply of the analog inputs/outputs is drawn via the option slot of the Control Unit and not via X424.

The shield is connected to the Control Unit.

NOTICE
Do not infringe common-mode range The common-mode range must not be infringed. The analog differential voltage signals can have a maximum offset voltage of +/-30 V with respect to the ground potential. If the range is infringed, incorrect results may occur during analog/digital conversion.

Shield connection of the TB30 on the Control Unit

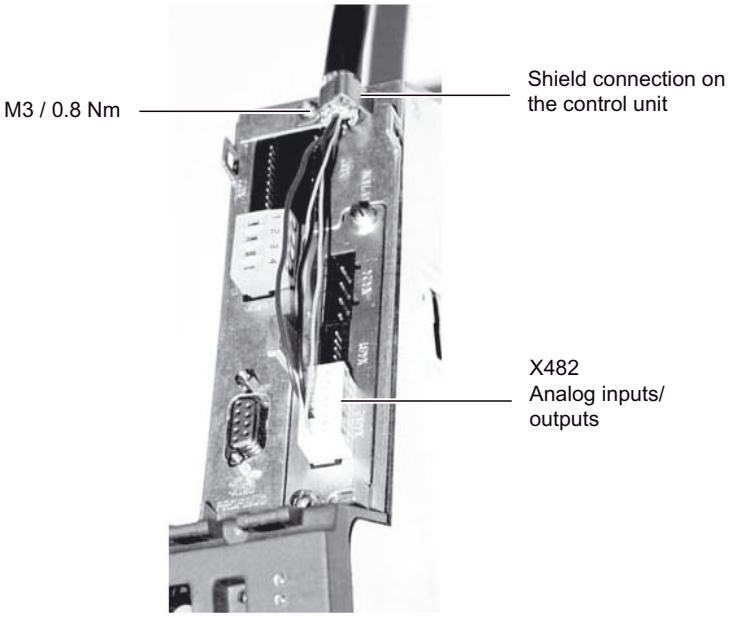


Figure 4-46 TB30 shield connection

The permissible bending radii for the cables must not be exceeded when the cables are being installed.

4.11.29 Safety license for 1 axis (option K01)

Description

The Safety Integrated Basic functions do not require a license. A license is, however, required for each axis with safety functions in the case of Safety Integrated Extended functions. It is irrelevant which safety functions are used and how many.

With option K01, the Safety license for 1 axis is included on the CompactFlash Card and activated.

Licenses

The required license can optionally be ordered with the CompactFlash card.

Subsequent licensing is realized in the Internet using the "WEB License Manager" by generating a license key:
http://www.siemens.com/automation/license

Activation

The associated license key is entered into parameter p9920 in the ASCII code. The license key can be activated via parameter p9921=1.

Diagnostics

An insufficient license is indicated via the following alarm and LED:

- Alarm A13000 → License not sufficient
- LED READY → Flashes green/red at 0.5 Hz

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.30 Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74)

Description

The auxiliary power supply provides the auxiliary voltages required for external control circuits of the cabinet unit on the plant side.

Adapting the auxiliary power supply (-T10)

A transformer is installed in the Lne Connection Module (-T10) to produce the auxiliary voltages of the cabinet unit. The location of the transformer is indicated in the layout diagrams supplied.

When delivered, the taps are always set to the highest level. The line-side terminals of the transformer may need to be reconnected according to the existing line voltage.

The tables below show the appropriate transformer setting for the control power supply based on the existing line voltage.

Table 4- 71 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (380 to 480 V AC, 3 phase)

Line voltage range	Tap	Taps of the matching transformer (-T10) LH1 – LH2
342 ... 390 V	380 V	1 - 2
391 ... 410 V	400 V	1 – 3
411 ... 430 V	415 V	1 – 4
431 ... 450 V	440 V	1 – 5
451 ... 470 V	460 V	1 – 6
471 ... 528 V	480 V	1 – 7

Table 4- 72 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (500 to 600 V AC, 3 phase)

Line voltage range	Tap	Taps of the matching transformer (-T10) LH1 – LH2
450 ... 515 V	500 V	1 - 8
516 ... 540 V	525 V	1 – 9
541 ... 560 V	550 V	1 – 10
561 ... 590 V	575 V	1 – 11
591 ... 670 V	600 V	1 – 12

Table 4- 73 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (660 to 690 V AC, 3 phase)

Line voltage range	Tap	Adaptation transformer taps (-T10) LH1 – LH2
591 ... 630 V	600 V	1 – 12
631 ... 680 V	660 V	1 – 14, terminals 12 and 13 are jumpered
681 ... 759 V	690 V	1 – 15, terminals 12 and 13 are jumpered

Note

Consequences of unmatched transformer

If the terminals are not reconnected according to the actual line voltage, the internal power supply will not be correct.

4.11.31 Terminal module for activation of "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1" (option K82)

Description

Option K82 (terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1") is used for isolated activation via a variable control-voltage range of the safety functions already present in the standard version, which can also be used without option K82.

Use option K82 to activate the following Safety Integrated functions (terminology according to EN 61800-5-2):

- Safe torque off (STO)
- Safe Stop 1 (SS1, time-controlled)

Note

Standards requirements fulfilled

The integrated safety functions, starting from the Safety Integrated (SI) input terminals of the SINAMICS components (Control Unit, Motor Module), satisfy the requirements according to EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) for Performance Level (PL) d and EN 61508 SIL 2.

In combination with option K82, the requirements specified in EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1 as well as in EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) are satisfied for Performance Level (PL) d and EN 61508 SIL 2.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.32 Terminal Module TM54F (option K87)

Figure 4-47 TM54F Terminal Module (option K87)

Description

The TM54F Terminal Module is a terminal expansion module with safe digital inputs and outputs for controlling the Safety Integrated Extended functions of SINAMICS.

The TM54F is directly connected to a Control Unit via DRIVE-CLiQ.

TM54F features the following interfaces:

Table 4- 74 Overview of the TM54F interfaces

Type	Quantity
Fail-safe digital outputs (F-DO)	4
Fail-safe digital inputs (F-DI)	10
Sensor[1] power supplies, dynamic response supported [2]	2
Sensor[1] power supply, no dynamic response	1
Digital inputs to check F_DO for a test stop	4

[1] Sensors: Fail-safe devices to issue commands and sense, for example, emergency stop pushbuttons and safety locks, position switches and light arrays/light curtains.

[2] Dynamic response: The sensor power supply is switched on and off by the TM54F when the forced dormant error detection is active for the sensors, cable routing, and the evaluation electronics.

The TM54F provides 4 fail-safe digital outputs and 10 fail-safe digital inputs. A fail-safe digital output consists of a 24 V DC switching output, a ground switching output, and a digital input for checking the switching state. A fail-safe digital input comprises two digital inputs.

Note

Rated values of the F-DO

The rated values of the F-DO meet the requirements of EN 61131-2 for digital DC outputs with 0.5 A rated current.

The operating ranges of the F-DI meet the requirements of EN 61131-2 for Type 1 digital inputs.

Note

Shielding cables

Please note that the F-DIs must take the form of shielded cables if they are > 30 m in length.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

A detailed description of the full functionality and handling of the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.33 Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC (option K88)

Description

Safe Brake Control (SBC) is a safety function that is used in safety-related applications. In the no-current state, the brake acts on the motor of the drive using spring force. The brake is released (opened) when current flows through it (=low active).

The Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC is installed in the cabinet unit in the factory. An infeed is connected to terminal -X12 on the Safe Brake Adapter for the power supply. For control, a connection is established between the Safe Brake Adapter and the Control Interface Module using a cable harness installed in the factory.

For controlling the brake, a connection must be established on site between terminal -X14 on the Safe Brake Adapter and the rectifier of the brake. Direct connection of AC brakes is not permissible.

⚠ WARNING

Equipment fault caused by connection of a 24 V DC brake

If a 24 V DC brake is connected to option K88, Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC, on site then this can damage the Safe Brake Adapter. This can result in the following undesirable effects:

- Closing the brake is not displayed on the LEDS.
- The fuse is ruptured.
- The contact service life of the relay is reduced.

⚠ WARNING

Maximum cable length of the brake control

The maximum permissible cable length of 300 m between the Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC and the brake must be observed. To accurately calculate the maximum cable length, see the SINAMICS Low Voltage Engineering Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Fast de-energization

Some brake rectifier types are equipped with two additional connections for switching the brake load on the DC side. This allows the brake coil to be quickly de-energized, i.e. braking starts earlier.

The Safe Brake Adapter supports such quick de-energization using the two additional connections -X15:1 and -X15:2. This function does not belong to safe brake control.

Notes

Note

Replacement fuses

The order numbers for spare fuses can be taken from the spare parts list supplied.

Note

Standards requirements fulfilled

The integrated safety functions, starting from the Safety Integrated (SI) input terminals of the SINAMICS components (Control Unit, Motor Module), satisfy the requirements according to EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL2.

With the Safe Brake Adapter (option K88), the requirements specified in EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN954-1) as well as for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL 2 are fulfilled.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

A detailed description of the full functionality and handling of the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.11.34 Control Unit CU320-2 PN (option K95)

With Option K95, the cabinet unit contains a CU320-2 PN control unit, which handles the communication and open-loop/closed-loop control functions.

A PROFINET interface is available for higher-level communication.

Connection overview

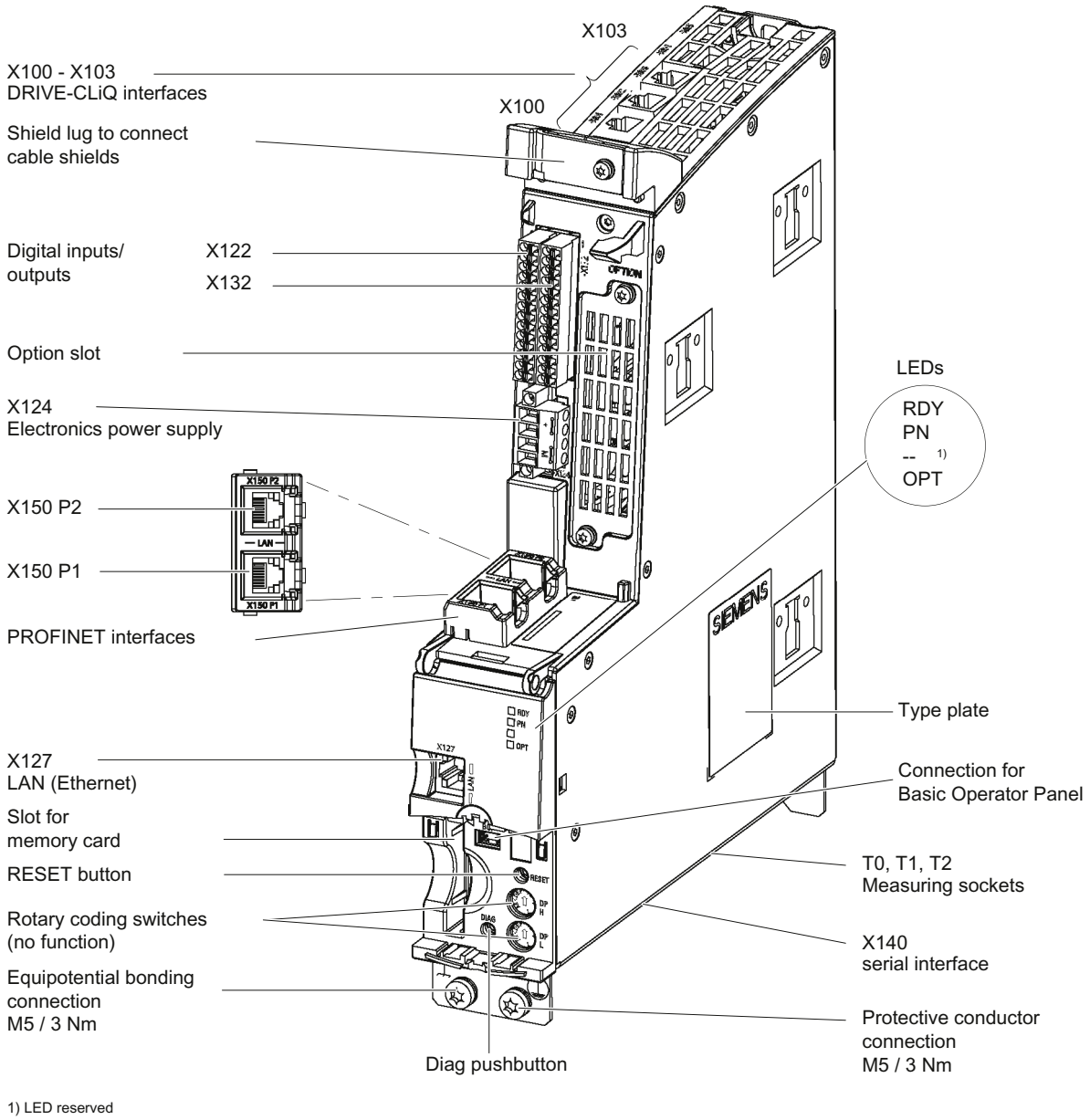


Figure 4-48 Connection overview of CU320-2 PN Control Unit (without cover)

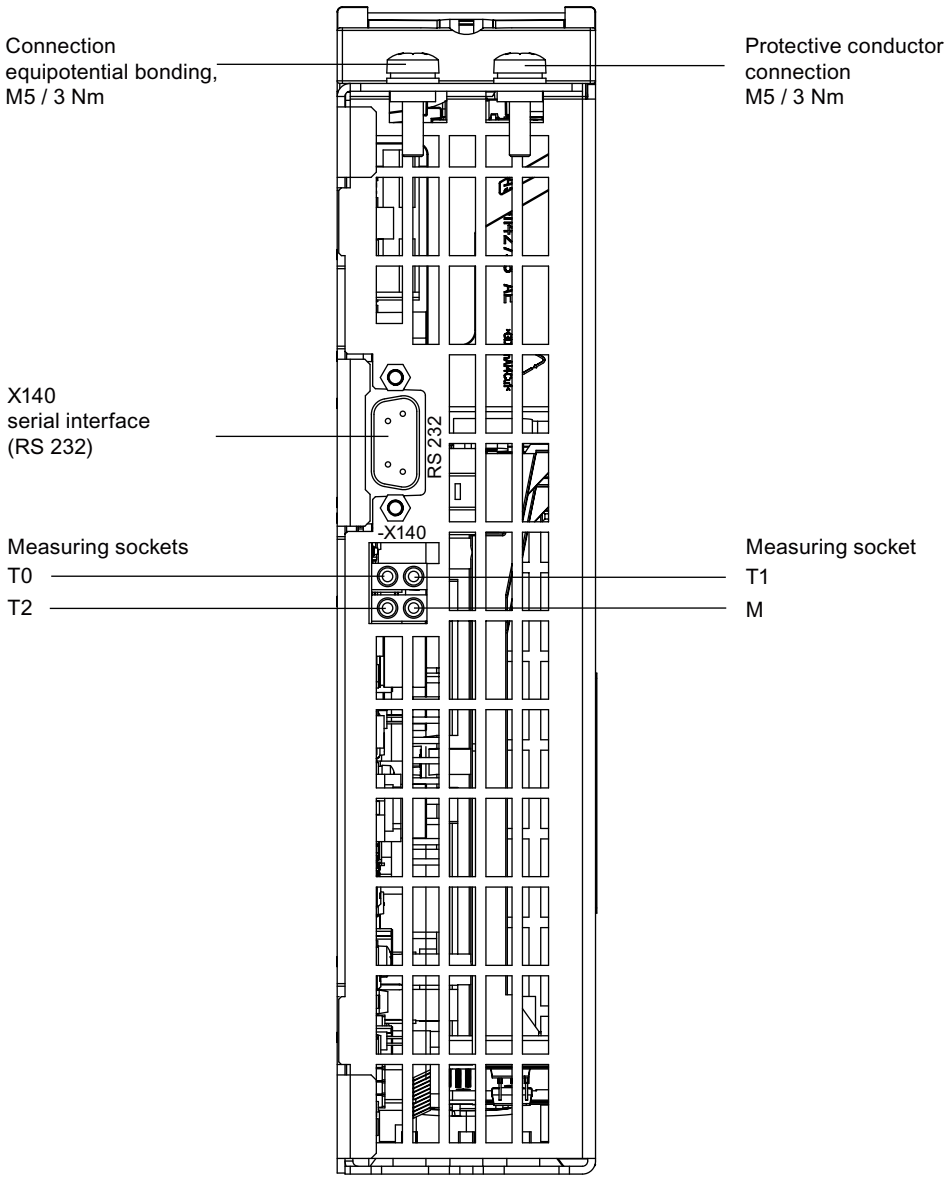


Figure 4-49 Interface X140 and measuring sockets T0 to T2 - CU320-2 PN (view from below)

NOTICE
Remove or insert CompactFlash card only in a voltage-free state
The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed when the Control Unit is in a no-voltage condition.
Non-compliance can result in a loss of data during operation and possibly a plant standstill.

NOTICE
Observe ESD regulations The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

NOTICE
Remove or insert Option Board only in a de-energized state The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the Control Unit and Option Board are disconnected from the power supply.

Connection example

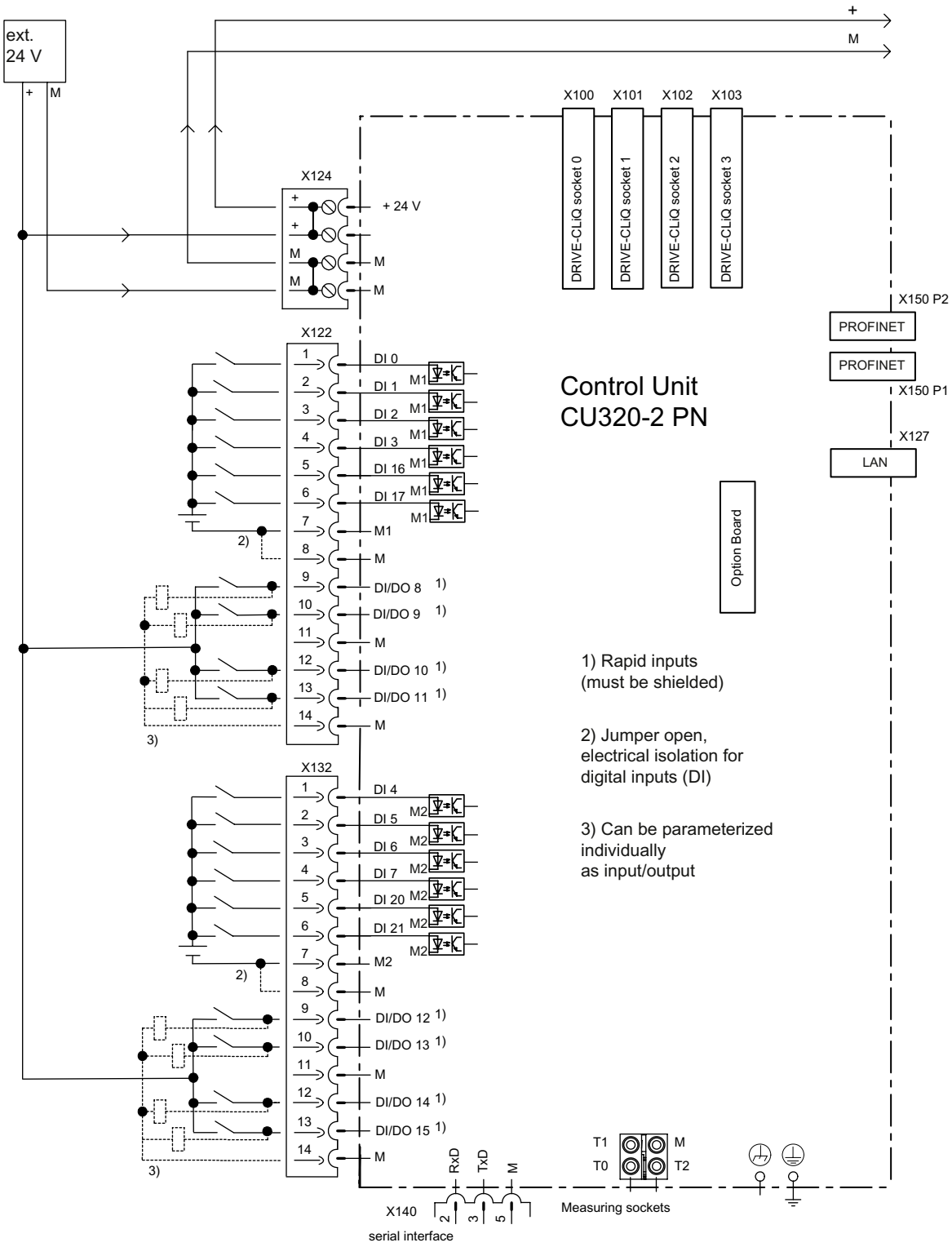


Figure 4-50 Connection example, CU320-2 PN

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

In the circuit example, the power for the digital inputs (terminals -X122 and -X132) is supplied from the internal 24 V supply of the Control Unit (terminal -X124).

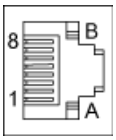
The two groups of digital inputs (optocoupler inputs) each have a common reference potential (ground reference M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the ground references M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is not supplied from the internal 24 V supply (terminal -X124), the jumper between grounds M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed to avoid potential current loops. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 and M2.

The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

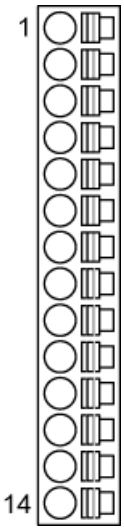
X100 to X103: DRIVE-CLiQ interface

Table 4- 75 DRIVE-CLiQ interface X100 – X103

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	A	+ (24 V)	Power supply
	B	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Connector type: RJ45 socket Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) Order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0			

X122: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 76 Terminal block X122

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical specifications
	1	DI 0	Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Electrical isolation: reference potential is terminal M1 Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 50 µs H -> L: approx. 150 µs
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	DI 16	
	6	DI 17	
	7	M1	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Ground
	9	DI/DO 8	**As input:** Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V DI/DO 8, 9, 10, and 11 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 5 µs H -> L: approx. 50 µs **As output:** Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA, continued-short-circuit-proof Output delay (typ./max.): [3] for "0" -> "1": 150 µs/400 µs For 1" -> "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 9	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 10	
	13	DI/DO 11	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: Bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground M1: Ground reference

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

[3] Data for: V_{cc}= 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

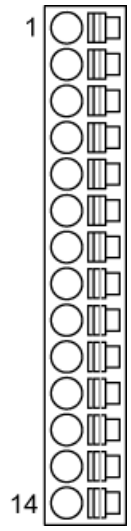
Note

Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X132: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 77 Terminal block X132

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 4	Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Electrical isolation: The reference potential is terminal M2 Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 50 µs H -> L: approx. 150 µs
	2	DI 5	
	3	DI 6	
	4	DI 7	
	5	DI 20	
	6	DI 21	
	7	M2	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Ground
	9	DI/DO 12	**As input:** Voltage: -30 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Level (incl. ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -30 ... +5 V DI/DO 12, 13, 14, and 15 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.): L -> H: approx. 5 µs H -> L: approx. 50 µs **As output:** Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA, continued-short-circuit-proof Output delay (typ./max.): [3] for "0" -> "1": 150 µs/400 µs For 1" -> "0": 75 µs/100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 13	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 14	
	13	DI/DO 15	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: Bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground; M2: Ground reference

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

[3] Data for: V_{cc}= 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

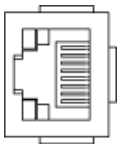
Note

Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X127: LAN (Ethernet)

Table 4- 78 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	TXP	Ethernet transmit data +
	2	TXN	Ethernet transmit data -
	3	RXP	Ethernet receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Ethernet receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: RJ45 socket			

Note

Support during commissioning

The X127 interface supports commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

For diagnostic purposes, the X127 LAN interface features a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

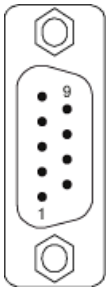
Table 4- 79 LED statuses for the X127 LAN interface

LED	State	Description
Green	On	10 or 100 Mbit link available
	Off	Missing or faulty link
Yellow	On	Sending or receiving
	Off	No activity

X140: serial interface (RS232)

The AOP30 operator panel for operating/parameterizing the device can be connected via the serial interface. The interface is located on the underside of the Control Unit.

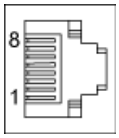
Table 4- 80 Serial interface (RS232) X140

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	2	RxD	Receive data
	3	TxD	Transmit data
	5	Ground	Ground reference
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector			

NOTICE
Connecting cable to the AOP30
The connection cable to AOP30 may only contain the three contacts which are shown in the drawing; a completely allocated cable may not be used.

X150 P1/P2 PROFINET interface

Table 4- 81 X150 P1 and X150 P2 PROFINET

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	RXP	Receive data +
	2	RXN	Receive data -
	3	TXP	Transmit data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	TXN	Transmit data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: RJ45 socket Cable type: PROFINET			

Note

Connection cables

The PROFINET interfaces support Auto MDI(X). It is therefore possible to use both crossover and non-crossover cables to connect the devices.

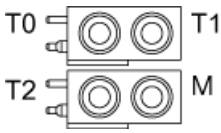
For diagnostic purposes, the two PROFINET interfaces are each equipped with a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

Table 4- 82 LED states on the X150 P1/P2 PROFINET interface

LED	Color	State	Description
Link port	-	Off	Missing or faulty link
	Green	Continuous light	10 or 100 Mbit link available
Activity port	-	Off	No activity
	Yellow	Flashing light	Data is being received or sent at port x

T0, T1, T2: Measuring sockets

Table 4- 83 Measuring sockets T0, T1, T2

	Socket	Function	Technical data
	T0	Measuring socket 0	Voltage: 0 ... 5 V Resolution: 8 bits Load current: max. 3 mA Continued-short-circuit-proof The reference potential is terminal M
	T1	Measuring socket 1	
	T2	Measuring socket 2	
	M	Ground	
The measurement sockets are only suitable for bunch pin plugs with a diameter of 2 mm.			

Note

Support for commissioning and diagnostics

The measuring sockets support commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

The use of the measuring sockets is shown in function diagram FP8134 in the List Manual.

Slot for the CompactFlash card

Figure 4-51 CompactFlash card slot

NOTICE
Remove or insert CompactFlash card only in a voltage-free state
The CompactFlash card may only be removed and inserted when the Control Unit is in a voltage-free state; doing this during operation instead could result in a loss of data and, where applicable, a plant standstill.
The CompactFlash card may only be inserted as shown in the photo above (arrow at top right).

NOTICE
Observe ESD regulations
The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

Note

Returned item

When returning a defective Control Unit, remove the CompactFlash card and keep it for insertion in the replacement unit. This is important otherwise the data on the CompactFlash card (parameters, firmware, licenses, and so on) may be lost.

Note

Only use SIEMENS CompactFlash cards

Please note that only SIEMENS CompactFlash cards can be used to operate the Control Unit.

4.11.35 NAMUR terminal block (option B00)

Description

The terminal block is designed in accordance with the requirements and guidelines defined by the standards association for measurement and control systems in the chemical industry (NAMUR – recommendation NE37), that is, certain device functions are assigned to fixed terminals. The inputs and outputs assigned to the terminals fulfill PELV ("protective extra-low voltage and protective separation") requirements.

The terminal block only contains the necessary functions. Unlike the NAMUR recommendation, optional terminals are not available.

The 24 V DC supply is provided on site via terminals -X2:1-3 (fuse-protected for 1 A in the converter). You must ensure that the PELV safety requirements (protective extra-low voltage with protective separation) are fulfilled.

To monitor the temperature of explosion-proof motors, option B00 features a PTC thermistor release mechanism with PTB approval. Shutdown if limit value is exceeded. The associated PTC sensor is connected to terminal -X3:90, 91.

The terminal block is divided into three sections:

- -X1; -X2: for the power connections
- -X2: for signal cables, which must fulfill PELV requirements with electrical separation.
- -X3: for connecting the motor PTC thermistor detector

Connection

Table 4- 84 Terminal block -X2 – connection 24 V supply

Terminal	Designation	Default	Comment
1	M	Reference conductor	
2	P24 V	24 V DC infeed	Protected internally with fuse (1 A)
3	P24 V	24 V DC outgoing circuit	

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Table 4- 85 Terminal block -X2 – connection NAMUR control terminal block

Terminal	Designation	Default	Comment
10	DI	ON/OFF (dynamic)/ ON/OFF (static)	Effective operation can be coded by a wire jumper on terminal -X400:9;10 (delivery condition: jumper inserted): jumper inserted: ON/OFF (dynamic)/ jumper removed: ON/OFF (static)
11	DI	OFF (dynamic)	
12	DI	Faster	Motorized potentiometer
13	DI	Slower	Motorized potentiometer
14	DI	RESET	Acknowledge error
15	DI	Interlock	OFF2
16	DI	Counterclockwise	"0" signal: CW phase sequence "1" signal: CCW phase sequence
17	DI	Power Disconnection	EMERGENCY OFF circuit "0" signal: Power disconnection "1" signal: No power disconnection
18			
30	DO (COM)	Ready for operation	Relay output (NO contact)
31	DO (NO)		
32	DO (COM)	Motor turning	Relay output (NO contact)
33	DO (NO)		
34	DO (NO)	Fault	Relay output (two-way contact)
35	DO (COM)		
36	DO (NC)		
50/51	AI 0/4-20 mA	Speed setpoint	Default: 4 ... 20 mA
60/61	AO 0/4-20 mA	Motor frequency	Default: 4 ... 20 mA (Preassigned the motor frequency, can be reparameterized for other variables)
62/63	AO 0/4-20 mA	Motor current	Default: 4 ... 20 mA (Preassigned the motor current, can be reparameterized for other variables)

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Table 4- 86 Terminal block -X3 – connection for the motor PTC thermistor sensor

Terminal	Designation	Default	Comment
90/91	AI	Connection for a PTC thermistor	Shutdown if limit value is exceeded.

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Adapting the analog inputs and outputs

If the setting ranges of the analog inputs and outputs are to be changed, the associated interface converters (-T401 / -T402 / -T403) must be set. The corresponding interface converter must be removed for this purpose and the rotary switch on the side ("S1") turned to the corresponding position.

Table 4- 87 Terminal block -X2 – Adaptation of analog inputs and outputs

Terminal	Designation	Item code of interface converter	Settings on rotary switch S1
50/51	AI	T401	2: 0 ... 20 mA 4: 4 ... 20 mA (default setting)
60/61	AO	T402	1: 0 ... 20 mA 2: 4 ... 20 mA (default setting)
62/63	AO	T403	1: 0 ... 20 mA 2: 4 ... 20 mA (default setting)

4.11.36 Separate 24 V DC power supply for NAMUR (option B02)

Description

If the customer cannot provide a separate 24 V DC supply (PELV), this option enables a second power supply to be installed to provide the PELV (terminal assignment as option B00, 24 V infeed at terminal -X1:1,2,3 no longer needed).

4.11.37 Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment for NAMUR (option B03)

Description

If power is to be supplied to a motor fan on site, option B03 provides an uncontrolled fuse-protected (10 A) outgoing section. As soon as the supply voltage is present at the converter input, it is also present at these terminals. The voltage corresponds to the converter input voltage. You must take this into account when configuring the separately driven fan.Connecting

Table 4- 88 Terminal block -X1 – uncontrolled power outlet (10 A) for supplying a separately driven motor fan

Connection

Terminal	Default	Comment
1, 2, 3, PE	Outgoing section for separately driven motor fan	$U = U_{line}$

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

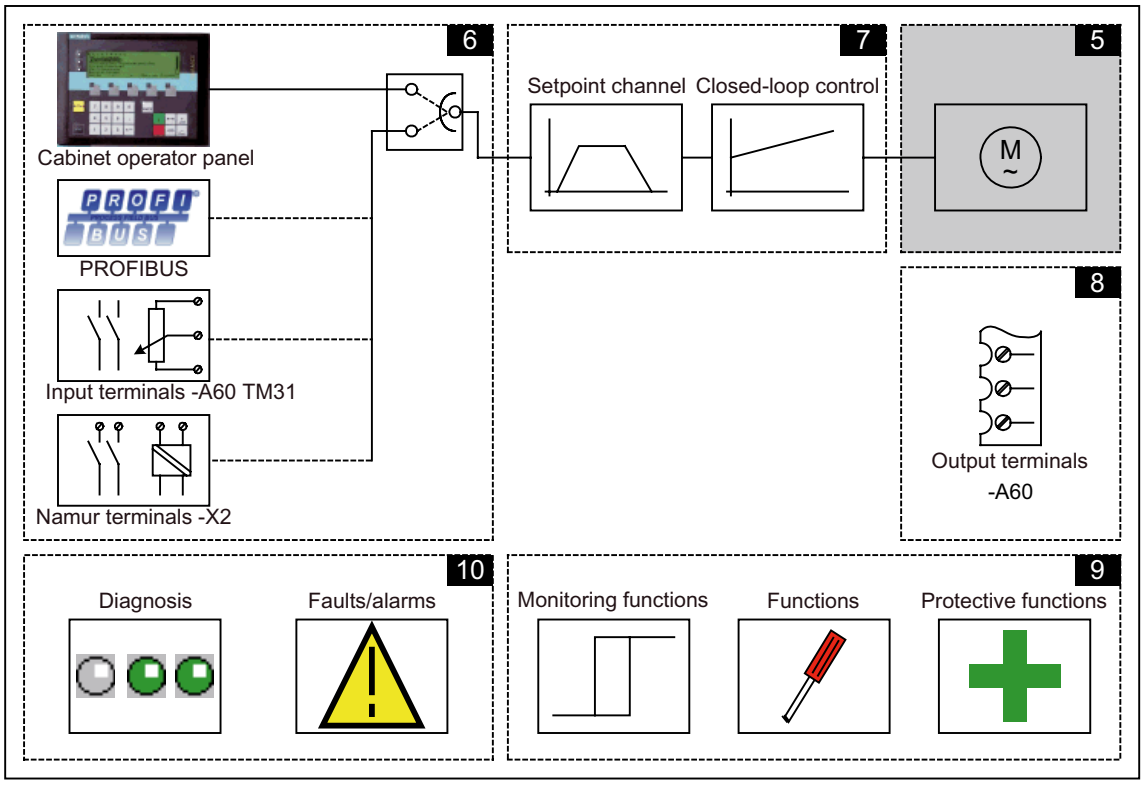
Commissioning

5

5.1 Chapter content

This section provides information on the following:

- An overview of the operator panel functions
- Initial commissioning of the cabinet unit (initialization) with STARTER and AOP30
  - Entering the motor data (drive commissioning)
  - Entering the most important parameters (basic commissioning), concluding with motor identification
- Data backup
- Parameter reset to factory settings



Important information prior to commissioning

The cabinet unit offers a varying number of internal signal interconnections depending on the delivery condition and the options installed. For the converter control to be able to process the signals correctly, several software settings must be made.

During initial power-up of the Control Unit and during first commissioning, parameter macros are executed and the necessary settings made.
The settings are documented in the Appendix.

After initial power-up, first commissioning, and also following a "Parameter reset to factory settings," individual parameter values deviate from the factory settings stated in the List Manual.

5.2 STARTER commissioning tool

Description

You can use the STARTER commissioning tool to configure and commission SINAMICS drives and drive systems. The drive can be configured using the STARTER drive configuration wizard.

Note

STARTER online help

This section shows you how to carry out commissioning using STARTER. STARTER features a comprehensive online help function, which provides detailed explanations of all the processes and available system settings.
For this reason, this section only describes the individual commissioning steps.

Prerequisite: STARTER Version

The following STARTER version is required for commissioning SINAMICS with firmware V4.6:

- STARTER V4.3.2

Prerequisites for installing STARTER

Hardware

The following minimum requirements must be complied with:

- PG or PC
- Pentium III, at least 1 GHz, (> 1 GHz recommended)
- 1 GB work memory (2 GB recommended)
- Screen resolution 1024×768 pixels, 16-bit color depth
- Free hard disk space > 3 GB

Software

The following minimum prerequisites must be observed when using STARTER without an existing STEP-7 installation:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer V6.0 or higher

32-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 2003 Server SP2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 *) and SP3
- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise incl. SP1 (standard installation)

64-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise SP1 (standard installation)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

*) restricted test scope

STARTER setup is possible with native Windows versions with Asian languages only if the Windows XP or Windows 7 software is an MUI version.

Acrobat Reader V5.0 or higher is required to open the function diagrams in the online help.

Note

Requirements in conjunction with STEP7

If STARTER is used in combination with other STEP7 components, the prerequisites for the S7 components shall apply.

5.2.1 Installing the STARTER commissioning tool

STARTER is installed using the "setup" file on the customer DVD supplied. When you double-click the "Setup" file, the installation Wizard guides you through the process of installing STARTER.

Note

Installation time

The installation time depends on the computer performance and from where the software is installed (e.g. DVD, hard disk, network). We recommend that you install the software from a local data carrier.

5.2.2 Layout of the STARTER user interface

STARTER features four operating areas:

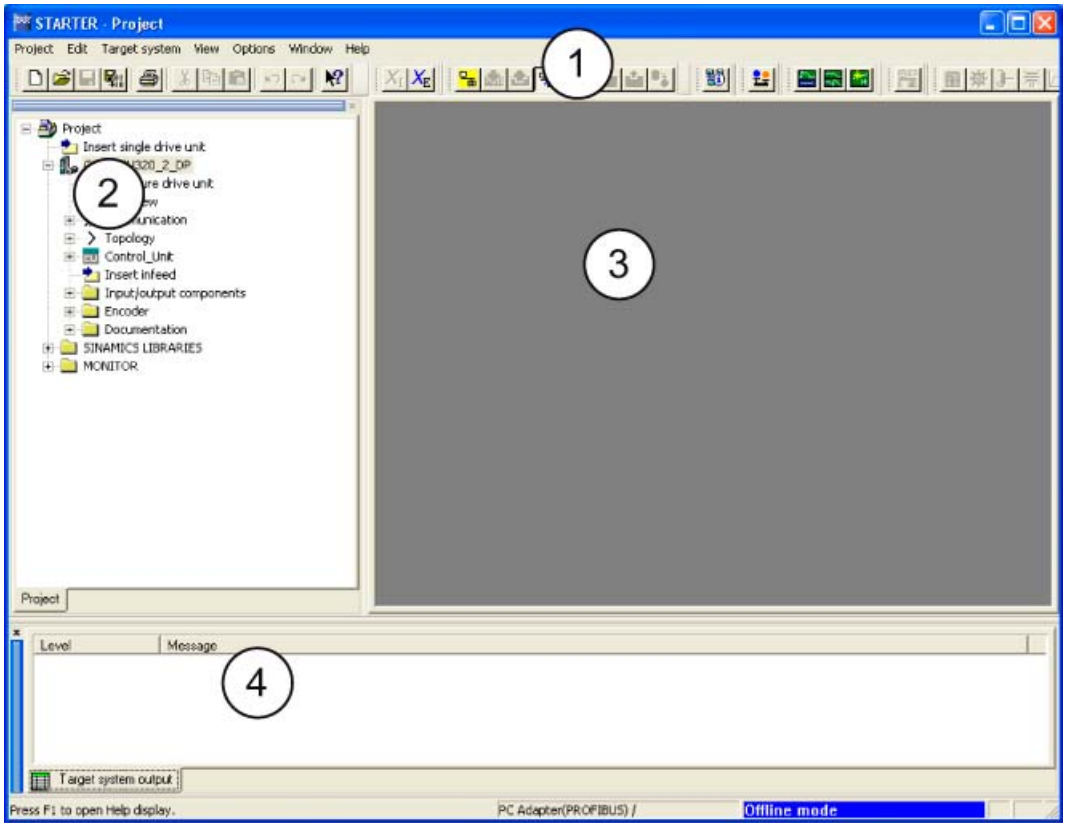


Figure 5-1 STARTER operating areas

Operating area	Explanation
1: Toolbars	In this area, you can access frequently used functions via the icons.
2: Project navigator	The elements and projects available in the project are displayed here.
3: Working area	In this area, you can change the settings for the drive units.
4: Detail view	Detailed information about faults and alarms, for example, is displayed this area.

5.3 Procedure for commissioning via STARTER

Basic procedure using STARTER

STARTER uses a sequence of dialog screens for entering the required drive unit data.

Note

Default settings in dialog screens

These dialog screens contain default settings, which you may have to change according to your application and configuration.

This is intentional!
Objective: By taking time to consider what configuration data you enter, you can prevent inconsistencies between the project data and drive unit data (identifiable in online mode).

5.3.1 Creating the project

Click the STARTER icon on the desktop, or select the menu command Start > SIMATIC > STEP 7 > STARTER in the Windows Start menu to open the STARTER commissioning tool.

The first time you run the software, the main screen (shown below) appears with the following windows:

- STARTER Getting Started Drive Commissioning
- STARTER Project Wizard

The commissioning steps are listed below as a numbered step sequence.

Accessing the STARTER project wizard

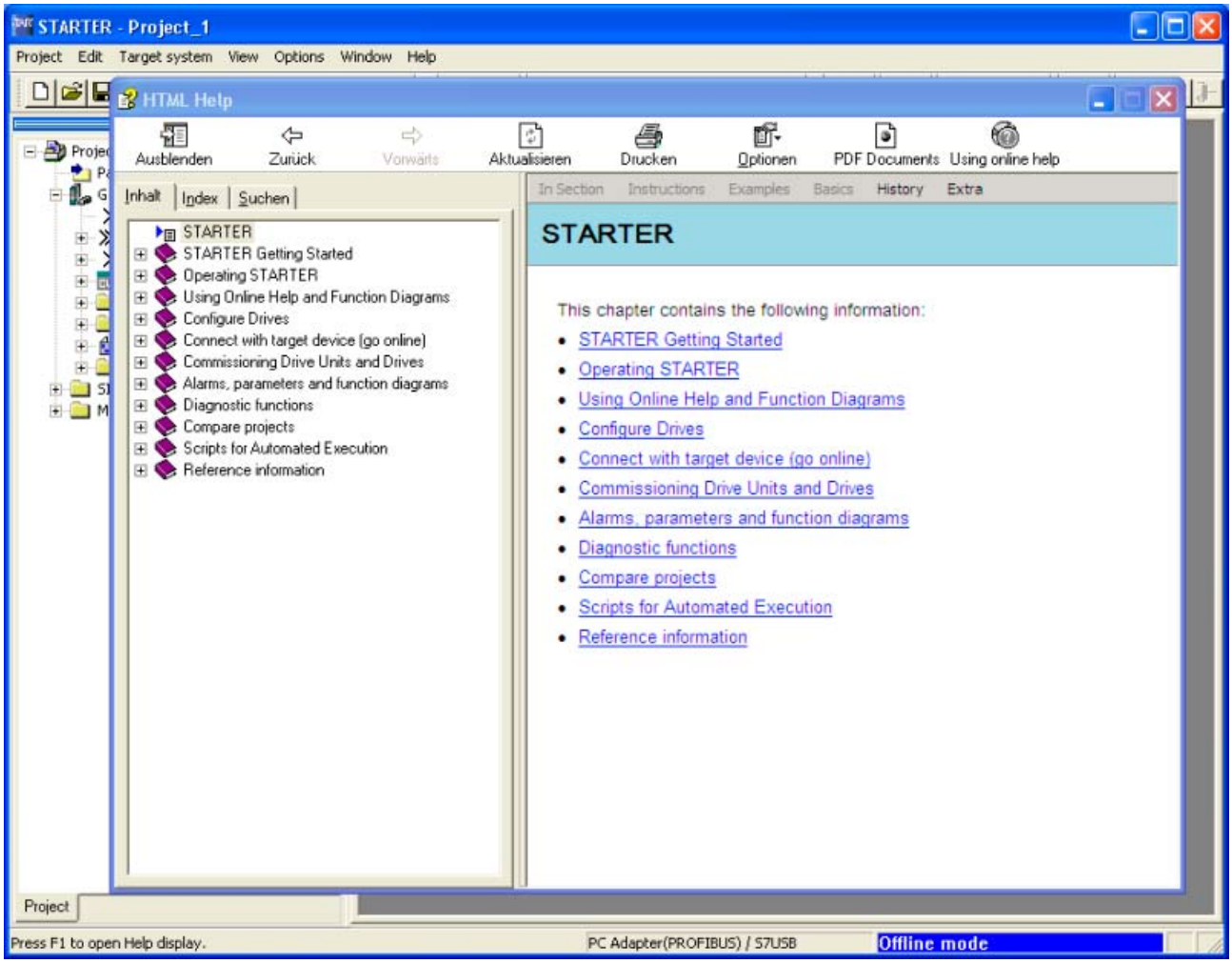


Figure 5-2 Main screen of the STARTER parameterization and commissioning tool

⇒ Close the "STARTER Getting Started Drive Commissioning" screen by choosing **HTML Help > Close**
.The online help can be hidden permanently by deselecting **Tools > Settings > Display "Getting Started" at start**

Note

Project wizard

When you deactivate the **Display wizard during start** checkbox, the project wizard is no longer displayed the next time you start STARTER.

You can call up the project wizard by choosing **Project > New with Wizard**.

To deactivate the online help for **Getting Started**, follow the instructions provided in Help.

The online help can be opened again at any time with **Tools > Settings > Show Getting Started on Start**.

STARTER features a detailed online help function.

The STARTER project wizard

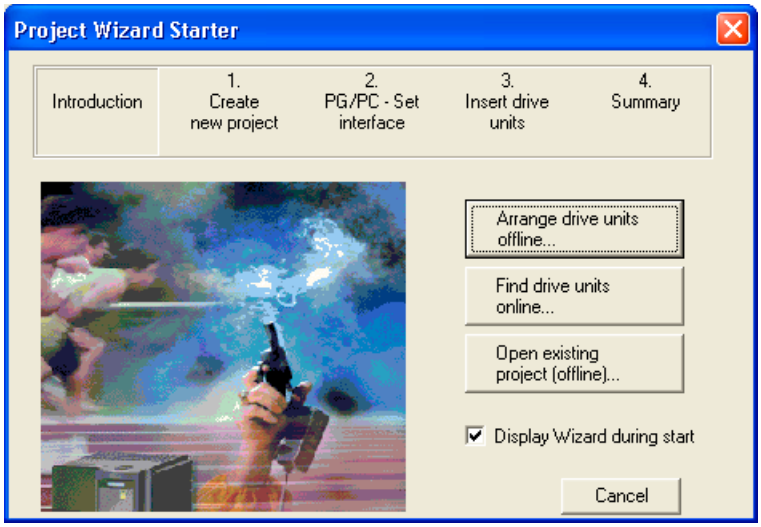


Figure 5-3 STARTER project wizard

⇒ Click **Arrange drive units offline...** in the STARTER project wizard.

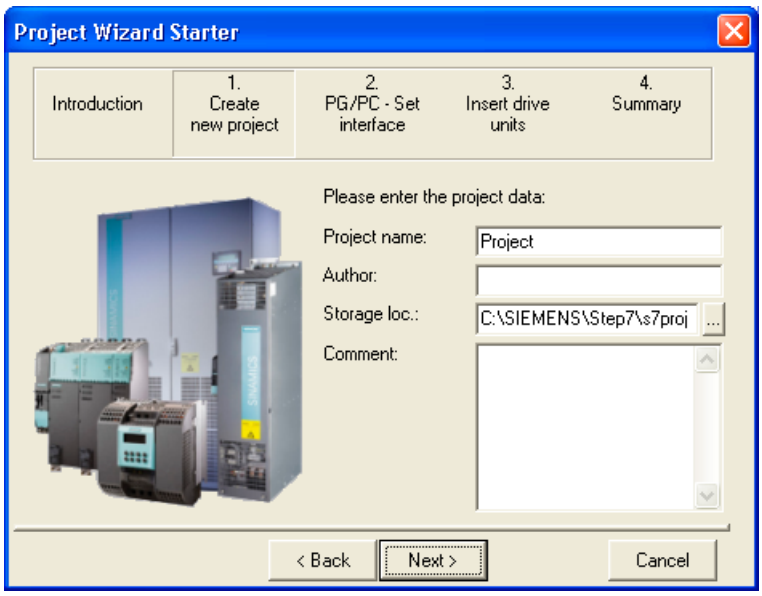


Figure 5-4 Create new project

⇒ Enter a **project name** and, if necessary, the **author, memory location** and a **comment**.

⇒ Click **Continue >** to set up the PG/PC interface.

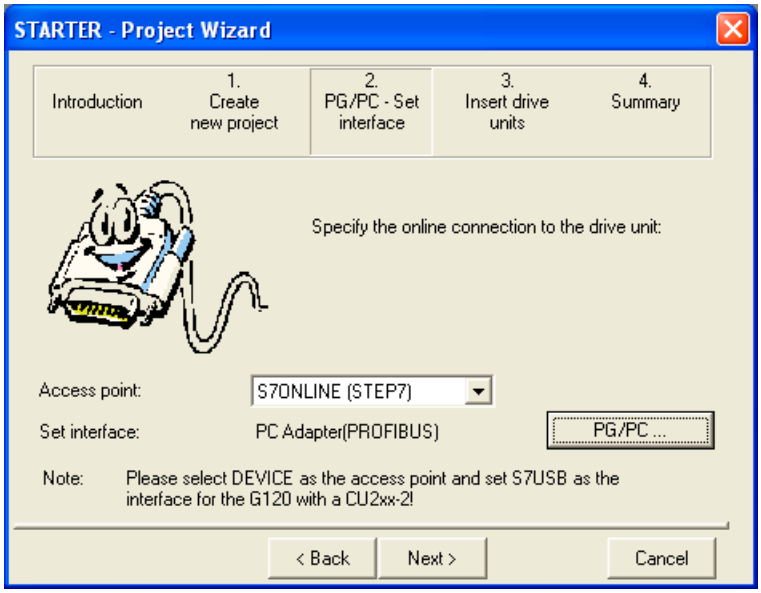


Figure 5-5 Set up interface

⇒ Under **Access point:** select the interface corresponding to your device configuration from:

- Select the S7ONLINE access (STEP7), if the connection to the drive unit is established via PROFINET or PROFIBUS.
- Select the DEVICE access, if the connection to the drive unit is established via the Ethernet interface.

⇒ Click **PG/PC ...** and set up the interface in accordance with your device configuration. The **Properties...**, **Copy...** and **Select...** pushbuttons are now active.

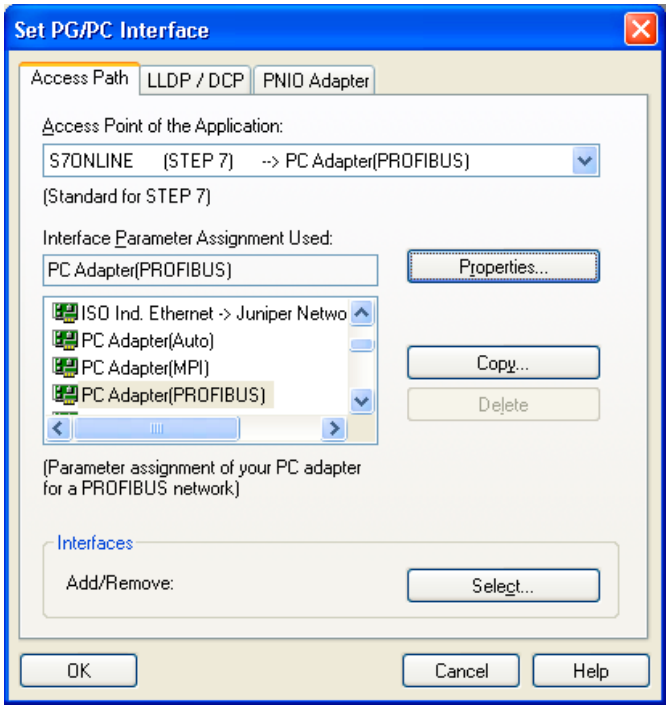


Figure 5-6 Setting the interface

Note

Preconditions

To parameterize the interface, you must install the appropriate interface card (e.g., PC Adapter (PROFIBUS))

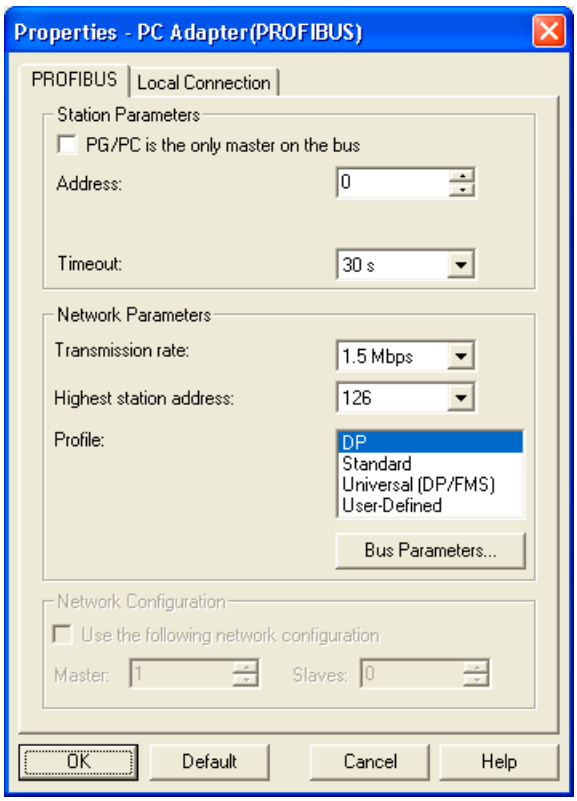


Figure 5-7 Setting the interface - properties

Note

Activate PG/PC is the only master on the bus

You must activate **PG/PC is the only master on bus** if no other master (PC, S7, etc.) is available on the bus.

Note

Configure even without an interface

Projects can be created and PROFIBUS addresses for the drive objects assigned even if a PROFIBUS interface has not been installed on the PC.

To prevent bus addresses from being assigned more than once, only the bus addresses available in the project are proposed.

When required, a manual address entry can also be used to enter an already assigned address.

⇒ Once you have done this, click **OK** to confirm the settings and return to the project wizard.

Figure 5-8 Setting the interface

⇒ Click **Continue >** to set up a drive unit in the project wizard.

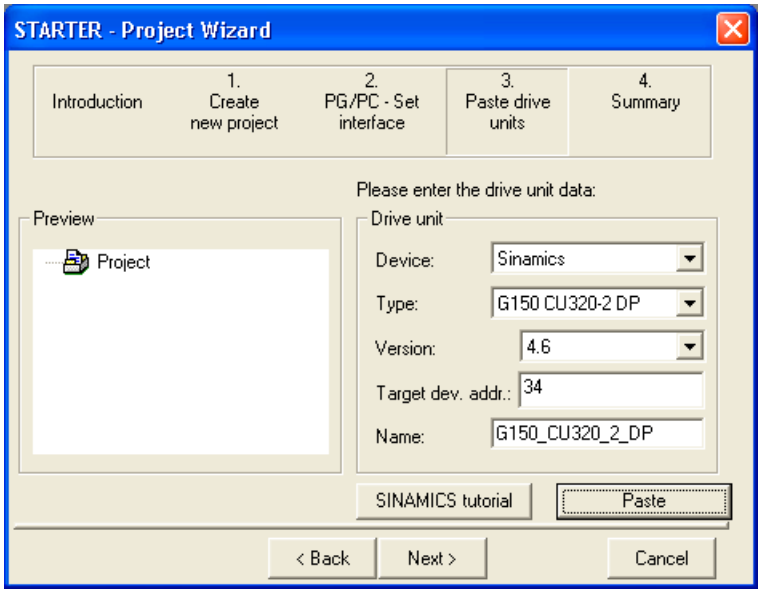


Figure 5-9 Inserting the drive unit

⇒ Choose the following data from the list fields:
Device: Sinamics
Type: G150 CU320-2 DP or G150 CU320-2 PN with option K95
Version: 4.6
Bus address: the corresponding bus address for the cabinet unit
The entry in **Name:** field is user defined.

⇒ Click **Insert**
The selected drive unit is displayed in a preview window in the project wizard.

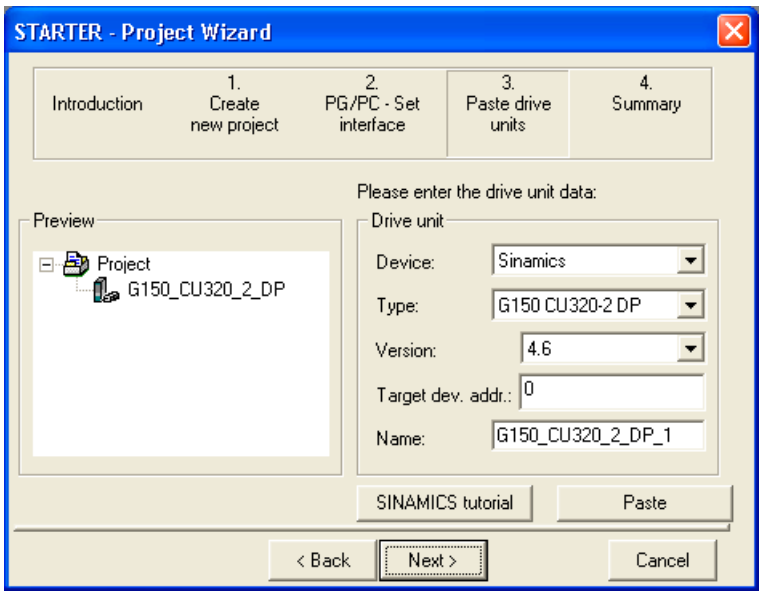


Figure 5-10 Drive unit inserted

⇒ Click **Continue >**
A project summary is displayed.

Figure 5-11 Summary

⇒ Click **Complete** to finish creating a new drive unit project.

5.3.2 Configure the drive unit

In the project navigator, open the component that contains your drive unit.

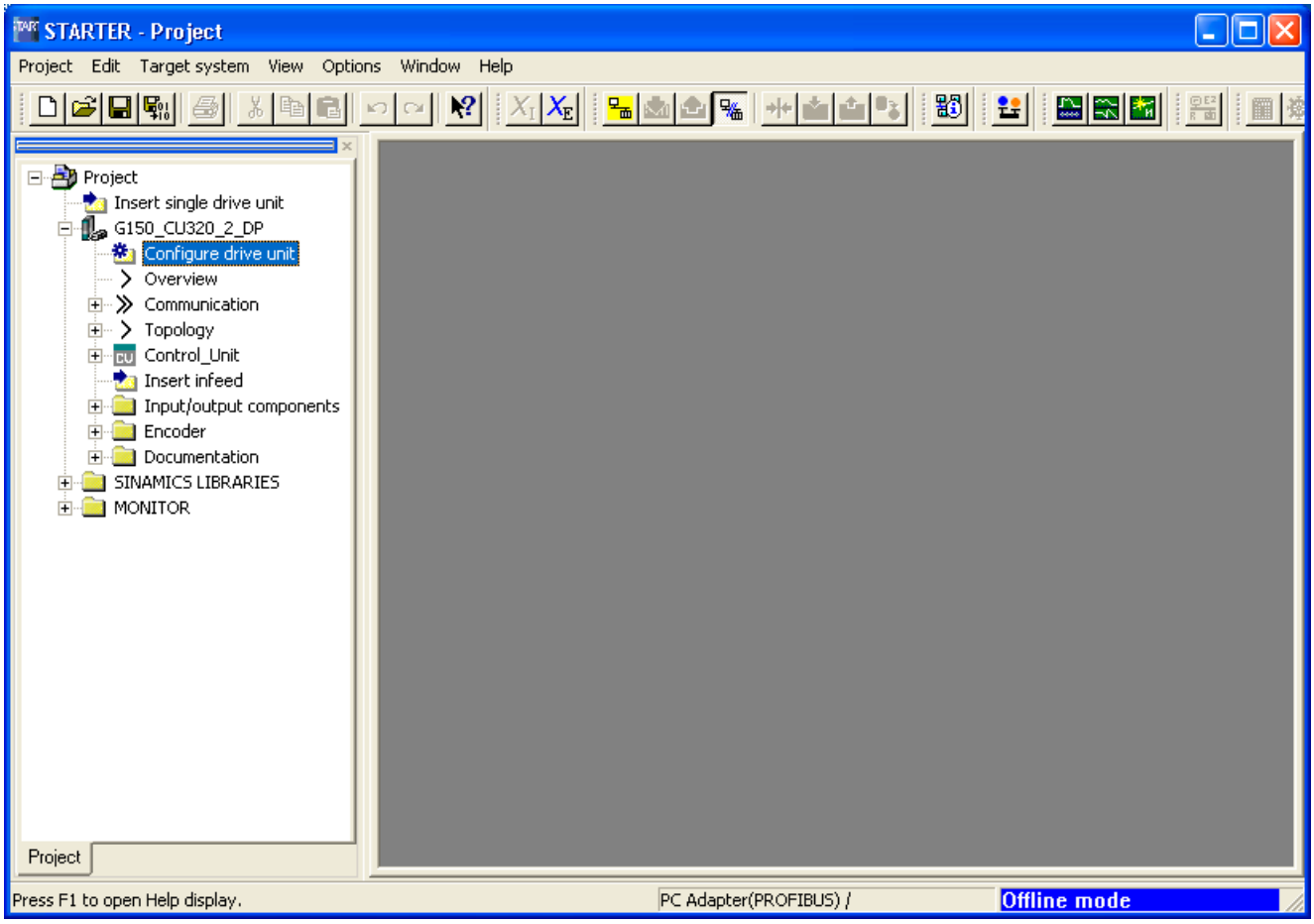


Figure 5-12 Project navigator – configuring the drive unit

⇒ In the project navigator, click the plus sign next to the drive unit that you want to configure. The plus sign becomes a minus sign and the drive unit configuration options are displayed as a tree below the drive unit.

⇒ Double-click **Configure the drive unit**.

Configuring the drive unit

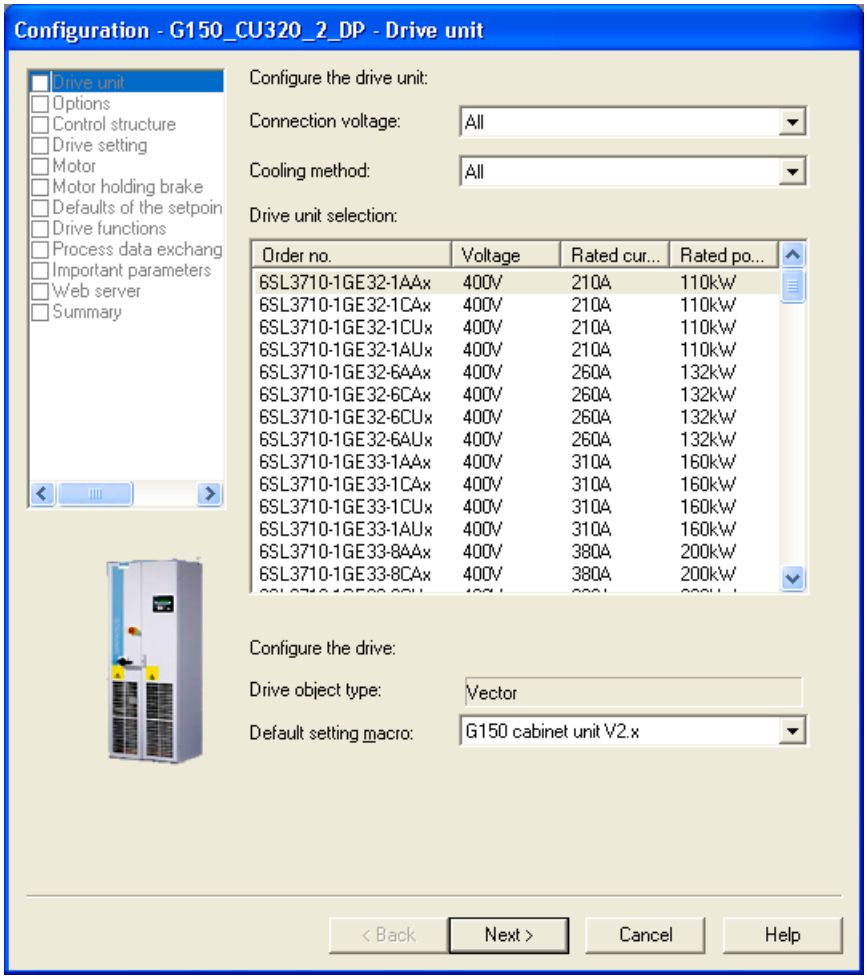


Figure 5-13 Configuring the drive unit

⇒ Under **Connection voltage**, choose the correct voltage. Under **Cooling method:** choose the correct cooling method for your drive unit.

Note

Make a pre-selection

In this step, you make a preliminary selection of the cabinet units. You do not define the line voltage and cooling method yet.

⇒ A list is now displayed under **Drive unit selection:**. Choose the corresponding drive unit according to type (order no.) (see type plate).

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Selecting options

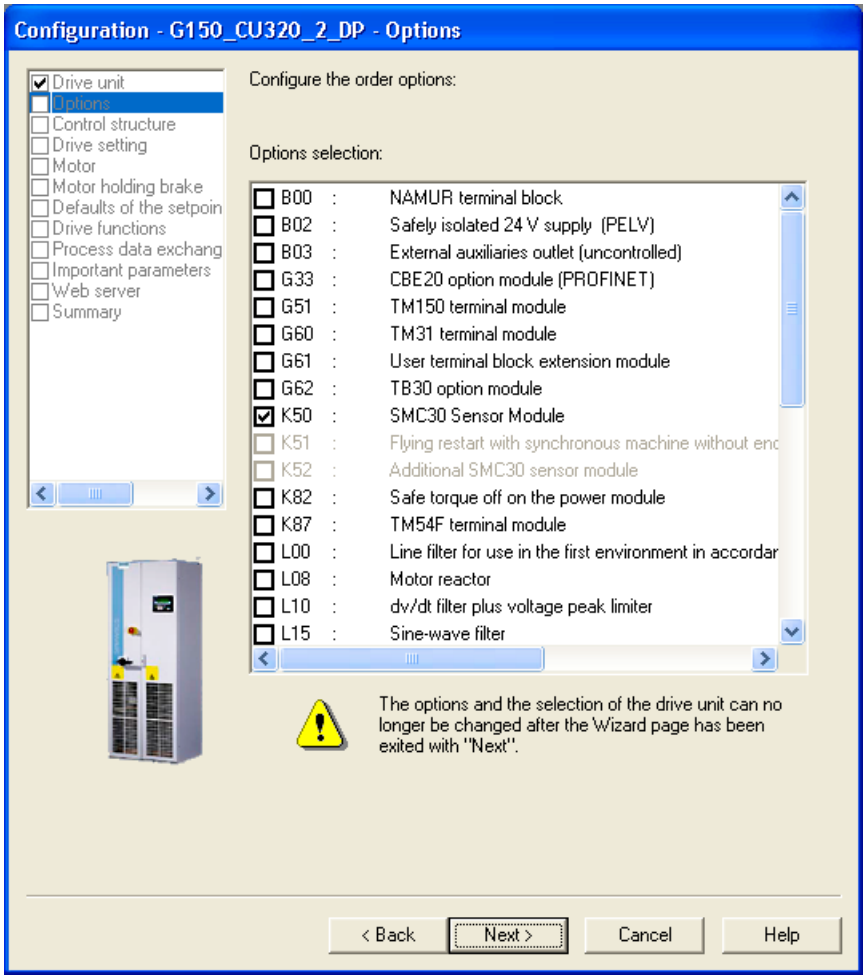


Figure 5-14 Selecting options

⇒ From the combination box **Options selection:** select the options belonging to your drive unit by clicking on the corresponding check box (see type plate).

NOTICE
Sine-wave filter If a sine-wave filter (option L15) is connected, it must be activated when the options are selected to prevent the filter from being destroyed.

Note

Motor reactor or du/dt filter

During option selection it is essential to activate any motor reactor (option L08) or du/dt filter (option L07, L10) being used, otherwise the motor control will not perform at its best.

Note

Check option selection

Check your options carefully against the options specified on the type plate.

Since the wizard establishes internal interconnections on the basis of the options selected, you cannot change the selected options by clicking **< Back**.
If you make an incorrect entry, delete the entire drive unit from the project navigator and create a new one.

⇒ Check your options carefully and then click **Continue >**

Selecting the control structure

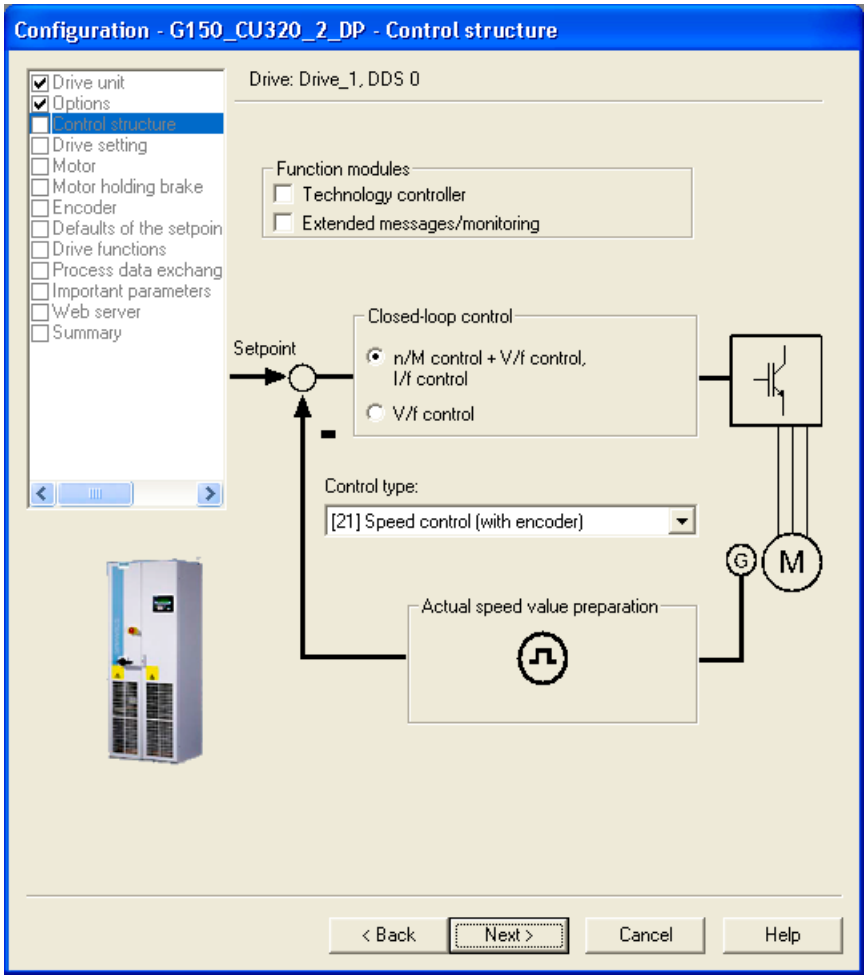


Figure 5-15 Selecting the control structure

⇒ Select the corresponding settings for the closed-loop control structure:

- **Function modules:**
  - Technology controller
  - Extended messages/monitoring
- **Control:**
  - n/M control + U/f control, I/f control
  - U/f control
- **Control mode:**
  Depending on the selected control, you can select from one of the following open-loop/closed-loop control modes:
  - 0: U/f control with linear characteristic
  - 1: U/f control with linear characteristic and FCC
  - 2: U/f control with parabolic characteristic
  - 3: U/f control with parameterizable characteristic
  - 4: U/f control with linear characteristic and ECO
  - 5: U/f control for drive requiring a precise frequency (e.g. textiles)
  - 6: U/f control for drive requiring a precise frequency and FCC
  - 7: U/f control with parabolic characteristic and ECO
  - 15: Operation with braking resistor
  - 18: I/f control with fixed current
  - 19: U/f control with independent voltage setpoint
  - 20: Speed control (without encoder)
  - 21: Speed control (with encoder)
  - 22: Torque control (without encoder)
  - 23: Torque control (with encoder)

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the drive unit properties

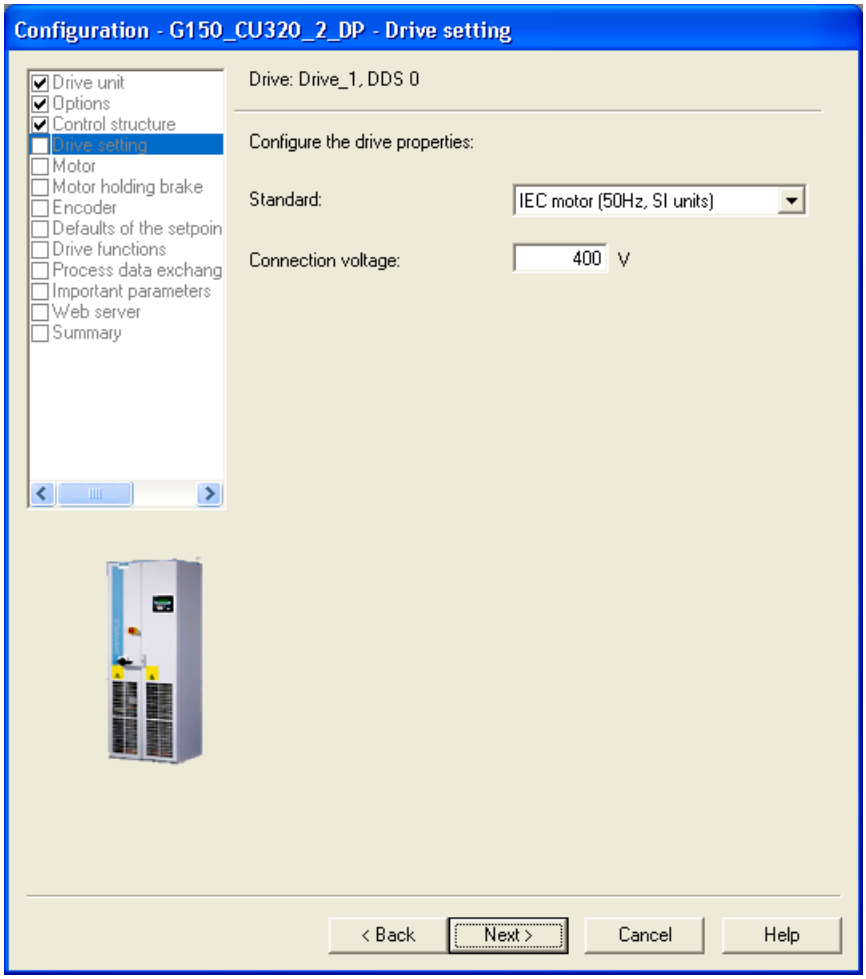


Figure 5-16 Configuring the drive unit properties

⇒ Under **Standard:**, choose the appropriate standard for your motor, whereby the following is defined:

- IEC motor (50 Hz, SI unit): Line frequency 50 Hz, motor data in kW
- NEMA motor (60 Hz, US unit): Line frequency 60 Hz, motor data in hp

⇒ Under **Connection voltage:**, enter the appropriate supply voltage of the cabinet unit.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Selecting the motor type

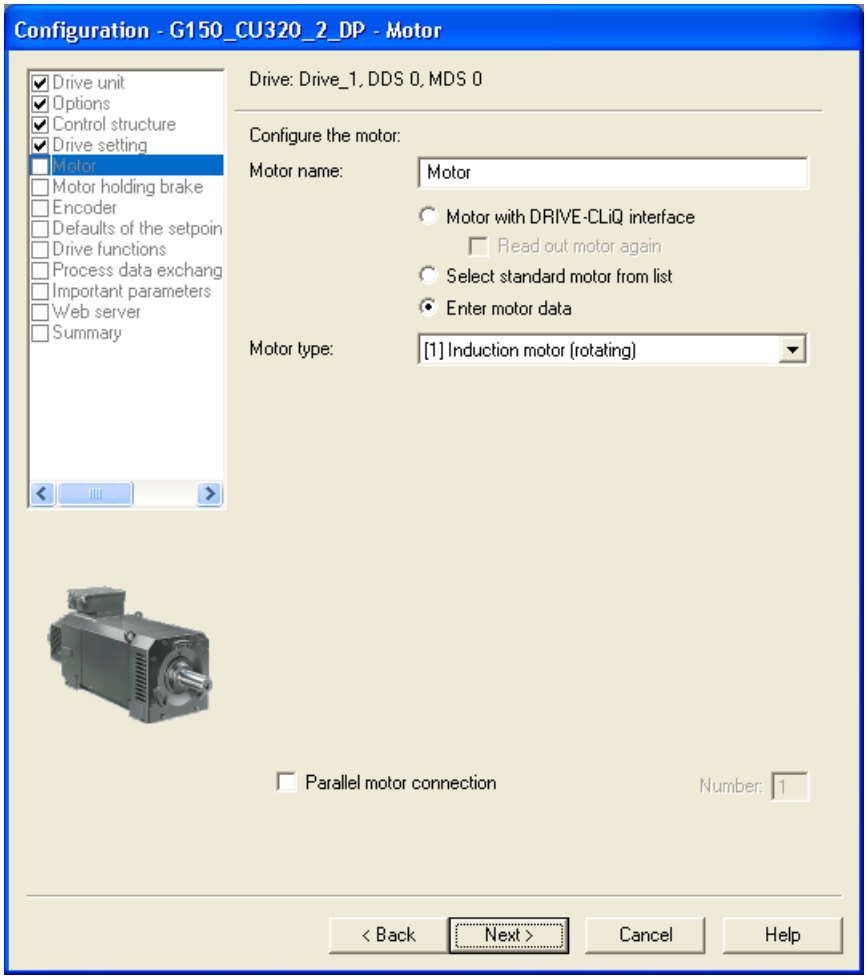


Figure 5-17 Configuring the motor – Selecting the motor type

⇒ Under **Motor name:** enter a name for the motor.

⇒ From the selection box next to **Motor type:** select the appropriate motor for your application.

⇒ In the **Parallel connection motor** field, enter the number of motors connected in parallel, if necessary. Motors connected in parallel must be of the same type and size.

Note

Selecting the motor type

The selection of the motor type is used to pre-assign specific motor parameters and to optimize the operating characteristics and behavior. Details are described in the list manual in the p0300 parameter.

Note

Commissioning of an induction motor

The steps described below also apply to commissioning an induction motor.

When commissioning a permanent-magnet synchronous motor, there are a few special conditions that apply, which are detailed in a separate chapter (see "Setpoint channel and closed-loop control / permanent-magnet synchronous motors").

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Entering motor data

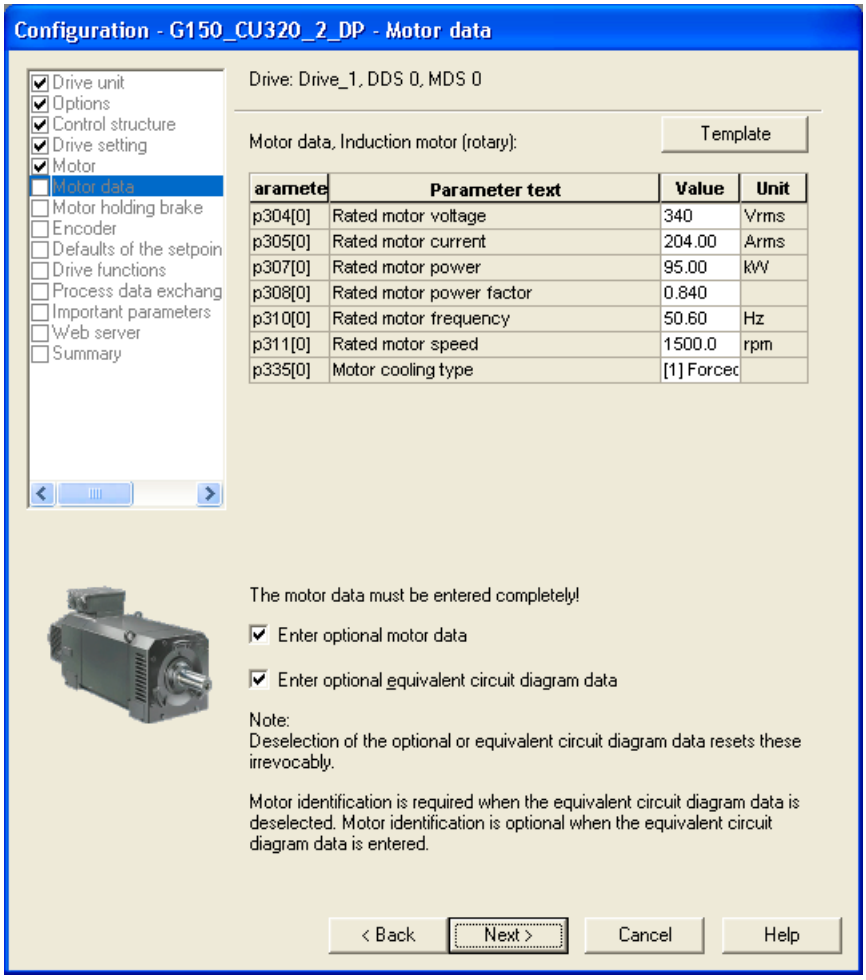


Figure 5-18 Configuring the motor – Entering motor data

⇒ Enter the motor data (see motor rating plate).

⇒ Activate **Enter optional motor data** if necessary.

⇒ Activate **Enter optional equivalent circuit diagram data** if necessary.

Note

Using templates

Click **Template** to open another selection screenform where you can choose the motor used in your application from a long list of standard motor types. Select a motor from the list to enter the data stored in the system for that motor automatically in the data fields.

Note

Entering equivalent circuit diagram data

You should only check the **Enter equivalent circuit diagram data** box if the data sheet with equivalent circuit diagram data is available. If any data is missing, an error message will be output when the system attempts to load the drive project to the target system.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Entering optional data

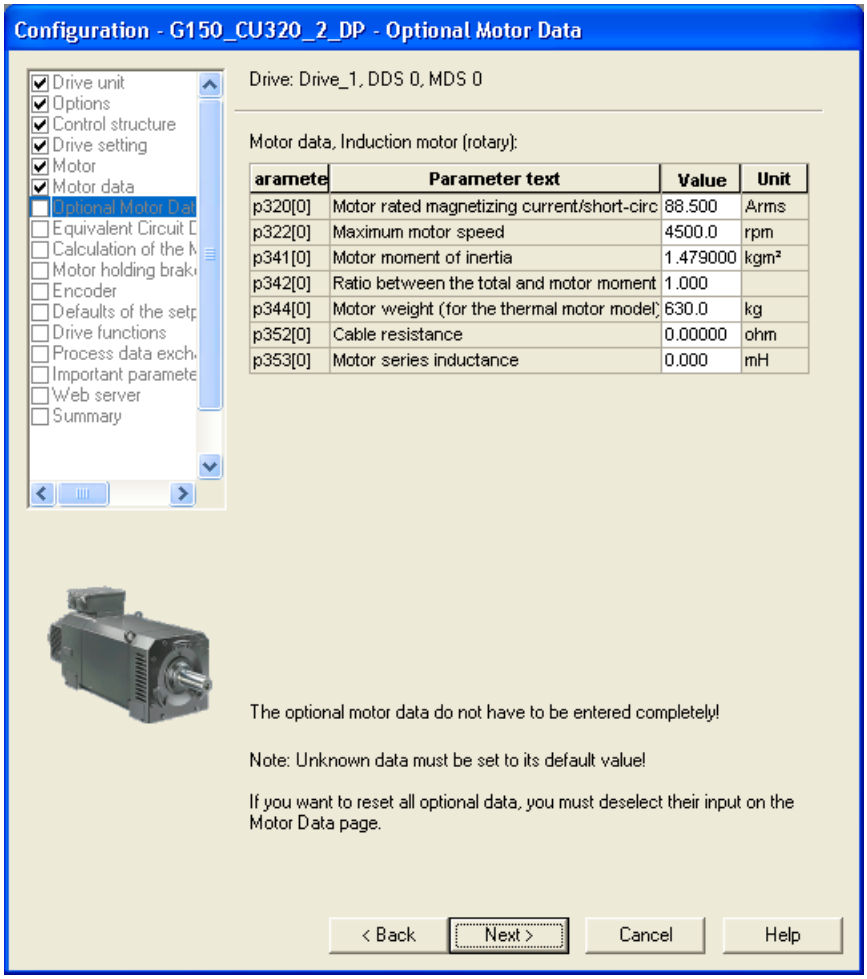


Figure 5-19 Entering optional motor data

⇒ If required, enter the optional motor data.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Entering the equivalent circuit diagram data

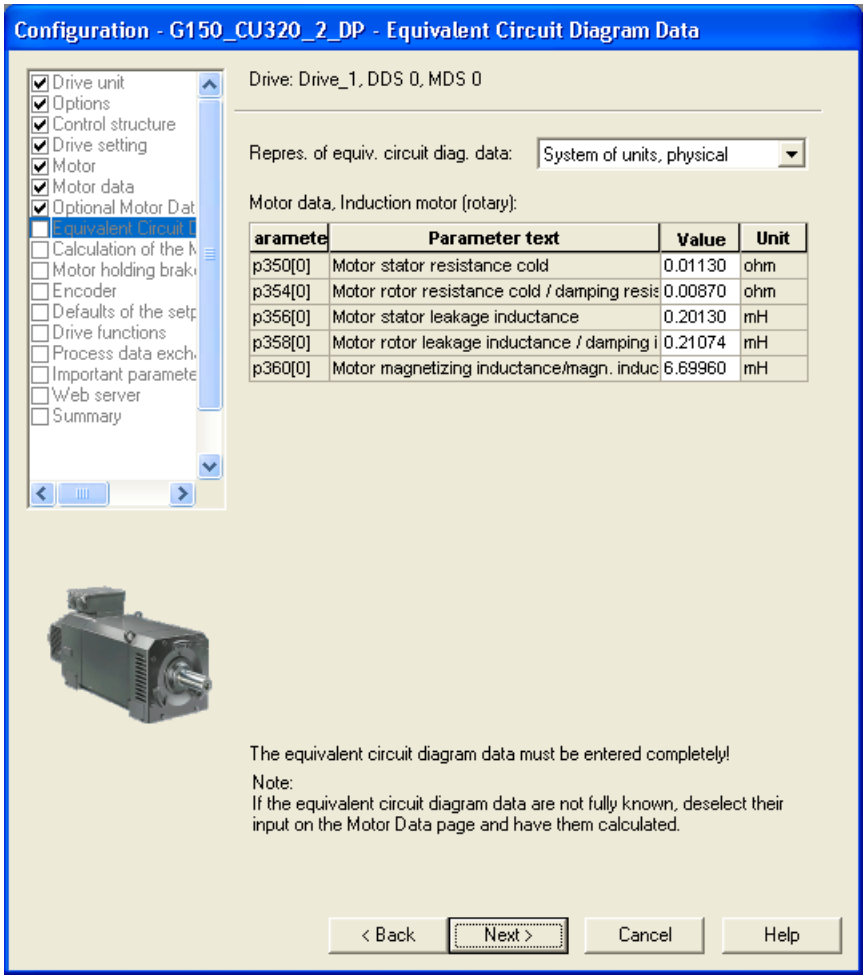


Figure 5-20 Entering equivalent circuit diagram data

⇒ Select one of the equivalent circuit diagram data representations:

- Physical system of units
  The physical system of units is used in the equivalent circuit diagram data.
- Referred system of units
  The referred system of units as a % of the rated motor current is shown in the equivalent circuit diagram data.

⇒ Enter the equivalent circuit diagram data completely.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Calculating the motor/controller data

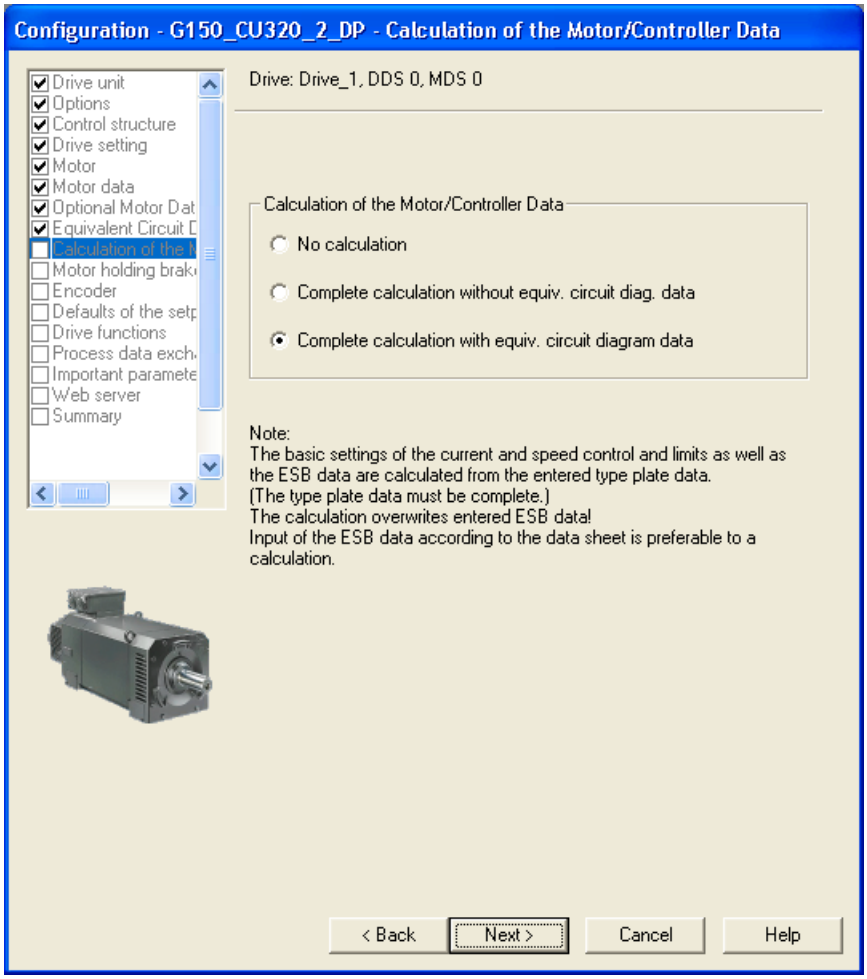


Figure 5-21 Calculating the motor/controller data

⇒ In **Calculation of the motor/controller data**, select the appropriate default settings for your device configuration.

Note

Manual input of the equivalent circuit diagram data

If the equivalent circuit diagram data was entered manually (see "Entering the equivalent circuit diagram data"), then the motor/controller data should be calculated **without** calculating the equivalent circuit diagram data.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor holding brake

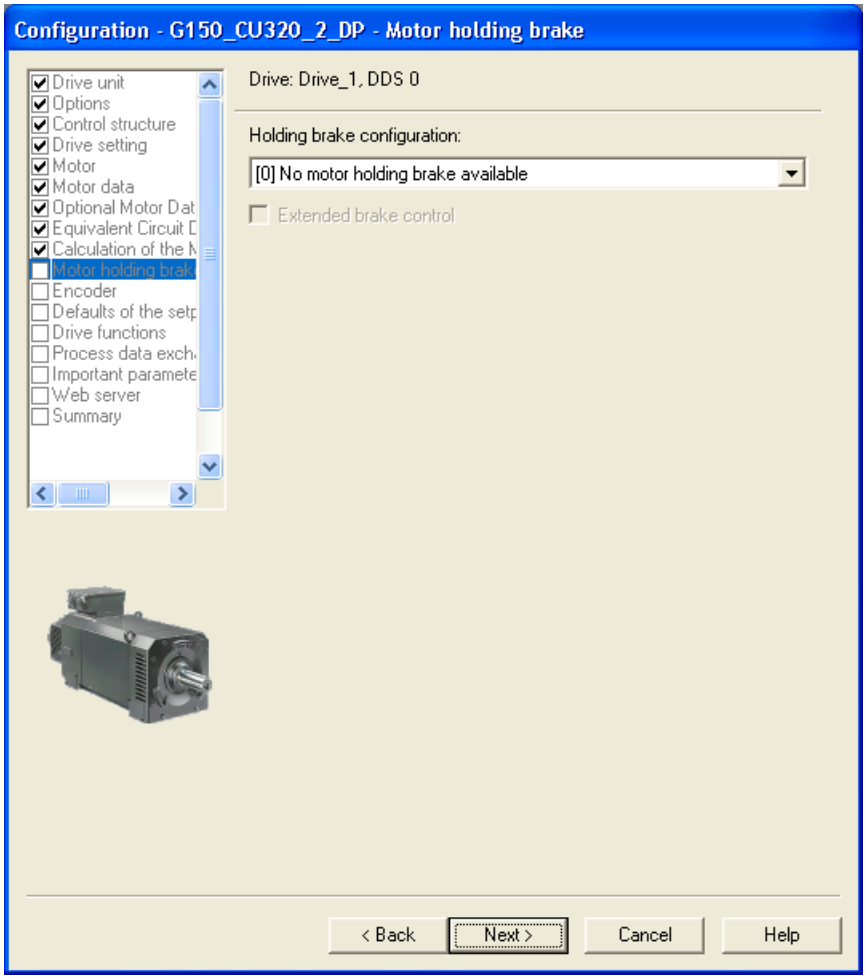


Figure 5-22 Configuring the motor holding brake

⇒ Under **Holding brake configuration:** choose the appropriate setting for your device configuration:

- 0: No motor holding brake being used
- 1: Motor holding brake like sequence control
- 2: Motor holding brake always open
- 3: Motor holding brake like sequence control, connection via BICO

⇒ When a motor holding brake is selected, you can also activate the "Extended brake control" function module.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Entering the encoder data (option K50)

Note

Entering the encoder data

If you have specified option K50 (SMC30 Sensor Module), the following screen is displayed in which you can enter the encoder data.

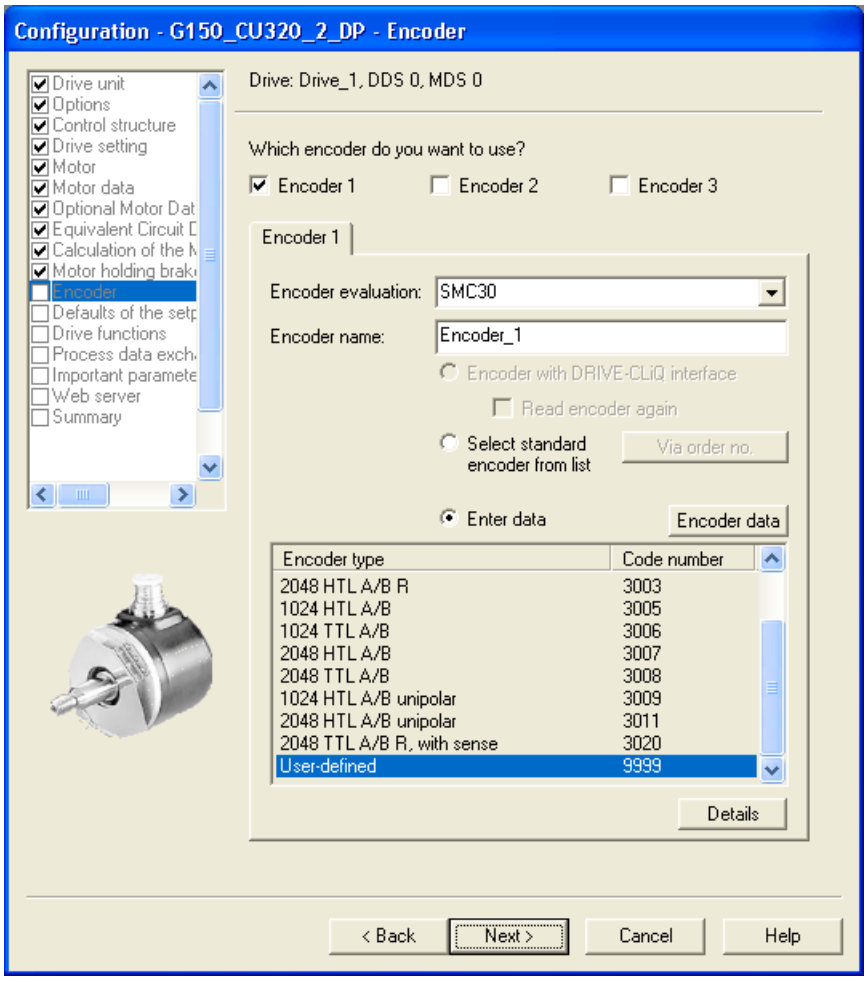


Figure 5-23 Entering the encoder data

⇒ In the **Encoder name:** field, enter a name of your choice.

Note

Delivery condition

The delivery condition is a bipolar HTL encoder with 1024 pulses per revolution at terminal X521/X531.

⇒ To select a different predefined encoder configuration, check the **Select standard encoder from list** radio button and select one of the encoders from the list.
⇒ To enter special encoder configurations, click the **Enter data** radio button and then the **Encoder data** button. The following screen is displayed in which you can enter the required data.

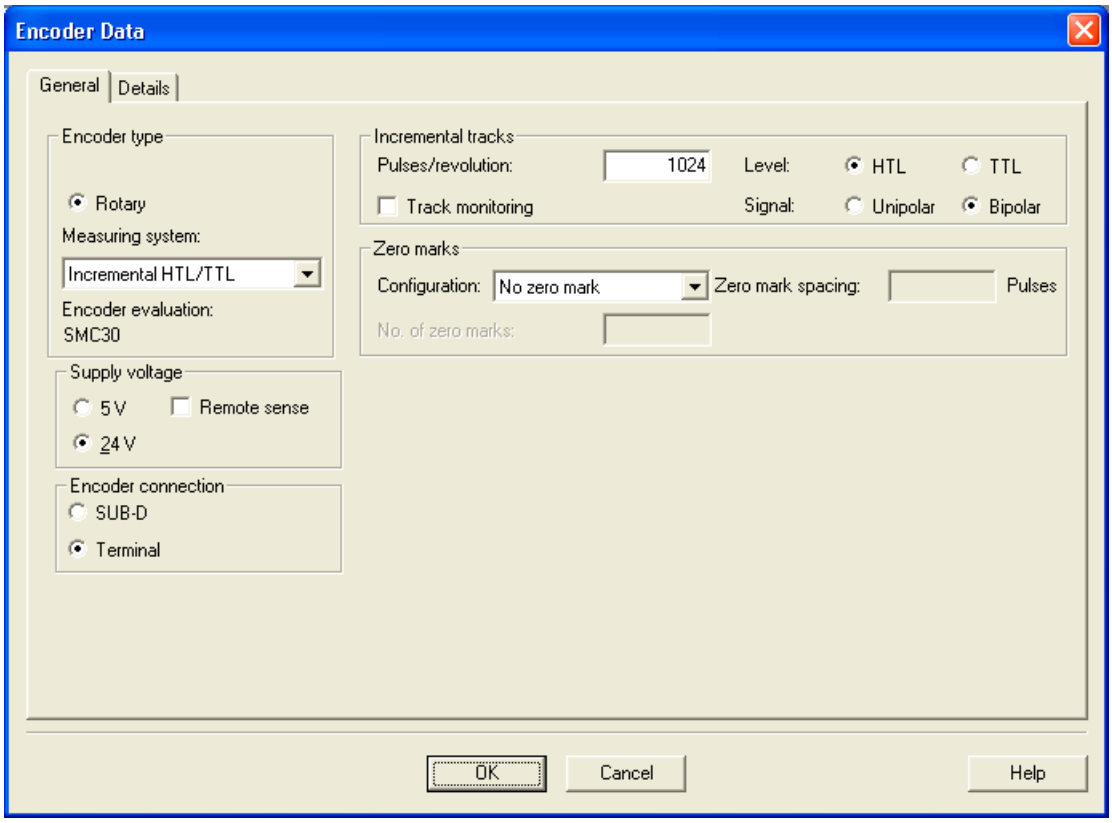


Figure 5-24 Entering encoder data – User-defined encoder data

⇒ Select the **measuring system**.

In conjunction with SINAMICS G150, the following encoders can be selected:

- HTL
- TTL

⇒ Enter the required encoder data.

⇒ Under the **Details** tab, special encoder properties can be set, for example, gear ratio, fine resolution, inversion, load gear position tracking.
⇒ Click **OK**.

NOTICE
Supply voltage for the encoder Once the encoder has been commissioned, the supply voltage (5/24 V) set for the encoder is activated on the SMC30 Module. If a 5 V encoder is connected and the supply voltage has not been set correctly, the encoder may be damaged.

Default settings for setpoints/command sources

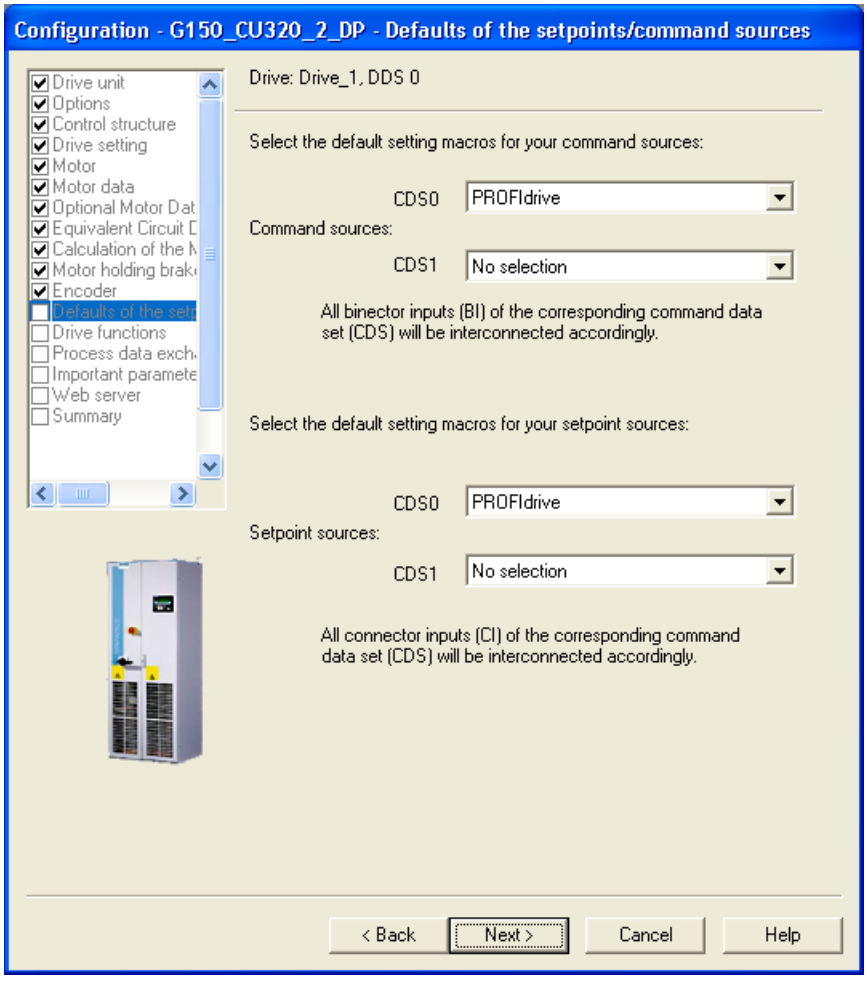


Figure 5-25 Default settings for setpoints/command sources

⇒ Under **Command sources:**, choose and **Setpoint sources:** choose the appropriate settings for your device configuration.

The following command and setpoint source options are available:

Command sources:	PROFIdrive (default)
	TM31 terminals
	NAMUR
	PROFIdrive NAMUR
Setpoint sources:	PROFIdrive (default)
	TM31 terminals
	Motorized potentiometer
	Fixed setpoint

Note

Use of CDS0

With SINAMICS G150, only CDS0 is normally used as a default setting for the command and setpoint sources.

Make sure that the selected default setting is compatible with the actual system configuration.

Note

Do not use a selection

The choice "no selection" is also available as default setting for the command and setpoint sources; if selected, no default settings are applied for the command and setpoint sources.

⇒ Check your default settings carefully and then click **Continue >**

Defining the technological application/motor identification

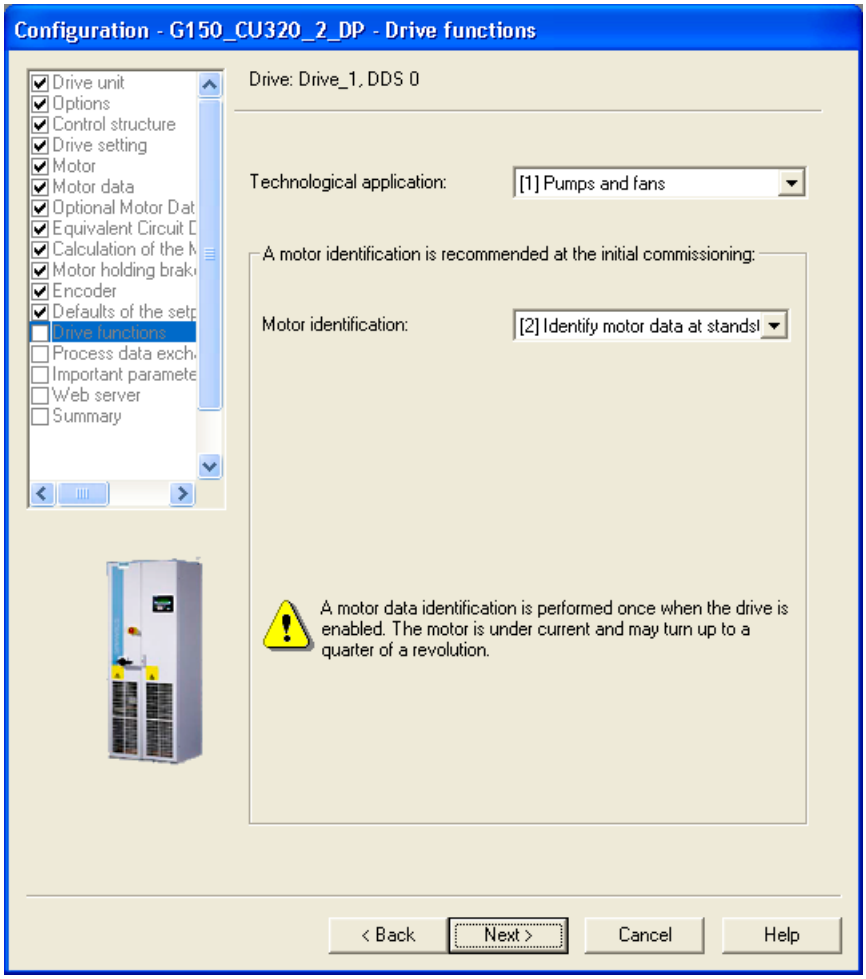


Figure 5-26 Defining the technological application/motor identification

⇒ Select the required data:

- **Technological application:**
  - **"(0) Standard drive (VECTOR)"**
    Edge modulation is not enabled.
    The dynamic voltage reserve is increased (10 V), which reduces the maximum output voltage.
  - **"(1) Pumps and fans"**(default setting)
    Edge modulation is enabled.
    The dynamic voltage reserve is reduced (2 V), which increases the maximum output voltage.
  - **"(2) Sensorless control down to f = 0 (passive loads)"**
    Closed-loop controlled operation down to zero speed is possible for passive loads. These include applications in which the load cannot produce a regenerative torque on startup and the motor comes to a standstill when pulses are inhibited.
  - **"(4) Dynamic response in the field weakening range"**
    The space-vector modulation with overmodulation is enabled.
    The dynamic voltage reserve is increased (30 V), which reduces the maximum output voltage.
- **Motor identification:**
  - (0): Disabled
  - (1): Motor data identification at standstill and when the motor is rotating
  - (2): Motor data identification at standstill
  - (3): Motor data identification when the motor is rotating
  - (4): Motor data identification standstill / rotating, then operating

Note

Motor data identification at standstill

In many cases, "Motor data identification at standstill" is the correct selection for SINAMICS G150.
"Motor data identification at standstill and when motor is running" is the recommended setting for closed-loop speed control with encoder; this measurement is normally performed for non-coupled machines.

⚠DANGER

Rotating measurement

When the rotating measurement is selected, the drive triggers movements in the motor that can reach the maximum motor speed. The EMERGENCY OFF functions must be fully operational during commissioning. To protect the machines and personnel, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Selecting the PROFIdrive telegram type

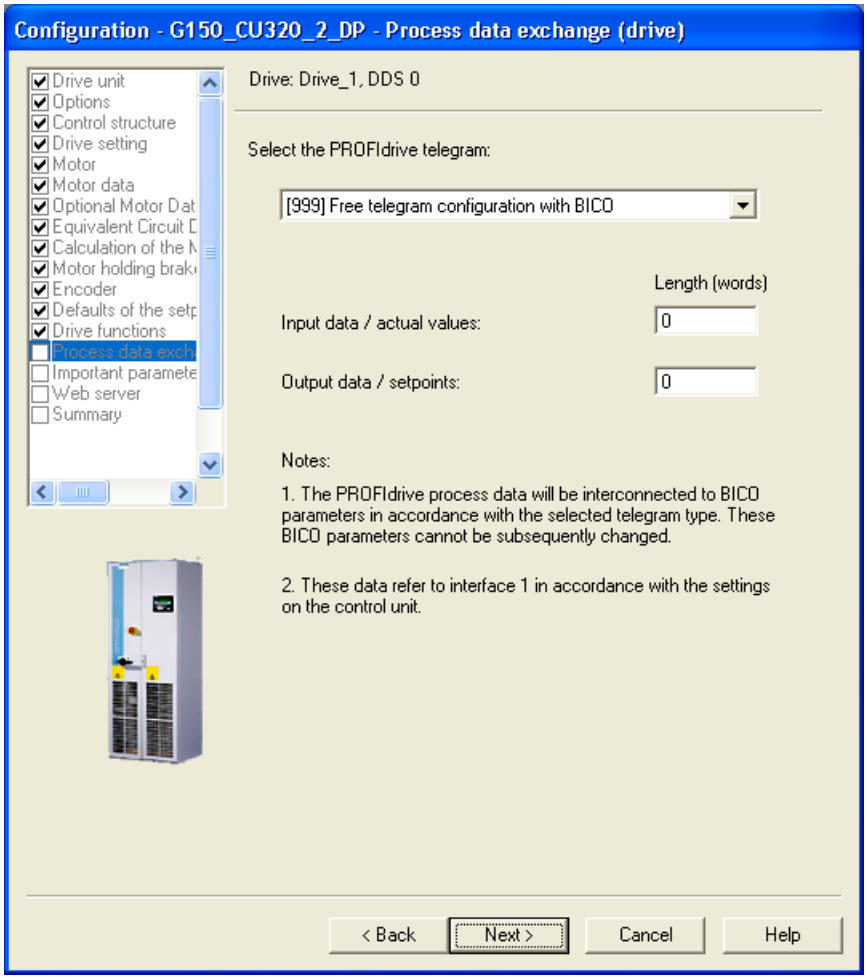


Figure 5-27 Selecting the PROFIdrive telegram type

⇒ Under **PROFIdrive telegram:** select the PROFIdrive telegram type.

Message frame types

- 1: Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2
- 2: Standard telegram 2, PZD-4/4
- 3: Standard telegram 3, PZD-5/9
- 4: Standard telegram 4, PZD-6/14
- 20: SIEMENS telegram 20, PZD-2/6:
- 220: SIEMENS telegram 220, PZD-10/10:
- 352: SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6:
- 999: Free telegram configuration with BICO (default setting)

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Entering important parameters

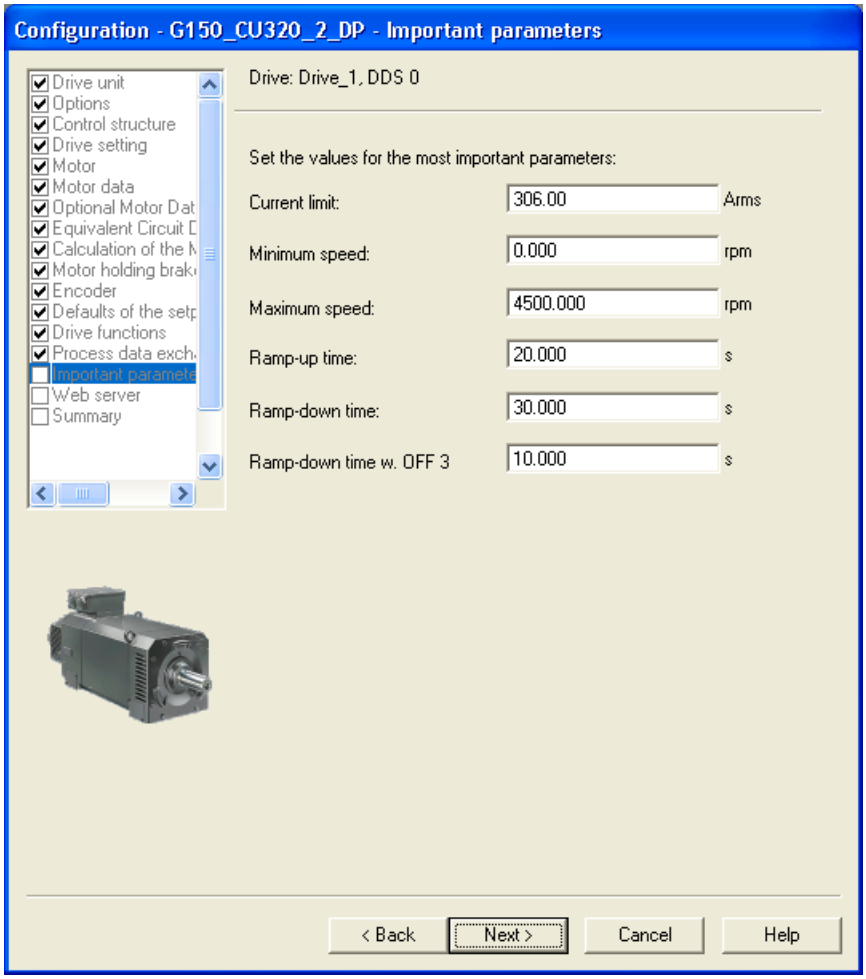


Figure 5-28 Important parameters

⇒ Enter the required parameter values.

Note

Tooltips

STARTER provides tool tips if you position your cursor on the required field **without clicking in the field**.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Web server

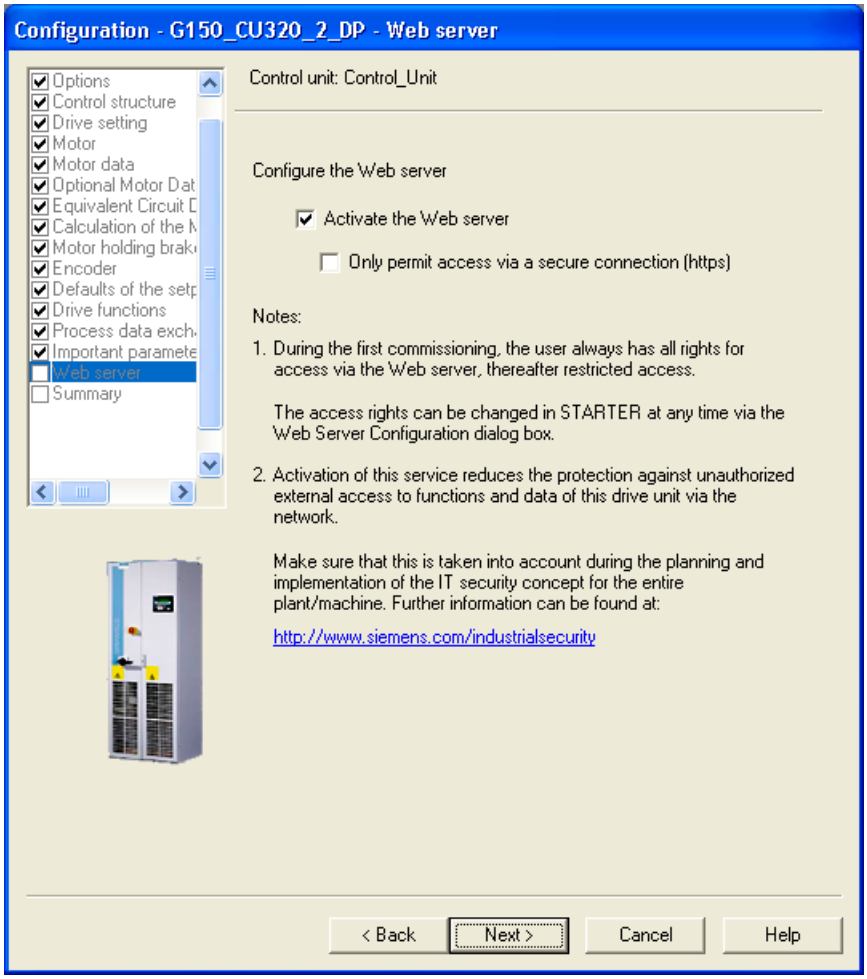


Figure 5-29 Web server

⇒ Configure the web server.

The web server is already active in the factory settings.

Activate and deactivate the web server under **Activate web server**.

Select **Only allow access via secure connection (https)** if necessary.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Summary of the drive unit data

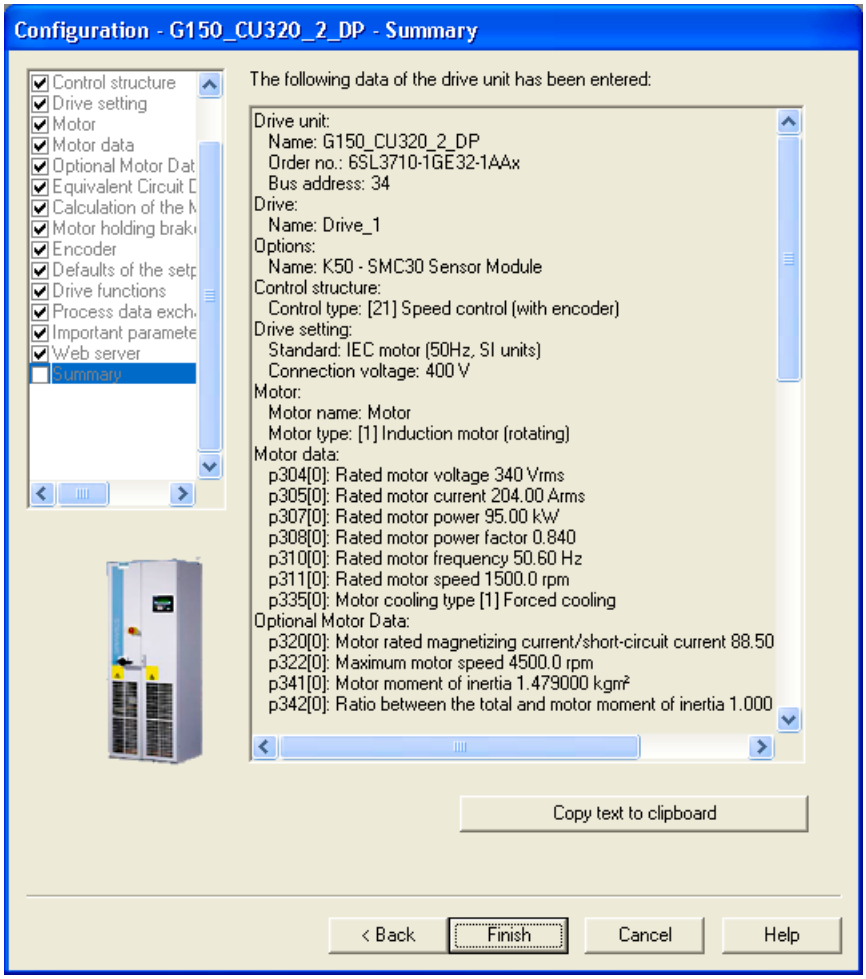


Figure 5-30 Summary of the drive unit data

⇒ You can use the **Copy to clipboard** function to copy the summary of the drive unit data displayed on the screen to a word processing program for further use.

⇒ Click **Finish**.

⇒ Save your project to the hard disk by choosing **Project > Save**.

5.3.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel

After commissioning with STARTER, for the (parallel) units listed below, in addition, the following settings must be made:

- For 3 AC 380 to 480 V:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 3 AC 500 to 600 V:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 3 AC 660 to 690 V:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

Settings to monitor the checkback signal from the main contactor or circuit breaker for 12-pulse infeed

The checkback contacts of the main contactors and the circuit breakers are connected in series in the factory and wired to digital input 5 of the Control Unit.

After the drive unit has been commissioned, the checkback signal monitoring function must be activated. This is realized using parameter p0860{VECTOR} = 722.5{CU}.

⚠ DANGER

Activate monitoring of feedback signal of the main contactor or circuit breaker

If the monitoring function for the main contactor or circuit breaker checkback signal is not activated, then the drive could be powered up even if the main contactor or circuit breaker on an individual system fails. This could overload and damage the input rectifiers on the individual system.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be again made after the drive unit has been recommissioned.

Settings for motor connection to a motor with one-winding system

During commissioning, a motor with several winding systems is automatically defined.

The setting for a one-winding system is made after commissioning has been completed by setting parameter p7003 to 0.

Note

Setting "motor with a one-winding system"

If the "motor with a one-winding system" is not set using p7003 = 0, then the drive can be powered down (tripped) during the motor identification routine with an "overcurrent" fault message. The system will not be properly tuned.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be made again after the drive unit has been recommissioned.

5.3.4 Transferring the drive project

You have created a project and saved it to your hard disk. You now have to transfer your project configuration data to the drive unit.

Specifying the online access point

To connect to the target system, the chosen access point must be specified.

In the menu bar, select **Target system > Select target devices ...**; the following dialog screen appears.

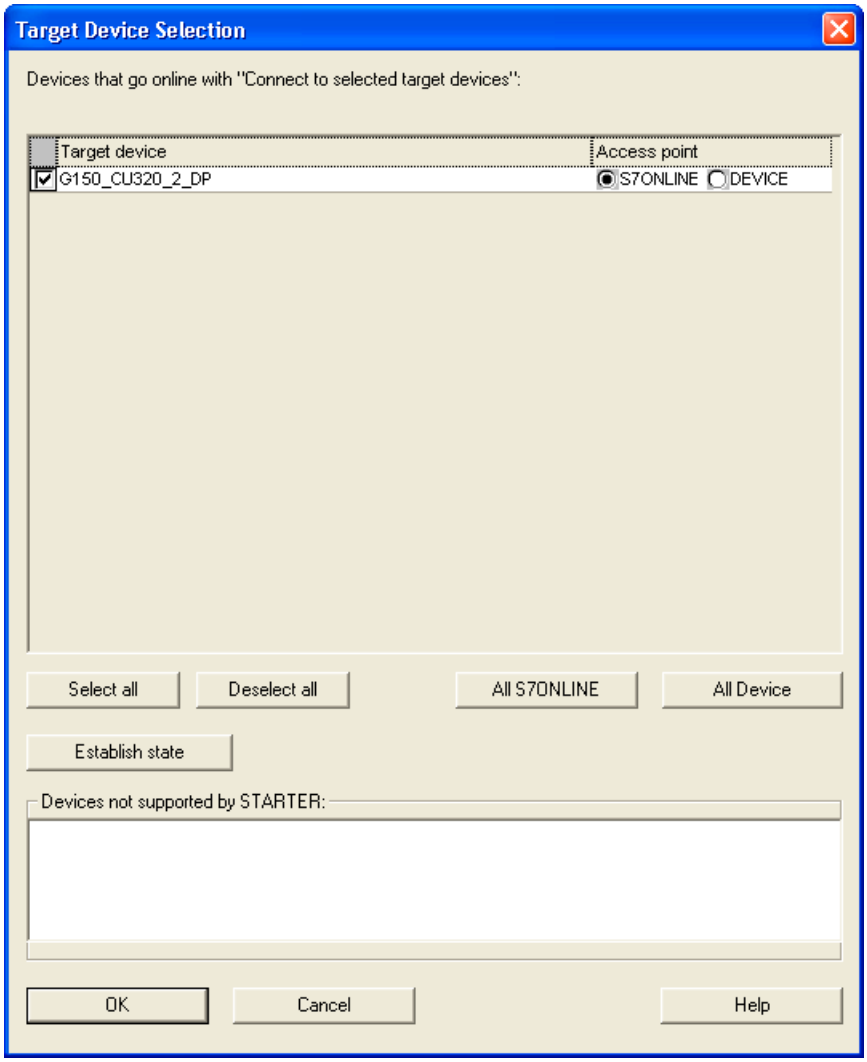


Figure 5-31 Target device selection and access points

The dialog screen lists all existing devices in the project.

Specify access point:

- Select S7ONLINE access for a device, if the connection to the programming device or PC is established via PROFINET or PROFIBUS.
- Select DEVICE access for a device if the connection to the programming device or PC is established via the Ethernet interface.

Transferring the STARTER project to the drive unit

To transfer the STARTER project you created offline to the drive unit, carry out the following steps:

Step		Selection in toolbar
1	Choose **Project > Connect to selected target system**	
2	Choose the menu item **Target system > Load > Load project to target system**	

Note

Save project data so it is protected from power failure

The project has now been loaded to the drive unit. The data is currently only stored in the volatile memory of the drive unit and not on the CompactFlash card.

To store the project data on the CompactFlash card so that it is protected in the event of a power failure, carry out the following step.

Step		Selection in toolbar
3	Choose **Target system > Copy from RAM to ROM**	

Note

Copy from RAM to ROM

The **Copy from RAM to ROM** button is only active when the drive unit is selected in the project navigator.

Results of the previous steps

- You have created a drive unit project offline using STARTER.
- You have saved the project data to the hard disk on your PC.
- You have transferred the project data to the drive unit.
- You have saved your project data to the CompactFlash card so that it is backed up in the event of a power failure.

Note

Tip for working with STARTER

The STARTER commissioning tool supports complex drive system operations.

If you are confronted with any system conditions in online mode that are beyond your control, you are advised to delete the drive project from the project navigator and carefully create a new project in STARTER using the appropriate configuration data for your application.

5.3.5 Commissioning with STARTER via Ethernet

Description

The Control Unit can be commissioned using PG/PC via the integrated Ethernet Interface. This interface is provided for commissioning purposes only and cannot be used to control the drive in operation.

Preconditions

- STARTER from version 4.1.5 or higher
- Control Unit CU320-2 DP from device version "C", CU320-2 PN Control Unit

STARTER via Ethernet (example)

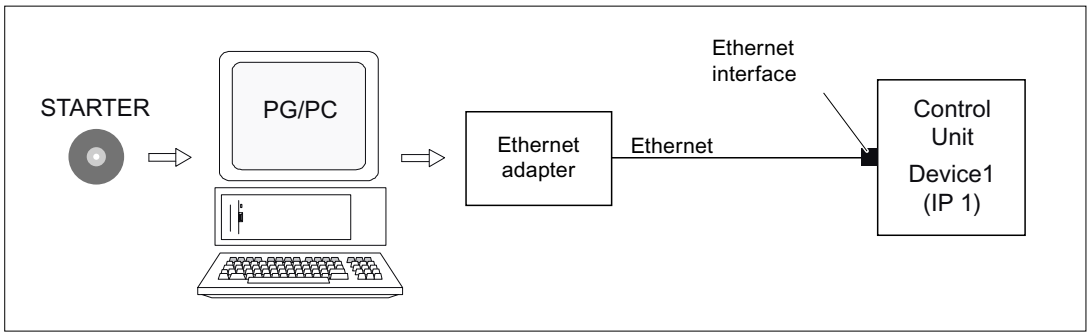


Figure 5-32 STARTER via Ethernet (example)

Procedure for establishing online operation via Ethernet

1. Installing the Ethernet interface in the PG/PC according to the manufacturer's specifications
2. Setting the IP address in Windows XP.

   The PG/PC is assigned a free IP address (e.g. 169.254.11.1). The factory setting of the internal Ethernet interface -X127 of the Control Unit is 169.254.11.22.
3. Setting the online interface in STARTER.
4. Assigning the IP address and the name via STARTER (node initialization).

   The Ethernet interface must be initialized so that the STARTER can establish communication. Selecting online mode in STARTER.

Setting the IP address in Windows XP

On your desktop, right-click "Network environment" -> Properties -> double-click on the network card and choose -> Properties -> Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) -> Properties -> Enter the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

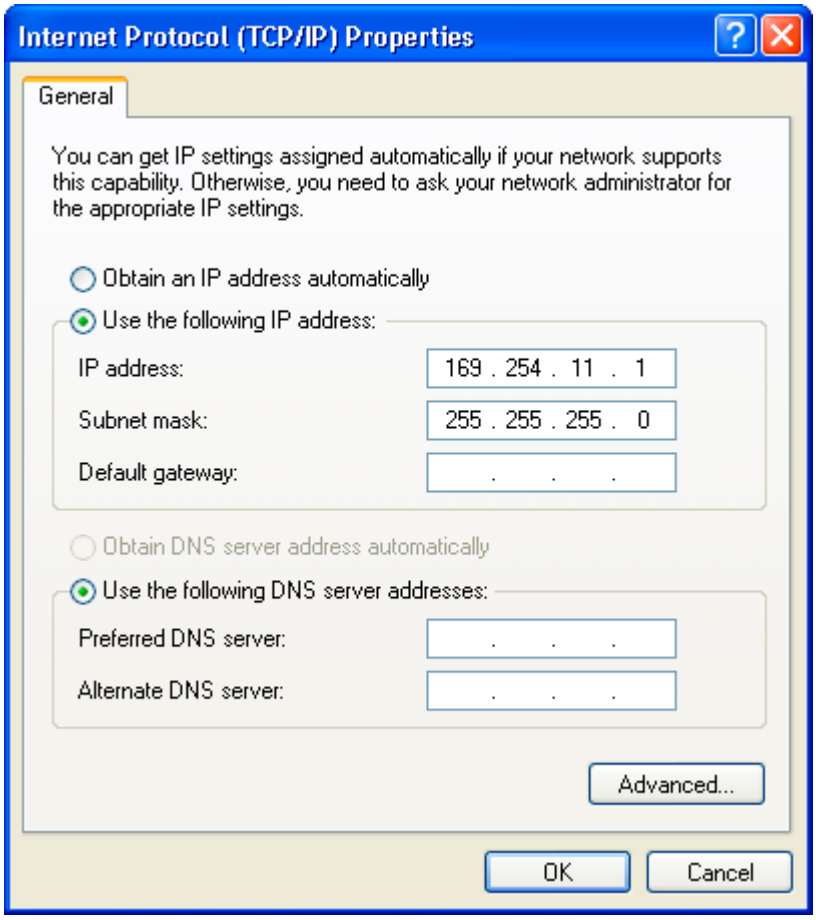


Figure 5-33 Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) properties

Assigning the IP address and the name via STARTER, "Accessible nodes" function

Use the STARTER to assign an IP address and a name to the Ethernet interface.

- Connect the PG/PC and the Control Unit using an Ethernet cable.
- Switch on the Control Unit.
- Open STARTER.
- Either create a new project or open an existing project
- A search is performed for available nodes in Ethernet via Project -> Accessible nodes or the "Accessible nodes" button.
- The SINAMICS drive object is detected and displayed as a bus node with IP address 169.254.11.22 and without name.

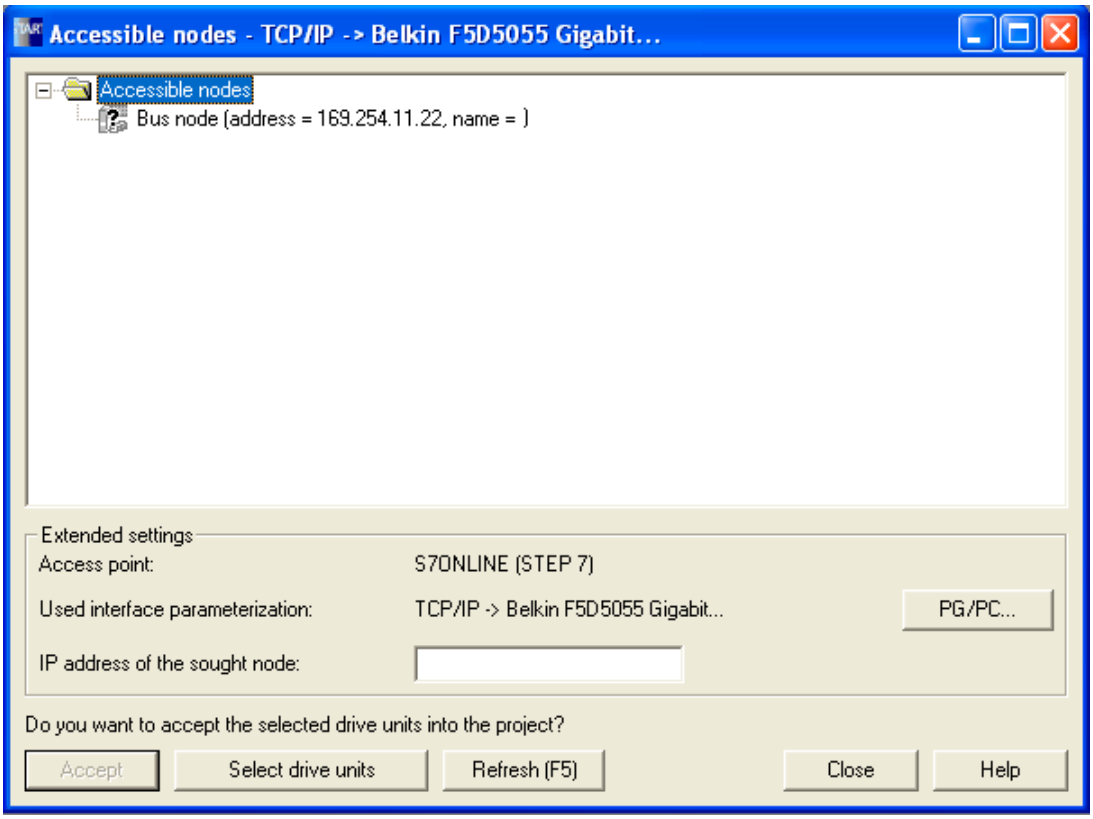


Figure 5-34 Accessible nodes

- Mark the bus node entry and select the displayed menu item "Edit Ethernet node" with the right mouse button.
- In the following "Edit Ethernet node" screen, enter the device name for the Ethernet interface (e.g. "drive1") and click the "Assign name" button. Enter the IP address (e.g. 169.254.11.10) in the IP configuration and specify the subnet screen (e.g. 255.255.255.0). Then click the "Assign IP configuration" button and close the mask.

Note

Naming devices

ST (Structured Text) conventions must be satisfied for the name assignment of IO devices in Ethernet (SINAMICS components). The names must be unique within Ethernet.
The characters "-" and "." are not permitted in the name of an IO device.

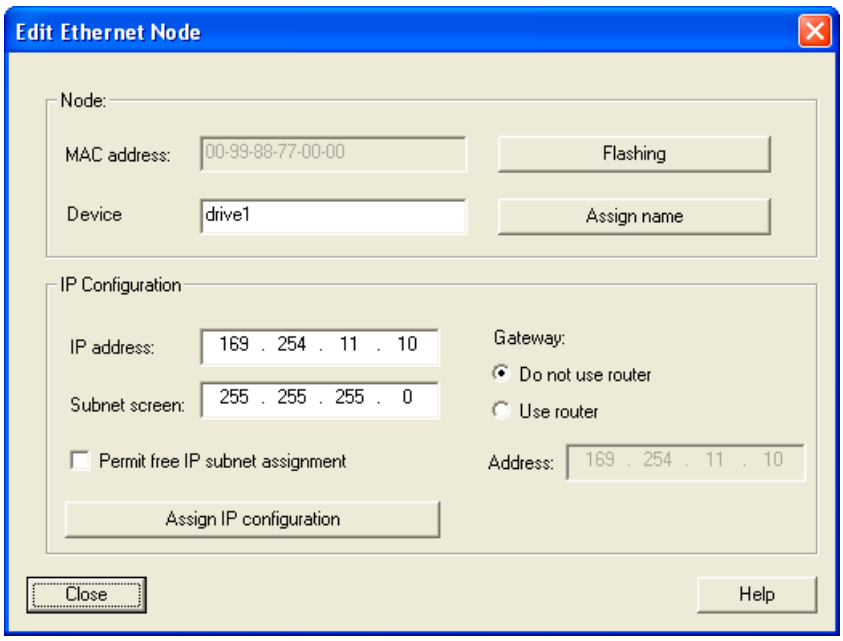


Figure 5-35 Edit Ethernet Node

- Pressing the "Update (F5)" button displays the IP address and name in the entry for the bus node. If not, close the "Accessible nodes" screen and perform another search for accessible nodes.
- If the Ethernet interface is displayed as bus node, mark the entry and press the "Accept" button.
- The SINAMICS drive is displayed as drive object in the project navigator.
- You can now configure the drive unit (see Chapter "Configuring the drive unit").

Note

Storage location of the IP address

The IP address and device name are stored on the memory card of the Control Unit (non-volatile)..

Parameter

Parameters can also be used to modify and/or display the properties of the Ethernet interface.

- p8900 IE name of the station
- p8901 IE IP address of the station
- p8902 IE default gateway of station
- p8903 IE subnet mask of station
- p8904 IE DHCP mode
- p8905 IE interface configuration
- r8910 IE name of station active
- r8911 IE IP address of station active
- r8912 IE default gateway of station active
- r8913 IE subnet mask of station active
- r8914 IE DHCP mode of station active
- r8915 IE MAC address of station

5.4 The AOP30 operator panel

Description

An operator panel is located in the cabinet door of the cabinet unit for operating, monitoring, and commissioning tasks. It has the following features:

- Graphic-capable, back-lit LCD for plain-text display and a "bar-type display" for process variables
- LEDs for indicating the operating modes
- Help function describing causes of and remedies for faults and alarms
- Keypad for controlling drives during operation
- LOCAL/REMOTE switchover for selecting the control terminal (master control assigned to operator panel or Customer Terminal Block / PROFIdrive)
- Numeric keypad for entering setpoint or parameter values
- Function keys for prompted navigation through the menus
- Two-stage security concept to protect against accidental or unauthorized changes to settings
- IP54 degree of protection (when installed).

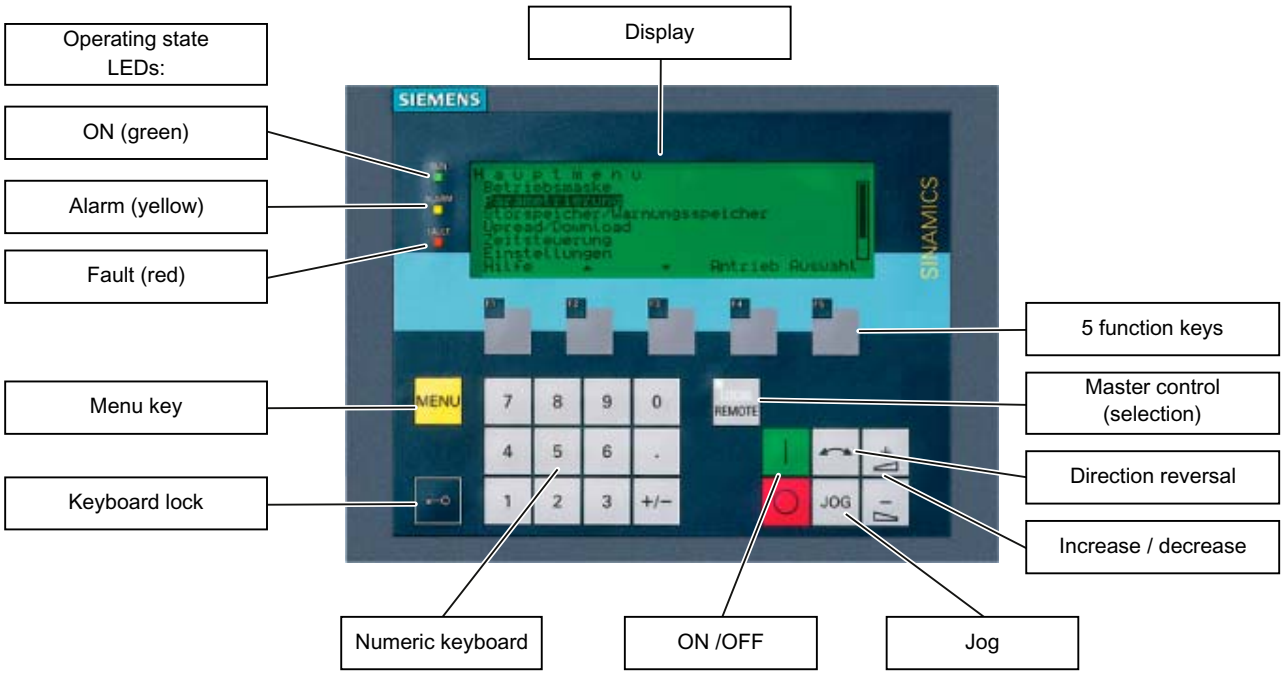


Figure 5-36 Components of the cabinet unit operator panel (AOP30)

5.5 First commissioning with the AOP30

5.5.1 Initial ramp-up

Start screen

When the system is switched on for the first time, the Control Unit is initialized automatically. The following screen is displayed:

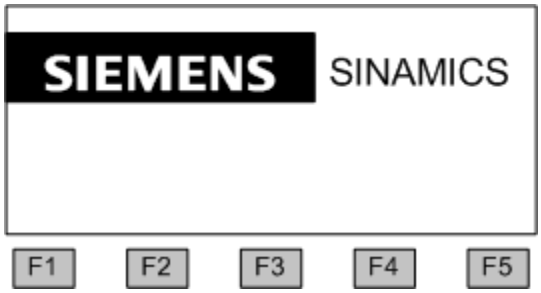


Figure 5-37 Initial screen

When the system boots up, the parameter descriptions are loaded into the operating field from the CompactFlash card.

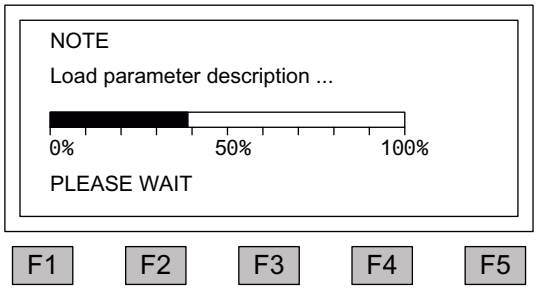
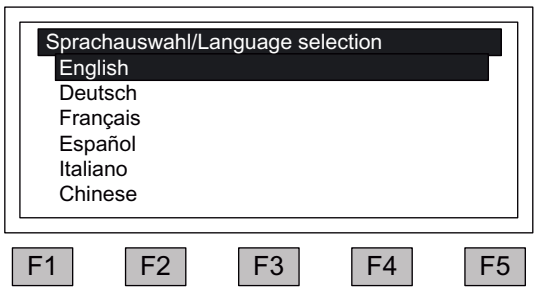


Figure 5-38 Load the parameter descriptions while booting up the system

Selecting the language

When the system is first booted up, a screen for selecting the language appears.



You can select the language in the dialog screen.

To change the language, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To select the language, choose <F5>.

Once the language has been selected, the booting up process continues.

Once the system has successfully ramped up, the drive has to be commissioned when the system is switched on for the first time after it has been delivered. The converter can then be switched on.

For a subsequent power up, operation can be directly started.

Navigation within the interactive screens

Within an interactive screen, the selection boxes can usually be selected using the <F2> and/or <F3> keys. Selection fields are generally texts surrounded by a frame. When they are selected, they are highlighted with a white text on a black background.
The present value of a highlighted selection box can usually be changed by pressing <F5> "OK" and/or "Change." Another entry box then appears and the value you want is entered directly using the numerical keypad or can be selected from a list.

You can change from one interactive screen to the next or previous screen by selecting the "Next" or "Previous" selection boxes and then confirming by pressing <F5> "OK."
If a screen contains particularly important parameters, the selection field "Continue" only appears at the bottom of the screen. This is because every single parameter in this interactive screen has to be checked and/or corrected thoroughly before the next interactive screen can be accessed.

With some commissioning steps, the entire commissioning can be interrupted by selecting "Interrupt COMM."

5.5.2 Basic Commissioning

Entering the motor data

During initial commissioning, you have to enter motor data using the operator panel. Use the data shown on the motor type plate.

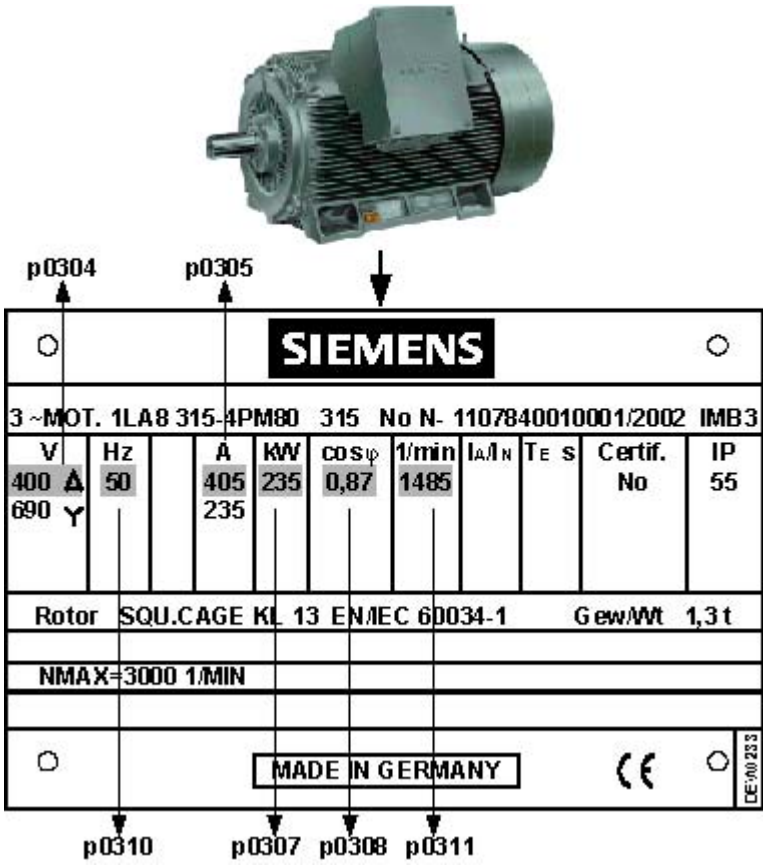


Figure 5-39 Example of a motor type plate

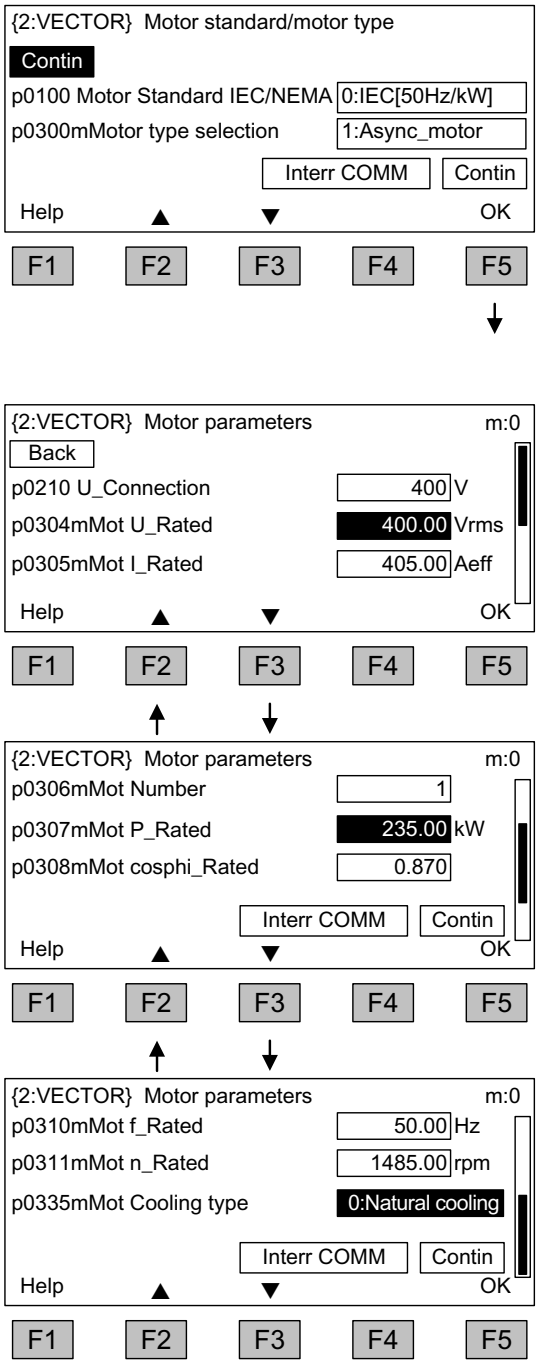
Table 5- 1 Motor data

	Parameter no.	Values	Unit
System of units for line frequency and entering motor data	p0100	0 1	IEC [50 Hz / kW] NEMA [60 Hz / hp]
Motor: Rated voltage Rated current Rated power Rated power factor cos ϕ (at p0100 = 0 only) Rated efficiency η (at p0100 = 1only) Rated frequency Rated speed	 p0304 p0305 p0307 p0308 p0309 p0310 p0311		 [V] [A] [kW] / [hp] [%] [Hz] [min-1] / [rpm]

Basic commissioning: Selecting the motor type and entering the motor data

For the following cabinet units, possible additional settings must be made before the following sequence (see "Additional settings for cabinet units with high power rating"):

- For 3 AC 380 to 480 V:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 3 AC 500 to 600 V:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 3 AC 660 to 690 V:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx



You can select the motor standard and type in the dialog screen.

The following is defined for the motor standard:

0: Line frequency 50 Hz, motor data in kW
1: line frequency 60 Hz, motor data in hp

The corresponding motor is selected for the motor type.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

Entering the motor data specified on the type plate.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

To change a parameter value, navigate to the required selection field and activate with <F5>.

The system displays another window in which you can:

- Enter the value directly, or
- select the value from a list.

When you have finished entering the motor data, choose "Continue" underneath the final parameter value and activate with <F5>.

Note

Selecting the motor type

The selection of the motor type is used to pre-assign specific motor parameters and to optimize the operating characteristics and behavior. Details are described in the list manual in the p0300 parameter.

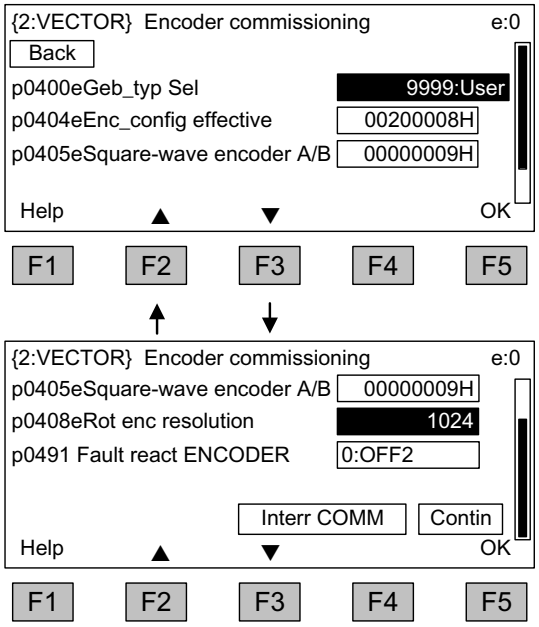
Note

Commissioning of an induction motor

The steps described below also apply to commissioning an induction motor.

When commissioning a permanent-magnet synchronous motor (p0300 = 2), there are a few special conditions that apply, which are detailed in a separate chapter (see "Setpoint channel and closed-loop control/Permanent-magnet synchronous motors").

Basic commissioning: entering the encoder data (if available)



When the SMC30 is connected for encoder evaluation (with option K50), it is recognized by the AOP30 and a screen is displayed in which you can enter the encoder data.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

Predefined encoders can be easily set by selecting parameter p0400 (encoder type selection):

3001:	1024 HTL A/B R
3002:	1024 TTL A/B R
3003:	2048 HTL A/B R
3005:	1024 HTL A/B
3006:	1024 TTL A/B
3007:	2048 HTL A/B
3008:	2048 TTL A/B
3009:	1024 HTL A/B unipolar
3011:	2048 HTL A/B unipolar
3020:	2048 TTL A/B R with sense

Note

Delivery condition

The delivery condition is a bipolar HTL encoder with 1024 pulses per revolution and a 24-V power supply.

The section ("Electrical Installation") contains two connection examples for HTL and TTL encoders.

Note

Pre-defined encoder type

If a predefined encoder type is selected using p0400, then the settings of the following parameters p0404, p0405 and p0408 cannot be changed.

If the connected encoder does not match any of the encoders predefined in p0400, follow the simple procedure below for entering the encoder data:

- Via p0400, select an encoder type whose data is similar to that of the connected encoder.
- Select "User-defined encoder" (p0400 = 9999). Previously set values are stored here.
- Adjust the bit fields of p0404, p0405, and p0408 to the data for the connected encoder.

Table 5- 2 Meaning of the bit setting for p0404

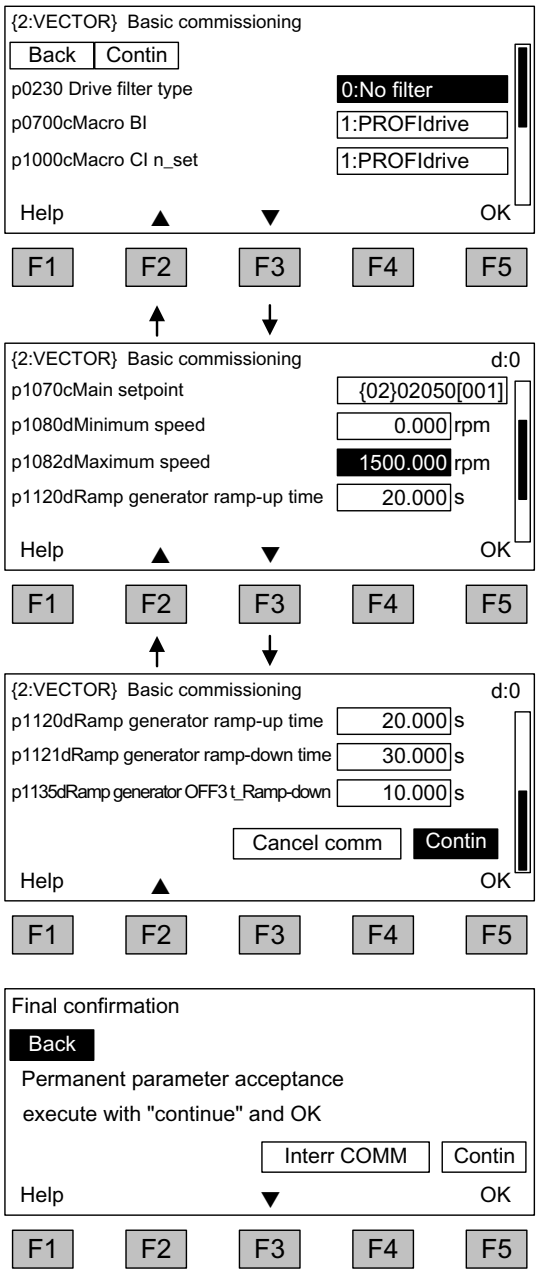
Bit	Meaning	Value 0	Value 1
20	Voltage 5 V	No	Yes
21	Voltage 24 V	No	Yes

Table 5- 3 Meaning of the bit settings for p0405

Bit	Meaning	Value 0	Value 1
0	Signal	Unipolar	Bipolar
1	Level	HTL	TTL
2	Track monitoring	None	A/B>< -A/B
3	Zero pulse	24 V unipolar	Same as A/B track
4	Switching threshold	Low	High
5	Pulse/direction	No	Yes

NOTICE
Supply voltage for the encoder Once the encoder has been commissioned, the supply voltage (5/24 V) set for the encoder is activated on the SMC30 module. If a 5-V encoder is connected and the supply voltage has not been set correctly via p0404 (bit 20 = "Yes," bit 21 = "No"), the encoder may be damaged.

Basic commissioning: Entering the basic parameters



Entering the basic commissioning parameters:
If a sine-wave filter (option L15) is connected, it must be activated in p0230 (p0230 = 3) otherwise it could be destroyed.

p0700: Preset command source
5: PROFIdrive
6: TM31 terminals
7: Namur
10: PROFIdrive Namur

p1000: Preset setpoint source
1: PROFIdrive
2: TM31 terminals
3: Motorized potentiometer
4: Fixed setpoint

Once a setpoint source has been selected (p1000), the main setpoint p1070 is defaulted accordingly.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

To change a parameter value, navigate to the required selection field and activate with <F5>.

Another window appears in which you can
- enter the required value directly, or
- select the value from a list.

Final confirmation

Confirm the basic parameters to save them.

Once you have selected "Continue" and activated your entries with <F5>, the basic parameters you entered are permanently saved and the calculations required for closed-loop control are carried out.

Note

Enter the motor-side filter

A filter on the motor side must be entered in p0230:

- Option L07 – dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter: p0230 = 2
- Option L08 – motor reactor: p0230 = 1
- Option L10 – dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter: p0230 = 2
- Option L15 – sine-wave filter: p0230 = 3

Otherwise the motor control cannot function optimally.

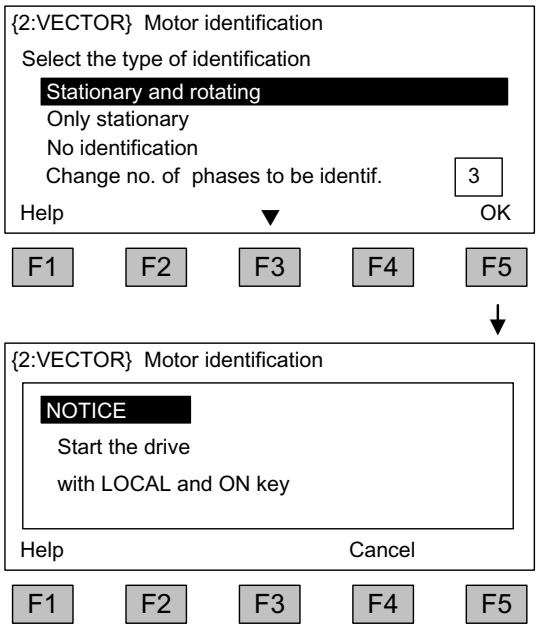
When p0230 = 4 "External sine-wave filter", a separate sine-wave filter can be entered. An input mask for specific filter data then appears.

Note

Do not use a selection

The choice "no selection" is also available as default setting for the command and setpoint sources; if selected, no default settings are applied for the command and setpoint sources.

Basic commissioning: Motor identification



Selecting motor identification

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

Stationary measurement increases the control performance, as this minimizes deviations in the electrical characteristic values due to variations in material properties and manufacturing tolerances.

Rotary measurement determines the data required (e.g., moment of inertia) for setting the speed controller. It also measures the magnetization characteristic and rated magnetization current of the motor.

Changing the number of phases to be identified:

- For identification with one phase, the measurement time is significantly reduced.
- For identification with several phases, the measurement results are averaged.

To activate this function, press the LOCAL key (wait until the LED in the LOCAL key lights up) and then ON.

If motor identification is not carried out, the motor control uses the motor characteristic values calculated from the rating plate data rather than the measured values.

Note

Complete motor identification

When motor identification has been completed, press the OFF key to cancel the power-on inhibit.

⚠ DANGER

Rotating measurement

When the rotating measurement is selected, the drive triggers movements in the motor that can reach the maximum motor speed. The EMERGENCY OFF functions must be fully operational during commissioning. To protect the machines and personnel, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.

Note

Activate enable signals

Make sure that the necessary enable signals have been assigned; otherwise motor identification cannot be carried out.

Note

Fault with stationary or rotating measurements

If a fault is present when selecting the stationary or rotary measurement, motor identification cannot be carried out.
To rectify the fault, you must choose "No identification" to close the screen, then eliminate the fault.
After this, motor identification can be selected again via <MENU> - <Commissioning/service> - <Drive commissioning> - <Motor identification>.

5.5.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel

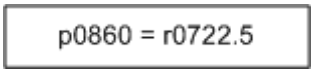
Additional settings must be made for units that are connected in parallel before selecting the motor and entering the motor data via the operator panel:

- For 3 AC 380 to 480 V:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 3 AC 500 to 600 V:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 3 AC 660 to 690 V:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

Settings to monitor the checkback signal from the main contactor or circuit breaker for 12-pulse infeed

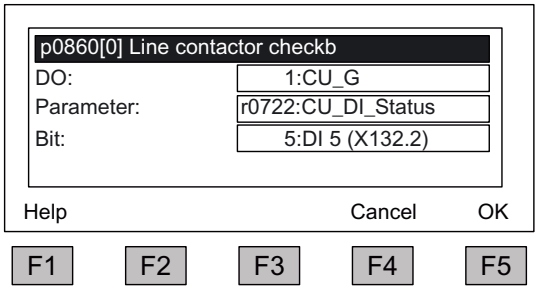
The checkback contacts of the main contactors and the circuit breakers are connected in series in the factory and wired to digital input 5 of the Control Unit.

After the drive unit has been commissioned, the checkback signal monitoring function must be activated. This is realized using parameter p0860{Vector} = 722.5{Control_Unit}.



Select parameter p0860 "Line contactor checkback" and connect to digital input DI5.

<MENU> <Parameterization> <Single DO> <2:VECTOR> <OK> select "p0860", <change> select "{1:CU_G}" <OK>, select "r0722" <OK>, select ".05 DI 5 (X132.2)" <OK>



A confirmation window is displayed in which a summary of the line contactor feedback is displayed.

To confirm the set connection, choose <F5>.

⚠DANGER

Activate monitoring of feedback signal of the main contactor or circuit breaker

If the monitoring function for the main contactor or circuit breaker checkback signal is not activated, then the drive could be powered up even if the main contactor or circuit breaker on an individual system fails. This could overload and damage the input rectifiers on the individual system.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be made again after the drive unit has been recommissioned.

Settings for motor connection to a motor with one-winding system

Before the commissioning, a motor with several winding systems is automatically defined.

The setting for a one-winding system is made during commissioning by setting parameter p7003 to 0.

Settings via the AOP30

During commissioning, you are asked whether a motor is connected to a one-winding system or multiple winding system. This setting must be made according to the motor connected.

Note

Setting "motor with a one-winding system"

If the "motor with a one-winding system" is not set using p7003 = 0, then the drive can be powered down (tripped) during the motor identification routine with an "overcurrent" fault message. The system will not be properly tuned.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be again made before the drive unit is re-commissioned.

5.6 Status after commissioning

LOCAL mode (control via operator panel)

- You switch to LOCAL mode by pressing the "LOCAL/REMOTE" key.
- Control (ON/OFF) is carried out via the "ON" and "OFF" keys.
- You can specify the setpoint using the "increase" and "decrease" keys or by entering the appropriate numbers using the numeric keypad.

Analog outputs (with option G60 "Customer terminal module TM31")

- The actual speed (r0063) is output as a current output in the range 0 to 20 mA at analog output 0 (X522:2 and 3).
  A current of 20 mA is equal to the maximum speed in p1082.
- The actual current value (r0068) is output as a current output in the range 0 to 20 mA at analog output 1 (X522:5 and 6).
  A current of 20 mA corresponds to the current limit (p0640), which is set to 1.5 times the rated motor current (p0305).

Digital outputs (with option G60 "Customer terminal module TM31")

- The "enable pulses" signal is output at digital output 0 (X542:2 and 3).
- The “no fault active” signal is output at digital output 1 (X542:5 and 6) (protection against wire break).
- The "ready for power up" signal is output at digital output 8 (X541:2).

5.7 Parameter reset to factory settings

The factory settings represent the defined original status of the device on delivery.

Resetting the parameters to the factory settings means that all the parameter settings made since the system was delivered are reset.

Resetting Parameters via AOP30

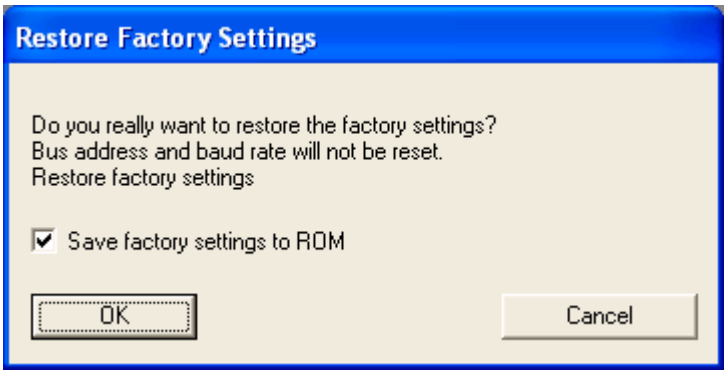
Table 5- 4 Procedure for resetting parameters to the factory settings with AOP30

"Advanced" access level ↓ Select parameter reset ↓ Press OK	**Set "Extended" access level on the operator panel:** <Key button> - <Access level> - "Extended" **Set parameter filter to "Parameter reset":** <MENU> <Commissioning/Service> <Device commissioning> <OK> <30: Parameter Reset> <OK> **Reset all parameters to factory settings:** Factory settings for all the device parameters are restored.

Parameter reset via STARTER

With STARTER, the parameters are reset in online mode. The required steps are described below:

Step	Selection in toolbar
Choose **Project > Connect to target system**	
Click the drive unit whose parameters you want to reset to the factory settings and click **Restore factory settings** icon in the toolbar.	

Step	Selection in toolbar
To confirm, click **OK**. 	
Choose **Target system > Copy from RAM to ROM**	

Note

Copy from RAM to ROM

The **Copy from RAM to ROM** icon is only active when the drive unit is selected in the project navigator.

When the parameters have been reset to the factory settings, initial commissioning needs to be carried out.

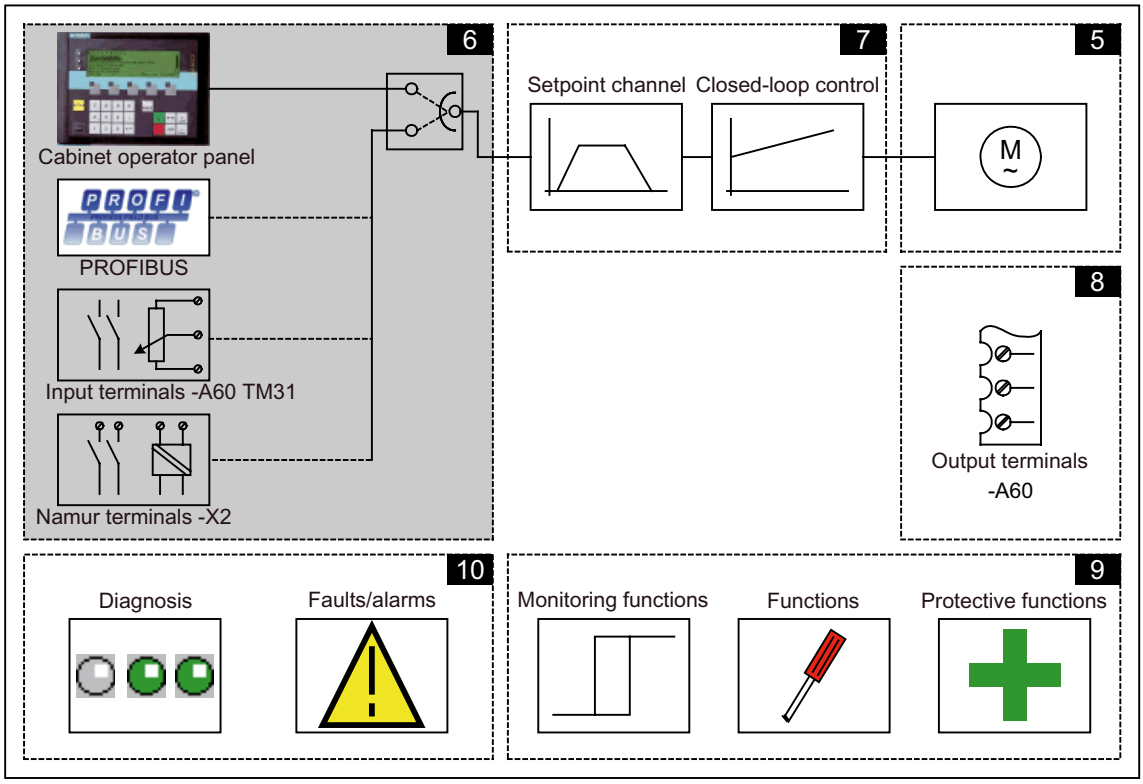
Operation

6

6.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Basic information about the drive system
- Command source selection via
  - PROFIdrive
  - terminal block
  - NAMUR terminal block
- Setpoint input via
  - PROFIdrive
  - analog inputs
  - motorized potentiometer
  - fixed setpoints
- Control via the AOP30 operator panel
- Communication according to PROFIdrive
- Communication via
  - PROFIBUS DP
  - PROFINET IO
  - SINAMICS Link



6.2 General information about command and setpoint sources

Description

Four default settings are available for selecting the command sources and four for selecting the setpoint sources for the SINAMICS G150 cabinet unit. The choice "no selection" is also available; if selected, no default settings are applied for the command and setpoint sources.

Command sources

- PROFIdrive
- TM31 terminals
- NAMUR
- PROFIdrive NAMUR

Setpoint sources

- PROFIdrive
- Analog inputs
- Motorized potentiometer
- Fixed setpoints

The various assignments are explained in the following sections.

Note

Defaults

Make sure that the default settings you choose during commissioning are compatible with the cabinet configuration (see "Commissioning")

Emergency STOP signals (L57, L59, and L60) and motor protection signals (L83 and L84) are always active (regardless of the command source).

Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

6.3 Basic information about the drive system

6.3.1 Parameters

Overview

The drive is adapted to the relevant drive task by means of parameters. Each parameter is identified by a unique parameter number and by specific attributes (e.g. read, write, BICO attribute, group attribute, and so on).

The parameters can be accessed via the following means:

- PC with the "STARTER" commissioning tool via PROFIBUS
- The user-friendly AOP30 Operator Panel

Parameter types

The following adjustable and display parameters are available:

- Adjustable parameters (write/read)

  These parameters have a direct impact on the behavior of a function.

  Example: Ramp-up and ramp-down time of a ramp-function generator
- Display parameters (read only)

  These parameters are used to display internal variables.

  Example: Current motor current

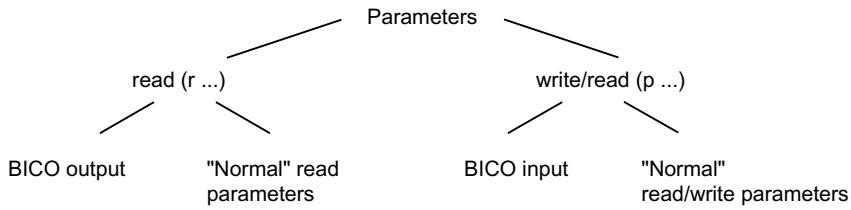


Figure 6-1 Parameter types

All these drive parameters can be read and changed via PROFIBUS using the mechanisms defined in the PROFIdrive profile.

Parameter categories

The parameters for the individual drive objects (see "Drive objects") are categorized according to data sets as follows (see "Operation/data sets"):

- Data-set-independent parameters
  These parameters exist only once per drive object.
- Data-set-dependent parameters
  These parameters can exist several times for each drive object and can be addressed via the parameter index for reading and writing. A distinction is made between various types of data set:
  - CDS: Command data set
    By parameterizing several command data sets and switching between them, the drive can be operated with different pre-configured signal sources.
  - DDS: Drive data set
    The drive data set contains the parameters for switching between different drive control configurations.
  - PDS: Powerstack Data Set
    The number of powerstack data sets corresponds to the number of power units combined for units that are connected in parallel.

  The CDS and DDS can be switched over during normal operation. Further types of data set also exist, however these can only be activated indirectly by means of a DDS changeover.

  - EDS: encoder data set
  - MDS: Motor data set

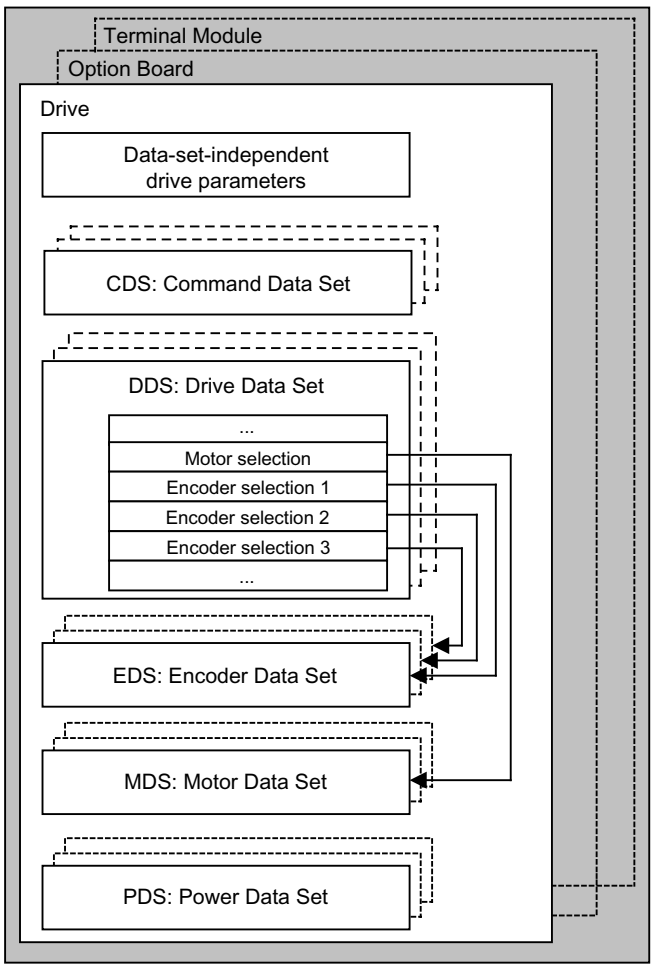


Figure 6-2 Parameter categories

6.3.2 Drive objects

A drive object is a self-contained software function with its own parameters and, if necessary, its own faults and alarms. Drive objects can be provided as standard (e.g. I/O evaluation), or you can add single (e.g. option board) or multiple objects (e.g. drive control).

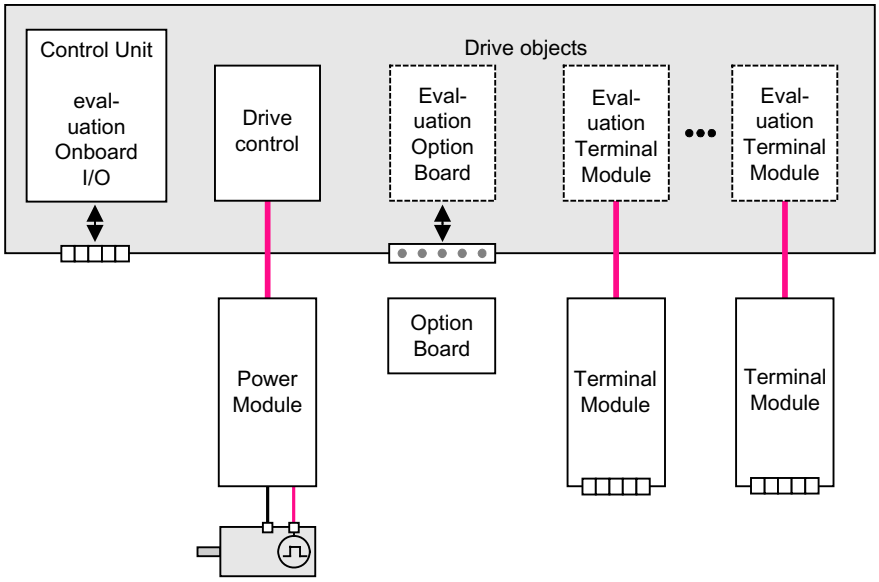


Figure 6-3 Drive objects

Standard drive objects

- Drive control
  Drive control handles closed-loop control of the motor. At least 1 Power Module and at least 1 motor and up to 3 encoders are assigned to the drive control.
- Control Unit, inputs/outputs
  The inputs/outputs on the Control Unit are evaluated within a drive object.

Optionally installed drive objects

- Option board evaluation

  A further drive object handles evaluation of an installed option board. The specific method of operation depends on the type of option board installed.
- Terminal Module evaluation

  A separate drive object handles evaluation of the respective optional Terminal Modules.

Properties of a drive object

- Separate parameter space
- Separate window in STARTER
- Separate fault/alarm system
- Separate PROFIdrive telegram for process data

Configuring drive objects

When you commission the system for the first time using the STARTER tool, you will use configuration parameters to set up the software-based "drive objects" which are processed on the Control Unit. Various drive objects can be created within a Control Unit.

The drive objects are configurable function blocks and are used to execute specific drive functions.

If you need to configure additional drive objects or delete existing ones after initial commissioning, the drive system must be switched to configuration mode.

The parameters of a drive object cannot be accessed until the drive object has been configured and you have switched from configuration mode to parameterization mode.

Note

Assignment during the initial commissioning

Each installed drive object is allocated a number between 0 and 63 during initial commissioning for unique identification.

Parameters

- p0101 Drive object numbers
- r0102 Number of drive objects
- p0107 Drive object type
- p0108 Drive object configuration

6.3.3 Data Sets

Description

For many applications, it is beneficial if more than one parameter can be changed simultaneously by means of **one** external signal during operation/when the system is ready for operation.

This can be carried out using indexed parameters, whereby the parameters are grouped together in a data set according to their functionality and indexed. Indexing allows several different settings, which can be activated by switching the data set, to be defined in each parameter.

Note

Copying data sets

The command and drive data sets can be copied in STARTER (Drive -> Configuration -> "Command data sets" or "Drive data sets" tab).
The displayed command and drive data sets can be selected in the associated STARTER screen forms.

CDS: Command data set

The BICO parameters (binector and connector inputs) are grouped together in a command data set. These parameters are used to interconnect the signal sources of a drive (see "Operation/BICO technology: Interconnecting signals").

By parameterizing several command data sets and switching between them, the drive can be operated with different pre-configured signal sources.

A command data set contains the following (examples):

- Binector inputs for control commands (digital signals)
  - ON/OFF, enable signals (p0844, etc.)
  - Jog (p1055, etc.)
- Connector inputs for setpoints (analog signals)
  - Voltage setpoint for V/f control (p1330)
  - Torque limits and scaling factors (p1522, p1523, p1528, p1529)

In the delivery condition, two command data sets are available; this number can be increased to a maximum of four using p0170 (number of command data sets (CDS)).

The following parameters are available for selecting command data sets and for displaying the currently selected command data set:

Table 6- 1 Command data set: selection and display

CDS	Select bit 1 p0811	Select bit 0 p0810	Display	
			selected (r0836)	active (r0050)
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1	1
2	1	0	2	2
3	1	1	3	3

If a command data set, which does not exist, is selected, the current data set remains active.

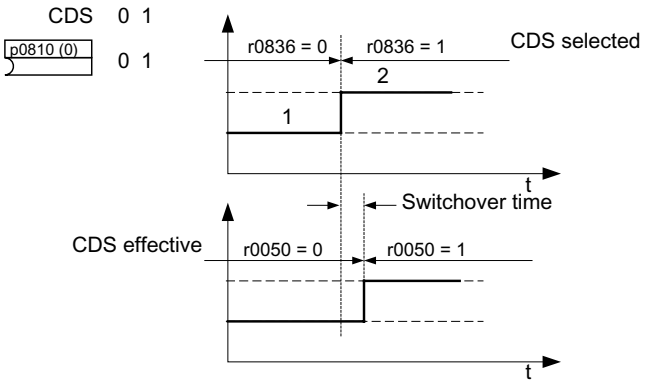


Figure 6-4 Example: Switching between command data set 0 and 1

DDS: Drive data set

A drive data set contains various adjustable parameters that are relevant with respect to open and closed-loop drive control:

- Numbers of the assigned motor and encoder data sets:
  - p0186: Assigned motor data set (MDS)
  - p0187 to p0189: up to 3 assigned encoder data sets (EDS)
- Various control parameters, e.g.:
  - Fixed speed setpoints (p1001 to p1015)
  - Speed limits min./max. (p1080, p1082)
  - Characteristic data of ramp-function generator (p1120 ff)
  - Characteristic data of controller (p1240 ff)
  - ...

The parameters that are grouped together in the drive data set are identified in the SINAMICS parameter list by "Data set DDS" and are assigned an index [0..n].

It is possible to parameterize several drive data sets. You can switch easily between different drive configurations (control type, motor, encoder) by selecting the corresponding drive data set.

One drive object can manage up to 32 drive data sets. The number of drive data sets is configured with p0180.

Binector inputs p0820 to p0824 are used to select a drive data set. They represent the number of the drive data set (0 to 31) in binary format (where p0824 is the most significant bit).

- p0820 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 0
- p0821 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 1
- p0822 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 2
- p0823 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 3
- p0824 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 4

Supplementary conditions and recommendations

- Recommendation for the number of DDS in a drive
  The number of DDS in a drive should correspond with the number of changeover options; in other words
  p0180 (DDS) ≥ p0130 (MDS).
- Max. number of DDS for one drive object = 32 DDS

EDS: Encoder data set

An encoder data set contains various adjustable parameters describing the connected encoder for the purpose of configuring the drive.

- Adjustable parameters, e.g.:
  - Encoder interface component number (p0141)
  - Encoder component number (p0142)
  - Encoder type selection (p0400)

The parameters that are grouped together in the encoder data set are identified in the SINAMICS parameter list by "Data set EDS" and are assigned an index [0..n].

A separate encoder data set is required for each encoder controlled by the Control Unit. Up to 3 encoder data sets are assigned to a drive data set via parameters p0187, p0188, and p0189.

An encoder data set can only be changed using a DDS changeover.

Each encoder may only be assigned to one drive and within a drive must - in each drive data set - either always be encoder 1, always encoder 2 or always encoder 3.

One application for the EDS changeover would be a power component with which several motors are operated in turn. A contactor circuit is used to changeover between these motors. Each of the motors can be equipped with an encoder or be operated without an encoder. Each encoder must be connected to its own SMx.

If encoder 1 (p0187) is changed over via DDS, then an MDS must also be changed over.

One drive object can manage up to 16 encoder data sets. The number of encoder data sets configured is specified in p0140.

When a drive data set is selected, the assigned encoder data sets are selected automatically.

MDS: Motor data set

A motor data set contains various adjustable parameters describing the connected motor for the purpose of configuring the drive. It also contains certain display parameters with calculated data.

- Adjustable parameters, e.g.:
  - Motor component number (p0131)
  - Motor type selection (p0300)
  - Rated motor data (p0304 ff)
  - ...
- Display parameters, e.g.:
  - Calculated rated data (p0330 ff)
  - ...

The parameters that are grouped together in the motor data set are identified in the SINAMICS parameter list by "Data set MDS" and are assigned an index [0..n].

A separate motor data set is required for each motor that is controlled by the Control Unit via a Motor Module. The motor data set is assigned to a drive data set via parameter p0186.

A motor data set can only be changed using a DDS changeover.

The motor data set changeover is, for example, used for:

- Changing over between different motors
- Changing over between different windings in a motor (e.g. star-delta changeover)
- Motor data adaptation

If several motors are operated alternately on one Motor Module, a corresponding number of drive data sets must be created. See "Functions / Drive functions" for additional information and instructions on changing over motors.

One drive object can manage up to 16 motor data sets. The number of motor data sets in p0130 may not exceed the number of drive data sets in p0180.

Example of data set assignment

Table 6- 2 Example, data set assignment

DDS	Motor (p0186)	Encoder 1 (p0187)	Encoder 2 (p0188)	Encoder 3 (p0189)
DDS 0	MDS 0	EDS 0	EDS 1	EDS 2
DDS 1	MDS 0	EDS 0	EDS 3	--
DDS 2	MDS 0	EDS 0	EDS 4	EDS 5
DDS 3	MDS 1	EDS 0	--	--

Copying the command data set (CDS)

Set parameter p0809 as follows:

1. p0809[0] = number of the command data set to be copied (source)
2. p0809[1] = number of the command data to which the data is to be copied (target)
3. p0809[2] = 1

Start copying.

Copying is finished when p0809[2] = 0.

Copying the drive data set (DDS)

Set parameter p0819 as follows:

1. p0819[0] = Number of the drive data set to be copied (source)
2. p0819[1] = Number of the drive data set to which the data is to be copied (target)
3. p0819[2] = 1

Start copying.

Copying is finished when p0819[2] = 0.

Copy motor data set (MDS)

Set parameter p0139 as follows:

1. p0139[0] = Number of the motor data set that is to be copied (source)
2. p0139[1] = Number of the motor data set which should be copied into (target)
3. p0139[2] = 1

Start copying.

Copying has been completed, if p0139[2] = 0.

Function diagram

FP 8560	Command data sets (CDS)
FP 8565	Drive data set (DDS)
FP 8570	Encoder data set (EDS)
FP 8575	Motor data sets (MDS)

Parameters

- p0120 Power Module data sets (PDS) number
- p0130 Motor data sets (MDS) number
- p0139[0...2] Copy motor data set (MDS)
- p0140 Encoder data sets (EDS) number
- p0170 Command data set (CDS) number
- p0180 Drive data set (DDS) number
- p0186 Assigned motor data set (MDS)
- p0187[0...n] Encoder 1 encoder data set number
- p0188[0...n] Encoder 2 encoder data set number
- p0189[0...n] Encoder 3 encoder data set number
- p0809 Copy command data set CDS
- p0810 BI: Command data set selection CDS bit 0
- p0811 BI: Command data set selection CDS bit 1
- p0819[0...2] Copy drive data set DDS
- p0820 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 0
- p0821 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 1
- p0822 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 2
- p0823 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 3
- p0824 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 4

6.3.4 BICO technology: interconnecting signals

Description

Every drive contains a large number of interconnectable input and output variables and internal control variables.

BICO technology (Binector Connector Technology) allows the drive to be adapted to a wide variety of conditions.

Digital signals, which can be connected freely by means of BICO parameters, are identified by the prefix BI, BO, CI or CO in their parameter name. These parameters are identified accordingly in the parameter list or in the function diagrams.

Note

Using STARTER

The STARTER parameterization and commissioning tool is recommended when using BICO technology.

Binectors, BI: binector input, BO: Binector output

A binector is a digital (binary) signal without a unit which can assume the value 0 or 1.

Binectors are subdivided into binector inputs (signal sink) and binector outputs (signal source).

Table 6- 3 Binectors

Abbreviation and symbol	Name	Description
	Binector input Binector Input (signal sink)	Can be interconnected to a binector output as source. The number of the binector output must be entered as a parameter value.
	Binector output Binector output (signal source)	Can be used as a source for a binector input.

Connectors, CI: connector input, CO: Connector output

A connector is a digital signal e.g. in 32–bit format. It can be used to emulate words (16 bits), double words (32 bits) or analog signals. Connectors are subdivided into connector inputs (signal sink) and connector outputs (signal source).

The options for interconnecting connectors are restricted to ensure that performance is not adversely affected.

Table 6- 4 Connectors

Abbreviation and symbol	Name	Description
	Connector input Connector input (signal sink)	Can be interconnected to a connector output as source. The number of the connector output must be entered as a parameter value.
	Connector output Connector output (signal source)	Can be used as a source for a connector input.

Interconnecting signals using BICO technology

To interconnect two signals, a BICO input parameter (signal sink) must be assigned to the desired BICO output parameter (signal source).

The following information is required in order to connect a binector/connector input to a binector/connector output:

- Binectors: Parameter number, bit number, and drive object ID
- Connectors with no index: Parameter number and drive object ID
- Connectors with index: Parameter number, index, and drive object ID

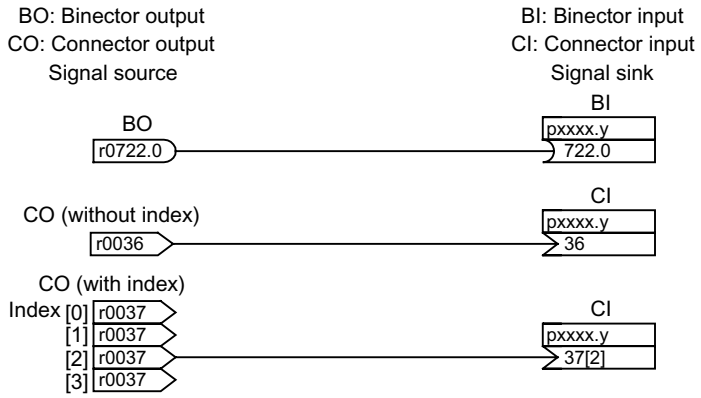


Figure 6-5 Interconnecting signals using BICO technology

Note

A connector input (CI) cannot be interconnected with any connector output (CO, signal source). The same applies to the binector input (BI) and binector output (BO).

"Data type" in the parameter list provides information about the data type of the parameter and the data type of the BICO parameter for each CI und BI parameter.

For CO and BO parameters, only the data type of the BICO parameter is given.

Notation:

- Data type BICO input: Data type parameter/Data type BICO parameter
  Example: Unsigned32 / Integer16
- Data type BICO output: Data type BICO parameter
  Example: FloatingPoint32

The possible interconnections between BICO input (signal sink) and BICO output (signal source) are described in the List Manual in the table "Possible combinations for BICO interconnections" in the section "Explanations on the parameter list".

The BICO parameter interconnection can be implemented in different data sets (CDS, DDS, MDS, etc.). The different interconnections in the data sets are activated by switching the data sets. Interconnections across drive objects are also possible.

Internal encoding of the binector/connector output parameters

The internal codes are needed, for example, to write BICO input parameters via PROFIdrive.

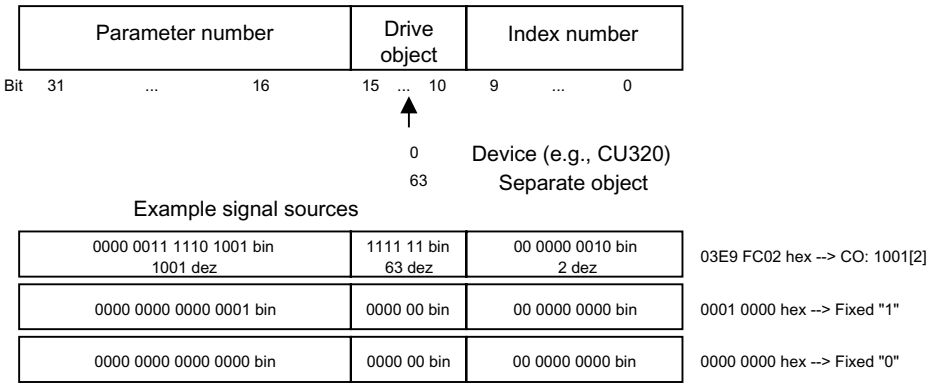


Figure 6-6 Internal encoding of the binector/connector output parameters

Example 1: interconnecting digital signals

Suppose you want to operate a drive via terminals DI 0 and DI 1 on the Control Unit using jog 1 and jog 2.

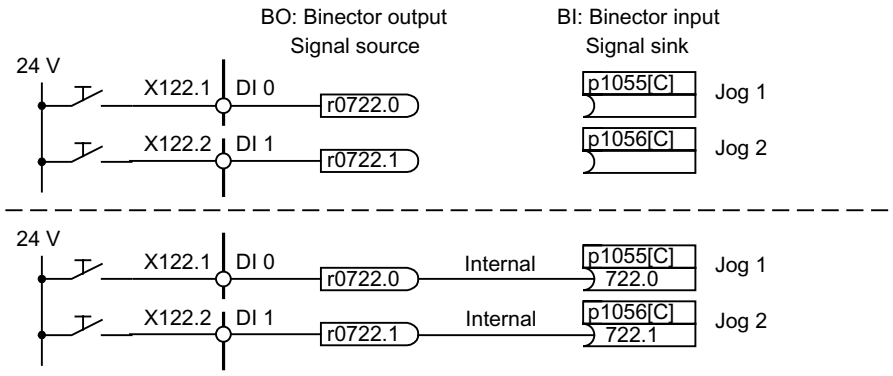


Figure 6-7 Interconnection of digital signals (example)

Example 2: connection of OC/OFF3 to several drives

The OFF3 signal is to be connected to two drives via terminal DI 2 on the Control Unit.

Each drive has a binector input 1. OFF3 and 2. OFF3. The two signals are processed via an AND gate to STW1.2 (OFF3).

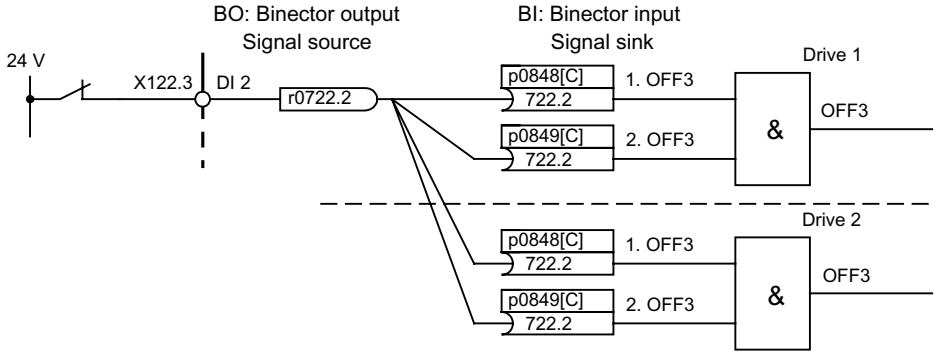


Figure 6-8 Connection of OFF3 to several drives (example)

BICO interconnections to other drives

The following parameters are available for BICO interconnections to other drives:

- r9490 Number of BICO interconnections to other drives
- r9491[0...15] BI/CI of BICO interconnections to other drives
- r9492[0...15] BO/CO of BICO interconnections to other drives
- p9493[0...15] Reset BICO interconnections to other drives

Binector-connector converters and connector-binector converters

Binector-connector converter

- Several digital signals are converted to a 32-bit integer double word or to a 16-bit integer word.
- p2080[0...15] BI: PROFIdrive PZD send bit-serial

Connector-binector converter

- A 32-bit integer double word or a 16-bit integer word is converted to individual digital signals.
- p2099[0...1] CI PROFIdrive PZD selection receive bit-serial

Fixed values for interconnection using BICO technology

The following connector outputs are available for interconnecting any fixed value settings:

- p2900[0...n] CO: Fixed value_%_1
- p2901[0...n] CO: Fixed value_%_2
- p2930[0...n] CO: Fixed Value_M_1

Example:

These parameters can be used to interconnect the scaling factor for the main setpoint or to interconnect an additional torque.

6.3.5 Propagation of faults

Forwarding faults to the Control Unit

When faults are triggered on the "Control Unit" drive object, it is always assumed that central functions of the drive are affected. For this reason, these faults are also forwarded to all other drive objects. This process is referred to as "propagation." The fault responses act on the Control Unit drive object and all other drive objects. This behavior also applies to the faults that are set in a DCC chart on the Control Unit with the aid of the DCC block.

A fault propagated from the Control Unit must be acknowledged at all drive objects to which this fault was forwarded. In this way, this fault on the Control Unit is automatically acknowledged. Alternatively, the faults of the drive objects can also be acknowledged on the Control Unit.

Alarms are not propagated from the Control Unit; they are not forwarded to other drive objects.

Example

Drive object faults are only transferred to the drives, i.e. a fault on a TB30 stops the drive - however, a fault on the drive does not stop the TB30.

Forwarding of faults due to BICO interconnections

If two or more drive objects are connected via BICO interconnections, faults of drive objects of type Control Unit, TB30, DMC20, DME20, all Terminal Modules or ENCODER are transferred to drive objects with closed-loop control functions, e.g. infeed units or Motor Modules. There is no forwarding of faults within these two groups of drive object types.

This behavior also applies to the faults set in a DCC chart on the above drive object types with the aid of DCC STM.

6.4 Command sources

6.4.1 "PROFIdrive" default setting

Prerequisites

The "PROFIdrive" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "PROFIdrive"
- AOP30: "5: PROFIdrive"

Command sources

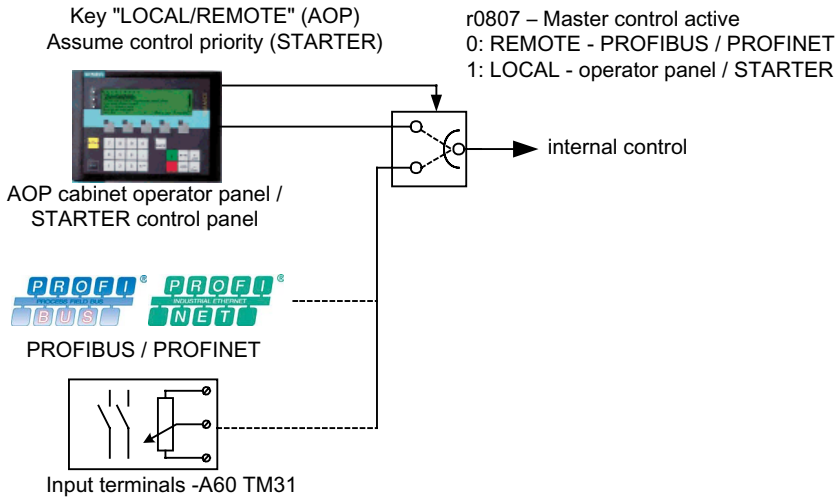


Figure 6-9 Command sources – AOP30 <--> PROFIdrive

Priority

The command source priorities are shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> PROFIdrive".

Note

Emergency off signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

TM31 terminal assignment with "PROFIdrive" default setting (if option G60 is present)

When you choose the "PROFIdrive" default setting, use the following terminal assignment for TM31:

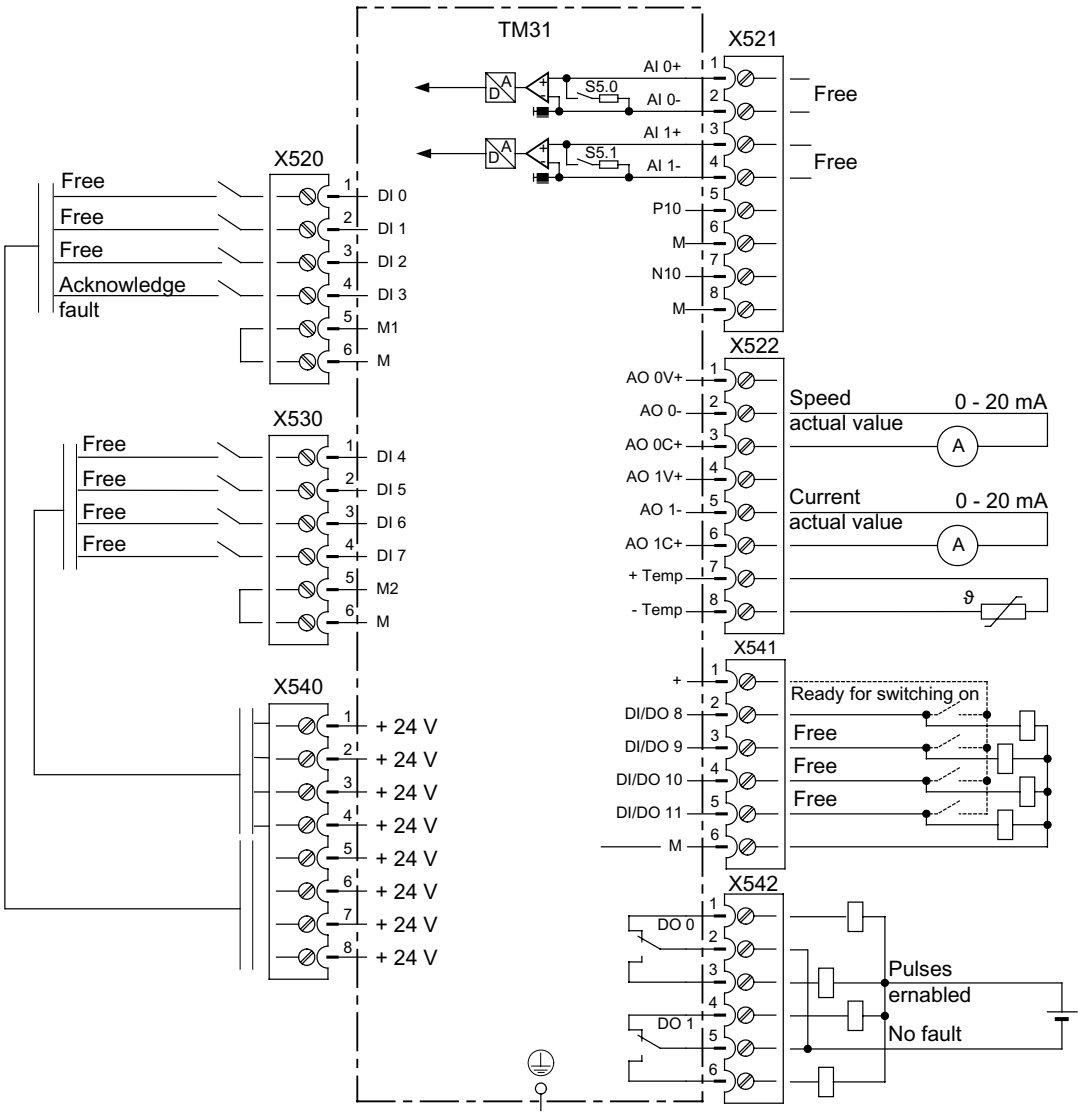


Figure 6-10 TM31 terminal assignment with "PROFIdrive" default setting

Control word 1

The bit assignment for control word 1 is described in "Description of the control words and setpoints".

Status word 1

The bit assignment for status word 1 is described in "Description of the status words and actual values".

Switching the command source

The command source can be switched using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.4.2 "TM31 terminals" default setting

Prerequisites

The customer terminal module option (G60) is installed in the cabinet unit.

The "TM31 Terminals" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "TM31 Terminals"
- AOP30: "6: TM31 terminals

Command sources

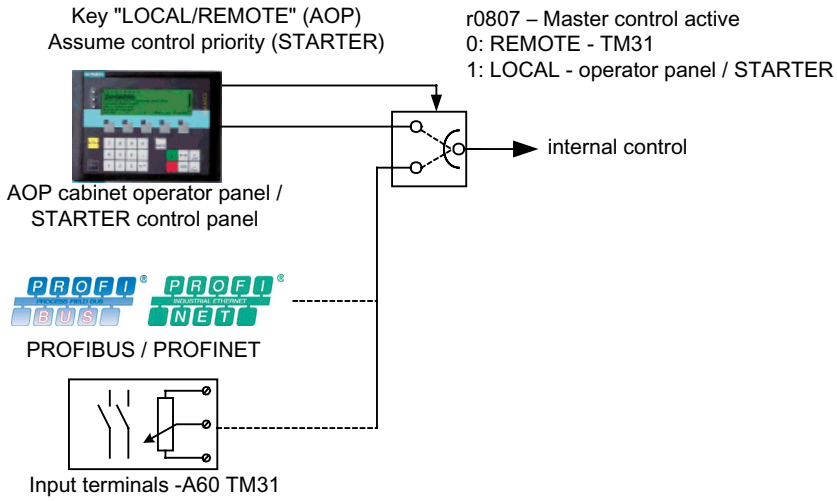


Figure 6-11 Command sources - AOP30 <-> TM31 terminals

Priority

The priority of the command sources is shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> TM31 terminals".

Note

Emergency off signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

TM31 terminal assignment with "TM31 Terminals" default setting

When you choose the "TM31 Terminals" default setting, the terminal assignment for TM31 is as follows:

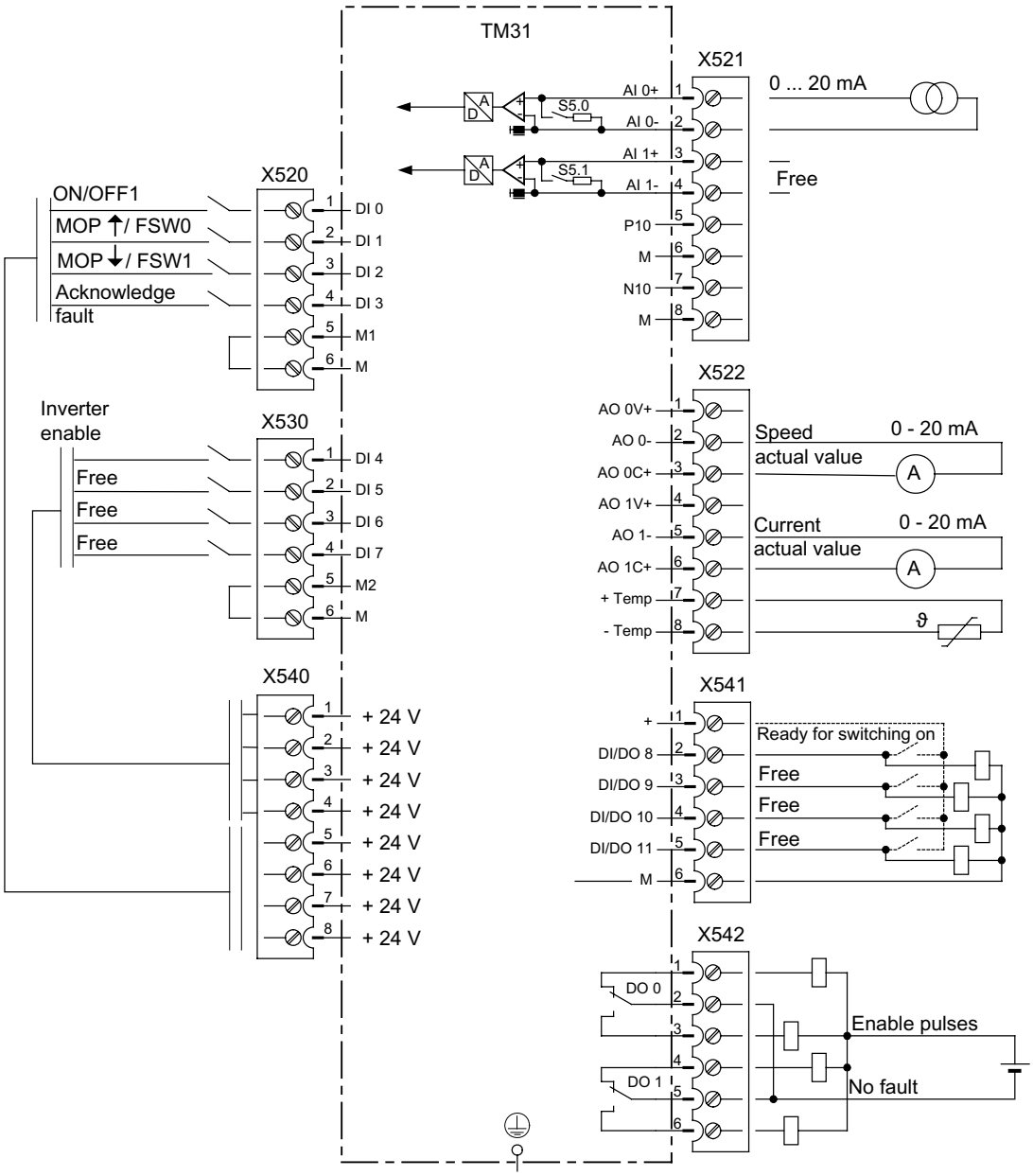


Figure 6-12 TM31 terminal assignment with "TM31 Terminals" default setting

Switching the command source

The command source can be switched using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.4.3 "NAMUR" default setting

Prerequisites

The NAMUR terminal block (option B00) is installed in the cabinet unit.

The "NAMUR" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "NAMUR"
- AOP30: "7: NAMUR"

Command sources

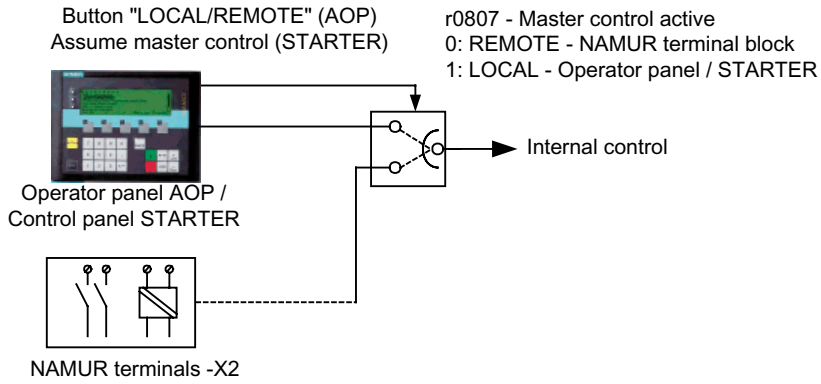


Figure 6-13 Command sources - AOP30 <-> NAMUR terminal block

Priority

The priority of the command sources is shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> NAMUR terminal block".

Note

Emergency off signals

The EMERGENCY OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

For LOCAL master control, all of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated.

Terminal Assignment with the "NAMUR" Default Setting

When you choose the "NAMUR" default setting, the terminal assignment is as follows (as with option B00):

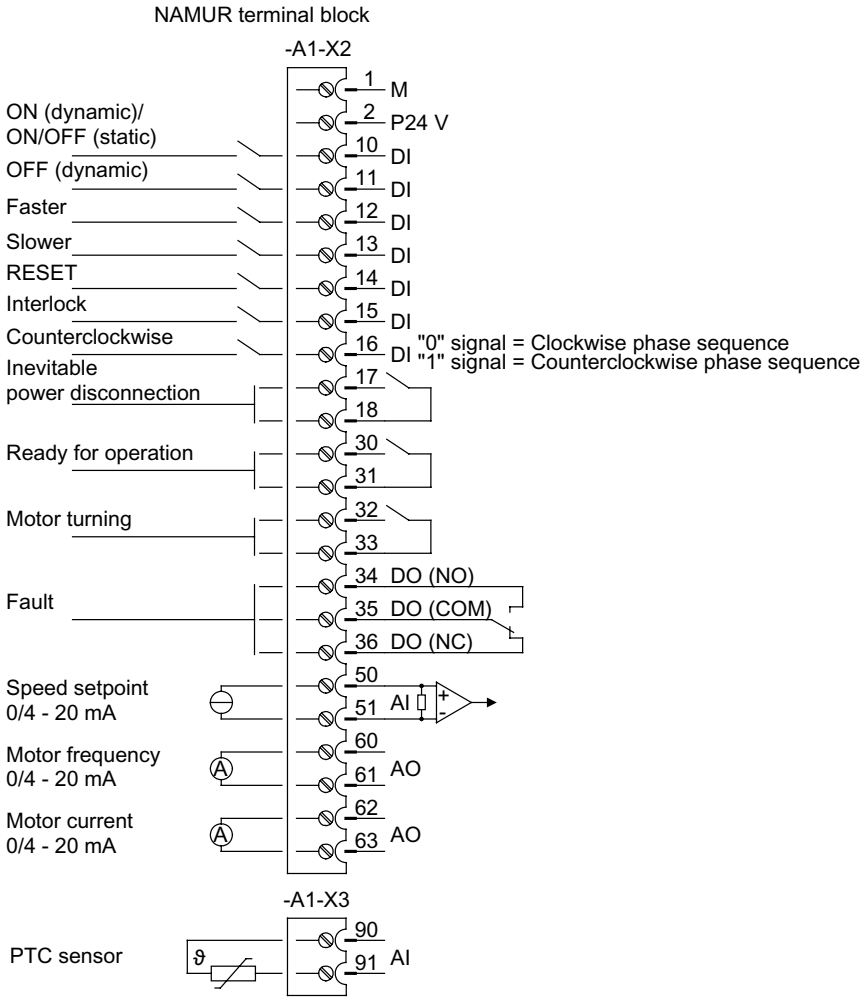


Figure 6-14 Terminal assignment with "NAMUR terminal block" default setting

Switching the command source

The command source can be switched using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.4.4 "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting

Prerequisites

The NAMUR terminal block (option B00) is installed in the cabinet unit.

The "PROFIdrive" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "PROFIdrive Namur"
- AOP30: "10: PROFIdrive Namur"

Command sources

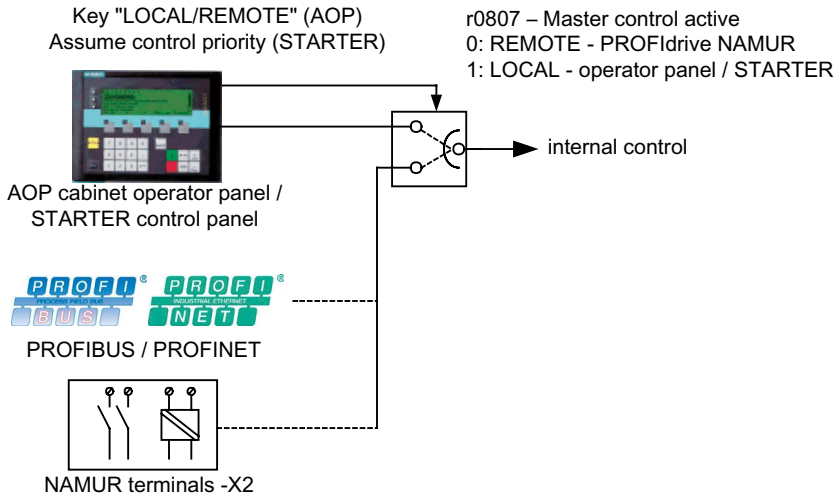


Figure 6-15 Command sources - AOP30 <-> PROFIdrive NAMUR

Priority

The priority of the command sources is shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> PROFIdrive NAMUR".

Note

Emergency off signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

Terminal assignment for the "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting

When you choose the "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting, the terminal assignment is as follows (as with option B00):

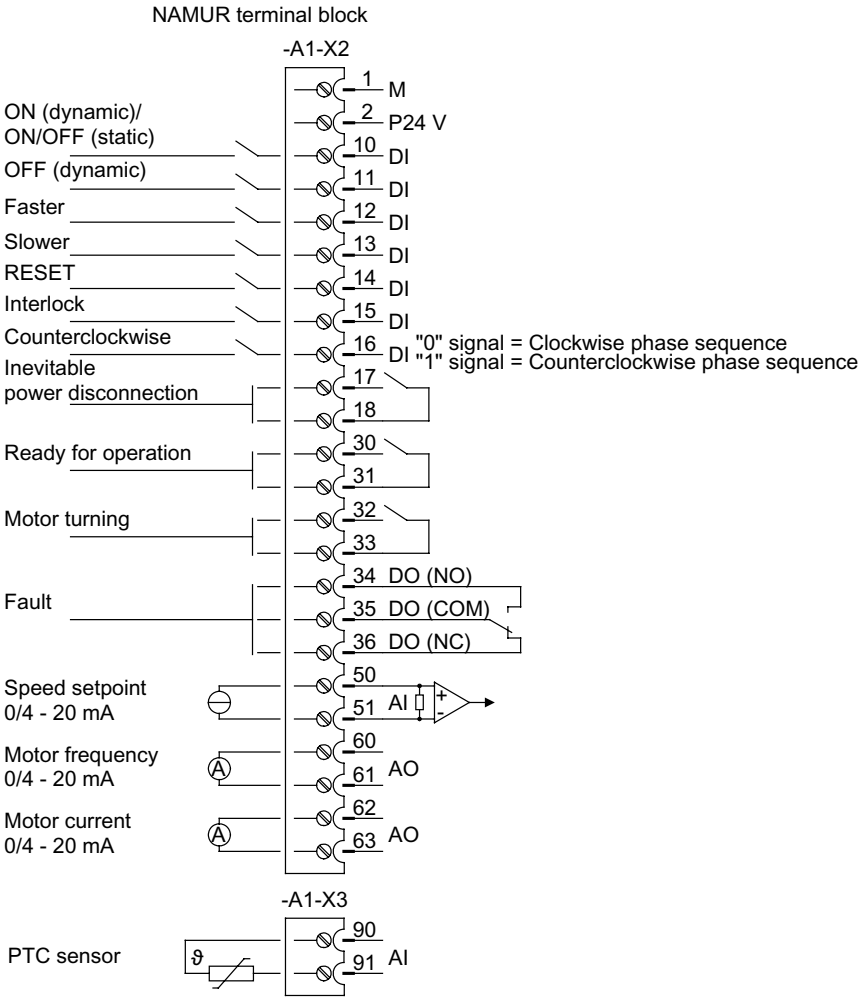


Figure 6-16 Terminal assignment for the "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting

Control word 1

The bit assignment for control word 1 is described in "Description of the control words and setpoints".

Status word 1

The bit assignment for status word 1 is described in "Description of the status words and actual values".

Switching the command source

The command source can be switched using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.5 Setpoint sources

6.5.1 Analog inputs

Description

The customer terminal block TM31 features two analog inputs for specifying setpoints for current or voltage signals.

In the factory setting, analog input 0 (terminal X521:1/2) is used as a current input in the range 0 to 20 mA.

Preconditions

The default setting for analog inputs was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "TM31 Terminals"
- AOP30: "2: TM31 terminals

Signal flow diagram

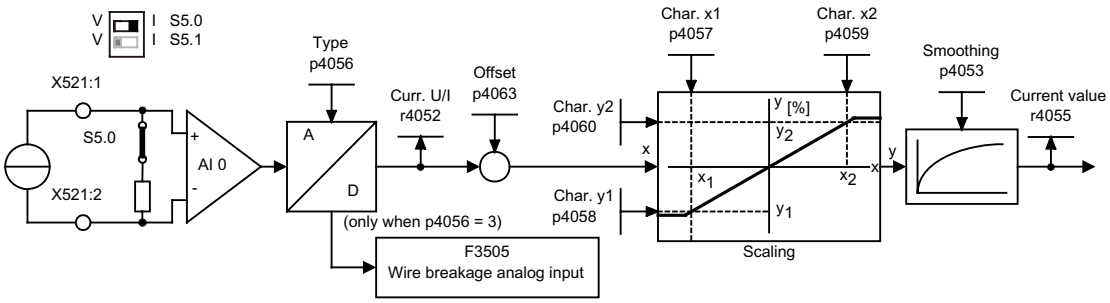


Figure 6-17 Signal flow diagram: analog input 0

Function diagram

FP 9566 TM31 – analog input 0 (AI 0)
FP 9568 TM31 – analog input 1 (AI 1)

Parameter

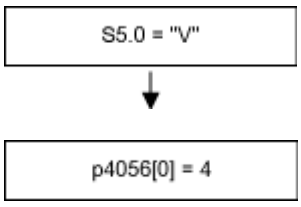
- r4052 Actual input voltage/current
- p4053 Analog inputs smoothing time constant
- r4055 Current referenced input value
- p4056 Analog inputs type
- p4057 Analog inputs, characteristic value x1
- p4058 Analog inputs, characteristic value y1
- p4059 Analog inputs, characteristic value x2
- p4060 Analog inputs, characteristic value y2
- p4063 Analog inputs offset

Note

Delivery condition

In the factory setting and after basic commissioning, an input current of 20 mA is equal to the main setpoint 100% reference speed (p2000), which has been set to the maximum speed (p1082).

Example: Changing analog input 0 from current to voltage input –10 to +10 V



Current/voltage switchover
Set current/voltage selector to "Voltage" ("V").

Set analog input type 0 to -10 ... +10 V.

Note

Save changes so that they are protected against power failure

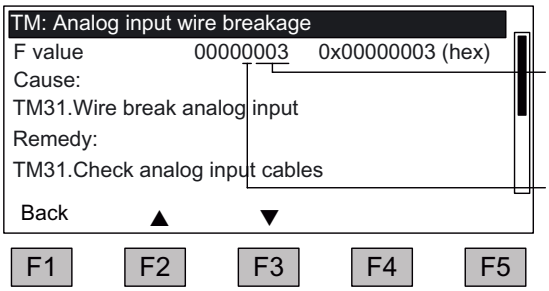
The change to the analog input must then be stored on the CompactFlash card so that it is protected in the event of a power failure.

F3505 – Fault: "Analog input wire break"

This fault is triggered when the analog input type (p4056) is set to 3 (4 ... 20 mA with open-circuit monitoring) and the input current of 2 mA has been undershot.

The fault value can be used to determine the analog input in question.

Table 6- 5 Fault screen



Component number
3: Module -A60 (option G60)
4: Module -A61 (option G61)

0: Analog input 0: -X521:1/2
1: Analog input 1: -X521:3/4

6.5.2 Motorized potentiometer

Description

The digital motorized potentiometer enables you to set speeds remotely using switching signals (+/- keys). It is activated via terminals or fieldbus. As long as a logical 1 is present at signal input "MOP raise" (setpoint higher), the internal numerator integrates the setpoint. You can set the integration time (time taken for the setpoint to increase) using parameter p1047. In the same way, you can decrease the setpoint using signal input "MOP lower". The deceleration ramp can be set using parameter p1048.
Configuration parameter p1030.0 = 1 (default setting = 0) is used to enable non-volatile storage of the current motorized potentiometer value when powering down the drive unit. When powering-up the drive unit, the starting (initial) value of the motorized potentiometer is set to the last, actual value that was present when the drive unit was powered-down.

Prerequisites

The default setting for the motorized potentiometer was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "Motorized potentiometer"
- AOP30: "3: Motorized potentiometer"

Signal flow diagram

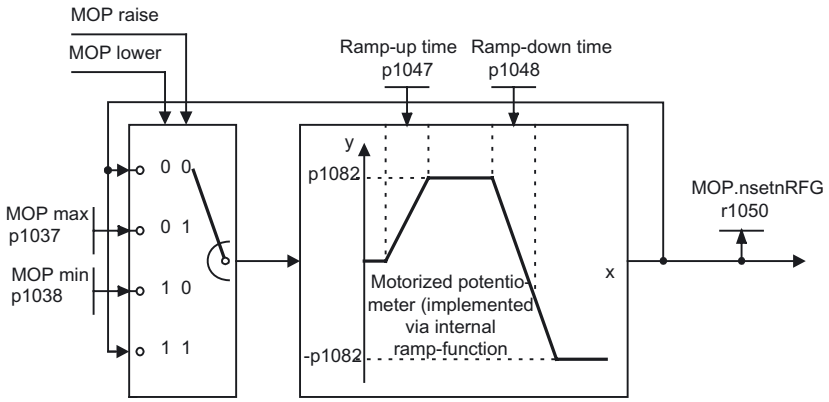


Figure 6-18 Signal flow diagram: Motorized potentiometer

Function diagram

FD 3020 Motorized potentiometer

Parameters

- p1030 Motorized potentiometer, configuration
- p1037 Motorized potentiometer, maximum speed
- p1038 Motorized potentiometer, minimum speed
- p1047 Motorized potentiometer, ramp-up time
- p1048 Motorized potentiometer, ramp-down time
- r1050 Motorized potentiometer, setpoint after the ramp-function generator

6.5.3 Fixed speed setpoints

Description

A total of 15 variable fixed speed setpoints are available.
The default setting specified for the setpoint sources during commissioning via STARTER or the operating panel makes three fixed speed setpoints available. They can be selected via terminals or fieldbus.

Requirement

The default setting for the fixed speed setpoints was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER: "Fixed setpoint"
- AOP30: "4: Fixed setpoint"

Signal flow diagram

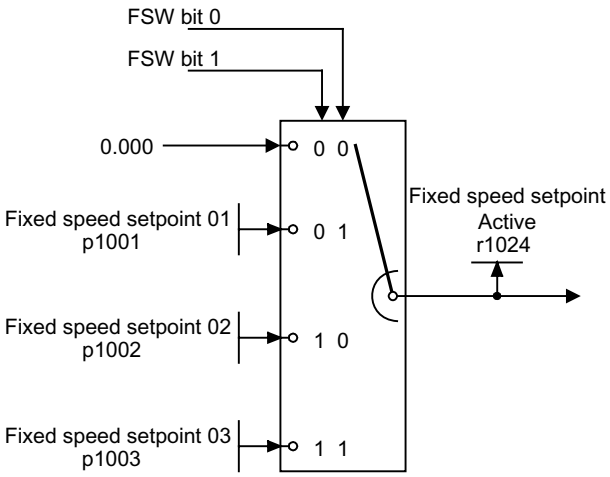


Figure 6-19 Signal flow diagram: Fixed speed setpoints

Function diagram

FP 3010 Fixed speed setpoints

Parameter

- p1001 Fixed speed setpoint 01
- p1002 Fixed speed setpoint 02
- p1003 Fixed speed setpoint 03
- r1024 Fixed speed setpoint effective

Note

Other fixed speed setpoints are available using p1004 to p1015. They can be selected using p1020 to p1023.

6.6 Control via the operator panel

6.6.1 Operator panel (AOP30) overview and menu structure

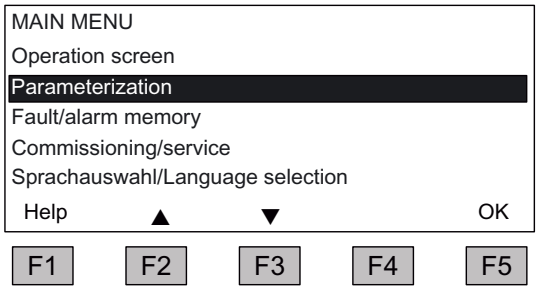
Description

The operator panel can be used for the following activities:

- Parameterization (commissioning)
- Monitoring status variables
- Controlling the drive
- Diagnosing faults and alarms

All the functions can be accessed via a menu.

Your starting point is the main menu, which you can always call up using the yellow MENU key:



Dialog screen for the main menu:
It can be accessed at any time with the "MENU" key.

Press "F2" or "F3" to navigate through the menu options in the main menu.

Note

AOP reset

If the AOP no longer reacts, you can trigger an AOP reset by simultaneously pressing the key and OFF buttons (longer than two seconds) and then releasing the OFF button.

Menu structure of the operator panel

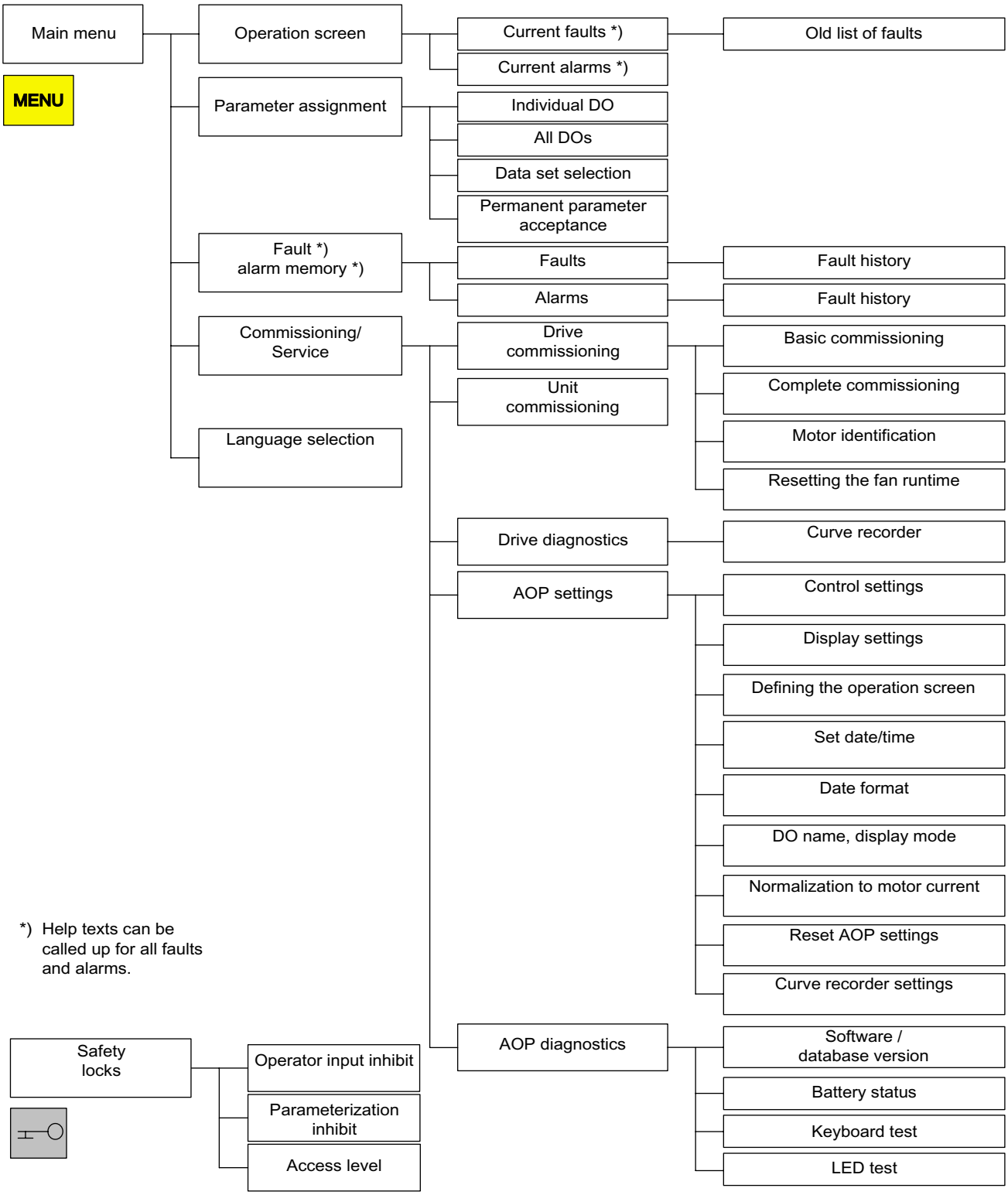


Figure 6-20 Menu structure of the operator panel

6.6.2 Operation screen menu

Description

The operation screen displays the most important status variables for the drive unit:

In the delivery condition, it displays the operating state of the drive, the direction of rotation, the time, as well as four drive variables (parameters) numerically and two in the form of a bar display for continuous monitoring.

You can call up the operation screen in one of two ways:

1. After the power supply has been switched on and the system has ramped up.
2. By pressing the MENU key twice and then F5 "OK."

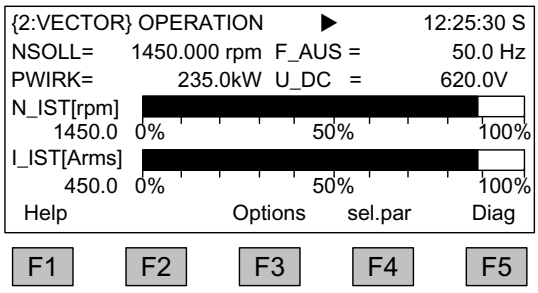


Figure 6-21 Operation screen

If a fault occurs, the system automatically displays the fault screen (see "Faults and alarms").

In LOCAL control mode, you can choose to enter the setpoint numerically (F2: setpoint).

The "Define operation screen" menu can be selected directly using F3 "Tools."

The individual parameters of the operation screen can be selected using F4 "Sel. par." The corresponding parameter number of the short identifier is displayed using F1 "Help+" and a description of the parameter can be called up.

Settings

When you choose Commissioning / service –> AOP settings –> Define operation screen, you can adjust the display type and the values displayed as required (see "AOP settings").

6.6.3 Parameterization menu

You can adjust the device settings in the Parameterization menu.

The drive software is modular. The individual modules are called DOs ("drive objects").

The following DOs are available in the SINAMICS G150:

- CU: General parameters for the Control Unit
- VECTOR: Drive control
- TM31: TM31 Terminal Module (option G60)
- TM150: TM150 temperature sensor module (option G51)

Parameters with identical functions may exist with the same parameter number in more than one DO (e.g. p0002).

The AOP30 is used for operating devices that comprise more than one drive so that attention is focused on one drive (i.e. the "current" drive). You can switch between the drives either in the operation screen or in the main menu. The corresponding function key is labeled "Drive."

This drive determines the following:

- Operation screen
- Fault and alarm displays
- The controller (ON, OFF, …) of a drive

Depending on your requirements, you can choose between two AOP display types:

1. All parameters
   All the parameters present in the device are listed here. The DO to which the parameter currently selected belongs (inverted) is displayed in curly brackets in the top left of the screen.
2. DO selection
   In this display, you can pre-select a DO Only the parameters for this DO are then listed. (The expert list display in STARTER only uses this DO view)

In both cases, the set access level governs which parameters are displayed. You can set the access level in the menu for inhibit functions, which can be called up using the key button.

The parameters for access levels 1 and 2 are sufficient for simple applications.

At access level 3 "Expert," you can change the structure of the function by interconnecting BICO parameters.

In the data set selection menu, you can choose which of the data sets chosen is currently DISPLAYED.
Data set parameters are indicated by a "c," "d," "m," "e," or "p" between the parameter number and parameter designator.

When a data set parameter is changed, the data set selection dialog appears.

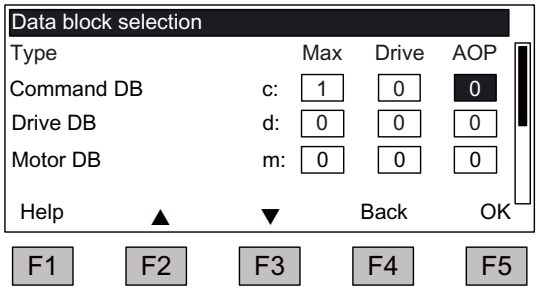


Figure 6-22 Data set selection

Explanation of the operator control dialog

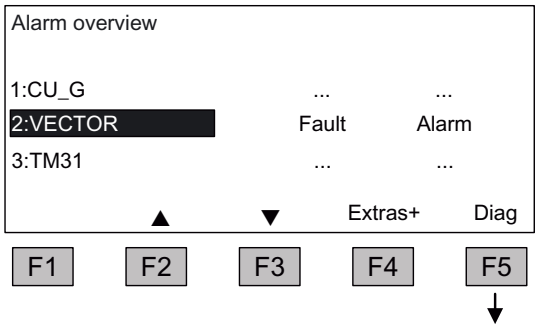
- "Max" shows the maximum number of data sets parameterized (and thereby available for selection) in the drive.
- "Drive" indicates which data set is currently active in the drive.
- "AOP" indicates which particular data set is currently being displayed in the operator panel.

6.6.4 Menu: Fault/alarm memory

When you select the menu, a screen appears containing an overview of faults and alarms that are present.

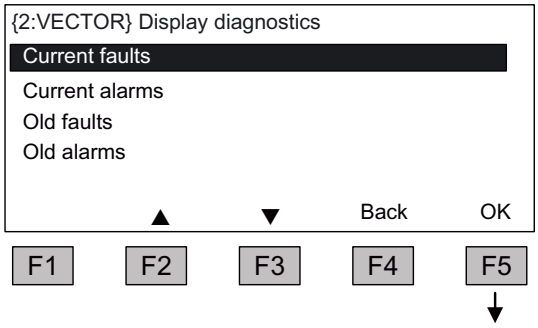
For each drive object, the system indicates whether any faults or alarms are present. ("Fault" or "Alarm" appears next to the relevant drive object).

In the graphic below, you can see that at least one active fault/alarm is present for the "VECTOR" drive object. No faults/alarms are indicated for the other drive objects.



Fault/alarm memory

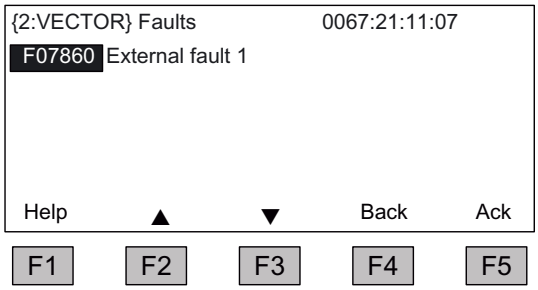
When you navigate to the line with active alarms/faults and then press the F5 <Diag> key, the system displays a screen in which you have to select the current or old alarms/faults.



Display diagnosis

When you navigate to the required line and then press the F5 <OK> key, the corresponding faults/alarms are displayed.

The list of current faults is selected here as an example.



Display of current faults

A maximum of eight current faults are displayed along with their fault number and name of the fault.

To display additional help regarding the cause of the problem and how to solve it, choose F1 <Help>.

To acknowledge the faults, choose F5 <Ack.>. If a fault cannot be acknowledged, the fault remains.

6.6.5 Menu commissioning / service

6.6.5.1 Drive commissioning

This option enables you to re-commission the drive from the main menu.

Basic Commissioning

Only the basic commissioning parameters are queried and stored permanently.

Complete commissioning

Complete commissioning with motor and encoder data entry is carried out. Following this, key motor parameters are recalculated from the motor data. The parameter values calculated during previous commissioning are lost.

In a subsequent motor identification procedure, the calculated values are overwritten.

Motor identification

The selection screen for motor identification appears.

Reset fan operating time

The actual operating hours of the fan in the power unit is displayed.

After a fan replacement, the operating hours counter for monitoring the fan operating time must be reset.

6.6.5.2 Device commissioning

Device commissioning

In this menu, you can enter the device commissioning status directly. This is the only way that you can reset parameters to the factory setting for example.

6.6.5.3 Drive diagnostics

Curve recorder

The curve recorder provides a slow trace function, which can be used to monitor a signal trend.
A signal selected by parameter is displayed in the form of a curve.

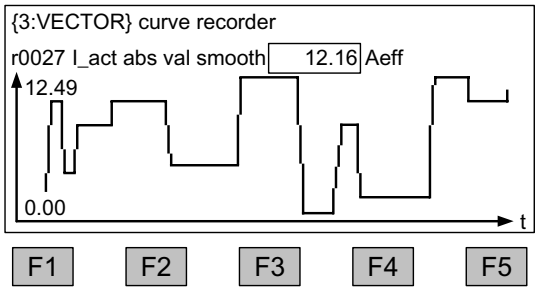


Figure 6-23 Curve recorder

The parameters to be displayed are selected and the graphic interpolation set with the F5 key or via the menu Commissioning/Service - AOP settings - Curve recorder settings.

In addition to the curve, the selected value is output on the display and updated every 500 ms.

Assignment of the function keys F1 to F5 is not normally displayed visibly so that the space can be fully utilized to display the curve. Pressing a function key shows the key assignments. If no further key is pressed within 5 seconds, the labeling will disappear again.

The curve can be scaled automatically or manually. This is selected with key F3 "scale+" - F4 "Auto/Manual" followed by confirmation with F5 "OK."

- Auto:

  The scaling of the curve changes dynamically, it is oriented to the maximum value (for example, 12.49) and minimum value (for example, 0.00) visible in the display at the actual point in time. With buttons F2 and F3, the scaling can be changed in steps.
  If measured value noise is shown with an excessively high resolution as a result of the automatic scaling, then the resolution can be reduced in four steps by pressing button F2. As a result, the automatic scaling is deactivated. However, if the measured value leaves the display area, then this is extended. Automatic scaling can be reselected by pressing button F3.

- Manual:

  After selecting manual scaling and confirmation with "OK," a window opens in which the maximum and minimum limits for scaling can be set.

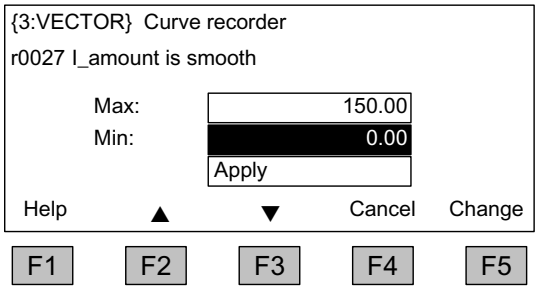


Figure 6-24 Curve recorder - manual scaling

After setting and applying the limits, you switch to the curve recorder and manual scaling is used.

If the current measured values are outside the displayable range, the range will automatically be extended.

Note

Changing the parameter for the curve recorder in manual scaling

When the parameter for the curve recorder is changed the following occurs with manual scaling:

- If the current parameter has lower values than the currently set scaling, the scaling will be retained.
- If the current parameter has higher values than the currently set scaling, the scaling will be adjusted automatically.

Help on the curve recorder can be opened with key F1.

The curve recorder is exited by pressing the MENU button.

Note

No recording of data

The values displayed in the recorder are not recorded and saved, they are only used for display until the screen form is exited.

6.6.5.4 AOP settings

Control settings

This defines the settings for the control keys in LOCAL mode (see "Operation / Control via the operator panel / Operation via the operator panel").

Display settings

In this menu, you set the lighting, brightness, and contrast for the display.

Defining the operation screen

In this menu, you can switch between five operation screens. You can set the parameters that are to be displayed.

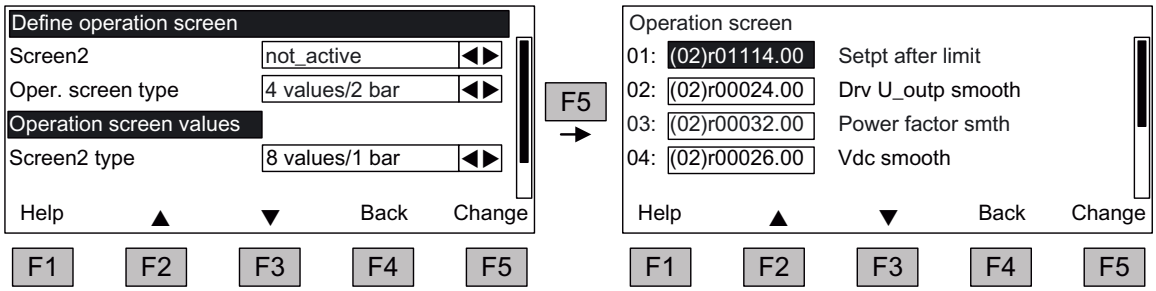


Figure 6-25 Defining the operation screen

The following image shows how the entries are assigned to the screen positions:

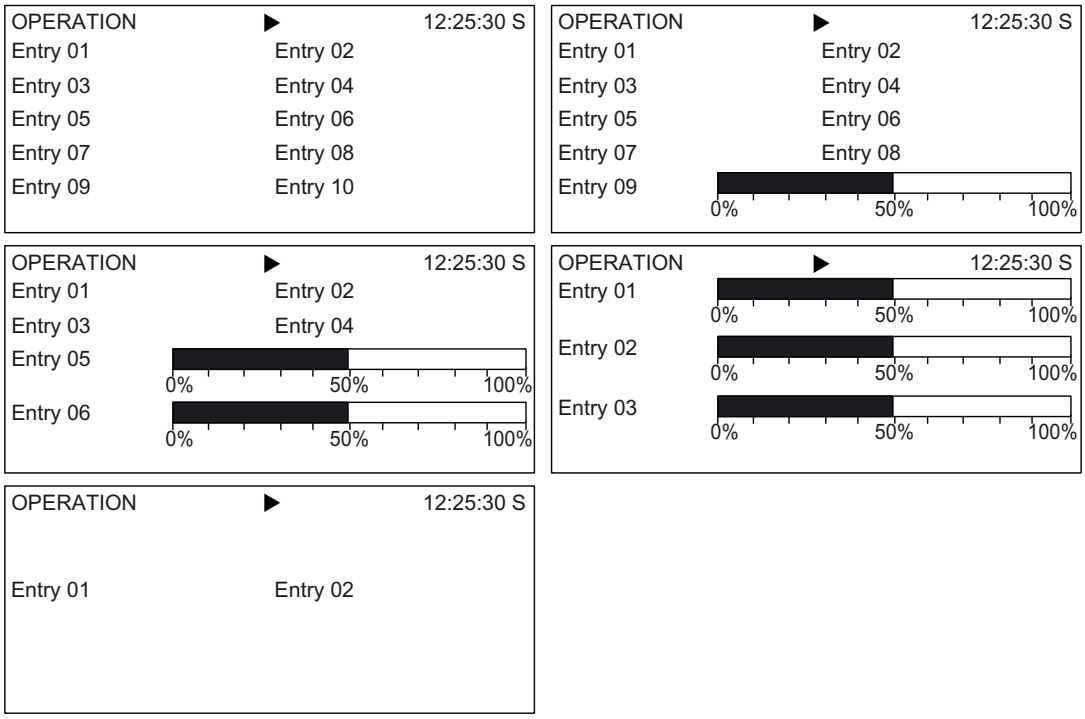


Figure 6-26 Layout of the entries in the operation screen

Lists of signals for the operating screen form

The following tables list some of the main signals for the operation screen along with the associated reference variables and default settings for fast commissioning.

VECTOR object

Table 6- 6 List of signals for the operation screen - VECTOR object

Signal		Parameters	Short name	Unit	Scaling (100 %=...) See table below
Factory setting (entry no.)					
Speed setpoint upstream of ramp-function generator	(1)	r1114	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Output frequency	(2)	r0024	F_OUT	Hz	Reference frequency
Power smoothed	(3)	r0032	PACTV	kW	r2004
DC link voltage smoothed	(4)	r0026	U_DC	V	p2001
Actual speed value smoothed	(5)	r0021	N_ACT	1/min	p2000
Absolute actual current smoothed	(6)	r0027	I_IST	A	p2002
Motor temperature	(7)	r0035 [1)]	T_MOT	°C	Reference temperature
Converter temperature	(8)	r0037	T_LT	°C	Reference temperature
Actual torque smoothed	(9)	r0031	M_ACT	Nm	p2003
Converter output voltage smoothed	(10)	r0025	C_OUT	V	p2001
For diagnostic purposes					
Speed setpoint smoothed		r0020	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Control factor smoothed		r0028	AUSST	%	Reference modulation depth
Field-producing current component		r0029	IDACT	A	p2002
Torque-producing current component		r0030	IQACT	A	p2002
Converter overload Degree of thermal overload		r0036	LTI2T	%	100 % = Shutdown
Speed actual value motor encoder		r0061	N_ACT	1/min	p2000
Speed setpoint after filter		r0062	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Actual speed smoothed		r0063	N_ACT	1/min	p2000
Control deviation		r0064	NDIFF	1/min	p2000
Slip frequency		r0065	FSCHL	Hz	Reference frequency
Output frequency		r0066	F_OUT	Hz	Reference frequency
Output voltage		r0072	UACT	V	p2001
Control factor		r0074	AUSST	%	Reference modulation depth
Torque-generating actual current		r0078	IQACT	A	p2002
Actual torque value		r0080	M_ACT	Nm	p2003
For further diagnostic purposes					
Fixed speed setpoint effective		r1024		1/min	p2000
Active motorized potentiometer setpoint		r1050		1/min	p2000
Resulting speed setpoint		r1119	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Speed controller output		r1508	NREGY	Nm	p2003
I component of speed controller		r1482	NREGI	Nm	p2003
PROFIBUS setpoint		r2050	PBSOL	1/min	p2000

[1)] If a temperature sensor has not been installed, a value of –200 °C is displayed.

Normalization for VECTOR object

Table 6- 7 Normalization for VECTOR object

Size	Scaling parameter	Default for quick commissioning
Reference speed	100% = p2000	p2000 = Maximum speed (p1082)
Reference voltage	100% = p2001	p2001 = 1000 V
Reference current	100% = p2002	p2002 = Current limit (p0640)
Reference torque	100% = p2003	p2003 = 2 x rated motor torque
Reference power	100% = r2004	r2004 = (p2003 x p2000 x π) / 30
Reference frequency	100% = p2000/60	
Reference modulation depth	100 % = Maximum output voltage without overload	
Reference flux	100 % = Rated motor flux	
Reference temperature	100% = p2006	p2006 = 100°C

TM31 object

Table 6- 8 List of signals for the operation screen – TM31 object

Signal	Parameter	Short name	Unit	Scaling (100 % = ...)
Analog input 0 [V, mA]	r4052[0]	AI_UI	V, mA	V: 100 V / mA: 100 mA
Analog input 1 [V, mA]	r4052[1]	AI_UI	V, mA	V: 100 V / mA: 100 mA
Analog input 0, scaled	r4055[0]	AI_%	%	as set in p200x
Analog input 1, scaled	r4055[1]	AI_%	%	as set in p200x

Setting the date/time (for date stamping of error messages)

In this menu, you set the date and time.

You can also set whether and/or how the AOP and drive unit are to be synchronized. Synchronization of the AOP with the drive enables error messages to be date- and time-stamped.

Note

Display format for the time

The drive unit displays the time in parameter r3102 in the UTC format (days/milliseconds since 1970-01-01).

Under "Additional settings," settings for synchronization can be made:

Synchronization

- None (factory setting)
  The times for the AOP and drive unit are not synchronized.
- AOP -> Drive
  - If you activate this option, the AOP and drive unit are synchronized immediately whereby the current AOP time is transferred to the drive unit.
  - The current AOP time is transferred to the drive unit every time the AOP is started.
  - Depending on the set synchronization interval, the current AOP time is transferred to the drive unit.

  Note

  Flashing "S"

  If the AOP detects a difference between RAM and ROM during synchronization to the drive unit, this is indicated by a flashing "S" at the top right in the display or, if operator input and/or parameter assignment has been disabled, by a flashing key symbol.
- Drive -> AOP
  - If you activate this option, the AOP and drive unit are synchronized immediately whereby the current drive unit time is transferred to the AOP.
  - The current drive unit time is transferred to the AOP every time the AOP is started.
  - Depending on the set synchronization interval, the current drive unit time is transferred to the AOP.

Synchronization interval

The interval for time synchronization is set from 1 hour (factory setting) to 99 hours.

For the interval, the time in the AOP from the time of the last change of the interval is decisive.

Daylight saving time changeover

- No (factory setting)
  The time does automatically change over to daylight-saving time.
- Yes
  Selection is only possible if synchronization is set to "None" or "AOP -> Drive."
  The time automatically changes over between daylight-saving and standard time.
  After changeover, synchronization is performed immediately on "AOP -> Drive" synchronization, irrespective of the set synchronization interval.

Changes to the synchronization must be saved with "Save".

Date format

In this menu, the date format can be set:

- DD.MM.YYYY: European date format
- MM/DD/YYYY: North American data format

DO name display mode

In this menu, you can switch the display of the DO name between the standard abbreviation (e.g. VECTOR) and a user-defined DO name (e.g. Motor_1).

User-defined DO name (factory setting: NO)

- **Yes:** The "User-defined DO name" stored in parameter p0199 is displayed, instead of the standard DO abbreviation.
- **No:** The standard DO abbreviation is displayed.

Normalization to motor current

In this menu, the reference variable for the bar-type display of parameter r0027 (absolute current actual value smoothed) can be changed over in the operating screen forms.

Normalization to motor current (factory setting: NO)

- **Yes:**The bar-type display of parameter r0027 in the operating screen form is displayed based on parameter p0305 (rated motor current).
- **No:**The bar-type display of parameter r0027in the operating screen form is displayed based on parameter p2002 (reference current).

Reset AOP settings

When you choose this menu option, the AOP factory settings for the following are restored:

- Language
- Display (brightness, contrast)
- Operation screen
- Control settings

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When you reset parameters, all settings that are different to the factory settings are reset immediately. This may cause the cabinet unit to switch to a different, unwanted operational status.

For this reason, you should always take great care when resetting parameters.

Curve recorder settings

In this menu, you can select the parameter whose signal is to be displayed in the form of a trend curve in the curve recorder.

In addition, the setting of the interpolation can be selected to better display quantities that suddenly change (as a step function).

Interpolation (factory setting: NO)

- NO:Only the measured values are displayed as points, without a connecting line between points.
- 1:The measured values are connected by a vertical line.
- 2: The measured values are connected by a line offset at the center.

6.6.5.5 AOP diagnostics

Software/database version

You can use this menu to display the firmware and database versions.

The database version must be compatible with the drive software status (you can check this in parameter r0018).

Battery status

In this menu, you can display the battery voltage numerically (in Volts) or as a bar display. The battery ensures that the data in the database and the current time are retained.

When the battery voltage is represented as a percentage, a battery voltage of ≤ 2 V is equal to 0%, and a voltage of ≥ 3 V to 100%.

The data is secure up to a battery voltage of 2 V.

- If the battery voltage is ≤ 2.45 V, the message "Replace battery" is displayed in the status bar.
- If the battery voltage is ≤ 2.30 V, the system displays the following message: "Warning: weak battery".
- If the battery voltage is ≤ 2 V, the system displays the following message: "Caution: The battery is dead".
- If the time and/or database are not available after the system has been switched off for a prolonged period due to the voltage being too low, the loss is established by means of a CRC check when the system is switched on again. This triggers a message instructing the user to replace the battery and then load the database and/or set the time.

For instructions on how to change the battery, see "Maintenance and servicing."

Keyboard test

In this screen, you can check that the keys are functioning properly. Keys that you press are represented on a symbolic keyboard on the display. You can press the keys in any order you wish. You cannot exit the screen (F4 – "back") until you have pressed each key at least once.

Note

Exit keyboard test

Alternatively, you can exit the keyboard test screen by pressing any key and holding it down.

LED test

In this screen, you can check that the 4 LEDs are functioning properly.

6.6.6 Sprachauswahl/Language selection

The operator panel downloads the texts for the different languages from the drive.

You can change the language of the operator panel via the "Sprachauswahl/Language selection" menu.

Note

Additional languages for the display

Languages in addition to the current available languages in the display are available on request.

6.6.7 Operation via the operator panel (LOCAL mode)

You activate the control keys by switching to LOCAL mode. If the green LED in the LOCAL/REMOTE key does not light up, the key is not active.

Note

OFF in REMOTE

If the "OFF in REMOTE" function is activated, the LED in the LOCAL-REMOTE key flashes.

For LOCAL master control, all of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated.

After the master control has been transferred to the operator panel, the BICO interconnections at bit 0 to bit 10 of the control word of the sequence control are not effective (refer to function diagram 2501).

Note

Message "Other device has master control"

If STARTER has master control, then when pressing the LOCAL-REMOTE button, the "Other device has master control" message is displayed, and the master control transfer is rejected.

6.6.7.1 LOCAL/REMOTE key

Activating the LOCAL mode: Press the LOCAL key.

LOCAL mode: LED lights up

REMOTE mode: LED does not light up: the ON, OFF, JOG, direction reversal, faster, and slower keys are not active.

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Save LOCAL mode (factory setting: yes)

- **Yes**: The "LOCAL" or "REMOTE" operating mode is saved when the power supply is switched off and restored when the power supply is switched back on.
- **No**: "LOCAL" or "REMOTE" operating mode is not saved. "REMOTE" is active when the supply voltage is switched back on.

OFF in REMOTE (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: The OFF key functions in REMOTE mode even if the drive is being controlled by external sources (fieldbus, customer terminal strip, NAMUR terminal strip).
  WARNING This function is not an EMERGENCY STOP function!
- **No**: The OFF key only functions in LOCAL mode.

LOCAL/REMOTE also during operation (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: You can switch between LOCAL and REMOTE when the drive is switched on (motor is running).
- **No**: Before the system switches to LOCAL, a check is carried out to determine whether the drive is in the operational status. If so, the system does not switch to local and outputs the error message "Local mode during operation not possible". Before the system switches to REMOTE, the drive is switched off and the setpoint is set to 0.

6.6.7.2 ON key / OFF key

ON key: always active in LOCAL when the operator input inhibit is deactivated.

OFF key: in the factory setting, acts as OFF1 = ramp-down at the deceleration ramp (p1121); when n = 0: voltage disconnection (only if a main contactor is installed)
The OFF key is effective in the LOCAL mode and when the "OFF in REMOTE" function is active.

Settings: Menu – Commissioning / Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Red OFF key acts as: (factory setting: OFF1)

- **OFF1**: Ramp-down on the deceleration ramp (p1121)
- **OFF2**: Immediate pulse block, motor coasts to a standstill
- **OFF3**: Ramp-down on the emergency stop ramp (p1135)

6.6.7.3 Switching between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Switching between CCW/CW (factory setting: no)

- **Yes**: Switching between CW/CCW rotation by means of the CW/CCW key possible in LOCAL mode
- **No**: The CW/CCW key has no effect in LOCAL mode

For safety reasons, the CW/CCW key is disabled in the factory setting (pumps and fans must normally only be operated in one direction).

In the operation status in LOCAL mode, the current direction of rotation is indicated by an arrow next to the operating mode.

Note

Activation of CCW/CW changeover

You have to make additional settings when switching between CW/CCW rotation.

6.6.7.4 Jog

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP settings – Control settings

JOG key active (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: The jog key is effective in the LOCAL mode in the state "ready to power-up" (not in "operation"). The speed that is set in parameter p1058 is approached.
- **No**: The JOG key has no effect in the LOCAL mode

6.6.7.5 Increase setpoint / decrease setpoint

You can use the Increase and Decrease keys to enter the setpoint with a resolution of 1% of the maximum speed.

You can also enter the setpoint numerically. To do so, press F2 in the operation screen. The system displays an field for entering the required speed. Enter the required value using the numeric keypad. Press F5 "OK" to confirm the setpoint.

When you enter values numerically, you can enter any speed between the minimum speed (p1080) and the maximum speed (p1082).

Setpoint entry in LOCAL mode is unipolar. You can change the direction of rotation by pressing the key that allows you to switch between CW/CCW rotation.

- CW rotation and "Increase key" mean:
  The displayed setpoint is positive and the output frequency is increased.
- CCW rotation and "Increase key" mean:
  The displayed setpoint is negative and the output frequency is increased.

6.6.7.6 AOP setpoint

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Save AOP setpoint (factory setting: no)

- **Yes**: In LOCAL mode, the last setpoint (once you have released the INCREASE or DECREASE key or confirmed a numeric entry) is saved.
  The next time you switch the system on in LOCAL mode, the saved value is selected. This is also the case if you switched to REMOTE in the meantime or the power supply was switched off.
  When the system is switched from REMOTE to LOCAL mode while the drive is switched on (motor is running), the actual value that was last present is set as the output value for the motorized potentiometer setpoint and saved.
  If the system is switched from REMOTE to LOCAL mode while the drive is switched off, the motorized potentiometer setpoint that was last saved is used.
- **No**: On power-up in LOCAL mode, the speed is always set to the value entered under "AOP starting setpoint". When the system is switched from REMOTE to LOCAL mode while the drive is switched on (motor is running), the actual value that was last present is set as the output value for the AOP setpoint.

AOP setpoint ramp-up time (factory setting: 10 s)

AOP setpoint ramp-down time (factory setting: 10 s)

- **Recommendation**: set as ramp-up/ramp-down time (p1120/p1121).
  Changing the ramp-up/ramp-down times does not affect the settings for parameters p1120 and p1121 because this is an AOP-specific setting.

AOP starting setpoint (factory setting: 0.000 rpm)

Note
Internal ramp-function generator

The internal drive ramp-function generator is always active.

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP settings – Control settings

Save AOP local mode (factory setting: no)

- **Yes**: Deactivates the "Control via operator panel" function, thereby disabling the LOCAL/REMOTE key.
- **No**: Activates the LOCAL/REMOTE key.

Note
Lock LOCAL

LOCAL functionality can also be inhibited on the drive by means of the p0806 parameter (BI: Inhibit master control).

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Acknowledge error from the AOP (factory setting: yes)

- **Yes**: Errors can be acknowledged via the AOP.
- **No**: Errors cannot be acknowledged via the AOP.

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP settings – Control settings

CDS changeover via AOP (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: In the LOCAL mode, in the operating screen form the active CDS can the changed by one. This is helpful, if operation via an AOP would not be possible due to the fact that a standard telegram is active.
  When CDS0 or 2 is active, "CDS+1" switches to CDS1 or CDS3.
  When CDS1 or 3 is active, "CDS-1" switches to CDS0 or CDS2.
- **No**: In the LOCAL mode, in the operating screen form the active CDS cannot be changed by one.

6.6.7.7 Timeout monitoring

In "LOCAL" mode or if "OFF in REMOTE" is active, the drive is shut down in an adjustable time if the data cable between the AOP and drive is disconnected (factory setting 3000 ms).

6.6.7.8 Operator input inhibit / parameterization inhibit

To prevent users from accidentally actuating the control keys and changing parameters, you can activate an operator input / parameters disable using a key pushbutton. Two key icons appear in the top right of the display when these inhibit functions are enabled.

Table 6- 9 Display of operator input/parameters disable

Inhibit type	Online operation	Offline operation
No inhibit		
Operator input inhibit		
Parameters disable		
Operator input inhibit + parameters disable		

Settings

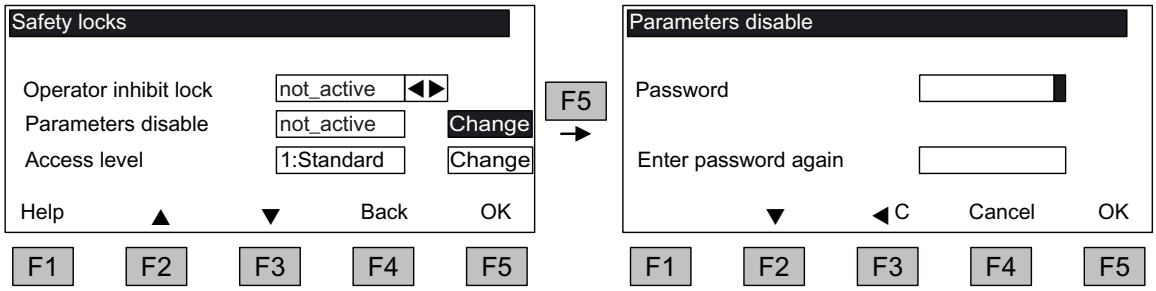


Figure 6-27 Set inhibit functions

The "Operator input inhibit" setting can be changed directly via <F5> "Change" once you have selected the selection field.

When "Parameterization inhibit" is activated, you have to enter a numeric password (repeat this entry). You must also enter this password when deactivating "Parameterization inhibit".

Operator input inhibit (factory setting: not active)

- **Active**: The parameters can still be viewed, but a parameter value cannot be saved (message: "Note: operator input inhibit active"). The OFF key (red) is enabled. The LOCAL, REMOTE, ON (green), JOG, CW/CCW, INCREASE, and DECREASE keys are disabled.

Parameterization inhibit (factory setting: not active)

- **Active**: Parameters cannot be changed unless a password is entered. The parameterization process is the same as with the operator input inhibit. If you try and change parameters, the message "Note: Parameterization inhibit active" is displayed. All the control keys can, however, still be actuated.

Access level (factory setting: Expert):

The different parameters required for this complex application are filtered so that they can be displayed as clearly as possible. You select them according to the access level.

An expert level, which must only be used by expert personnel, is required for certain actions.

Note

Copy from RAM to ROM

When the operator input inhibit or parameterization inhibit is activated, a "Copy from RAM to ROM" is automatically executed to back the parameter settings up in non-volatile memory on the memory card.

6.6.8 Faults and alarms

Indicating faults and alarms

If a fault occurs, the drive displays the fault and/or alarm on the operator panel. Faults are indicated by the red "FAULT" LED and a fault screen is automatically displayed. You can use the F1 Help function to call up information about the cause of the fault and how to remedy it. You can use F5 Ack. to acknowledge a stored fault.

Alarms are indicated by means of the yellow "ALARM" LED. The system also displays a note in the status bar providing information on the cause.

What is a fault?

A fault is a message from the drive indicating an error or other exceptional (unwanted) status that causes the drive to shutdown. This could be caused by a fault within the converter or an external fault triggered, for example, by the winding temperature monitor for the motor. The faults are displayed and can be reported to a higher-level control system via PROFIBUS. In the factory default setting, the message "converter fault" is also sent to a relay output. Once you have rectified the cause of the fault, you have to acknowledge the fault message.

What is an alarm?

An alarm is the response to a fault condition identified by the drive. It does not result in the drive being switched off and does not have to be acknowledged. Alarms are "self acknowledging", that is, they are reset automatically when the cause of the alarm has been eliminated.

Fault and alarm displays

Every fault and alarm is entered in the fault/alarm buffer along with time the error occurred. The time stamp refers to the system time (r2114).

You can call up an overview screen that displays the current status of faults and/or alarms for every drive object in the system by choosing MENU – Fault memory / alarm memory.

A context menu featuring the "Back" and "Quit" options appears when you press F4 "Next". The function required can be selected using F2 and F3 and executed by pressing F5 "OK". The "Acknowledge" function sends an acknowledgement signal to each drive object. The red FAULT LED extinguishes once all the faults have been acknowledged.

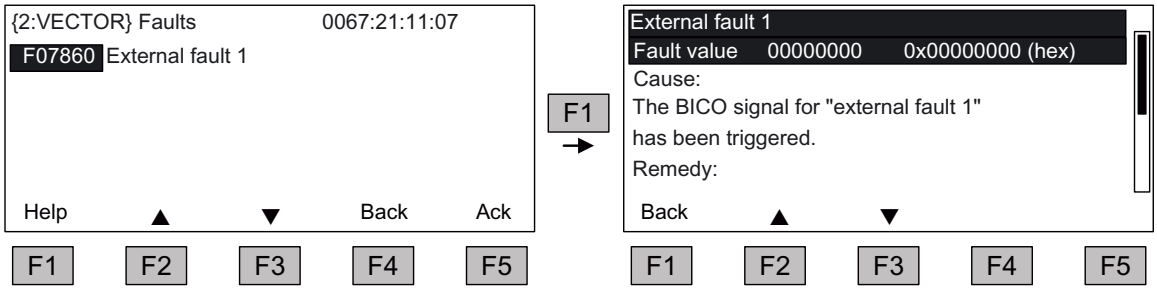


Figure 6-28 Fault screen

You can use F5 Ack. to acknowledge a stored fault.

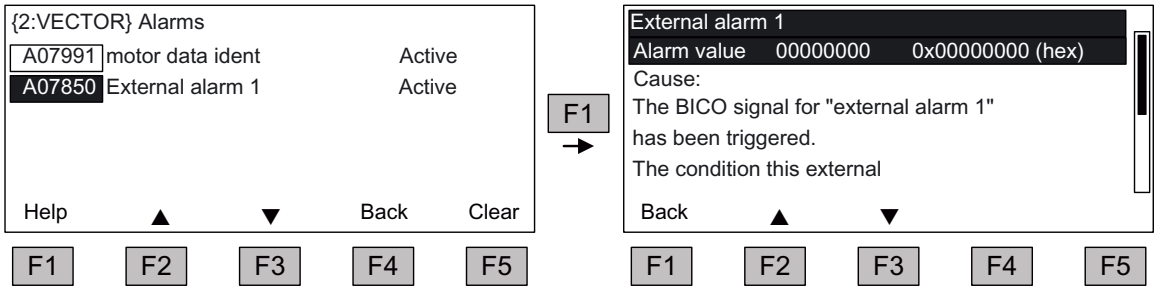


Figure 6-29 Alarm screen

Alarms that are no longer active are removed from the alarm memory with F5 Clear.

6.6.9 Saving the parameters permanently

Description

If parameters have been changed using the operator panel (confirm with OK in the Parameter Editor), the new values are initially stored in the volatile memory (RAM) of the converter. An "S" flashes in the top right of the AOP display until they are saved to a permanent memory. This indicates that at least 1 parameter has been changed and not yet stored permanently.

Two methods are available for permanently saving parameters that have been changed:

- To store the parameters permanently, choose <MENU> <Parameterization> <OK> <Permanent parameter transfer>.
- When confirming a parameter setting with OK, press the OK key for > 1 s. The system displays a message asking you whether the setting is to be saved in the EEPROM. If you press "Yes", the system saves the setting in the EEPROM. If you press "No", the setting is not saved permanently and the "S" starts flashing.

In both cases, **all** changes that have not yet been saved permanently are stored in the EEPROM.

6.6.10 Parameterization errors

If a fault occurs when reading or writing parameters, a popup window containing the cause of the problem is displayed.

The system displays:

Parameter write error (d)pxxxx.yy:0xnn

and a plain-text explanation of the type of parameterization error.

6.7 Communication according to PROFIdrive

6.7.1 General information

PROFIdrive V4.1 is the PROFIBUS and PROFINET profile for drive technology with a wide range of applications in production and process automation.

PROFIdrive is independent of the bus system used (PROFIBUS, PROFINET).

Note

References

PROFINET for drive technology is standardized and described in the following document:

- PROFIBUS Profile PROFIdrive – Profile Drive Technology, Version V4.1, May 2006, PROFIBUS User Organization e. V.
  Haid-und-Neu-Straße 7, D-76131 Karlsruhe, http://www.profibus.com
  Order Number 3.172, spec. Chp. 6
- IEC 61800-7

Controller, Supervisor, and Drive Unit

- Properties of the Controller, Supervisor, and Drive Unit

Table 6- 10 Properties of the Controller, Supervisor, and Drive Unit

Properties	Controller, Supervisor	Drive Unit
As bus node	Active	Passive
Sending messages	Permitted without external request	Only possible at the request of the controller
Receiving messages	Possible with no restrictions	Only receiving and acknowledging permitted

- Controller (PROFIBUS: Master Class 1, PROFINET IO: IO controller)

  This is typically a higher-level controller in which the automation program runs.

  Example: SIMATIC S7 and SIMOTION

- Supervisor (PROFIBUS: Master Class 2, PROFINET IO: IO Supervisor)

  Devices for configuration, commissioning, and operator control and monitoring during bus operation. Devices that exchange data with drive units and controllers acylically only.

  Examples: Programming devices, operator control and monitoring devices

- Drive Unit (PROFIBUS: Slave, PROFINET IO: IO Device)

  With reference to PROFIdrive, SINAMICS is a drive unit.

Interface IF1 and IF2

The control unit can communicate via two different interfaces (IF1 and IF2).

Table 6- 11 Properties of IF1 and IF2

	IF1	IF2
PROFIdrive	Yes	No
Standard telegrams	Yes	No
Isochronous mode	Yes	Yes
DO types	All	All
Can be used for	PROFINET IO, PROFIBUS	PROFINET IO, PROFIBUS, CANopen
Cyclic operation possible	Yes	Yes
PROFIsafe possible	Yes	Yes

Note

Further Information

For additional information on the IF1 and IF2 interfaces, see section "Parallel operation of communication interfaces".

6.7.2 Application classes

Description

There are different application classes for PROFIdrive according to the scope and type of the application processes. PROFIdrive features a total of 6 application classes, 4 of which are discussed here.

Application class 1 (standard drive)

In the most basic case, the drive is controlled via a speed setpoint by means of PROFIBUS/PROFINET. In this case, speed control is fully handled in the drive controller. Typical application examples include simple frequency converters for controlling pumps and fans.

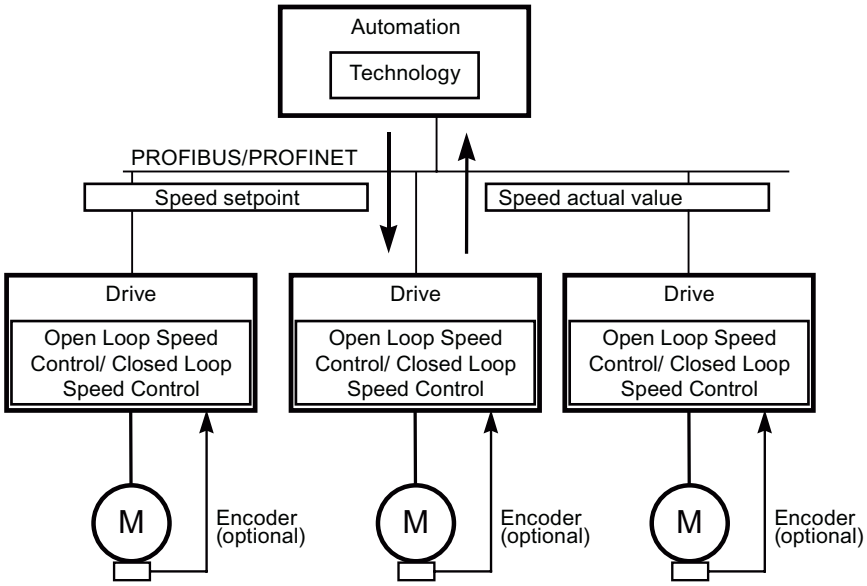


Figure 6-30 Application class 1

Application class 2 (standard drive with technology function)

The overall process is subdivided into a number of small subprocesses and distributed among the drives. This means that the automation functions no longer reside exclusively in the central automation device but are also distributed in the drive controllers.
Of course, this distribution assumes that communication is possible in every direction, i.e., also cross-communication between the technology functions of the individual drive controllers. Specific applications include setpoint cascades, winding drives, and speed synchronization applications for continuous processes with a continuous web.

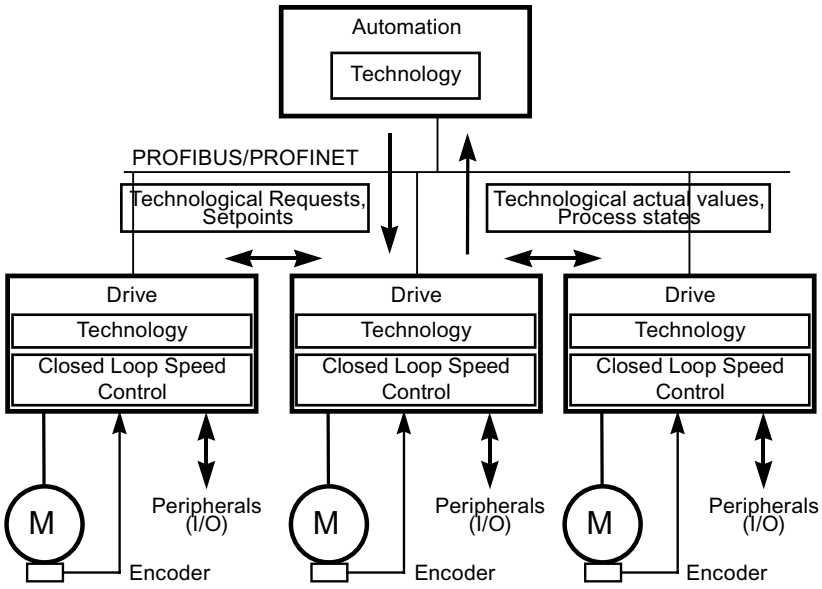


Figure 6-31 Application class 2

Application class 3 (positioning drive)

In addition to the drive control, the drive also includes a positioning control, which means that it operates as a self-contained single-axis positioning drive while the higher-level technological processes are performed in the controller. Positioning requests are transmitted to the drive controller via PROFIBUS/PROFINET and launched. Positioning drives have a very wide range of applications, e.g., screwing and unscrewing caps in a bottle filling plant or positioning cutters on a foil cutting machine.

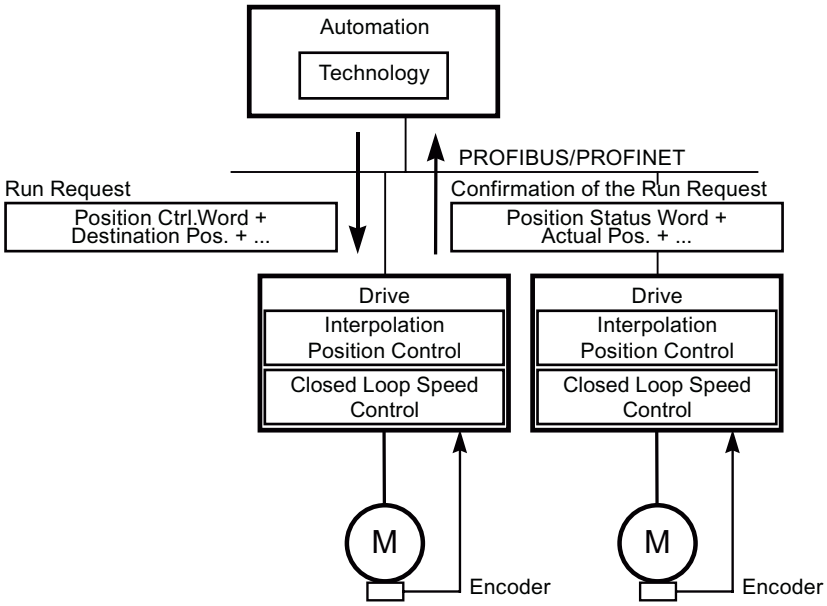


Figure 6-32 Application class 3

Application class 4 (central motion control)

This application class defines a speed setpoint interface, where the speed control is realized in the drive and the positioning control in the control system, such as is required for robotics and machine tool applications with coordinated motion sequences on multiple drives.

Motion control is primarily implemented using a central numerical controller (CNC). The position control loop is closed via the bus. The synchronization of the position control cycles in the open-loop and closed-loop controllers in the drives requires clock synchronization of the kind provided by PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET IO with IRT.

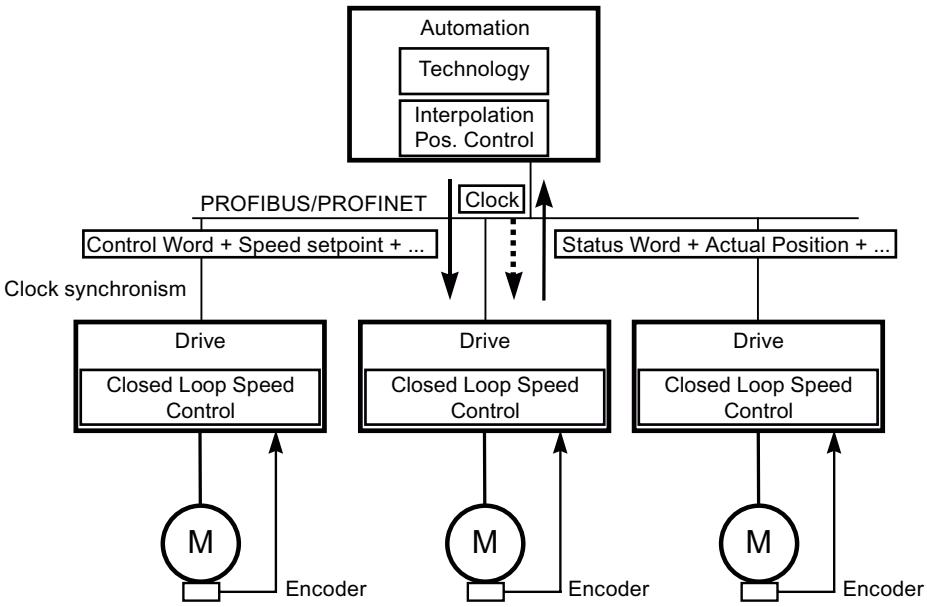


Figure 6-33 Application class 4

Selection of telegrams as a function of the application class

The telegrams listed in the table below can be used in the following application classes:

Table 6- 12 Selection of telegrams as a function of the application class

Telegram (p0922 = x)	Description	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4
1	Speed setpoint, 16 bit	x	x		
2	Speed setpoint, 32 bit	x	x		
3	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder		x		x
4	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders				x
5	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder and DSC				x
6	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders and DSC				x
7	Positioning, telegram 7 (basic positioner)			x	
9	Positioning, telegram 9 (basic positioner with direct input)			x	
20	Speed setpoint, 16 bit VIK-NAMUR	x	x		
81	Encoder telegram, 1 encoder channel				x
82	Extended encoder telegram, 1 encoder channel + speed actual value 16 bits				x
83	Extended encoder telegram, 1 encoder channel + speed actual value 32 bits				x
102	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder and torque reduction				x

Telegram (p0922 = x)	Description	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4
103	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoder and torque reduction				x
105	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder, torque reduction and DSC				x
106	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders, torque reduction and DSC				x
110	Basic positioner with MDI, override and XIST_A			x	
111	Basic positioner in the MDI mode			x	
116	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders, torque reduction and DSC, plus actual load, torque, power and current values				x
118	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 external position encoders, torque reduction and DSC, as well as actual load, torque, power and current values				x
125	DSC with torque feedforward control, 1 position encoder (encoder 1)				x
126	DSC with torque feedforward control, 2 position encoders (encoder 1 and encoder 2)				x
136	136 DSC with torque feedforward control, 2 position encoders (encoder 1 and encoder 2), 4 trace signals				x
139	Closed-loop speed/position control with DSC and torque feedforward control, 1 position encoder, clamping status, supplementary actual values				x
220	Speed setpoint 32 bit, metal industry	x			
352	Speed setpoint, 16 bit, PCS7	x	x		
370	Infeed	x	x	x	x
371	Infeed, metal industry	x			
390	Control unit with digital inputs/outputs	x	x	x	x
391	Control unit with digital inputs/outputs and 2 probes	x	x	x	x
392	Control unit with digital inputs/outputs and 6 probes	x	x	x	x
393	Control unit with digital inputs/outputs and 8 probes	x	x	x	x
394	Control unit with digital inputs/outputs	x	x	x	x
700	Safety info channel	x	x	x	x
999	Free telegrams	x	x	x	x

6.7.3 Cyclic communication

Cyclic communication is used to exchange time-critical process data.

6.7.3.1 Telegrams and process data

General information

Selecting a telegram via CU parameter p0922 determines which process data is transferred between the master and slave.

From the perspective of the slave (SINAMICS), the received process data comprises the receive words and the process data to be sent the send words.

The receive and send words comprise the following elements:

- Receive words: Control words and setpoints
- Send words: Status words and actual values

Default setting "Profidrive"

When the "Profidrive" default setting is chosen for command and setpoint selection (see "Command sources / "Profidrive" default settings"), "Free telegram" (p0922 = 999) is selected.

The receive telegram is parameterized as follows as a result of the default setting:

STW1	NSOLL_A

The send telegram is as follows (factory setting):

ZSW1	NIST_GLATT	IAIST_GLATT	MIST_GLATT	PIST_GLATT	FAULT_CODE

You do not have to make any further settings in order to use these telegrams.

User-defined telegram selection

a. Standard telegrams

Standard telegrams are structured in accordance with PROFIdrive profile or internal company specifications. The internal process data links are established automatically in accordance with the telegram number setting in parameter p0922.

The following standard telegrams can be set via parameter p0922:

- p0922 = 1 -> Speed setpoint, 16 bit
- p0922 = 2 -> Speed setpoint, 32 bit
- p0922 = 3 -> Speed setpoint 32 bit with 1 position controller
- p0922 = 4 -> Speed setpoint 32 bit with 2 position controller
- p0922 = 20 -> Speed setpoint, 16 bit VIK-NAMUR
- p0922 = 352 -> Speed setpoint, 16-bit PCS7

Depending on the setting in p0922, the interface mode of the control and status word is automatically set:

- p0922 = 1, 352, 999:
  STW 1/ZSW 1: Interface Mode SINAMICS / MICROMASTER, p2038 = 0
- p0922 = 20:
  STW 1/ZSW 1: Interface Mode PROFIdrive VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2

b. Manufacturer-specific telegrams

The manufacturer-specific telegrams are structured in accordance with internal company specifications. The internal process data links are set up automatically in accordance with the telegram number setting.
The following vendor-specific telegrams can be set via p0922:

- p0922 = 220 Speed setpoint 32 bit, metal industry

c. Free telegrams (p0922 = 999)

Send and receive telegrams can be configured as required by using BICO technology to interconnect the send and receive words. The default process data assigned under a) is retained during the changeover to p0922 = 999, although it can be changed or supplemented at any time.

To maintain compliance with the PROFIdrive profile, however, the following assignments should be retained:

- Interconnect PZD receive word 1 as control word 1 (STW 1)
- Interconnect PZD send word 1 as status word 1 (STW 1)

Please refer to function diagrams FP2460 and FP2470 for details on interconnection options.

Telegram interconnections

After changing p0922 = 999 (factory setting) to p0922 ≠ 999, the telegrams are interconnected and blocked automatically.

Note

Exceptions

Telegrams 20 and 352 are the exceptions. Here, the PZD06 in the send telegram and PZD03 to PZD06 in the receive telegram can be interconnected as required.

When you change p0922 ≠ 999 to p0922 = 999, the previous telegram interconnection is retained and can be changed.

Note

Easy method for creating extended telegram interconnections

If p0922 = 999, a telegram can be selected in p2079. A telegram interconnection is automatically made and blocked. However, the telegram can also be extended.

This is an easy method of creating extended telegram interconnections on the basis of existing telegrams.

6.7.3.2 Structure of the telegrams

Table 6- 13 Structure of the telegrams

Telegr.	PZD 1	PZD 2	PZD 3	PZD 4	PZD 5	PZD 6	PZD 7	PZD 8	PZD 9	PZD 10
1	STW1	NSOLL_A								
	ZSW1	NIST_A								
2	STW1	NSOLL_B		STW2						
	ZSW1	NIST_B		ZSW2						
3	STW1	NSOLL_B		STW2	G1_STW					
	ZSW1	NIST_B		ZSW2	G1_ZSW	G1_XIST1		G1_XACT2		
4	STW1	NSOLL_B		STW2	G1_STW	G2_STW				
	ZSW1	NIST_B		ZSW2	G1_ZSW	Further assignment, see FP2420				
20	STW1	NSOLL_A								
	ZSW1	NIST_A_ GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	PIST_ GLATT	MELD_ NAMUR				
220	STW1_ BM	NSOLL_B		STW2_BM	M_ADD	M_LIM	free	free	free	free
	ZSW1_ BM	NIST_A	IAIST	MIST	WARN_ CODE	FAULT_ CODE	ZSW2_ BM	free	free	free
352	STW1	NSOLL_A	PCS7_3	PCS7_4	PCS7_5	PCS7_6				
	ZSW1	NIST_A_ GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	WARN_ CODE	FAULT_ CODE				
999	STW1	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free
	ZSW1	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free

6.7.3.3 Overview of control words and setpoints

Table 6- 14 Overview of control words and setpoints

Abbreviation	Description	Parameter	Function diagram
STW1	Control word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2442
STW1	Control word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)	See table "Control word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)"	FP2441
STW1_BM	Control word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2425
STW2	Control word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2444
STW2_BM	Control word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2426
NSOLL_A	Speed setpoint A (16-bit)	p1070	FP3030
NSOLL_B	Speed setpoint B (32-bit)	p1155	FP3080
PCS7_x	PCS7-specific setpoints		

6.7.3.4 Overview of status words and actual values

Table 6- 15 Overview of status words and actual values

Abbreviation	Description	Parameter	Function diagram
ZSW1	Status word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2452
ZSW1	Status word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)	See table "Status word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)"	FP2451
ZSW1_BM	Status word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2428
ZSW2	Status word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2454
ZSW2_BM	Status word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2429
NIST_A	Speed setpoint A (16 bit)	r0063[0]	FP4715
NIST_B	Speed setpoint B (32 bit)	r0063	FP4710
IAIST	Actual value of current	r0068[0]	FP6714
MIST	Actual torque value	r0080[0]	FP6714
PIST	Actual power value	r0082[0]	FP6714
NIST_GLATT	Actual speed value smoothed	r0063[1]	FP4715

Abbreviation	Description	Parameter	Function diagram
IAIST_GLATT	Current actual value, smoothed	r0068[1]	FP6714
MIST_GLATT	Torque actual value, smoothed	r0080[1]	FP6714
PIST_GLATT	Power actual value, smoothed	r0082[1]	FP6714
MELD_NAMUR	VIK-NAMUR message bit bar	r3113, see table "NAMUR message bit bar"	--
WARN_CODE	Alarm code	r2132	FP8065
ERROR_CODE	Error code	r2131	FP8060

6.7.4 Acyclic communication

Acyclic communication, as opposed to cyclic communication, means data is transferred only when an explicit request is made (e.g., in order to read and write parameters).

The "Read data record" and "Write data record" services are available for acyclic communication.

The following options are available for reading and writing parameters:

- S7 protocol

  The STARTER commissioning tool use this protocol, for example, in the online mode via PROFIBUS.

- PROFIdrive parameter channel with the following data records:
  - PROFIBUS: Data block 47 (0x002F)

    The DPV1 services are available for master class 1 and master class 2.
  - PROFINET: Data block 47 and 0xB02F as global access, data block 0xB02E as local access

Note

References

Please refer to the following documentation for a detailed description of acyclic communication:
Reference: PROFIdrive Profile V4.1, May 2006, Order No: 3.172

Addressing:

- PROFIBUS DP, addressing is carried out via the logical address or the diagnostics address.
- PROFINET IO, addressing is carried out exclusively via a diagnostics address that is assigned to a module starting from slot 1. Parameters cannot be accessed using slot 0.

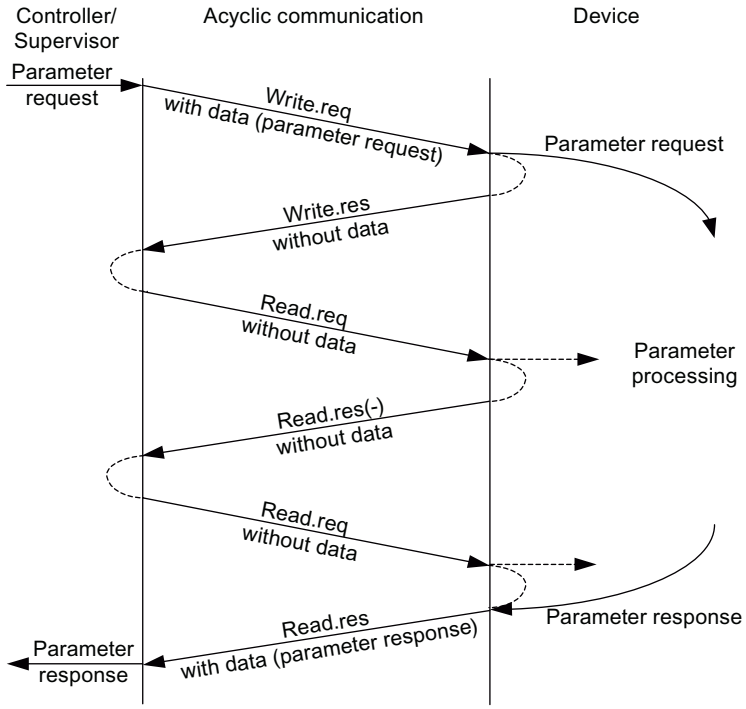


Figure 6-34 Reading and writing data

Characteristics of the parameter channel

- One 16-bit address each for parameter number and subindex.
- Simultaneous access by several additional PROFIBUS masters (master class 2) or PROFINET IO Supervisor (e.g., commissioning tool).
- Transfer of different parameters in one access operation (multiple parameter request).
- Transfer of complete arrays or part of an array possible.
- Only one parameter request is processed at a time (no pipelining).
- A parameter request/response must fit into one data record (max. 240 bytes).
- The request and response header are counted as user data.

6.7.4.1 Structure of requests and responses

Structure of parameter request and parameter response

Table 6- 16 Structure of the parameter request

	Parameter request			Offset
Values for write access only	Request header	Request reference	Request ID	0
		Axis	Number of parameters	2
	1. Parameter address	Attribute	Number of elements	4
		Parameter number		6
		Subindex		8
	...			
	nth parameter address	Attribute	Number of elements	
		Parameter number		
		Subindex		
	1. parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	
		Values		
		...		
	...			
	nth parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	
		Values		
		...		

Table 6- 17 Structure of the parameter response

	Parameter response			Offset
Values for read access only Error values for negative response only	Response header	Request reference mirrored	Response ID	0
		Axis mirrored	Number of parameters	2
	1. Parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	4
		Values or error values		6
		...		
	...			
	nth parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	
		Values or error values		
		...		

Description of fields in DPV1 parameter request and response

Table 6- 18 Fields in DPV1 parameter request and response

Field	Data type	Values	Comment
Request reference	Unsigned8	0x01 ... 0xFF	
	Unique identification of the request/response pair for the master. The master changes the request reference with each new request. The slave mirrors the request reference in its response.		
Request ID	Unsigned8	0x01 0x02	Read request Write request
	Specifies the type of request. In the case of a write request, the changes are made in a volatile memory (RAM). A save operation is needed in order to transfer the modified data to the non-volatile memory (p0971, p0977).		
Response ID	Unsigned8	0x01 0x02 0x81 0x82	Read request (+) Write request (+) Read request (-) Write request (-)
	Mirrors the request ID and specifies whether request execution was positive or negative. Negative means: Cannot execute part or all of request. The error values are transferred instead of the values for each subresponse.		
Drive object number	Unsigned8	0x00 ... 0xFF	Number
	Setting for the drive object number of a drive unit with more than one drive object. Different drive objects with separate parameter number ranges can be accessed via the same DPV1 connection.		
Number of parameters	Unsigned8	0x01 ... 0x27	No. 1 ... 39 Limited by DPV1 telegram length
	Defines the number of following areas for the parameter address and/or parameter value for multi-parameter requests. The number of parameters = 1 for single requests.		
Attribute	Unsigned8	0x10 0x20 0x30	Value Description Text (not implemented)
	Type of parameter element accessed.		
Number of elements	Unsigned8	0x00 0x01 ... 0x75	Special function No. 1 ... 117 Limited by DPV1 telegram length
	Number of array elements accessed.		
Parameter number	Unsigned16	0x0001 ... 0xFFFF	No. 1 ... 65535
	Addresses the parameter to be accessed.		
Subindex	Unsigned16	0x0000 ... 0xFFFF	No. 0 ... 65535
	Addresses the first array element of the parameter to be accessed.		

Field	Data type	Values	Comment
Format	Unsigned8	0x02 0x03 0x04 0x05 0x06 0x07 0x08 Other values	Data type integer8 Data type integer16 Data type integer32 Data type unsigned8 Data type unsigned16 Data type unsigned32 Data type floating point See PROFIdrive profile V3.1
		0x40 0x41 0x42 0x43 0x44	Zero (without values as a positive subresponse of a write request) Byte Word Double word Error
	The format and number specify the adjoining space containing values in the telegram. For write access, it is preferable to specify data types according to the PROFIdrive profile. Bytes, words and double words are also possible as a substitute.		
Number of values	Unsigned8	0x00 ... 0xEA	No. 0 ... 234 Limited by DPV1 telegram length
	Specifies the number of subsequent values.		
Error values	Unsigned16	0x0000 ... 0x00FF	Meaning of error values --> see following table
	The error values in the event of a negative response. If the values make up an odd number of bytes, a zero byte is attached. This ensures the integrity of the word structure of the telegram.		
Values	Unsigned16	0x0000 ... 0x00FF	
	The values of the parameter for read or write access. If the values make up an odd number of bytes, a zero byte is attached. This ensures the integrity of the word structure of the telegram.		

Error values in DPV1 parameter responses

Table 6- 19 Error values in DPV1 parameter responses

Error value	Meaning	Comment	Additional info
0x00	Illegal parameter number.	Access to a parameter that does not exist.	–
0x01	Parameter value cannot be changed.	Modification access to a parameter value that cannot be changed.	Subindex
0x02	Lower or upper value limit exceeded.	Modification access with value outside value limits.	Subindex
0x03	Invalid subindex.	Access to a subindex that does not exist.	Subindex
0x04	No array.	Access with subindex to an unindexed parameter.	–
0x05	Wrong data type.	Modification access with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter.	–
0x06	Illegal set operation (only reset allowed)	Modification access with a value not equal to 0 in a case where this is not allowed.	Subindex
0x07	Description element cannot be changed	Modification access to a description element that cannot be changed.	Subindex
0x09	No description data available	Access to a description that does not exist (the parameter value exists).	–
0x0B	No parameter change rights.	Modification access with no parameter change rights.	–
0x0F	No text array exists	Access to a text array that does not exist (the parameter value exists).	–
0x11	Request cannot be executed due to operating status.	Access is temporarily not possible for unspecified reasons.	–
0x14	Illegal value.	Modification access with a value that is within the limits but is illegal for other permanent reasons (parameter with defined individual values).	Subindex
0x15	Response too long.	The length of the present response exceeds the maximum transfer length.	–
0x16	Illegal parameter address.	Illegal or unsupported value for attribute, number of elements, parameter number, subindex or a combination of these.	–
0x17	Illegal format.	Write request: illegal or unsupported parameter data format.	–
0x18	Number of values inconsistent.	Write request: a mismatch exists between the number of values in the parameter data and the number of elements in the parameter address.	–
0x19	Drive object does not exist.	You have attempted to access a drive object that does not exist.	–
0x65	Parameter presently deactivated.	You have tried to access a parameter that, although available, does not currently perform a function (e.g., n control set and access to a U/f control parameter).	–
0x6B	Parameter %s [%s]: no write access for the enabled controller.	–	–
0x6C	Parameter %s [%s]: unit unknown.	–	–

Error value	Meaning	Comment	Additional info
0x6D	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, encoder (p0010 = 4).	–	–
0x6E	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, motor (p0010 = 3).	–	–
0x6F	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, power module (p0010 = 2).	–	–
0x70	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in quick commissioning (p0010 = 1).	–	–
0x71	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the ready state (p0010 = 0).	–	–
0x72	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, parameter reset (p0010 = 30).	–	–
0x73	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, safety (p0010 = 95).	–	–
0x74	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, tech. application/units (p0010 = 5).	–	–
0x75	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state (p0010 not equal to 0).	–	–
0x76	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, download (p0010 = 29).	–	–
0x77	Parameter %s [%s] must not be written during download.	–	–
0x78	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, drive configuration (device: p0009 = 3).	–	–
0x79	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, define drive type (device: p0009 = 2).	–	–
0x7A	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, database configuration (device: p0009 = 4).	–	–
0x7B	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device configuration (device: p0009 = 1).	–	–

Error value	Meaning	Comment	Additional info
0x7C	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device download (device: p0009 = 29).	–	–
0x7D	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device parameter reset (device: p0009 = 30).	–	–
0x7E	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device ready (device: p0009 = 0).	–	–
0x7F	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device (device: p0009 mot 0).	–	–
0x81	Parameter %s [%s] must not be written during download.	–	–
0x82	Transfer of the control authority is inhibited by BI: p0806.	–	–
0x83	Parameter %s [%s]: requested BICO interconnection not possible.	BICO output does not supply float values, however the BICO input requires float values.	–
0x84	Parameter %s [%s]: parameter change inhibited (refer to p0300, p0400, p0922)	–	–
0x85	Parameter %s [%s]: access method not defined.	–	–
0xC8	Below currently valid limit.	Modification request for a value that, although within "absolute" limits, is below the currently valid lower limit.	–
0xC9	Above currently valid limit.	Modification request for a value that, although within "absolute" limits, is above the currently valid upper limit (e.g., specified by the actual converter rating).	–
0xCC	Write access not permitted.	Write access is not permitted because an access code is not available.	–

6.7.4.2 Determining the drive object numbers

Further information about the drive system (e.g., drive object numbers) can be determined as follows from parameters p0101, r0102 and p0107/r0107:

1. The value of parameter r0102 ("Number of drive objects") is read via a read request from drive object 1.

   The drive object with drive object number 1 is the control unit (CU), which is always present in every drive system, as a minimum.

2. Depending on the result of the initial read request, further read requests on drive object 1 are used to read the indices of parameter p0101 ("Drive object numbers"), as specified by parameter r0102.

   Example:
   If the number of drive objects is "5", the values of indices 0 to 4 of parameter p0101 are read. The relevant indices can also be read at once.

   Note
   Result

   The first two points provide you with the following information:
   - The number of drive objects present in the drive system
   - The drive object numbers assigned to these drive objects

3. Following this, parameter r0107/p0107 ("Drive object type") is read for each drive object (indicated by the drive object number).

   Depending on the drive object, parameter 107 can be either an adjustable parameter or a display parameter.

   The value in parameter r0107/p0107 indicates the drive object type. The coding for the drive object type is specified in the parameter list.

4. From here, the list of parameters applies to the particular drive object.

6.7.4.3 Example 1: Reading parameters

Preconditions

- The PROFIdrive controller has been commissioned and is fully operational.
- PROFIdrive communication between the controller and the device is operational.
- The controller can read and write data records in conformance with PROFIdrive DPV1.

Task description

Following the occurrence of at least one fault (STW1.3 = "1") on drive 2 (also drive object number 2), the active fault codes are to be read from the fault buffer r0945[0] ... r0945[7].

The request is to be handled using a request and response data block.

Basic procedure

1. Create a request to read the parameters.
2. Initiate the parameter request.
3. Evaluate the parameter response.

Execution

1. Create a request to read the parameters

Table 6- 20 Parameter request

Parameter request			Offset
Request header	Request reference = 25 hex	Request ID = 01 hex	0 + 1
	Axis = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 01 hex	2 + 3
Parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 08 hex	4 + 5
	Parameter no. = 945 dec		6
	Subindex = 0 dec		8

Information about the parameter request:

- Request reference:

  The value is selected at random from the valid value range. The request reference establishes the relationship between request and response.
- Request ID:

  01 hex → This identifier is required for a read request.
- Axis:

  02 hex → Drive 2, fault buffer with drive- and device-specific faults
- Number of parameters:

  01 hex → One parameter is read.
- Attribute:

  10 hex → The parameter values are read.
- Number of elements:

  08 hex → The actual fault case with 8 faults is to be read.
- Parameter number:

  945 dec → p0945 (fault code) is read.
- Subindex:

  0 dec → Reading starts from index 0.

2. Initiate parameter request

If STW1.3 = "1" → Initiate parameter request

3. Evaluate the parameter response

Table 6- 21 Parameter response

Parameter response			Offset
Response header	Request reference mirrored = 25 hex	Response ID = 01 hex	0 + 1
	Axis mirrored = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 01 hex	2 + 3
Parameter value	Format = 06 hex	Number of values = 08 hex	4 + 5
	1. value = 1355 dec		6
	2. value = 0 dec		8
	...		...
	8. value = 0 dec		20

Information about the parameter response:

- Request reference mirrored:

  This response belongs to the request with request reference 25.
- Response ID:

  01 hex → Read request positive, values available starting from 1st value
- Axis mirrored, number of parameters:

  The values correspond to the values from the request.
- Format:

  06 hex → Parameter values are in the unsigned16 format.
- Number of values:

  08 hex → 8 parameter values are available.
- 1. value ... 8th value

  A fault is only entered in value 1 of the fault buffer for drive 2.

6.7.4.4 Example 2: Writing parameters (multi-parameter request)

Preconditions

- The PROFIdrive controller has been commissioned and is fully operational.
- PROFIdrive communication between the controller and the device is operational.
- The controller can read and write data records in conformance with PROFIdrive DPV1.

  Special requirements for this example:
- Control type: Vector control (with extended setpoint channel)

Task description

Jog 1 and 2 are to be set up for drive 2 (also drive object number 2) via the input terminals of the control unit. A parameter request is to be used to write the corresponding parameters as follows:

- BI: p1055 = r0722.4 Jog bit 0
- BI: p1056 = r0722.5 Jog bit 1
- p1058 = 300 rpm Jog 1 speed setpoint
- p1059 = 600 rpm Jog 2 speed setpoint

The request is to be handled using a request and response data block.

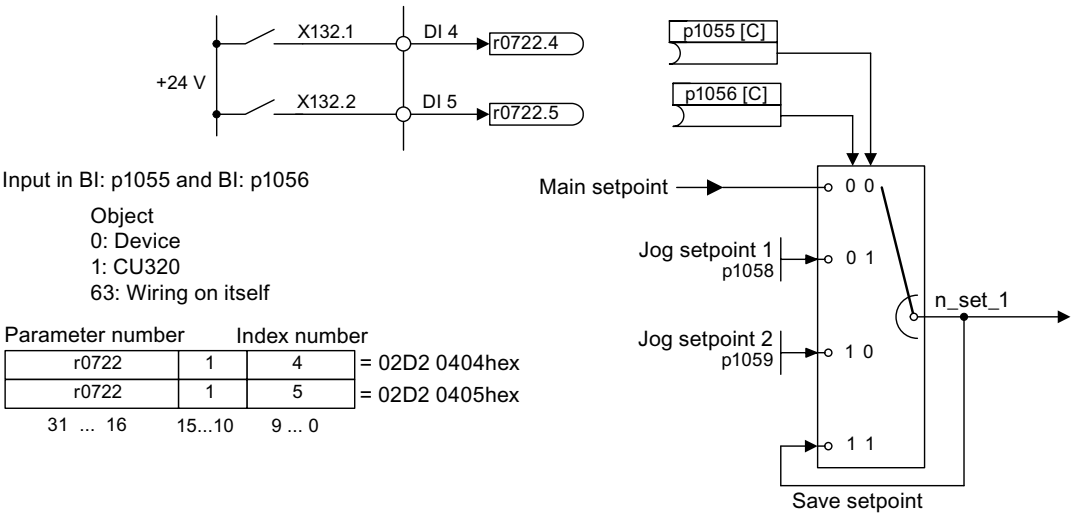


Figure 6-35 Task description for multi-parameter request (example)

Basic procedure

1. Create a request to write the parameters.
2. Initiate the parameter request.
3. Evaluate the parameter response.

Execution

1. Create a request to write the parameters

Table 6- 22 Parameter request

Parameter request			Offset
Request header	Request reference = 40 hex	Request ID = 02 hex	0 + 1
	Axis = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 04 hex	2 + 3
1. Parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	4 + 5
	Parameter no. = 1055 dec		6
	Subindex = 0 dec		8
2. Parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	10 + 11
	Parameter no. = 1056 dec		12
	Subindex = 0 dec		14
3. Parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	16 + 17
	Parameter no. = 1058 dec		18
	Subindex = 0 dec		20
4. Parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	22 + 23
	Parameter no. = 1059 dec		24
	Subindex = 0 dec		26
1. Parameter value(s)	Format = 07 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	28 + 29
	Value = 02D2 hex		30
	Value = 0404 hex		32
2. Parameter value(s)	Format = 07 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	34 + 35
	Value = 02D2 hex		36
	Value = 0405 hex		38
3. Parameter value(s)	Format = 08 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	40 + 41
	Value = 4396 hex		42
	Value = 0000 hex		44
4. Parameter value(s)	Format = 08 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	46 + 47
	Value = 4416 hex		48
	Value = 0000 hex		50

Information about the parameter request:

- Request reference:

  The value is selected at random from the valid value range. The request reference establishes the relationship between request and response.
- Request ID:

  02 hex → This identifier is required for a write request.
- Axis:

  02 hex → The parameters are written to drive 2.
- Number of parameters

  04 hex → The multi-parameter request comprises 4 individual parameter requests.

1st parameter address ... 4th parameter address

- Attribute:

  10 hex → The parameter values are to be written.
- Number of elements

  01 hex → 1 array element is written.
- Parameter number

  Specifies the number of the parameter to be written (p1055, p1056, p1058, p1059).
- Subindex:

  0 dec → ID of the first array element.

1st parameter value ... 4th parameter value

- Format:

  07 hex → Data type Unsigned32

  08 hex → Data type FloatingPoint
- Number of values:

  01 hex → A value is written to each parameter in the specified format.
- Value:

  BICO input parameter: enter signal source

  Adjustable parameter: enter value

2. Initiate parameter request

3. Evaluate the parameter response

Table 6- 23 Parameter response

Parameter response			Offset
Response header	Request reference mirrored = 40 hex	Response ID = 02 hex	0
	Axis mirrored = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 04 hex	2

Information about the parameter response:

- Request reference mirrored:

  This response belongs to the request with request reference 40.
- Response ID:

  02 hex → Write request positive
- Axis mirrored:

  02 hex → The value matches the value from the request.
- Number of parameters:

  04 hex → The value matches the value from the request.

6.7.5 Further information about PROFIdrive communication

Further information about PROFIdrive communication

For more information about PROFIdrive communication, refer to "PROFIdrive communication" in the accompanying "SINAMICS S120 Function Manual".

6.8 Communication via PROFIBUS DP

6.8.1 PROFIBUS connection

Positions of PROFIBUS connection, address switch, and diagnostics LED

The PROFIBUS connection, address switch, and diagnostics LED are located on the Control Unit CU320-2 DP.

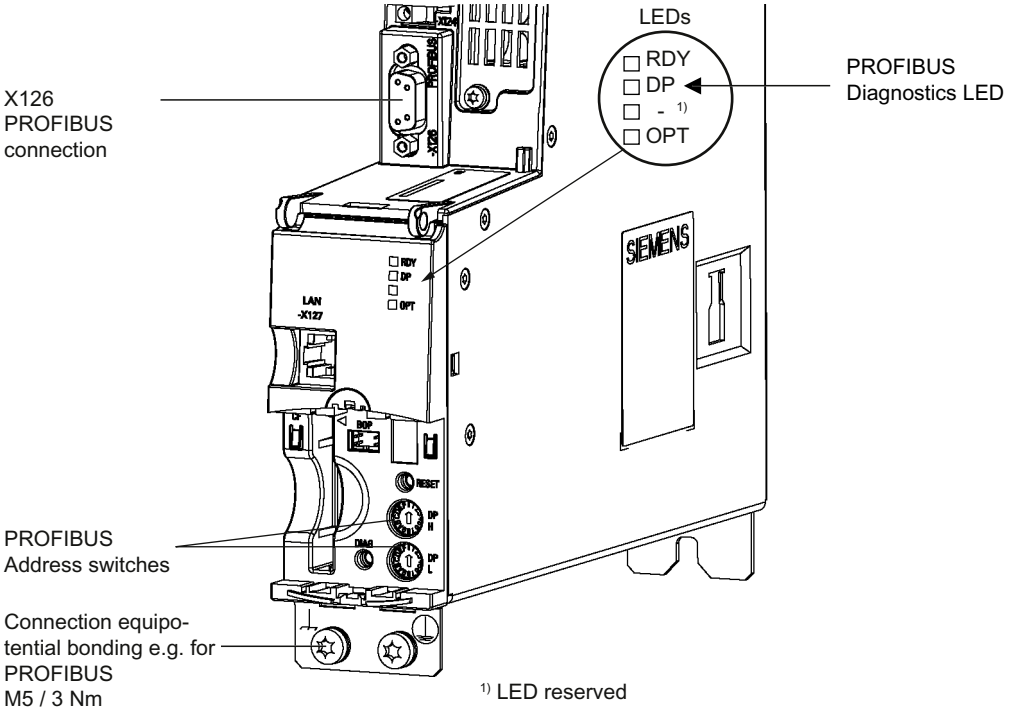
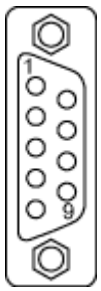


Figure 6-36 View of the Control Unit with PROFIBUS interface

PROFIBUS connection

The PROFIBUS is connected by means of a 9-pin SUB D socket (X126). The connections are electrically isolated.

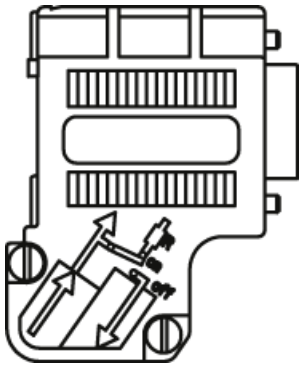
Table 6- 24 X126 - PROFIBUS connection

	Pin	Signal name	Meaning	Range
	1	SHIELD	Ground connection	
	2	M24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice, ground	0 V
	3	RxD/TxD-P	Receive / transmit data P (B/B')	RS485
	4	CNTR-P	Control signal	TTL
	5	DGND	PROFIBUS data reference potential (C/C')	
	6	VP	Supply voltage plus	5 V ± 10%
	7	P24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice P, + (24 V)	24 V (20.4 ... 28.8 V)
	8	RxD/TxD-N	Receive / transmit data N (A/A')	RS485
	9	-	Not assigned	

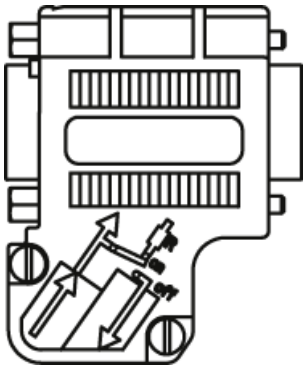
Connectors

The cables must be connected via PROFIBUS connectors as they contain the necessary terminating resistors.

The figure below shows suitable PROFIBUS connectors with/without a PG/PC connector.



PROFIBUS connector
without PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0



PROFIBUS connector
with PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0

Bus terminating resistor

The bus terminating resistor must be switched on or off depending on its position in the bus, otherwise the data will not be transmitted properly.

The terminating resistors for the first and last nodes in a line must be switched on; the resistors must be switched off at all other connectors.

The cable shield must be connected at both ends over large-surface area contacts.

Note

Connector type

Depending on the connector type, the correct assignment of the connector must be ensured (IN/OUT) in conjunction with the terminating resistor.

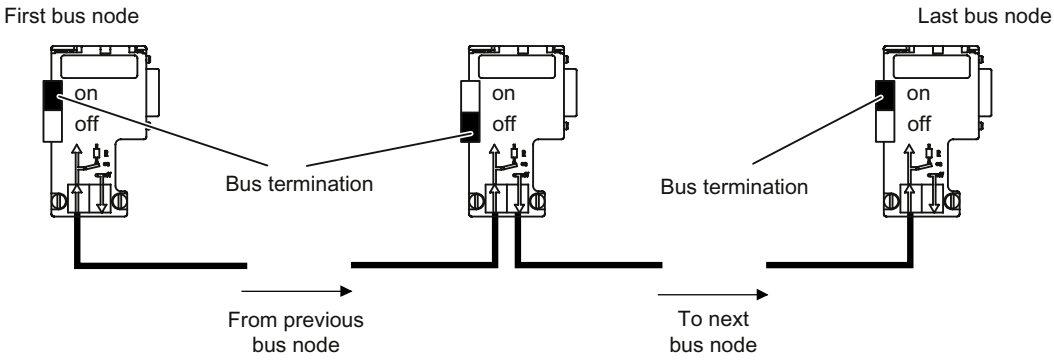


Figure 6-37 Position of the bus terminating resistors

Cable routing

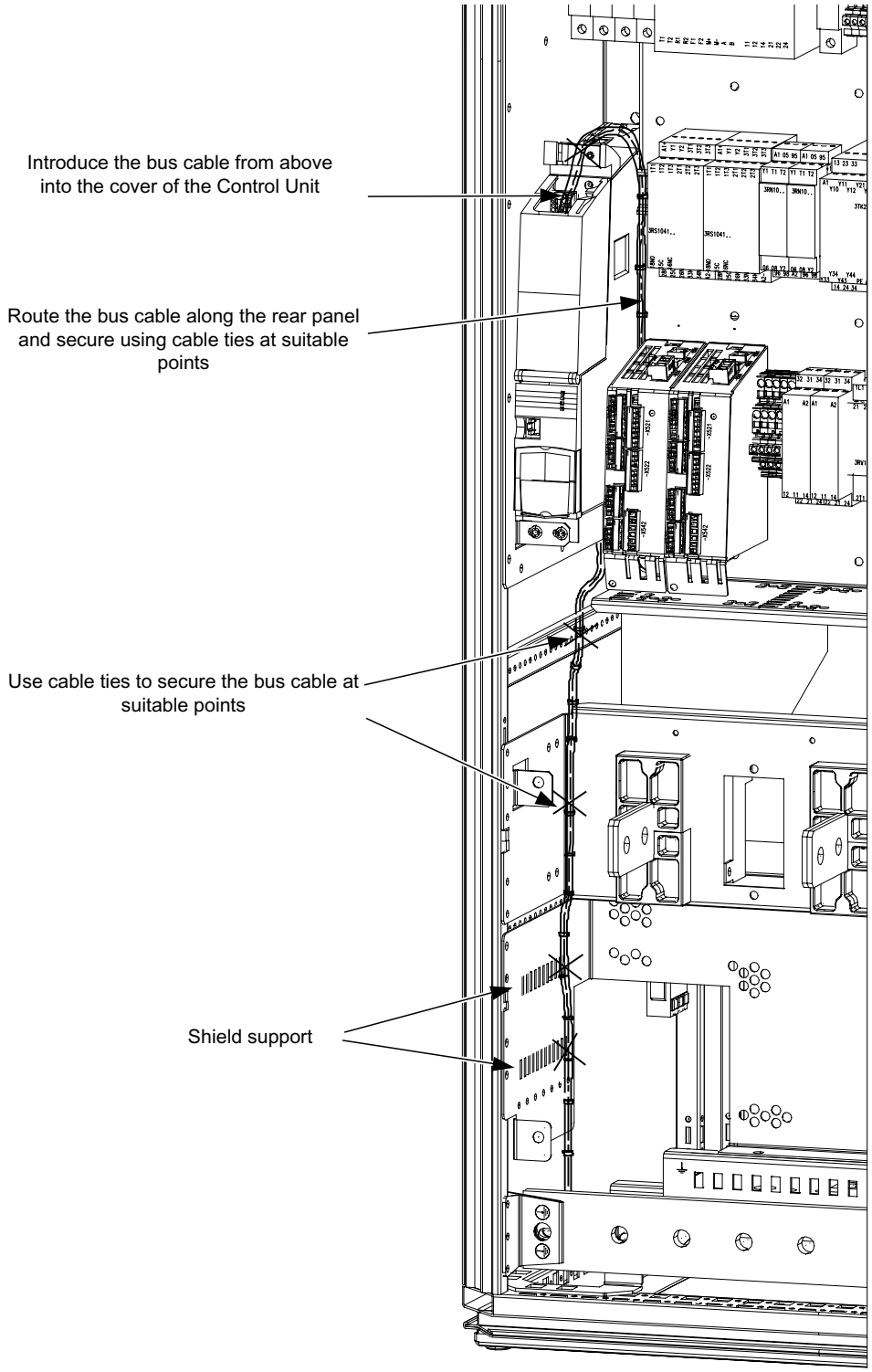


Figure 6-38 Cable routing for type A cabinets

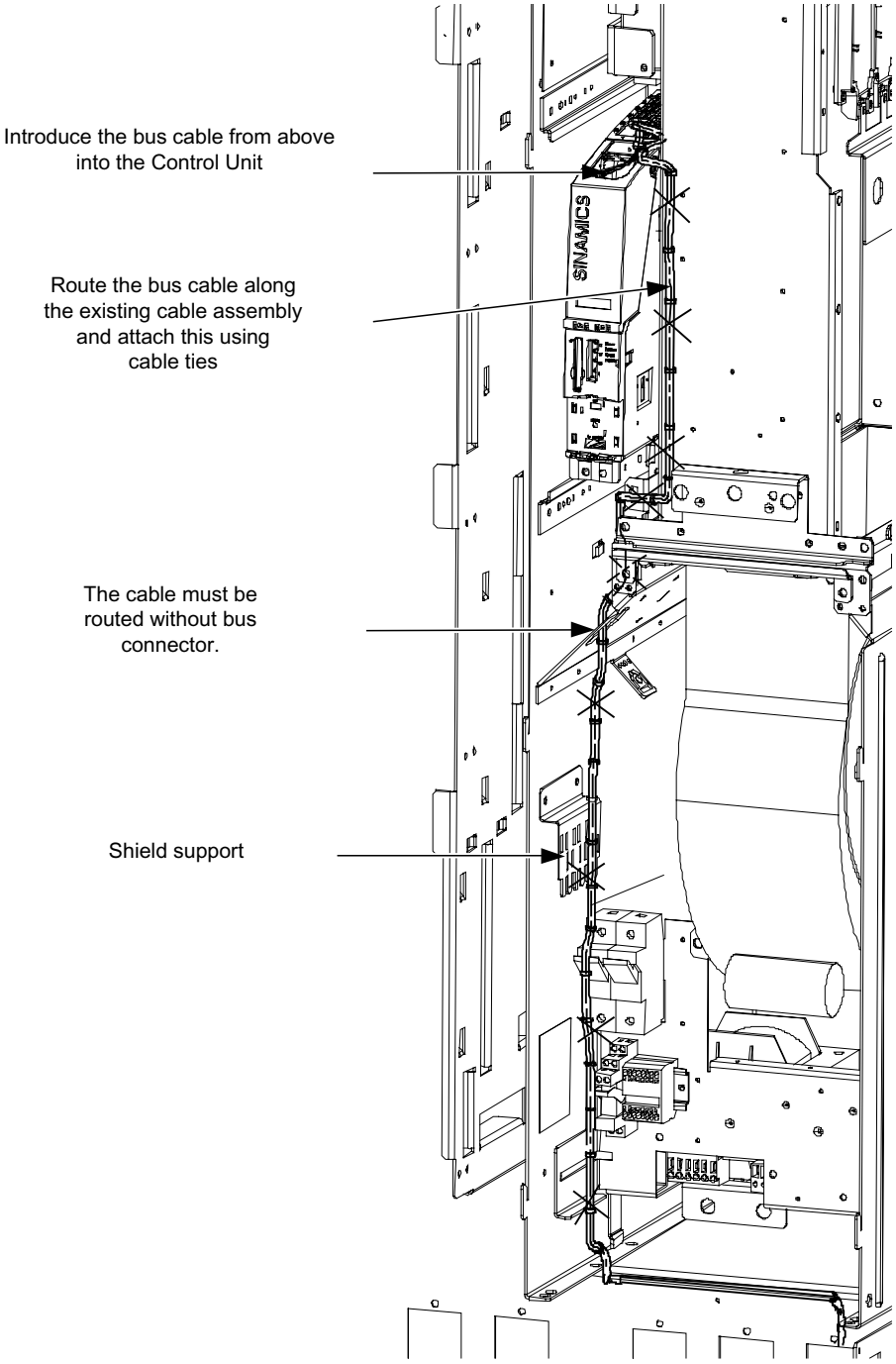


Figure 6-39 Cable routing for type C cabinets

6.8.2 Control via PROFIBUS

"DP1 (PROFIBUS)" diagnostics LED

The PROFIBUS diagnostics LED is located on the front of the Control Unit. Its states are described in the following table.

Table 6- 25 Description of the LEDs

Color	State	Description
-----	OFF	Cyclic communication is not (yet) running. Note: PROFIdrive is ready for communication when the control unit is ready for operation (see RDY LED).
Green	Continuous light	Cyclic communication is taking place.
Green	0.5 Hz flashing light	Cyclic communication has still not been fully established. Possible causes: - The controller is not transmitting any setpoints. - In isochronous mode, the controller did not send a Global Control or it sent a defective Global Control (GC).
Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	PROFIBUS master is sending incorrect parameter assignment/configuration
Red	2 Hz flashing light	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established.

Setting the PROFIBUS Address

There are two ways to set the PROFIBUS address:

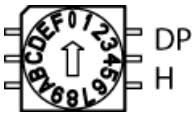
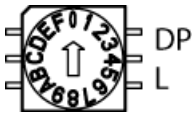
1. Via p0918
   - To set the bus address for a PROFIBUS node using STARTER, first set the rotary code switches to 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$).
   - Then use parameter p0918 to set the address to a value between 1 and 126.
2. Via the PROFIBUS address switches on the Control Unit
   - The address is set manually to values between 1 and 126 using the rotary coding switches. In this case, p0918 is only used to read the address.

The address switch is behind the blanking plate. The blanking plate is part of the scope of supply.

PROFIBUS address switches

The PROFIBUS address is set as a hexadecimal value via two rotary coding switches. Values between 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$) can be set as the address. The upper rotary coding switch (H) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^1 and the lower rotary coding switch (L) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^0.

Table 6- 26 PROFIBUS address switches

Rotary coding switches	Significance	Examples		
		21_{dec}	**35_{dec}**	**126_{dec}**
		15_{hex}	**23_{hex}**	**$7E_{hex}$**
	$16^1 = 16$	1	2	7
	$16^0 = 1$	5	3	E

The factory setting for the rotary coding switches is 0_{dec} (00_{hex}).

Setting the PROFIBUS ID number

The PROFIBUS Ident Number (PNO-ID) can be set using p2042.

SINAMICS can be operated on PROFIBUS with various identities. This allows a PROFIBUS GSD that is independent of the device to be used (e.g. PROFIdrive VIK-NAMUR with Ident Number 3AA0 hex).

- 0: SINAMICS S/G
- 1: VIK-NAMUR

New settings do not become active until after POWER ON, reset, or download.

Note

Totally Integrated Automation

The advantages of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA) can only be utilized when selecting "0".

6.8.3 Monitoring: Telegram failure

Description

In monitoring for telegram failure, two cases are possible:

- Telegram failure with a bus fault

  After a telegram failure and the additional monitoring time has elapsed (p2047), bit r2043.0 is set to "1" and alarm A01920 is output. Binector output r2043.0 can be used for an emergency stop, for example.

  Once the delay time (p2044) has elapsed, fault F01910 is output.
  Fault F01910 triggers fault response OFF2 (pulse inhibit) for the infeed and OFF3 (quick stop) in the drive.
  If no OFF response is to be triggered, the fault response can be reparameterized accordingly.

  Fault F01910 can be acknowledged immediately. The drive can then be operated even without PROFIBUS.

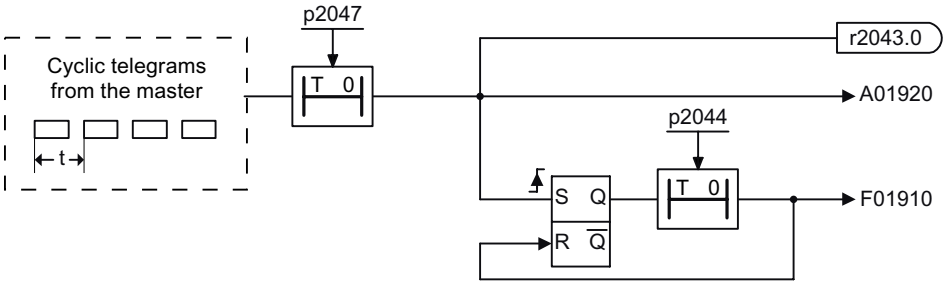


Figure 6-40 Monitoring telegram failure with a bus fault

- Telegram failure with a CPU stop

  After telegram failure, bit r2043.0 is set to "1." Binector output r2043.0 can be used for an emergency stop, for example.

  Once the delay time (p2044) has elapsed, fault F01910 is output.
  Fault F01910 triggers fault response OFF2 (pulse inhibit) for the infeed and OFF3 (quick stop) in the drive.
  If no OFF response is to be triggered, the fault response can be reparameterized accordingly.

  Fault F01910 can be acknowledged immediately. The drive can then be operated even without PROFIBUS.

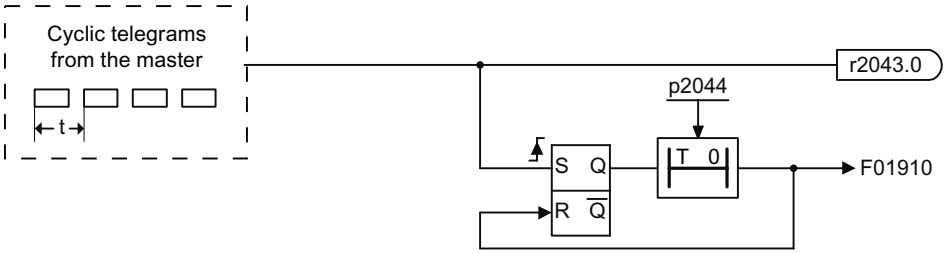


Figure 6-41 Monitoring telegram failure for a CPU stop

6.8.4 Further information about communication via PROFIBUS DP

Further information about communication via PROFIBUS DP

For more information about communication via PROFIBUS DP, refer to "Communication via PROFIBUS DP" in the accompanying "SINAMICS S120 Function Manual".

6.9 Communication via PROFINET IO

6.9.1 Activating online operation: STARTER via PROFINET IO

Description

Online operation with PROFINET IO is implemented using TCP/IP.

Prerequisites

- STARTER Version 4.2 or higher
- Control unit CU320-2 PN or CBE20

STARTER via PROFINET IO (example)

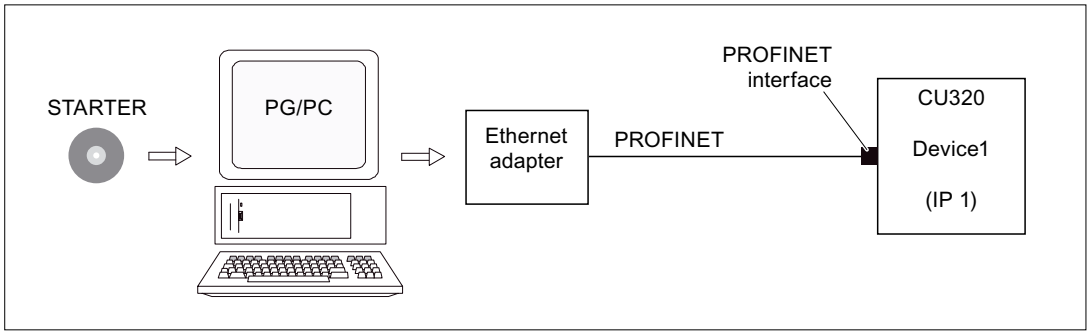


Figure 6-42 STARTER via PROFINET (example)

Procedure, establishing online operation with PROFINET

1. Set the IP address in Windows XP

   The PC/PG is referred here to a fixed, free IP address.
2. Settings in STARTER
3. Assigning the IP address and the name

   The PROFINET interface must be "baptized" so that the STARTER can establish communication.
4. Select online operation in STARTER.

Set the IP address in Windows XP

On the desktop, right-click on "Network environment" -> Properties -> double-click on Network card and choose -> Properties -> Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) -> Properties -> Enter the freely-assignable addresses.

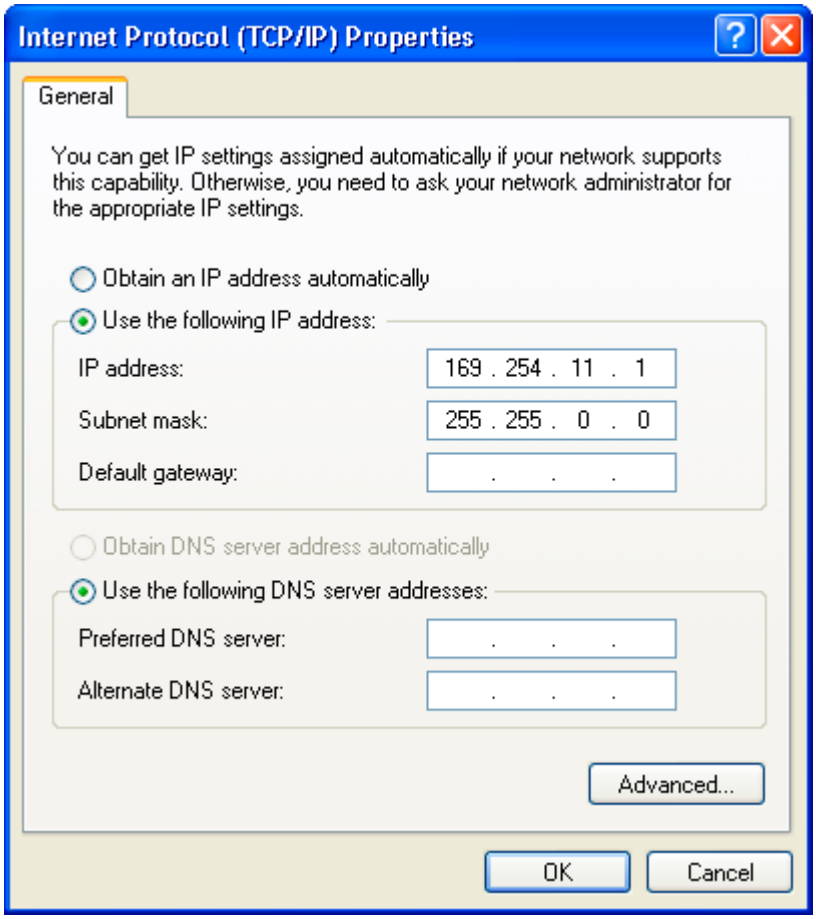


Figure 6-43 Properties of the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)

Settings in STARTER

The following settings are required in STARTER for communication via PROFINET:

- Extras -> Set PG/PC interface

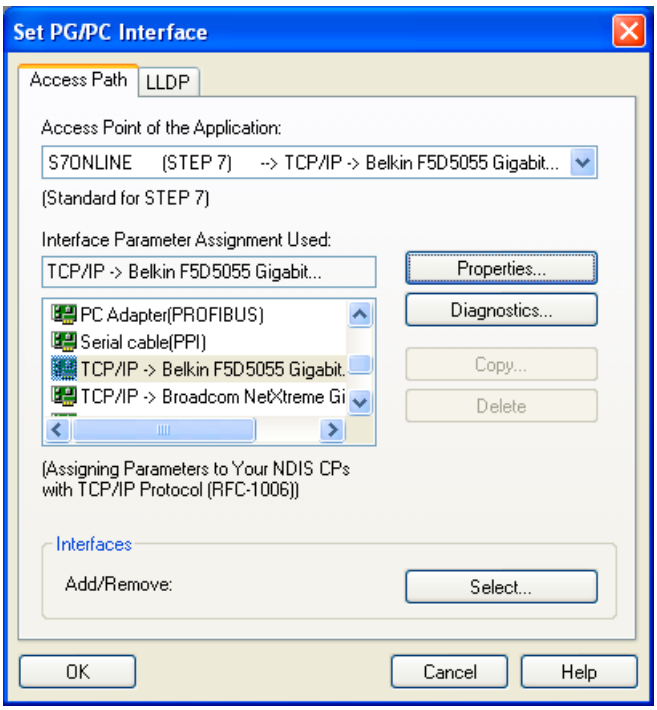


Figure 6-44 Set the PG/PC interface

- Right-click Drive unit -> Target device -> Online access -> Module address

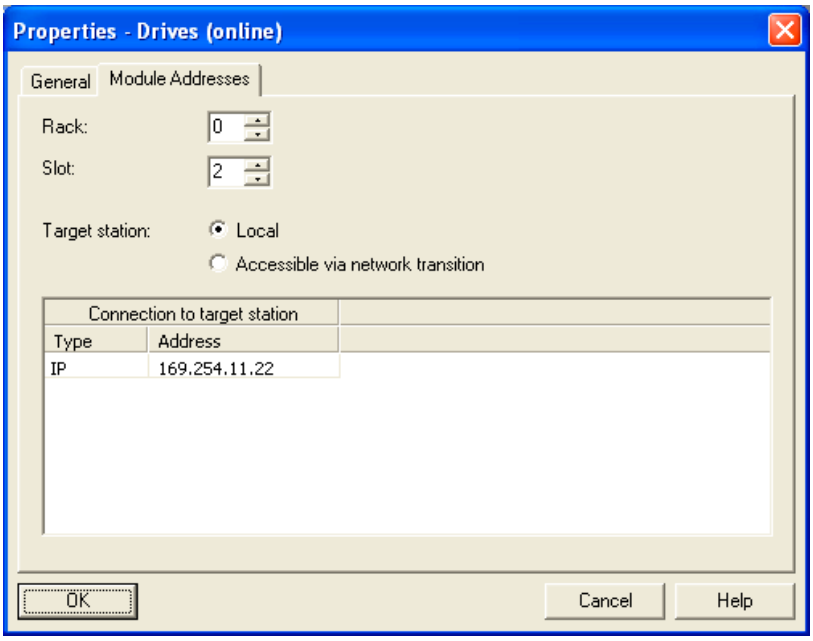


Figure 6-45 Activating online operation

Assigning the IP address and the name

Note

Naming devices

ST (Structured Text) conventions must be satisfied for the name assignment of IO devices in PROFINET (SINAMICS components). The names must be unique within PROFINET.
The characters "-" and "." are not permitted in the name of an IO device.

"Accessible nodes" function

Use the STARTER to assign an IP address and a name to the PROFINET interface.

- Connect the direct Ethernet cable from the PG/PC to the PROFINET interface.
- Switch on the Control Unit.
- Open STARTER.
- A search is performed for available nodes in PROFINET via Project -> Accessible nodes or the "Accessible nodes" button.
- The SINAMICS drive object is detected and displayed as a bus node with IP address 0.0.0.0 and without a name.
- Mark the bus node entry and select the displayed menu item "Edit Ethernet node" with the right mouse button.
- In the following "Edit Ethernet node" screen, enter the device name for the PROFINET interface and click the "Assign name" button. Enter the IP address (e.g. 169.254.11.22) in the IP configuration and specify the subnet screen (e.g. 255.255.0.0). Then click the "Assign IP configuration" button. Close the screen.
- The "Update (F5)" button displays the IP address and name in the entry for the bus node. If not, close the "Accessible nodes" screen and perform another search for accessible nodes.
- If the PROFINET interface is displayed as bus node, mark the entry and click the "Accept" button.
- The SINAMICS drive is displayed as a drive object in the project tree.
- Further configurations can be performed for the drive object.
- Click "Connect to target system" and load the project to the Control Unit's memory card with Target system -> Load -> To target device.

Note

Storage location of the IP address

The IP address and device name for the Control Unit are stored on the memory card (non-volatile).

6.9.2 General information about PROFINET IO

6.9.2.1 General information about PROFINET IO for SINAMICS

General information

PROFINET IO is an open Industrial Ethernet standard for a wide range of production and process automation applications. PROFINET IO is based on Industrial Ethernet and observes TCP/IP and IT standards.

The following standards ensure open, multi-vendor systems:

- International standard IEC 61158

PROFINET IO is optimized for high-speed, time-critical data communication at field level.

PROFINET IO

Within the context of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA), PROFINET IO is the systematic development of the following systems:

- PROFIBUS DP, the established fieldbus,
  and
- Industrial Ethernet, the communications bus for the cell level.

Experience gained from both systems was integrated into PROFINET IO. As an Ethernet-based automation standard defined by PROFIBUS International (PROFIBUS user organization), PROFINET IO is a manufacturer-independent communication and engineering model.

PROFINET IO defines every aspect of the data exchange between IO controllers (devices with so-called "master functionality" and the IO devices (those with so-called "slave functionality") as well as parameterization and diagnostic processes. A PROFINET IO system is configured in virtually the same way as for PROFIBUS.

A PROFINET IO system is made up of the following devices:

- The IO controller controls automation tasks.
- An IO Device is controlled and monitored by an IO controller. An IO device consists of several modules and submodules.
- An IO Supervisor is an engineering tool, typically based on a PC, with which the individual IO devices (drive unit) are parameterized and diagnosed.

IO devices: Drive units with PROFINET interface

- SINAMICS G150 with CU320-2 DP and inserted CBE20
- SINAMICS G150 with CU320-2 PN

With SINAMICS G150 and CBE20 or with CU320-2 PN, communication via PROFINET IO with RT is possible.

Note

References

PROFINET for drive technology is standardized and described in the following document:

PROFIBUS profile PROFIdrive – Profile Drive Technology

Version V4.1, May 2006,

PROFIBUS User Organization e. V.

Haid-und-Neu-Straße 7,

D-76131 Karlsruhe

http://www.profibus.com,

Order Number 3.172, spec. Chp. 6

- IEC 61800-7

NOTICE

CU320-2 DP and inserted CBE20

The cyclic process data channel for PROFIBUS DP is initially deactivated for a CU320-2 DP and inserted CBE20. However, it can be reactivated with parameter p8839 = 1 at any time (see "Parallel operation of communication interfaces").

6.9.2.2 Real-time (RT) and isochronous real-time (IRT) communication

Real-time communication

When communication takes place via TCP/IP, the resultant transmission times may be too long and non-deterministic to meet production automation requirements. When communicating time-critical IO user data, PROFINET IO therefore uses its own real-time channel, rather than TCP/IP.

Determinism

Determinism means that a system will react in a predictable ("deterministic") manner. With PROFINET IO, it is possible to precisely determine (predict) transmission times.

PROFINET IO with RT (Real Time)

Real time means that a system processes external events over a defined period.

Process data and alarms are always transmitted in real time (RT) within the PROFINET IO system. RT communication provides the basis for data exchange with PROFINET IO. Real-time data are treated as a higher priority than TCP(UDP)/IP data. Transmission of time-critical data takes place at guaranteed time intervals.

PROFINET IO with IRT (Isochronous Real Time)

Isochronous Real Time Ethernet: Real time property of PROFINET IO where IRT telegrams are transmitted deterministically via planned communication paths in a defined sequence to achieve the best possible synchronism and performance between the IO controller and IO device (drive unit). This is also known as time-scheduled communication and uses knowledge about the network structure.
IRT requires special line components that support a planned data transfer.

Minimum cycle times of 500 µs and a jitter accuracy of less than 1 µs can be achieved when this transmission method is implemented.

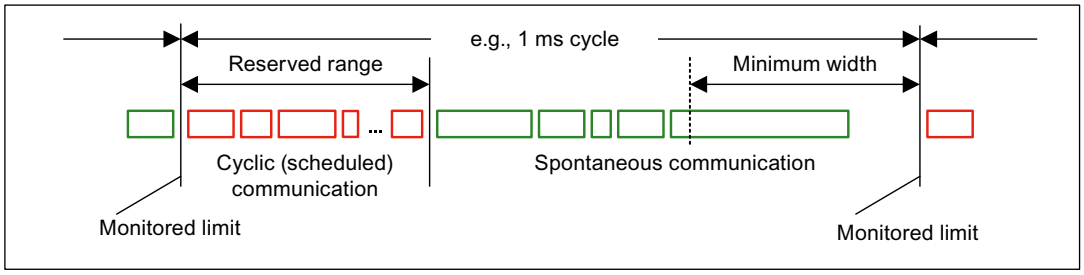


Figure 6-46 Bandwidth distribution/reservation, PROFINET IO

6.9.2.3 Addresses

MAC address

Every Ethernet and PROFINET interface is assigned a worldwide unique device identifier in the factory. This 6-byte long device identifier is the MAC address. The MAC address is divided up as follows:

- 3 bytes manufacturer's ID and
- 3 bytes device identifier (consecutive number).

The MAC address is printed on a label (CBE20) or specified on the rating plate (CU320-2 PN), e.g.: 08-00-06-6B-80-C0.

The Control Unit CU320-2 PN has two onboard interfaces:

- One Ethernet interface
- A PROFINET interface with two ports

The two MAC addresses of the Ethernet and PROFINET interfaces are stamped on the rating plate.

IP address

The TCP/IP protocol is a prerequisite for establishing a connection and parameterization. To allow a PROFINET device to be addressed as a node on Industrial Ethernet, this device also requires an IP address that is unique within the network. The IP address is made up of 4 decimal numbers with a range of values from 0 through 255. The decimal numbers are separated by a period. The IP address comprises:

- the address of the node/participant (also called host or network node)
- the address of the (sub) network.

IP address assignment

The IP addresses of IO devices can be assigned by the IO controller and always have the same sub-network mask as the IO controller. In this case, the IP address is not stored permanently. The IP address entry is lost after POWER ON/OFF.

If the IP address is to be stored in a non-volatile memory, the address must be assigned using the Primary Setup Tool (PST) or STARTER.

This function can also be performed with HW Config of STEP 7. Here, the function is called "Edit Ethernet node."

Note

IP addresses of the onboard interfaces

It is not permissible that the IP address band of the Ethernet interface and the PROFINET interface are the same. The factory setting of the IP address of the Ethernet interface X127 is 169.254.11.22; the subnet mask is 255.255.0.0.

Note

Part of a company network

If the network is part of an existing Ethernet company network, obtain the information (IP address) from your network administrator.

Device name (NameOfStation)

When it is shipped, an IO device does not have a device name. An IO device can only be addressed by an IO controller, for example, for the transfer of project engineering data (including the IP address) during startup or for user data exchange in cyclic operation, after it has been assigned a device name with the IO supervisor.

Note

Save device name retentively

The device name must be stored retentively using either STARTER, the Primary Setup Tool (PST) or with HW Config of STEP 7.

Note

Address data for ports

The address data for the internal PROFINET ports X150 P1 and P2 in STARTER can be entered into the expert list using parameters p8920, p8921, p8922 and p8923.

The address data for the ports of the CBE20 can be entered in STARTER into the expert list using parameters p8940, p8941, p8942 and p8943.

Replacing Control Unit (IO device)

If the IP address and device name are stored in non-volatile memory, this data is also forwarded with the memory card of the Control Unit.

If a complete Control Unit needs to be replaced due to a device or module defect, the new Control Unit automatically parameterizes and configures using the data on the memory card. Following this, cyclic exchange of user data is restarted. The memory card allows module exchange without an IO supervisor when a fault occurs in a PROFINET device.

6.9.2.4 Data transmission

Features

The PROFINET interface on a drive unit supports the simultaneous operation of:

- IRT – isochronous real-time Ethernet
- RT – real-time Ethernet
- Standard Ethernet services (TCP/IP, LLDP, UDP and DCP)

PROFIdrive telegram for cyclic data transmission, acyclic services

Telegrams to send and receive process data are available for each drive object of a drive unit with cyclic process data exchange.
In addition to cyclic data transfer, acyclic services can also be used for parameterizing and configuring the drive. These acyclic services can be utilized by the IO supervisor or IO controller.

Sequence of drive objects in the telegram

On the drive side, the sequence of drive objects in the telegram is displayed via a list in p0978[0...24] where it can also be changed.

You can use the STARTER commissioning tool to display the sequence of drive objects for a commissioned drive system in the online mode under → **Drive unit** → **Communication** → **Telegram configuration**.

When you create the configuration on the controller side (e.g. HWConfig), the process-data-capable drive objects for the application are added to the telegram in this sequence.

The structure of the telegram depends on the drive objects taken into account during configuration. Configurations that do not take into account all of the drive objects in the drive system are permitted.

Note

The order of the drive objects

The sequence of drive objects in HW Config must be the same as that in the drive (p0978).

6.9.2.5 Communication channels

PROFINET connection channels

- A Control Unit has an integrated Ethernet interface (X127).
- The Control Unit CU320-2 PN has a PROFINET interface (X150) with two ports onboard: P1 and P2
- A Control Unit CU320-2 PN can simultaneously setup 8 communication connections via the integrated PROFINET interfaces.

Control Unit with CBE20

The CBE20 Communication Board can be optionally inserted into Control Unit CU320-2 PN or CU320-2 DP:

- The CBE20 Communication Board is a PROFINET switch with 4 additional PROFINET ports.

Note

PROFINET routing

Routing is neither possible between the onboard interfaces X127 and X150 of the CU320-2 PN, nor between the onboard interfaces of the CU320-2 PN and an inserted CBE20.

6.9.3 PROFIenergy

Description

PROFIenergy commands are transferred from the control to the drive with PROFInet in acyclic operation.

The following commands are available for the control:

- Start_Pause
- End_Pause

It also provides the following status query:

- Device status relating to PROFIenergy

Configuration and display of PROFIenergy

The response to the PROFIenergy commands of the control can be set and displayed via the following parameters:

- In p5602, the minimum pause time for energy-saving mode is set.
- In p5606, the maximum dwell time for energy-saving mode is set.
- In p5611, the general properties for energy-saving mode are set.
- In p5612, the mode-dependent properties are defined.
- In r5611, the MODUS ID of the active energy-saving mode is displayed.
- In r5613, the status for the PROFIenergy energy saving is displayed.

Further parameters in connection with PROFIenergy:

- r0039: Energy display
- p0040: Reset energy consumption display
- r0041: Energy usage saved/energy saved

Parameter

- r5600 Pe hibernation ID
- p5602 Pe hibernation pause time, minimum
- p5606 Pe energy-saving mode dwell time, maximum
- p5611 Pe energy-saving mode properties, general
- p5612 Pe energy-saving mode properties, mode-dependent
- r5613 Pe energy-saving mode energy saving active/inactive

6.9.4 Further information about communication via PROFINET IO

Further information about communication via PROFINET IO

For more information about PROFINET IO communication, refer to "PROFINET IO communication" in the accompanying "SINAMICS S120 Function Manual".

6.10 Communication via SINAMICS Link

6.10.1 Basic principles of SINAMICS Link

SINAMICS Link allows data to be directly exchanged between several control units (CU320-2 PN and CU320-2 DP). The participating Control Units must be equipped with the CBE20 supplementary module. Other nodes cannot be integrated into this communication. Possible applications include, for example:

- Torque distribution for n drives
- Setpoint cascading for n drives
- Load distribution of drives coupled through a material web
- Master/slave function for infeed units

Preconditions

The following preconditions must be fulfilled to operate SINAMICS Link:

- r2064[1]: The bus cycle time (Tdp) must be an integer multiple of p0115[0] (current controller clock cycle).
- r2064[2]: The master cycle time (Tmapc) must be an integer multiple of p0115[1] (speed control cycle).
- p0115[0]: The current controller cycle clock must be set to 250 µs or 500 µ; 400 µs is not permissible. For 400 µs, alarm A01902 is output with alarm value "4."

Send and receive data

The SINAMICS Link telegram contains 16 slots (0...15) for the process data (PZD1...16). Each PZD is precisely 1 word long (= 16 bits). Slots that are not required are automatically filled with zeros.

Slot	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
PZD	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16

SINAMICS Link telegram contents

Each transfer cycle, every SINAMICS Link node can send 1 telegram with 16 PZD. Each node receives all of the telegrams that are sent. For each transfer cycle, a node can select and process up to 16 PZD from all telegrams that have been received. Single words and double words can be sent and received. You must write double words in two consecutive PZD.

Limitations:

- In a telegram, a PZD may only be sent and received once. If a PZD occurs more than once in a telegram, then Alarm A50002 or A50003 is output.
- It is not possible to read in its own send date, otherwise alarm A50006 is output.
- The maximum number of PZD that can be received and sent also depends on the drive object. The number of PZD that can be evaluated corresponds to communication according to PROFIdrive; however, for SINAMICS Link, it is limited to a maximum of 16 PZD.

Transmission time

With SINAMICS Link, a transmission time of 1000 µs is possible (with a max. controller cycle of 500 µs; synchronous bus cycle, 500 µs).

Bus cycle and number of nodes

The bus cycle of SINAMICS Link can be operated, synchronized with the current control cycle, or not synchronized.

- Synchronized operation is set with p8812[0] = 1.

  Up to 16 stations with 500 µs bus cycle can communicate with one another via SINAMICS Link. To do this, the maximum number of nodes must be set with p8811 = 16.

  Up to 64 stations with 1000 µs or 2000 µs bus cycle can communicate with one another via SINAMICS Link. To do this, the maximum number of nodes must be set with p8811 = 64.

- In non-synchronized operation (p8812[0] = 0), the PZD sampling time (p2048/p8848) is effective instead of the bus cycle (p8812[1]).

After changing over parameter p8811 and p8812, a POWER ON must be carried out to accept the settings.

6.10.2 Topology

Only a line topology with the following structure is permitted for SINAMICS Link.

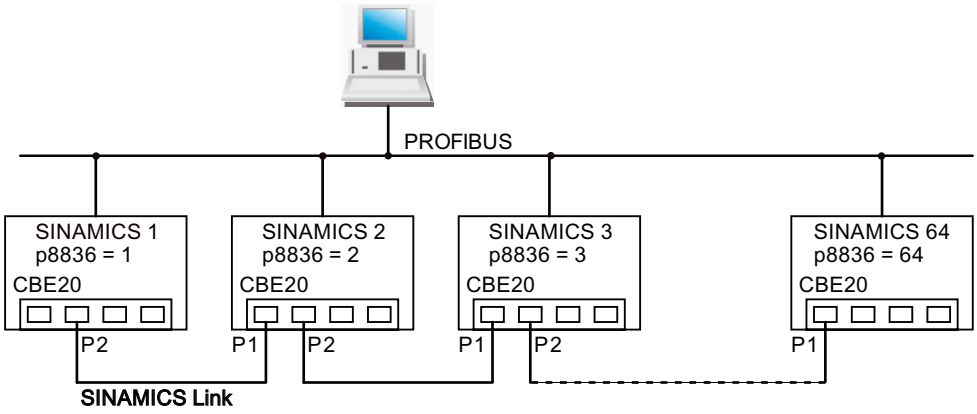


Figure 6-47 Maximum topology

The following entries must be made in the expert list of the Control Units:

- The numbers of the various nodes are entered into parameter p8836 in ascending order, starting at "1".
- Gaps in the numbering are not permitted.
- The associated IP addresses are entered automatically and they are visible in r8951.
- The node with the number 1 is automatically the sync master of the communication link.
- For non-synchronized operation (p8812[0] = 0), a maximum of 64 nodes are possible (p8811 = 64).
- For synchronized operation (p8812[0] = 1), a maximum of 16 nodes (p8811 = 16) with 500 µs bus cycle or up to 64 nodes (p8811 = 64) with 1000 µs or 2000 µs are possible
- For the CBE20 connection, the ports must be used as shown in the diagram above – this is mandatory. This means that Port 2 (P2) of node **n** is always connected with Port 1 (P1) of node **n+1**.
- Ports 3 and 4 of the CBE20 are deactivated for communication via SINAMICS Link.

6.10.3 Configuring and commissioning

Commissioning

When commissioning, proceed as follows for the Control Unit:

- Set parameter p8835 to 3 (SINAMICS Link).
- Using parameter p8836, assign node numbers to the nodes (the first Control Unit is always assigned the number 1). Observe the specifications under "Topology". Node number 0 means that SINAMICS Link is shut down.
- Then execute a "Copy RAM to ROM".
- Perform a POWER ON (switch-off/switch-on).

Sending data

Proceed as follows to send data:

- In parameter p2051[x], for each drive object, define which data (PZDs) should be sent. p2061[x] must be used for double word quantities.
- In parameter p8871, for each drive object, assign the send parameter to the send slot of its own node. Double words (e.g. 2+3) are assigned two consecutive send slots, e.g. p8871[1] = 2 and p8871[2] = 3.

Receiving data

Proceed as follows to receive data:

Note

The first word of the receive data

The first word of the receive data must be a control word, where bit 10 is set to 1. If this is not the case, then you must deactivate the evaluation of bit 10 using p2037 = 2.

- Received data are saved in parameter r2050[x]/r2060[x].
- The address of the node from which the relevant PZD is to be read is defined in parameter p8872[0 … 15] (0 ≙ nothing is read in).
- In parameter p8870[0 … 15], the PZD is defined, which is read from the sent telegram and is to be stored in its own receive slot, r2050 for PZD or r2060 for double PZD (0 ≙ no PZD selected).

Note

Double words

For double words, 2 PZD must be read; e.g.: Read in a 32-bit setpoint, which is located on PZD2+PZD3 for node 5, and map this to PZD2+PZD3 of its own node: p8872[1] = 5, p8870[1] = 2, p8872[2] = 5, p8870[2] = 3

Activation

To activate SINAMICS Link connections, perform a POWER ON for all nodes. The assignments of p2051[x]/2061[x] and the links of the read parameters r2050[x]/2060[x] can be changed without a POWER ON.

Settings for cabinet units with rated pulse frequency 1.25 kHz

For the following cabinet units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz, in addition parameter p0115[0] must be set from 400 µs to 250 µs or 500 µs:

- 3 AC 380 to 480 V: All cabinet units with rated output current $I_N \geq 605$ A
- 3 AC 500 to 600 V: All cabinet units
- 3 AC 660 to 690 V: All cabinet units

Generally, the following conditions must be met:

1. r2064[1] bus cycle time (Tdp) must be an integer multiple of p0115[0] (current controller clock cycle).
2. r2064[2] master cycle time (Tmapc) must be an integer multiple of p0115[1] (speed controller cycle).

6.10.4 Example

Task

Configure SINAMICS Link for two nodes and transfer the following values:

- Send data from node 1 to node 2
  - r0898 CO/BO: Control word, sequence control, drive 1 (1 PZD), in the example PZD 1
  - r0079 CO: Total torque setpoint (2 PZD), in the example PZD 2
  - r0021 CO: Smoothed actual speed (2 PZD), in the example PZD 3
- Send data from node 2 to node 1
  - r0899 CO/BO: Status word, sequence control, drive 2 (1 PZD), in the example PZD 1

Procedure

1. For all nodes, set p0009 = 1 to change the device configuration.
2. For all nodes, for the CBE20, set the SINAMICS Link mode:
   - p8835 = 3
3. Assign the node numbers for the devices involved:
   - Node 1: p8836 = 1 and
   - Node 2: p8836 = 2

4. For both nodes p0009 = 0, carry out "Copy RAM to ROM" followed by a POWER ON.
5. Set all CBE20 to the isochronous mode by setting p8812[0] = 1.
6. Limit the maximum number of nodes with p8811 = 16.
7. For both nodes p0009 = 0, carry out a "Copy RAM to ROM" followed by a POWER ON in order to activate the modified firmware versions and the new settings in the CBE20.
8. Define the send data for node 1
   - Define the PZD that node 1 should send:
     p2051[0] = drive1:r0898 (PZD length is 1 word)
     p2061[1] = drive1:r0079 (PZD length is 2 words)
     p2061[3] = drive1:r0021 (PZD length is 2 words)
   - Place this PZD into the send buffer (p8871) of node 1:
     p8871[0] = 1 (r0898)
     p8871[1] = 2 (r0079 first part)
     p8871[2] = 3 (r0079 second part)
     p8871[3] = 4 (r0021 first part)
     p8871[4] = 5 (r0021 second part)

     This means that you have defined the position of the data in the 16-word telegram of node 1.
9. Define the receive data for node 2
   - Specify that the data placed in the receive buffer p8872 of node 2 in locations 0 to 4 is received from node 1:
     p8872[0] = 1
     p8872[1] = 1
     p8872[2] = 1
     p8872[3] = 1
     p8872[4] = 1
   - Define that PZD1, PZD2 and PZD3 of node 1 are saved in the receive buffer p8870 of node 2 in locations 0 to 4:
     p8870[0] = 1 (PZD1)
     p8870[1] = 2 (PZD2 first part)
     p8870[2] = 3 (PZD2 second part)
     p8870[3] = 4 (PZD3 first part)
     p8870[4] = 5 (PZD3 second part)
   - r2050 [0], r2060 [1] and r2060[3] now contain the values of PZD 1, PZD 2 and PZD 3 of node 1.
10. Define the send data for node 2
    - Specify the PZD that node 2 should send:
      p2051[0] = drive1:r0899 (PZD length is 1 word)
    - Place this PZD in the send buffer (p8871) of node 2:
      p8871[0] = 1

11. Define the receive data for node 1
    - Specify the data that should be placed in the receive buffer p8872 of node 1 in location 0, received from node 2:
      p8872[0] = 2
    - Define that PZD1 of node 2 is saved in the receive buffer p8870 of node 1 in location 0:
      p8870 [0] = 1
    - r2050[0] now contains the value of PZD 1 of node 2.
12. At the two nodes carry-out a "Copy RAM to ROM" to backup the parameterization and the data.
13. For both nodes, perform a POWER ON in order to activate the SINAMICS Link connections.

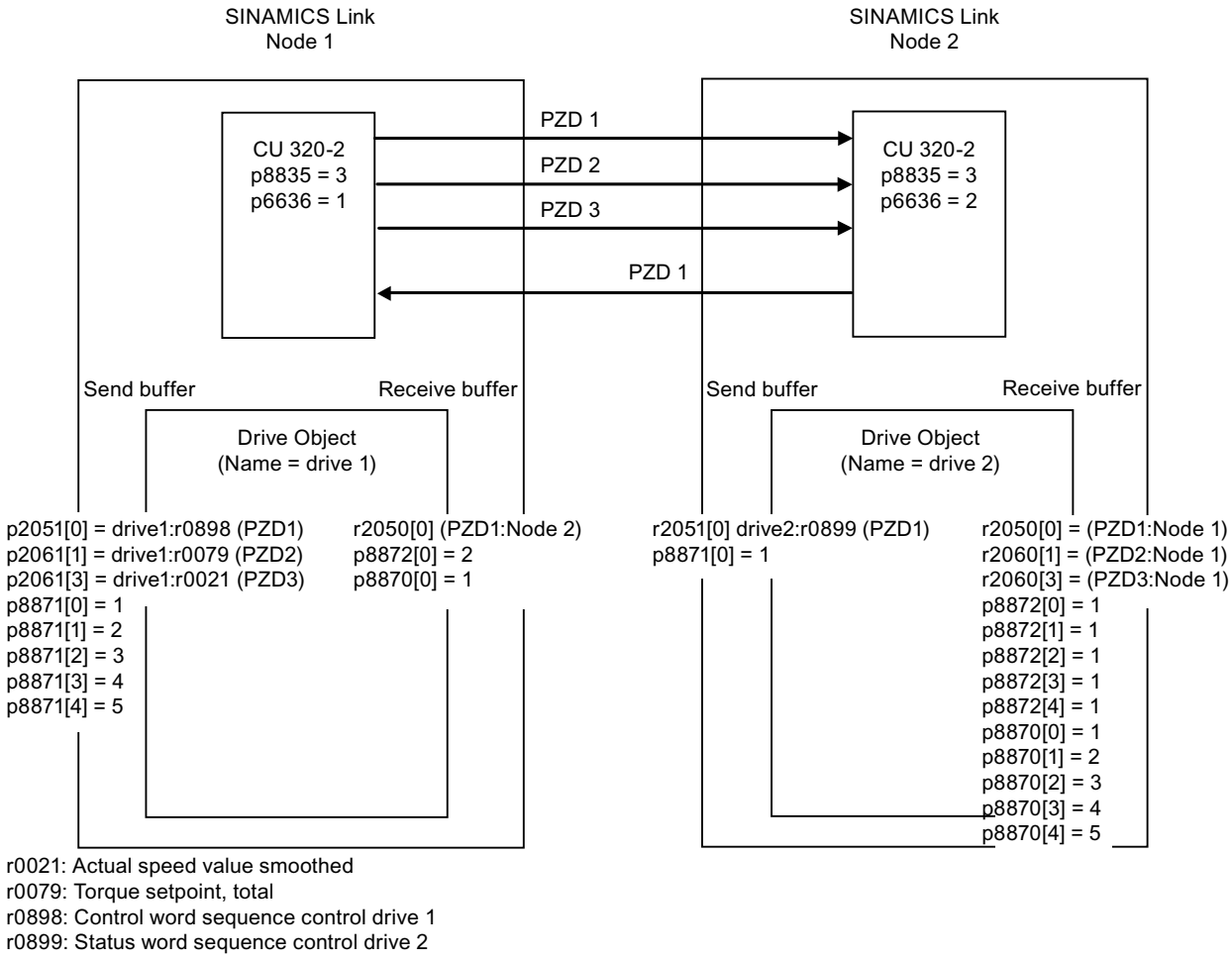


Figure 6-48 SINAMICS Link: Configuration example

6.10.5 Communication failure when booting or in cyclic operation

If at least one SINAMICS link node does not correctly boot after commissioning or fails in cyclic operation, then alarm A50005 "Sender was not found on the SINAMICS Link" is output to the other nodes.
The alarm value contains the number of the sender that cannot be located The alarm is automatically canceled after the fault has been resolved at the node involved.

If several nodes are involved, the message occurs a multiple number of times consecutively with different node numbers.

When a node fails in cyclic operation, in addition to alarm A50005, fault F08501 "COMM BOARD: Setpoint timeout" is output.

6.10.6 Parameter

- r2050[0...31] CO: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD receive word
- p2051[0...31] CI: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD send word
- r2060[0...30] CO: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD receive double word
- p2061[0...30] CI: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD send double word
- p8811 SINAMICS Link project selection
- p8812[0...1] SINAMICS Link settings
- p8835 CBE20 firmware selection
- p8836 SINAMICS Link address
- p8870 SINAMICS Link telegram word PZD receive
- p8871 SINAMICS Link telegram word PZD send
- p8872 SINAMICS Link address PZD receive

6.11 Parallel operation of communication interfaces

General information

Cyclic process data (setpoints/actual values) are processed using interfaces IF1 and IF2. The following interfaces are used:

- Onboard interfaces for PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET
- An additional interface (COMM board) for PROFINET (CBE20) or CANopen (CBE10) for insertion in the Control Unit as an option

Parameter r8859 "COMM board identification data" can be used to determine whether a communication module is inserted in the option slot.

With parameter p8839, the parallel use of onboard interfaces and COMM board is set and the functionality is assigned to interfaces IF1 and IF2.

For example, the following applications are possible:

- PROFIBUS DP for drive control and PROFINET for the acquisition of actual values/measured values of the drive.
- PROFIBUS DP for control and PROFINET for engineering only
- Mixed mode with two masters (the first for logic and coordination and the second for technology)
- SINAMICS Link via IF2 (CBE20), standard telegrams and PROFIsafe via IF1
- Operation of redundant communication interfaces

Assignment of communication interfaces to cyclic interfaces

Two cyclic interfaces exist for setpoints and actual values, which differ by their parameter ranges used (BICO, etc.) and the usable functionalities. These two interfaces are designated IF1 (cyclic interface 1) and IF2 (cyclic interface 2).

Depending on their type (PROFIBUS DP, PROFINET or CANopen) the communication interfaces are assigned to one of the cyclic interfaces (IF1, IF2) by the factory setting of p8839 = 99.

For the parallel operation of the communication interfaces, the assignment to the cyclic interfaces can essentially be defined as required by the user parameterization.

Properties of the cyclic interfaces IF1 and IF2

The following table shows the different features of the two cyclic interfaces:

Table 6- 27 Properties of the cyclic interfaces IF1 and IF2

Feature	IF1	IF2
Setpoint (BICO signal source)	r2050, r2060	r8850, r8860
Actual value (BICO signal sink)	p2051, p2061	p8851, p8861
PROFIdrive conformance	Yes	No
PROFIdrive telegram selection (p0922)	Yes	No
Clock cycle synchronization (isochronous mode) possible (p8815[0])	Yes	Yes
PROFIsafe possible (p8815[1])	Yes	Yes
Slave-to-slave communication (PROFIBUS only)	Yes	Yes
List of drive objects (p0978)	Yes	Yes
Max. PZD (16bit) setpoint / actual value SERVO	20/28	20/28
Max. PZD (16 bit) setpoint / actual value VECTOR	32/32	32/32
Max. PZD (16 bit) setpoint / actual value INFEED	5/8	5/8
Max. PZD (16bit) setpoint / actual value encoder	4/12	4/12
Max. PZD (16bit) setpoint / actual value TM31	5/5	5/5
Max. PZD (16bit) setpoint / actual value TM150	7/7	7/7
Max. PZD (16bit) setpoint / actual value TB30	5/5	5/5
Max. PZD (16bit) setpoint / actual value CU (device)	5/21	5/21

Table 6- 28 Implicit assignment of hardware to cyclic interfaces for p8839[0] = p8839[1] = 99

Hardware interface	IF1	IF2
No option, only on-board interface (PROFIBUS, PROFINET)	Control Unit onboard	--
CU320-2 DP with CBE20 (optional PROFINET interface)	COMM board	Control Unit onboard PROFIBUS
CU320-2 PN with CBE20 (optional PROFINET interface)	Control Unit onboard PROFINET	COMM board PROFINET
CAN option (CBC10)	Control Unit onboard	COMM board

The hardware interfaces are assigned to the cyclic interfaces IF1 and IF2 using parameter p8839[0, 1] "PZD interface hardware assignment".

The object sequence for process data exchange via IF2 depends on the object sequence of IF1 in p0978 "List of drive objects".

The factory setting of p8839[0] = p8839[1] = 99 enables the implicit assignment (see table above).

If the parameters settings for the assignment are impermissible or inconsistent, alarm A08550 "PZD Interface hardware assignment incorrect" is output and the assignment rejected.

Note

Parallel operation of PROFIBUS and PROFINET

The data of isochronous applications can only be processed via one of the two interfaces IF1 or IF2 (p8815). Two parameterization options are possible if additionally the PROFINET module CBE20 is inserted in the CU320-2 DP:

- p8839[0] = 1 and p8839[1] = 2: PROFIBUS isochronous, PROFINET cyclic
- p8839[0] = 2 and p8839[1] = 1: PROFINET isochronous, PROFIBUS cyclic

Parameters for IF2

The following parameters are responsible for the IF2, the meaning of "88xx" is identical to "20xx" of the IF1:

- Receive and send process data:
  r8850, p8851, r8853, r8860, p8861, r8863
- Diagnostic parameters:
  r8874, r8875, r8876
- Binector-connector converter
  p8880, p8881, p8882, p8883, p8884, r8889
- Connector-binector converter
  r8894, r8895, p8898, p8899

Note

HW Config

It is not possible in the HW Config configuration tool to represent a PROFIBUS / PROFINET slave with two interfaces. In parallel operation, SINAMICS will therefore appear twice in the project or in two projects although there is only one physical device.

Isochronous mode, PROFIsafe and SINAMICS Link

Isochronous applications can only be run via one of the two interfaces, IF1 or IF2. The interface for isochronous mode is set using parameter p8815[0].

Applications with PROFIsafe can only be run via one of the two interfaces IF1 or IF2. The interface for PROFIsafe is set using parameter p8815[1].

SINAMICS Link usually requires isochronous mode. If SINAMICS Link is running, PROFIsafe does not work at the interface involved. In this case, PROFIsafe is possible on the other Interface, but only without isochronous mode.

Table 6- 29 Versions for isochronous mode, PROFIsafe, and SINAMICS Link

Variant	Interface	Isochronous mode (p08815[0])	PROFIsafe (p08815[1])	SINAMICS Link possible
1	IF1	No	No	No
	IF2	No	No	No
2	IF1	No	No	No
	IF2	No	Yes	No
3	IF1	No	Yes	No
	IF2	No	No	No
4	IF1	No	No	No
	IF2	Yes	No	Yes (for CBE20 as IF2)
5	IF1	No	No	No
	IF2	Yes	Yes	No
6	IF1	No	Yes	No
	IF2	Yes	No	Yes (for CBE20 as IF2)
7	IF1	Yes	No	Yes (for CBE20 as IF1)
	IF2	No	No	No
8	IF1	Yes	Yes	No
	IF2	No	No	No
9	IF1	Yes	No	Yes (for CBE20 as IF1)
	IF2	No	Yes	No

Parameter

- p0922 IF1 PROFIdrive telegram selection
- p0978[0...24] List of drive objects
- p8815[0...1] IF1/IF2 PZD functionality selection
- p8839[0...1] PZD Interface hardware assignment
- r8859[0...7] COMM BOARD identification data

6.12 Engineering Software Drive Control Chart (DCC)

Graphical configuring and expansion of the device functionality by means of available closed-loop control, arithmetic, and logic function blocks

Drive Control Chart (DCC) expands the facility for the simplest possible configuring of technological functions for both the SIMOTION motion control system and the SINAMICS drive system. This provides the user with a new dimension of system adaptability for specific machine functions.
DCC does not restrict the number of functions that can be used; the only restriction is the performance of the target platform.

The user-friendly DCC Editor enables easy graphical configuration and a clear representation of control loop structures as well as a high degree of reusability of existing diagrams.

The open-loop and closed-loop control functionality is defined by using multi-instance-enabled blocks (Drive Control Blocks (DCBs)) from a pre-defined library (DCB library) that are selected and graphically linked by dragging and dropping.
Test and diagnostic functions allow verification of the program behavior, and troubleshooting in the event of a fault.

The block library encompasses a large selection of closed-loop, arithmetic and logic function blocks, as well as comprehensive open-loop and closed-loop control functions.

For combining, analyzing and acquiring binary signals, all commonly used logic functions are available for selection (AND, XOR, on/off delay, RS flipflop, counter, etc.). Numerous computation functions are available for monitoring and evaluating numerical variables; for example absolute value generation, division, min/max evaluation.
Besides drive control functions, it is also a simple matter to configure axis winding functions, PI controllers, ramp-function generators, and wobble generators.

Almost unlimited programming of control structures is possible in conjunction with the SIMOTION motion control system. These can then be combined with other program sections to form an overall program.

Drive Control Chart for SINAMICS also provides a convenient basis for resolving drive-level open-loop and closed-loop control tasks directly in the drive. This results in further adaptability of SINAMICS for the task set. On-site processing in the drive supports modular machine concepts and results in increased overall machine performance.

Note

Detailed documentation

A detailed description of the DCC Editor and the available Drive Control Blocks is given in the relevant documentation. This documentation is available on the accompanying customer DVD.

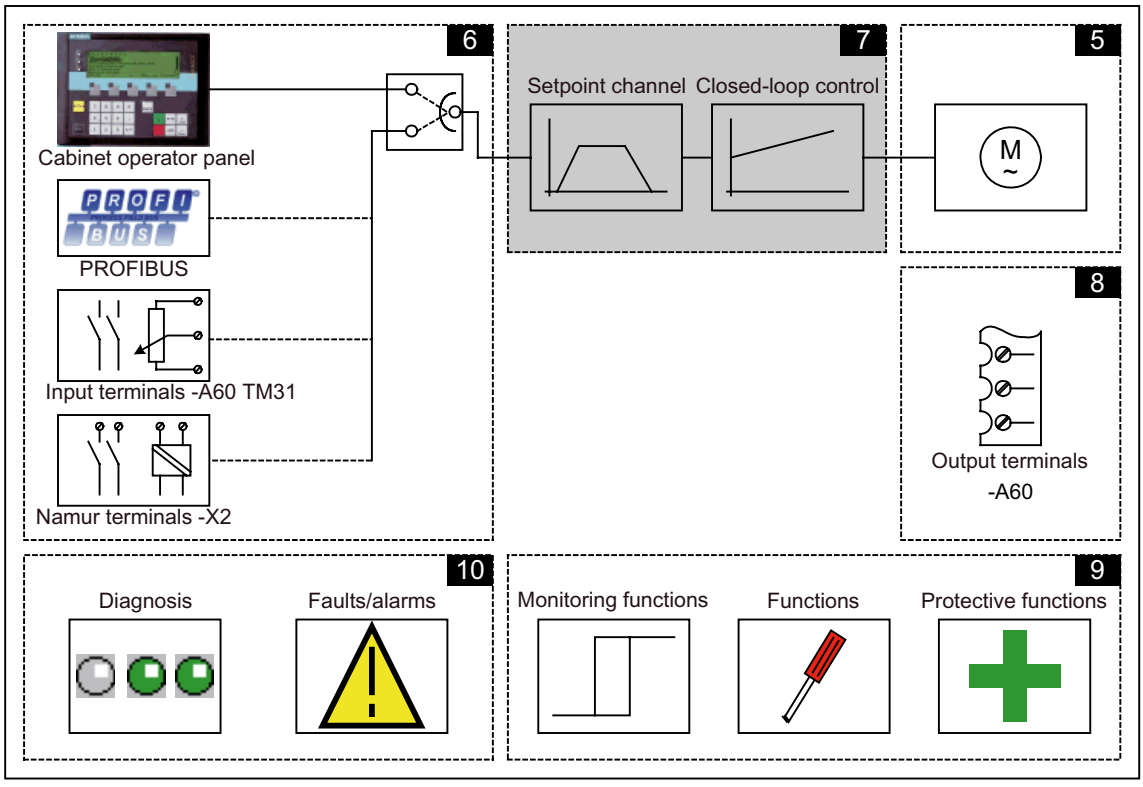
Setpoint channel and closed-loop control

7

7.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the setpoint channel and closed-loop control functions.

- Setpoint channel
  - Direction reversal
  - Skip speed
  - Minimum speed
  - Speed limitation
  - Ramp-function generator
- U/f control
- Vector speed control with / without encoder



Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

7.2 Setpoint channel

7.2.1 Setpoint addition

Description

The supplementary setpoint can be used to enter correction values from higher-level closed-loop controls. This can be implemented using the summing point of the main/supplementary setpoint in the setpoint channel. Both variables are imported simultaneously via two separate or one setpoint source and added in the setpoint channel.

Function diagram

FD 3030 Main/added setpoint, setpoint scaling, jogging

Parameters

- p1070 Main setpoint
- p1071 Main setpoint scaling
- r1073 Main setpoint effective
- p1075 Supplementary setpoint
- p1076 Supplementary setpoint scaling
- r1077 Supplementary setpoint effective
- r1078 Total setpoint effective

7.2.2 Direction reversal

Description

Due to the direction reversal in the setpoint channel the drive can be operated in both directions with the same setpoint polarity.

Use the p1110 or p1111 parameter to block negative or positive direction of rotation.

Note

Incorrect rotating field when the cables were routed

If an incorrect rotating field was connected when the cables were installed, and the cabling cannot be changed, the rotating field can be corrected during drive commissioning via p1821 (rotating field direction reversal) to allow a direction reversal (see section "Direction reversal"). Modifying parameters p1821 produces a direction reversal of the motor and the encoder actual value without changing the setpoint.

Prerequisites

Direction reversal is triggered:

- via PROFIBUS by means of control word 1, bit 11
- via the cabinet operator panel (LOCAL mode) with the "Direction reversal" key.

Note

Delivery condition

Note that only one direction of rotation is enabled in the delivery condition when control is carried out via the AOP30.

Function diagram

FP 3040 Direction of rotation limiting and direction of rotation changeover

Parameter

- p1110 BI: Inhibit negative direction
- p1111 BI: Inhibit positive direction
- p1113 BI: Setpoint inversion
- r1114 Setpoint after direction limiting

7.2.3 Skip frequency bands and minimum speed

Description

In the case of variable-speed drives, it is possible for the control range of the overall drive train to contain bending-critical speeds that the drive must not be be operated at or the vicinity of in steady-state condition. In other words, although the drive can pass through this range, it must not remain within it because resonant oscillations may be excited. The skip frequency bands allow this range to be blocked for steady-state operation. Because the points at which critical whirling speeds occur in a drive train can vary depending on age or thermal factors, a broader control range must be blocked. To prevent constant speed step changes in the vicinity of these skip frequency bands (speeds), they are provided with a hysteresis.
The skip speed values apply in the positive and negative directions of rotation.

Specifying a minimum speed allows a specific range to be disabled around speed 0 rpm for steady-state operation.

Signal flow diagram

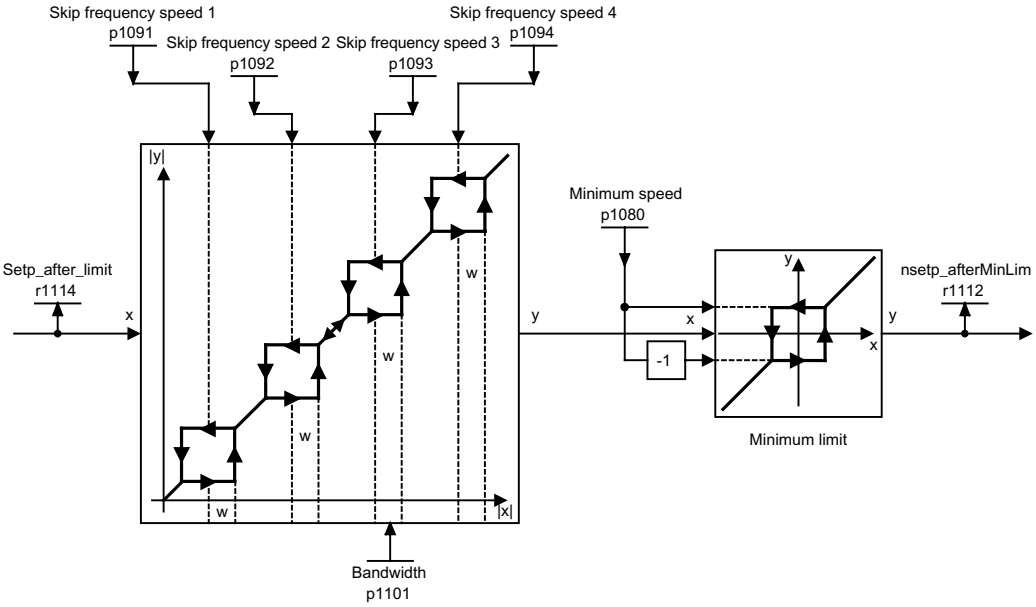


Figure 7-1 Signal flow diagram: Skip frequency bands and minimum speed

Function diagram

FP 3050 Skip frequency bands and speed limiting

Parameter

- p1080 Minimum speed
- p1091 Skip frequency speed 1
- p1092 Skip frequency speed 2
- p1093 Skip frequency speed 3
- p1094 Skip frequency speed 4
- p1101 Skip frequency speed bandwidth
- r1112 Speed setpoint after minimum limiting

7.2.4 Speed limitation

Description

Speed limitation aims to limit the maximum permissible speed of the entire drive train to protect the drive and load machine/process against damage caused by excessive speeds.

Signal flow diagram

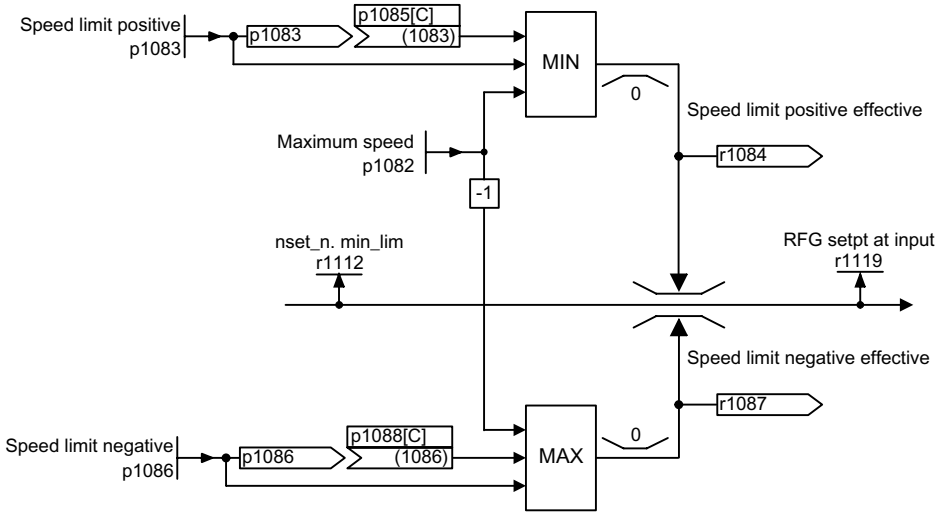


Figure 7-2 Signal flow diagram: Speed limitation

Function diagram

FP 3050 Skip frequency bands and speed limiting

Parameters

- p1082 Maximum speed
- p1083 CO: Speed limit in positive direction of rotation
- r1084 CO: Speed limit positive effective
- p1085 CI: Speed limit in positive direction of rotation
- p1086 CO: Speed limit in negative direction of rotation
- r1087 CO: Speed limit negative effective
- p1088 CI: Speed limit in negative direction of rotation
- r1119 CO: Ramp-function generator setpoint at the input

7.2.5 Ramp-function generator

Description

The ramp-function generator limits the rate at which the setpoint changes when the drive is accelerating or decelerating. This prevents excessive setpoint step changes from damaging the drive train. Additional rounding times can also be set in the lower and upper speed ranges to improve control quality and prevent load surges, thereby protecting mechanical components, such as shafts and couplings.

The ramp-up and ramp-down times each refer to the maximum speed (p1082). The rounding times that can be set can prevent the actual speed value from being overshot when the setpoint is approached, thereby improving control quality.

When final rounding set, a sudden reduction of the setpoint when ramping up can cause the setpoint to overshoot, if continuous smoothing has been selected via p1134 = 0. The larger the selected final rounding time, the larger the overshoot.

Rounding is also effective in the zero crossover; in other words, when the direction is reversed, the ramp-function generator output is reduced to zero via initial rounding, the ramp-down time, and final rounding before the new, inverted setpoint is approached via start rounding, the ramp-up time, and final rounding. Rounding times that can be set separately are active in the event of a fast stop (OFF3). The actual ramp-up/ramp-down times increase with active rounding.

The rounding type can be set using p1134 and separately activated/deactivated using p1151.0 in the zero point.

The ramp-up time (p1120) can be scaled using connector input p1138, the ramp-down time (p1121) using connector input p1139. Scaling is deactivated in the factory setting.

Note

Effective ramp-up time

The effective ramp-up time increases when you enter initial and final rounding times.

Effective ramp-up time = p1120 + (0.5 x p1130) + (0.5 x p1131)

Signal flow diagram

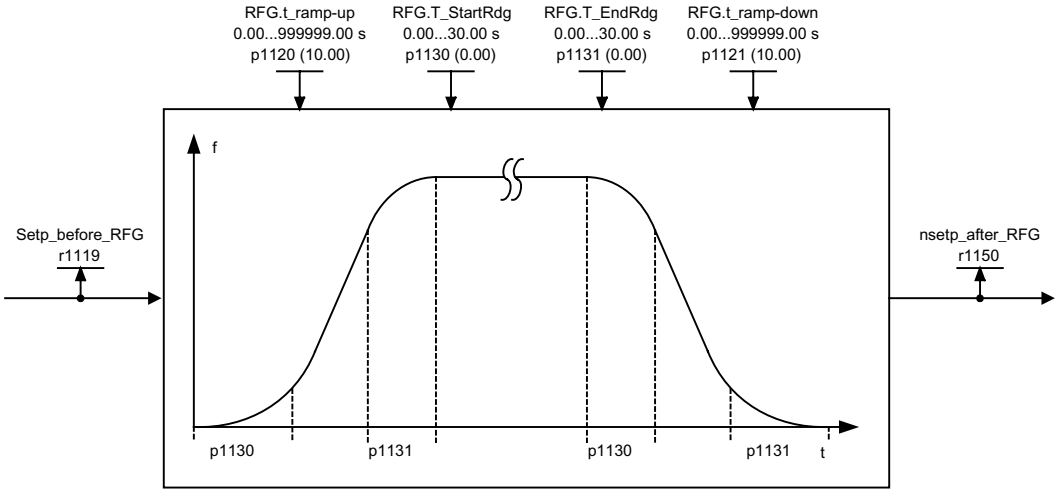


Figure 7-3 Signal flow diagram: Ramp-function generator

Ramp-function generator tracking

If the drive is in range of the torque limits, the actual speed value moves away from the speed setpoint. The ramp-function generator tracking updates the speed setpoint in line with the actual speed value and so levels the ramp.

p1145 can be used to deactivate ramp-function generator tracking (p1145 = 0) or to set the permissible deviation (p1145 > 1). If the permissible deviation is reached, then the speed setpoint at the ramp-function generator output will only be increased further in proportion to the speed setpoint.

Parameter r1199.5 displays whether the ramp-function generator tracking is active.

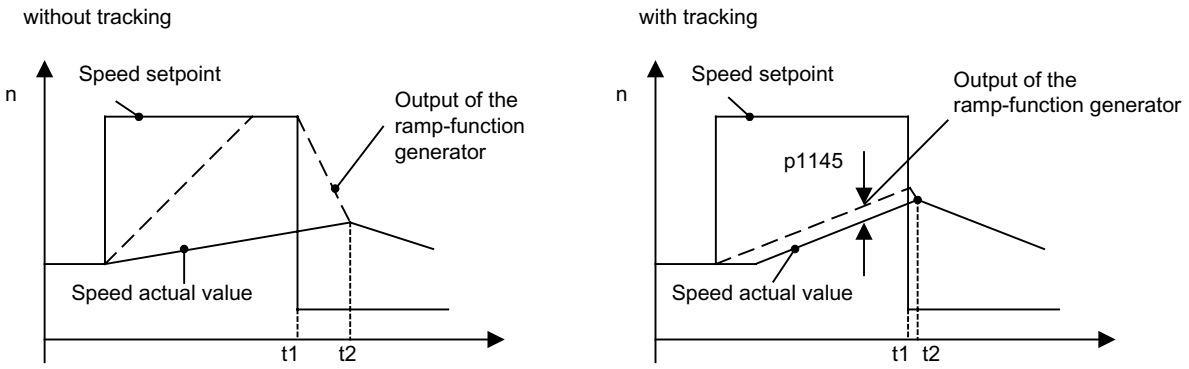


Figure 7-4 Ramp-function generator tracking

Without ramp-function generator tracking

- p1145 = 0
- Drive accelerates to t2, although the setpoint after t1 is smaller than the actual value

With ramp-function generator tracking

- At p1145 > 1 (values between 0 and 1 are not applicable), ramp-function generator tracking is activated when the torque limit is approached. The ramp-function generator output thereby only exceeds the actual speed value by the deviation value defined in p1145.
- t1 and t2 are almost identical

Function diagram

FP 3060	Simple ramp-function generator
FP 3070	Extended ramp-function generator
FP 3080	Ramp-function generator selection, status word, tracking

Parameter

- r1119 CO: Ramp-function generator setpoint at the input
- p1120 Ramp-function generator ramp-up time
- p1121 Ramp-function generator ramp-down time
- p1130 Ramp-function generator initial rounding time
- p1131 Ramp-function generator final rounding time
- p1134 Ramp-function generator rounding type
- p1135 OFF3 ramp-down time
- p1136 OFF3 initial rounding time
- p1137 OFF3 final rounding time
- p1138 CI: Up ramp scaling
- p1139 CI: Down ramp scaling
- p1140 BI: Enable ramp-function generator/disable ramp-function generator
- p1141 BI: Continue ramp-function generator/freeze ramp-function generator
- P1143 BI: Accept ramp-function generator setting value
- P1144 CI: Ramp-function generator setting value
- p1145 Ramp-function generator tracking intensity
- P1148 Ramp function generator tolerance for ramp-up and ramp-down active
- r1149 CO: Ramp-function generator acceleration
- r1150 Ramp-function generator speed setpoint at the output
- p1151 CO: Ramp-function generator configuration

7.3 V/f control

Description

The simplest solution for a control procedure is the V/f characteristic, whereby the stator voltage for the induction motor or synchronous motor is controlled proportionately to the stator frequency. This method has proved successful in a wide range of applications with low dynamic requirements, such as:

- Pumps and fans
- Belt drives
- Multi-motor drives

U/f control aims to maintain a constant flux (Φ) in the motor, whereby the flux is proportional to the magnetization current (Iμ) or the ratio of voltage (U) to frequency (f).

Φ ~ Iμ ~ V/f

The torque (M) generated by the induction motors is, in turn, proportional to the product (or, more precisely, the vector product (Φ x I)) of the flux and current.

M ~ Φ x I

To generate as much torque as possible with a given current, the motor must function using the greatest possible constant flux. To maintain a constant flux (Φ), therefore, the voltage (V) must change in proportion to the frequency (f) to ensure a constant magnetization current (Iμ). V/f characteristic control is derived from these basic premises.

The field-weakening range is above the rated motor frequency, where the maximum voltage is reached. The flux and maximum torque decrease as the frequency increases; this is illustrated in the following diagram.

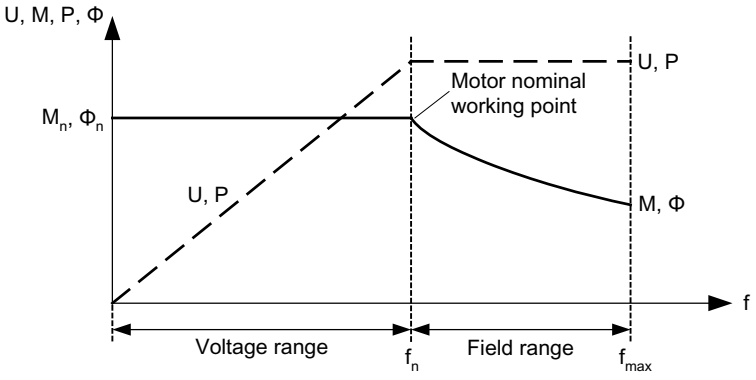
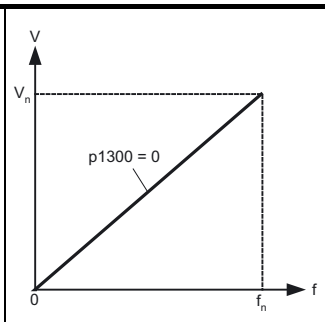
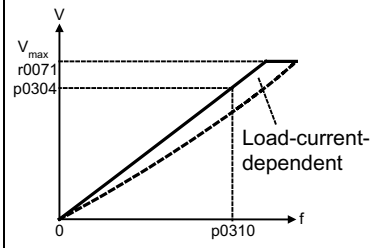
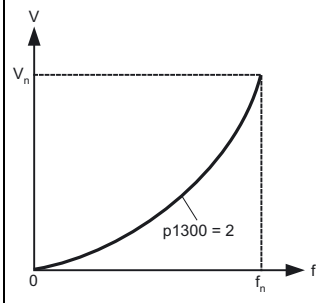
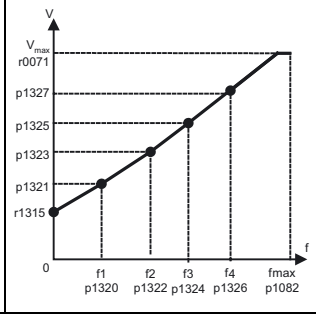


Figure 7-5 Operating areas and characteristic curves for the induction motor with converter supply

Several variations of the V/f characteristic exist, which are listed in the following table.

Table 7- 1 p1300 V/f characteristics

Parameter value	Meaning	Application / property	
0	Linear characteristic	Standard with variable voltage boost	
1	Linear characteristic with flux current control (FCC)	Characteristic that compensates for voltage losses in the stator resistance for static / dynamic loads (flux current control FCC). This is particularly useful for small motors, since they have a relatively high stator resistance.	
2	Parabolic characteristic	Characteristic that takes into account the motor torque curve (e.g. fan/pump). • Quadratic characteristic (f² characteristic) • Energy saving because the low voltage also results in small currents and losses.	
3	Programmable characteristic	Characteristic that takes into account the motor/machine torque characteristic.	
4	Linear characteristic and ECO	Characteristic (see parameter value 0) and Eco mode at constant operating point. • At constant operating point, the efficiency is optimized by varying the voltage. • Active slip compensation is necessary here; the scaling must be set so that the slip is fully compensated (p1335 = 100%).	

Parameter value	Meaning	Application / property
5	Precise frequency drives (textiles)	Characteristic (see parameter value 0) that takes into account the specific technological features of an application (e.g. textile applications). • The current limitation (Imax controller) only affects the output voltage and not the output frequency. • The slip compensation and resonance damping are disabled.
6	Precise frequency drives with flux current control (FCC)	Characteristic (see parameter value 1) that takes into account the specific technological features of an application (e.g. textile applications). • The current limitation (Imax controller) only affects the output voltage and not the output frequency. • The slip compensation and resonance damping are disabled. Voltage losses in the stator resistance for static / dynamic loads are also compensated (flux current control, FCC). This is particularly useful for small motors, since they have a relatively high stator resistance.
7	Parabolic characteristic and ECO	Characteristic (see parameter value 1) and Eco mode at constant operating point. • At constant operating point, the efficiency is optimized by varying the voltage. • Active slip compensation is necessary here; the scaling must be set so that the slip is fully compensated (p1335 = 100%).
19	Independent voltage setpoint	The user can define the output voltage of the Power Module independently of the frequency using BICO parameter p1330 via the interfaces (e.g., analog input AI0 of the TM31 –> p1330 = r4055[0]).

Function diagram

FP 6300 U/f characteristic and voltage boost

Parameters

- p1300 Open-loop/closed-loop control operating mode
- p1320 U/f control programmable characteristic frequency 1

  ...
- p1327 U/f control programmable characteristic voltage 4
- p1330 CI: U/f control independent of voltage setpoint
- p1333 U/f control FCC starting frequency

7.3.1 Voltage Boost

Description

With low output frequencies, the V/f characteristics yield only a small output voltage.

With low frequencies, too, the ohmic resistance of the stator windings has an effect and can no longer be ignored vis-à-vis the machine reactance. With low frequencies, therefore, the magnetic flux is no longer proportional to the magnetization current or the V/f ratio.

The output voltage may, however, be too low to:

- Magnetize the induction motor.
- Maintain the load.
- Compensate for the voltage losses (ohmic losses in the winding resistors) in the system.
- Induce a breakaway / accelerating / braking torque.

You can choose whether the voltage boost is to be active permanently (p1310) or only during acceleration (p1311). In addition, a one-off voltage boost in the first power up after pulse enable can be set via p1312.

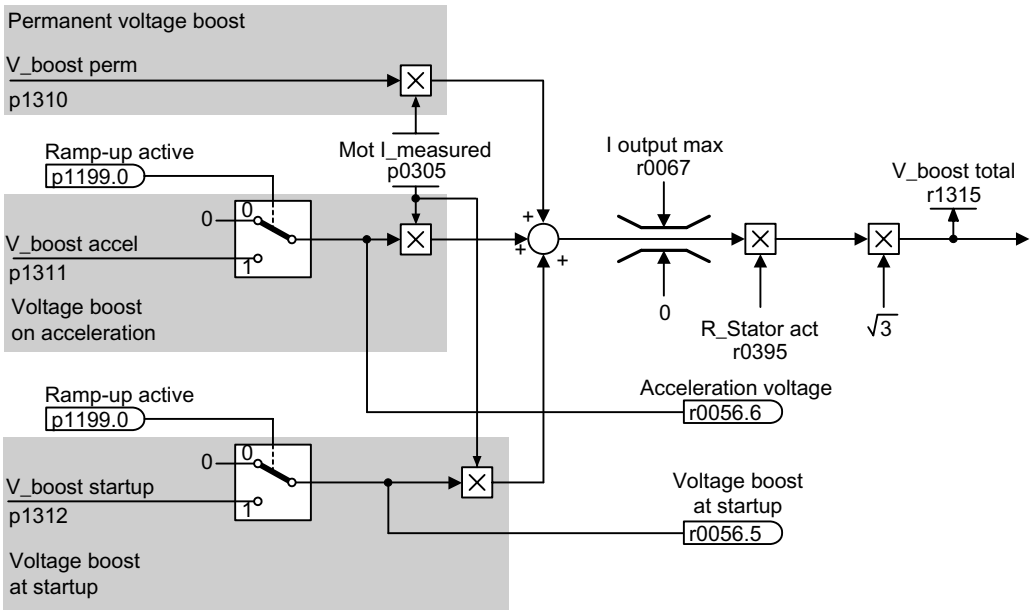


Figure 7-6 Voltage boost total

Note

Voltage boost effect

The voltage boost affects all V/f characteristics (p1300) from 0 to 7.

Note

Avoid thermal overload

If the voltage boost value is too high, this can result in a thermal overload of the motor winding.

Permanent voltage boost (p1310)

The voltage boost is active across the entire frequency range up to the rated frequency f_n; at higher frequencies, the value decreases continuously.

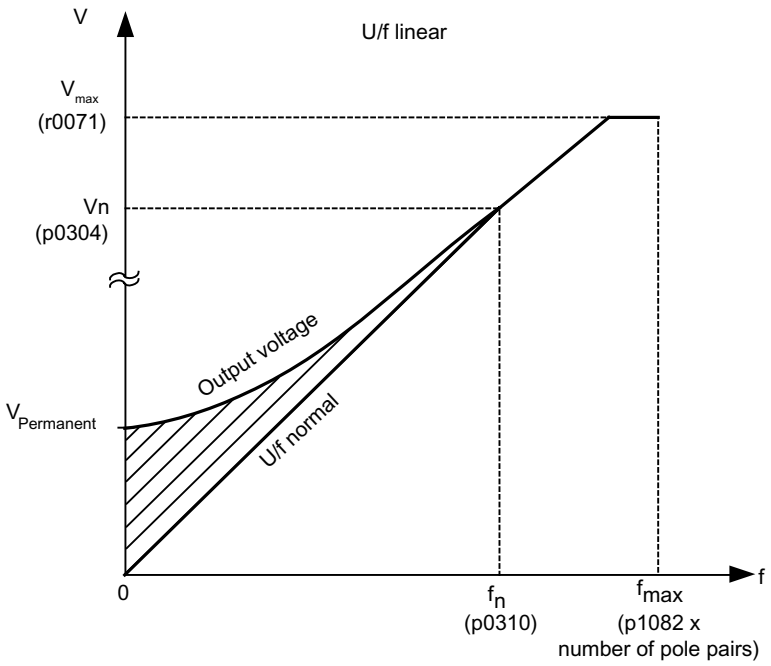


Figure 7-7 Permanent voltage boost (example: p1300 = 0, p1310 >0, p1311 = p1312 = 0)

Voltage boost during acceleration (p1311)

The voltage boost is only effective for one acceleration operation and only until the setpoint is reached.

Voltage boost is only effective if the signal "ramp-up active" (r1199.0 = 1) is present.

You can use parameter r0056.6 to observe whether the voltage boost is active during acceleration.

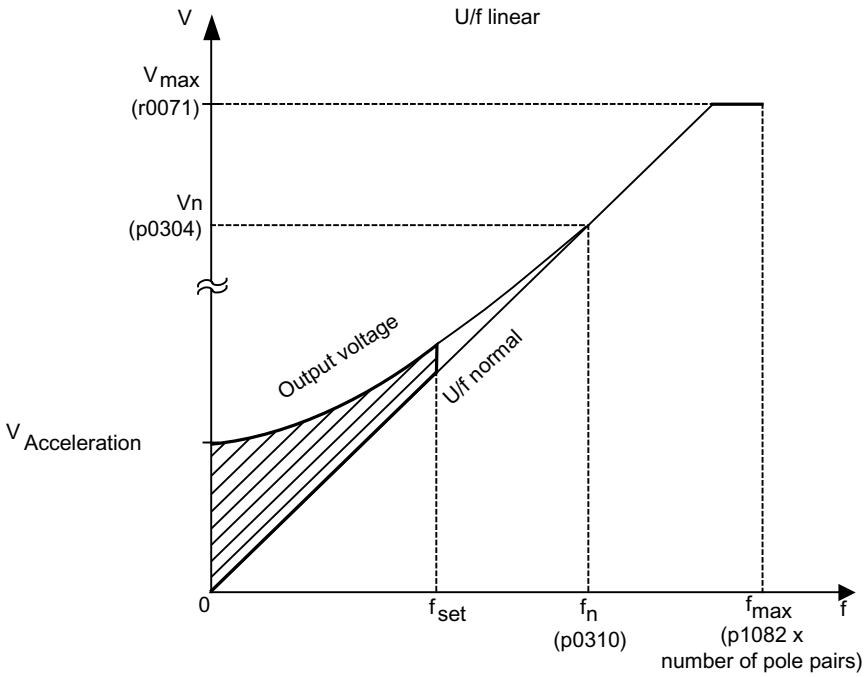


Figure 7-8 Voltage boost during acceleration (example: p1300 = 0, p1310 = 0, p1311 > 0)

Voltage boost at startup (p1312)

The voltage boost is only effective for the first acceleration operation after pulse enable and only until the setpoint is reached.

Voltage boost is only effective if the signal "ramp-up active" (r1199.0 = 1) is present.

You can use parameter r0056.5 to observe whether the voltage boost is active at startup.

Function diagram

FP 6300 U/f characteristic and voltage boost

Parameters

- r0056.5 Voltage boost at startup active/inactive
- r0056.6 Acceleration voltage active/inactive
- p0304 Rated motor voltage
- p0305 Rated motor current
- r0395 Stator resistance, actual
- p1310 Permanent voltage boost
- p1311 Voltage boost during acceleration
- p1312 Voltage boost at start up
- r1315 Voltage boost total

7.3.2 Resonance damping

Description

Resonance damping damps oscillations in the active current, which often occur during no-load operation.

The resonance damping is active in a range from approximately 6% of the rated motor frequency (p0310). The switch-off frequency is determined by p1349.

For p1300 = 5 and 6 (textiles) the resonance damping is internally disabled in order to be able to precisely set the output frequency.

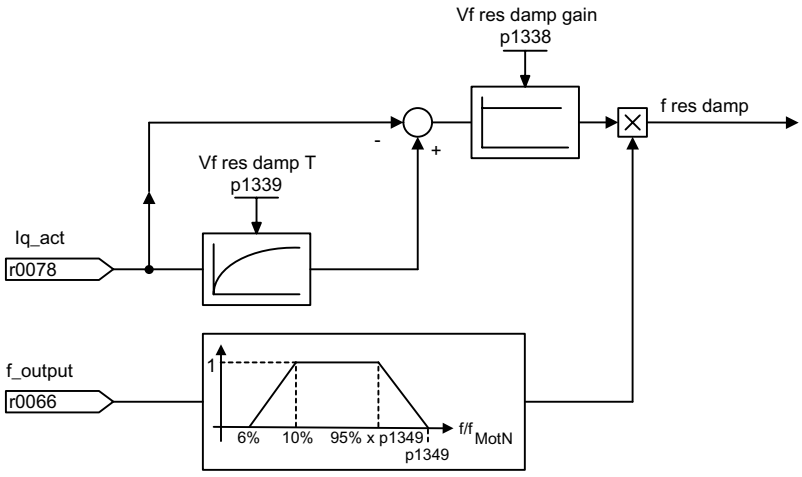


Figure 7-9 Resonance damping

Note

Automatic setting

When p1349 = 0, the changeover limit is automatically set to 95% of the rated motor frequency, but only up to 45 Hz.

Function diagram

FP 6310 Resonance damping and slip compensation

Parameters

- r0066 Output frequency
- r0078 torque-generating actual current value
- p1338 U/f control resonance damping gain
- p1339 U/f control resonance damping filter time constant
- p1349 U/f control resonance damping maximum frequency

7.3.3 Slip compensation

Description

Slip compensation essentially keeps the speed of induction motors constant irrespective of the load (M_1 or M_2).
When the load is increased from M_1 to M_2, the setpoint frequency is increased automatically so that the resulting frequency and thus also the motor speed remain constant. For a decrease in the load from M_2 to M_1, the setpoint frequency is automatically decreased accordingly.

For p1300 = 4 and 7 (U/f controllers with ECO), the slip compensation must be activated to ensure correct operation.

For p1300 = 5 and 6 (textiles) the slip compensation is internally disabled in order to be able to precisely set the output frequency.

If a motor holding brake is applied, a setting value can be specified at the slip compensation output via p1351. If parameter p1351 > 0 then the slip compensation is switched on automatically (p1335 = 100%).

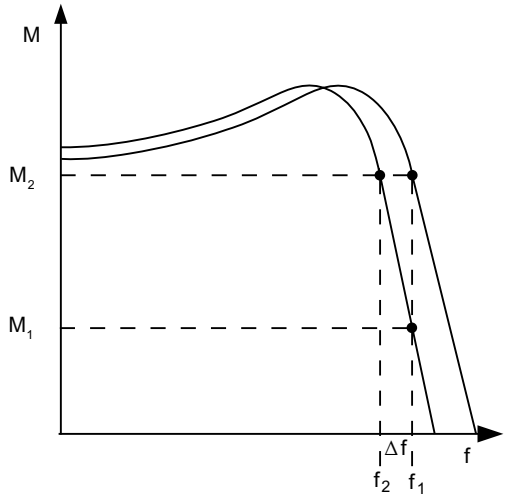


Figure 7-10 Slip compensation

Function diagram

FP 6310 Resonance damping and slip compensation

Parameters

- r0330 Rated motor slip
- p1334 Slip compensation start frequency
- p1335 Slip compensation, scaling
  p1335 = 0.0%: slip compensation is deactivated.
  p1335 = 100.0%: slip is fully compensated.
- p1336 Slip compensation limit value
- r1337 CO: Actual slip compensation
- p1351 CO: Motor holding brake start frequency

7.4 Vector speed/torque control with/without encoder

Description

Compared with V/f control, vector control offers the following benefits:

- Stability vis-à-vis load and setpoint changes
- Short rise times with setpoint changes (–> better command behavior)
- Short settling times with load changes (–> better disturbance characteristic)
- Acceleration and braking are possible with maximum adjustable torque
- Motor protection due to variable torque limitation in motor and regenerative mode
- Drive and braking torque controlled independently of the speed
- Maximum breakaway torque possible at speed 0

These benefits are available without speed feedback.

Vector control can be used with or without an encoder.

The following criteria indicate when an encoder is required:

- Maximum speed accuracy requirements
- Maximum dynamic response requirements
  - Better command behavior
  - Shortest settling times when disturbances occur
- Torque control is required in a control range greater than 1:10
- Allows a defined and/or variable torque for speeds below approx. 10% of the rated motor frequency (p0310) to be maintained.
- A speed controller is normally always required for applications in which an unknown speed can represent a safety risk (where a load can be dropped, e.g. lifting gear, elevators, etc).

With regard to setpoint input, vector control is divided into:

- Speed control
- Torque/current control (in short: torque control)

7.4.1 Vector control without encoder

Description

For sensorless vector control only (SLVC: Sensorless Vector Control), the position of the flux and actual speed must be determined via the electric motor model. The model is buffered by the incoming currents and voltages. At low frequencies (approx. 1 Hz), the model cannot determine the speed.

For this reason and due to uncertainties in the model parameters or inaccurate measurements, the system is switched from closed-loop to open-loop operation in this range.

The changeover between closed-loop/open-loop operation is controlled on the basis of time and frequency conditions (p1755, p1756, p1758 - only for induction motors). The system does not wait for the time condition to elapse if the setpoint frequency at the ramp-function generator input and the actual frequency are below p1755 x (1 - (p1756 / 100 %)) simultaneously.

Transition from open-loop to closed-loop operation always takes place when the changeover speed in p1755 (characteristic "1" in the figure below). If the speed increase is set very slow and a changeover delay time >0 is set in p1759, transition takes place after the changeover delay time (characteristic "2" in the figure below).

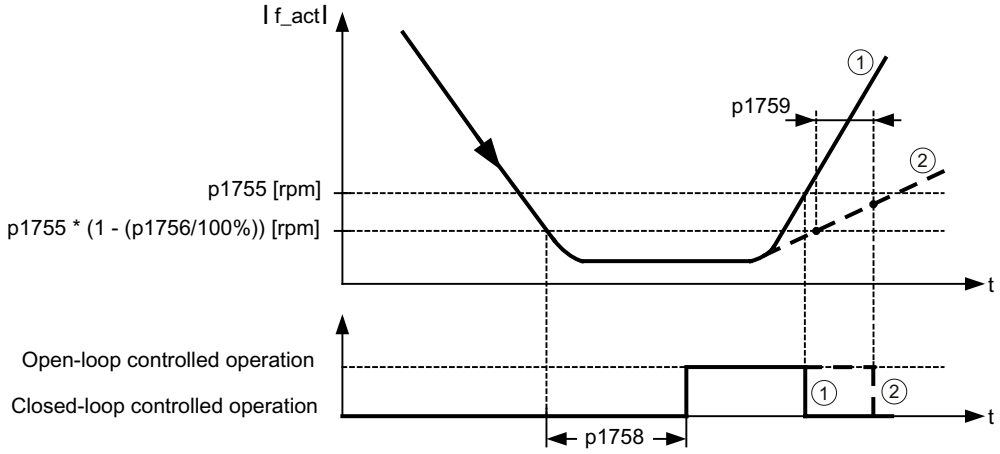


Figure 7-11 Changeover conditions

Setting the torque setpoint

In open-loop operation, the calculated actual speed value is the same as the setpoint value. For vertical loads and when accelerating, parameters p1610 (static torque setpoint) and p1611 (additional acceleration torque) must be adjusted to the necessary maximum torque in order to generate the static or dynamic load torque of the drive. If, on induction motors, p1610 is set to 0%, only the magnetizing current r0331 is injected; at a value of 100%, the rated motor current p0305 is injected.

For permanent-magnet synchronous motors, at p1610 = 0%, a pre-control absolute value derived from the supplementary torque r1515 remains instead of the magnetizing current for induction motors. To ensure that the drive does not stall during acceleration, p1611 can be increased or acceleration pre-control for the speed controller can be used. This is also advisable to ensure that the motor is not subject to thermal overload at low speeds.

If the moment of inertia of the drive is almost constant, acceleration precontrol using p1496 offers more advantages than the supplementary accelerating torque with p1611. For the rotating measurement, the moment of inertia of the drive is determined using p1900 = 3 and p1960 = 1.

Vector control without a speed sensor has the following characteristics at low frequencies:

- Closed-loop controlled operation for passive loads up to approx. 0 Hz output frequency (p0500 = 2), for p1750.2 = 1 and p1750.3 = 1).
- Start an induction motor in the closed-loop controlled mode (after the motor has been completely excited), if the speed setpoint before the ramp-function generator is greater than p1755.
- Reversing without the need to change into the open-loop controlled mode is possible, if the range of the changeover speed (p1755) is passed through in a shorter time than the selected changeover delay time (p1758), and the speed setpoint in front of the ramp-function generator lies outside the open-loop controlled speed range (p1755).
- In the closed-loop torque controlled mode, at low speeds, the system always switches over into the open-loop controlled mode.

Note

Precondition

In this case, the speed setpoint upstream of the ramp-function generator must be greater than the changeover speed in p1755.

Closed-loop operation up to approx. 0 Hz (settable via parameter p1755) and the ability to start or reverse at 0 Hz directly in closed-loop operation (settable via parameter p1750) result in the following benefits:

- No switchover operation required within closed-loop control (bumpless behavior, no frequency dips, no discontinuities in the torque).
- Closed-loop speed control without encoder down to and including 0 Hz
- Passive loads down to a frequency of 0 Hz
- Steady-state closed-loop speed control down to approx. 0 Hz possible
- Higher dynamic performance when compared to open-loop controlled operation

Note

Automatic changeover

If, in the closed-loop controlled mode, start from 0 Hz or reversing takes longer than 2 s, or the time set in p1758 - then the system automatically switches over from closed-loop controlled into open-loop controlled operation.

Note

Operation in sensorless torque control

Operation in sensor less torque control only makes sense if, in the speed range below the changeover speed of the motor model (p1755), the setpoint torque is greater than the load torque. The drive must be able to follow the setpoint and the associated setpoint speed (p1499).

Closed-loop operation down to standstill for passive loads

By restricting to a passive load at the starting point, it is possible to maintain stationary closed-loop operation down to zero frequency (standstill) without having to change over to open-loop operation.

Parameter p1750.2 must be set to 1.

Closed-loop control without changeover is restricted to applications with passive load: These include applications in which the load cannot produce a regenerative torque on startup and the motor comes to a standstill when pulses are inhibited; for example, moments of inertia, brakes, pumps, fans, centrifuges, extruders, etc.

Standstill of any duration is possible without holding current, only the motor magnetization current is impressed.

Steady-state regenerative operation at a frequency close to 0 Hz is not possible.

It is also possible to select sensorless control for passive loads during commissioning by setting p0500 = 2 (technology application = passive loads (for sensorless control down to f = 0)).

This function is activated automatically if quick commissioning is exited with p3900 > 0, or if automatic calculation is called (p0340 = 1, 3, 5 or p0578 = 1).

Blocking drives

If the load torque is higher than the torque limiting of the sensorless vector control, the drive is braked to zero speed (standstill). To avoid open-loop controlled mode being selected after the time p1758, p1750.6 can be set to 1. Under certain circumstances p2177 (Motor blocked delay time) must be increased.

Note

Exception for reversing drives

It is not permissible to use this setting if the load can force the drive to reverse.

Active loads

Active loads, which can reverse the drive, e.g. hoisting gear, must be started in the open-loop speed control mode. In this case, bit p1750.6 must be set to 0 (open-loop controlled operation when the motor is blocked). The static (steady state) torque setpoint (p1610) must be greater than the maximum occurring load torque.

Note

Loads that can drive the motor

For applications with high regenerative load torques at low speeds, p1750.7 can also be set to 1 As a result, the speed changeover limits of the motor model are increased and a faster changeover can be made into open-loop controlled operation.

Permanent-magnet synchronous motors

Standard procedure: open-loop controlled operation at low speeds

Normally, permanent-magnet synchronous motors are started and reversed in open-loop controlled operation. The changeover speeds are set to 10% or 5% of the rated motor speed. Changeover is not subject to any time condition (p1758 is not evaluated). Prevailing load torques (motor or regenerative) are adapted in open-loop operation, facilitating constant-torque crossover to closed-loop operation even under high static loads. Whenever the pulses are enabled, the rotor position is identified.

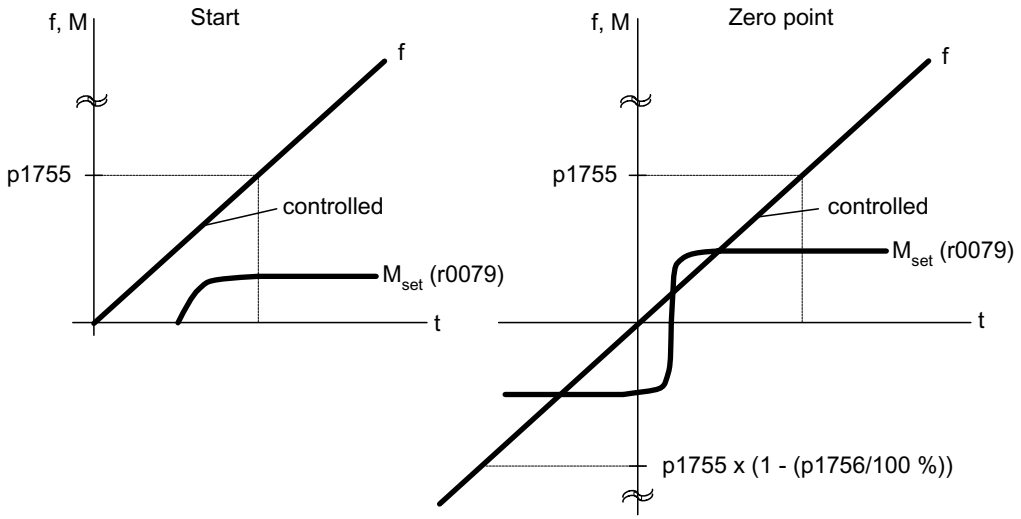


Figure 7-12 Zero crossing in open-loop controlled operation at low speeds

Extended procedure: closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed

By superimposing high-frequency pulses on the driving fundamental voltage and evaluating the resulting offset pulse in the machine current, it is possible to determine the continuous rotor position up to frequency zero (standstill).

1FW4 and 1PH8 series Siemens torque motors can be started from standstill with any load up to the rated torque or even hold the load at standstill.

The procedure is suitable for motors with internal magnets.

Note

Use of a sine-wave filter

If a sine-wave filter is used, the open-loop controlled procedure should be used.

The following advantages are obtained by maintaining closed-loop controlled operation:

- No switchover required within closed-loop control (smooth switching, no discontinuities in the torque).
- Sensorless closed-loop speed and torque control down to and including 0 Hz
- Higher dynamic performance when compared to open-loop controlled operation.
- Encoderless operation of drive line-ups (e.g. in the paper industry, master-slave operation).
- Active (including hanging/suspended) loads down to zero frequency.

Supplementary conditions for the use of third-party motors:

- Experience shows that the procedure is very suitable for motors with magnets within the rotor core (IPMSM - Interior Permanent Magnet Synchronous Motors).
- The ratio of stator quadrature reactance (Lsq): Stator direct-axis reactance (Lsd) must be > 1 (recommendation: minimum > 1.5).
- The possible operating limits of the procedure depend upon up to what current the asymmetrical reactance ratio (Lsq:Lsd) is retained in the motor. If the procedure should be operable up to the rated motor torque, then the reactance ratio must be retained up to the rated motor current.

A prerequisite for optimum behavior is the entry of the following parameters:

- Enter the saturation characteristic: p0362 - p0369
- Enter the load characteristic: p0398, p0399

Commissioning sequence for closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed:

- Run through the commissioning with motor identification at standstill.
- Enter the parameters for the saturation characteristic and the load characteristic.
- Activate closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed via parameter p1750 bit 5.

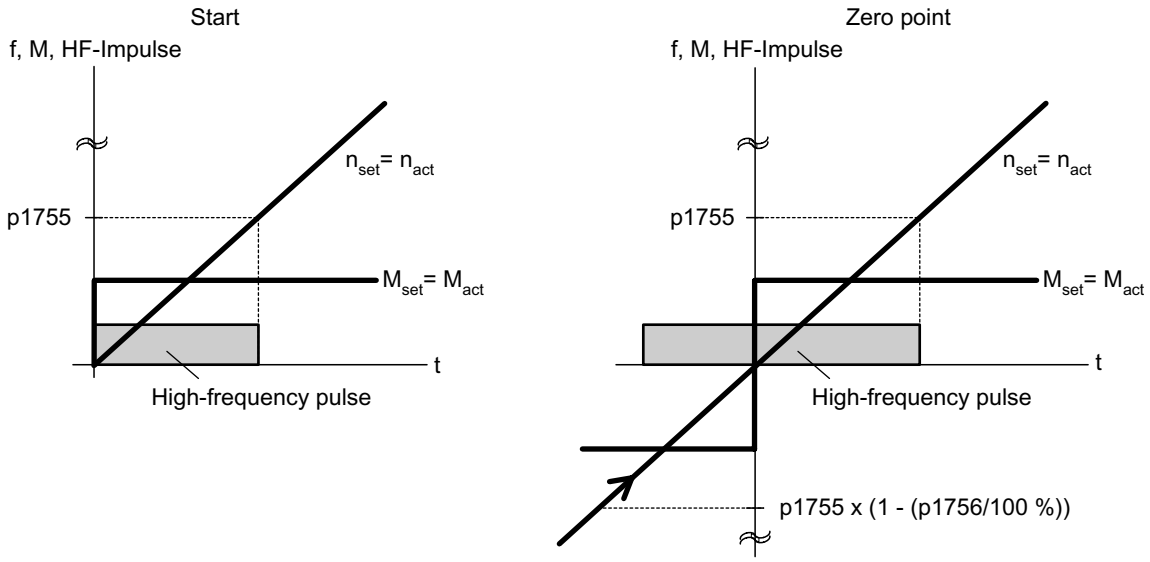


Figure 7-13 Zero crossing in closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed

Function diagram

FP 6730	Interface to Motor Module (ASM), p0300 = 1)
FP 6731	Interface to Motor Module (PEM), p0300 = 2)

Parameter

- p0305 Rated motor current
- r0331 Motor magnetizing current/short-circuit current
- p0362 Saturation characteristic flux 1
  ... ...
  p0365 Saturation characteristic flux 4
- p0366 Saturation characteristic I_mag 1
  ... ...
  p0369 Saturation characteristic I_mag 4
- p0398 Magnet angle. Decoupling (cross saturation) coefficient 1
- p0398 Magnet angle. Decoupling (cross saturation) coefficient 3
- p0500 Technology application
- p0578 Calculating technology/unit-dependent parameters
- p1605 Pulse technique pattern configuration
- r1606 CO: Actual pulse technique pattern
- p1607 Pulse technique stimulus
- r1608 CO: Pulse technique answer
- p1610 Torque setpoint static (SLVC)
- p1611 Supplementary accelerating torque (SLVC)
- p1750 Motor model configuration
- p1755 Motor model changeover speed sensorless operation
- p1756 Motor model changeover speed hysteresis
- p1758 Motor model changeover delay time, closed/open-loop control
- p1759 Motor model changeover delay time open/closed loop control
- r1762.1 Motor model deviation component 1 - deviation model 2
- p1798 Motor model pulse technique speed adaptation Kp
- p1810.3 Modulator configuration - current measurement oversampling activated (for pulse technique PEM)

7.4.2 Vector control with encoder

Description

Benefits of vector control with an encoder:

- The speed can be controlled right down to 0 Hz (standstill)
- Stable control response throughout the entire speed range
- Allows a defined and/or variable torque for speeds below approx. 10 % of the rated motor speed to be maintained
- Compared with speed control without an encoder, the dynamic response of drives with an encoder is significantly better because the speed is measured directly and integrated in the model created for the current components.

Motor model change

A model change takes place between the current model and the observer model within the speed range p1752 x (100 % - p1753) and p1752. In the current-model range (i.e., at lower speeds), torque accuracy depends on whether thermal tracking of the rotor resistance is carried out correctly. In the observer-model range and at speeds of less than approx. 20% of the rated speed, torque accuracy depends primarily on whether thermal tracking of the stator resistance is carried out correctly. If the resistance of the supply cable is greater than 20 to 30 % of the total resistance, this should be entered in p0352 before motor data identification is carried out (p1900/p1910).

To deactivate thermal adaptation, set p0620 = 0. This may be necessary if adaptation cannot function accurately enough due to the following general conditions. For example, if a KTY sensor is not used for temperature detection and the ambient temperatures fluctuate significantly or the overtemperatures of the motor (p0626 to p0628) deviate significantly from the default settings due to the design of the motor.

Function diagram

FP 4715	Actual speed value and rotor position measurement, motor encoder
FD 6030	Speed setpoint, droop
FP 6040	Speed controller with/without encoder
FP 6050	Speed controller adaptation (Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation)
FP 6060	Torque setpoint
FP 6490	Speed control configuration

7.4.3 Actual speed value filter

Description

The speed actual value filter is used to suppress cyclic disturbance variables in speed acquisition.

The speed actual value filter can be set as follows:

- Low-pass 2nd order (PT2: -40 dB/decade)
- General 2nd order filter

STARTER converts band-stop and low-pass filters with reduction in the parameters of the general 2nd order filter.

The speed actual value filter is activated with p1656.4 = 1. The properties of the speed actual value filter are set in p1677 to p1681.

While changes are being made in the data of the actual value speed filter, conversion of the new filter data can be prevented with p1699 = 1.
If p1699 = 0 is set, the calculation will be performed and the new values applied.

Function block diagrams

FP 4715	Encoder evaluation - actual speed value and pole position sensing, motor encoder ASM/SM (encoder1)

Parameter

- p1655[4] CI: Speed actual value filter 5 natural frequency tuning
- p1656.4 Speed actual value filter 5 activation
- p1677 Actual speed value filter 5 type
- p1678 Actual speed value filter 5 denominator natural frequency
- p1679 Actual speed value filter 5 denominator damping
- p1680 Actual speed value filter 5 numerator natural frequency
- p1681 Actual speed value filter 5 numerator damping
- p1699 Filter data acceptance

7.4.4 Speed controller

Description

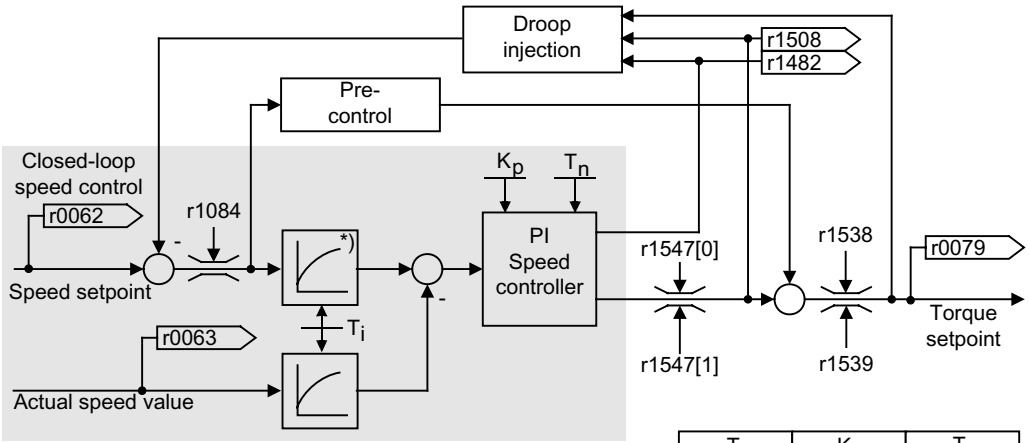
Both closed-loop control techniques with and without encoder (SLVC, VC) have the same speed controller structure that contains the following components as kernel:

- PI controller
- Speed controller pre-control
- Droop Function

The torque setpoint is generated from the total of the output variables and reduced to the permissible magnitude by means of torque setpoint limitation.

The speed controller receives its setpoint (r0062) from the setpoint channel and its actual value (r0063) either directly from the speed actual value encoder (vector control with encoder) or indirectly via the motor model (encoderless vector control). The system difference is increased by the PI controller and, in conjunction with the pre-control, results in the torque setpoint.

When the load torque increases, the speed setpoint is reduced proportionately when the droop function is active, which means that the single drive within a group (two or more mechanically connected motors) is relieved when the torque becomes too great.



	T_i	K_p	T_n
SLVC:	p1452	p1470	p1472
VC:	p1442	p1460	p1462

Figure 7-14 Speed controller

The optimum speed controller setting can be determined via the automatic speed controller optimization function (p1900 = 1, rotating measurement).

If the moment of inertia has been specified, the speed controller (Kp, Tn) can be calculated by means of automatic parameterization (p0340 = 4). The controller parameters are defined in accordance with the symmetrical optimum as follows:

Tn = 4 x Ts

Kp = 0.5 x r0345 / Ts = 2 x r0345 / Tn

Ts = Sum of the short delay times (includes p1442 and p1452).

If vibrations occur with these settings, the speed controller gain (Kp) will need to be reduced manually. Actual-speed-value smoothing can also be increased (standard procedure for gearless or high-frequency torsion vibrations) and the controller calculation performed again because this value is also used to calculate Kp and Tn.

The following relationships apply for optimization:

- If Kp is increased, the controller becomes faster, although overshoot is increased. However, signal ripples and vibrations in the speed control loop will increase.
- Although reducing Tn will also speed up the controller, it will increase overshoot.

When setting speed control manually, you are advised to define the dynamic response via Kp (and actual-speed-value smoothing) first, so that the integral time can subsequently be reduced as much as possible. Please remember that closed-loop control must also remain stable in the field-weakening range.

To suppress any vibrations that occur in the speed controller, it is usually only necessary to increase the smoothing time in p1452 for operation without an encoder or p1442 for operation with an encoder, or reduce the controller gain.

The integral output of the speed controller can be monitored via r1482 and the limited controller output via r1508 (torque setpoint).

Note

Reduced dynamic response for encoderless operation

In comparison with speed control with an encoder, the dynamic response of drives without an encoder is significantly reduced. The actual speed is derived by means of a model calculation based on the converter output variables for current and voltage that have a corresponding interference level. To this end, the actual speed must be adjusted by means of filter algorithms in the software.

Function diagram

FP 6040 Speed controller

Parameter

- r0062 CO: Speed setpoint after the filter
- r0063 CO: Actual speed value smoothed
- p0340 Automatic calculation, control parameters
- r0345 CO: Rated motor startup time
- p1442 Speed-actual-value smoothing time (VC)
- p1452 Speed-actual-value smoothing time (encoderless VC)
- p1460 Speed controller P gain with encoder
- p1462 Speed controller integral time with encoder
- p1470 Speed controller encoderless operation P gain
- p1472 Speed controller encoderless operation integral time
- r1482 CO: Torque output I speed controller
- r1508 CO: Torque setpoint before supplementary torque
- p1960 Speed controller optimization selection

Examples of speed controller settings

A few examples of speed controller settings with vector control without encoders (p1300 = 20) are provided below. These should not be considered to be generally valid and must be checked in terms of the control response required.

- **Fans (large centrifugal masses) and pumps**

  Kp (p1470) = 2 … 10

  Tn (p1472) = 250 … 500 ms

  The Kp = 2 and Tn = 500 ms settings result in asymptotic approximation of the actual speed to the setpoint speed after a setpoint step change. During many simple control procedures, this is satisfactory for pumps and fans.

- **Stone mills, separators (large centrifugal masses)**

  Kp (p1470) = 12 … 20

  Tn (p1472) = 500 … 1000 ms

- **Kneader drives**

  Kp (p1470) = 10

  Tn (p1472) = 200 … 400 ms

Note

Check speed control gain

We recommend checking the effective speed control gain (r1468) during operation. If this value changes during operation, the Kp adaptation is being used (p1400.5 = 1). Kp adaptation can if necessary be deactivated or its behavior changed.

- **When operating with encoder (p1300 = 21)**

  A smoothing value for the actual speed value (p1442) = 5 … 20 ms ensures quieter operations for motors with gear units.

7.4.4.1 Speed controller pre-control (integrated pre-control with balancing)

Description

The command behavior of the speed control loop can be improved by calculating the accelerating torque from the speed setpoint and connecting it on the line side of the speed controller. This torque setpoint mv is applied directly as an additive reference variable on the input side/supply side of the current controller by means of adaptation elements (enabled via p1496).
The torque setpoint (mv) is calculated from:

mv = p1496 x J x (dn/dt) = p1496 x p0341 x p0342 x (dn/dt)

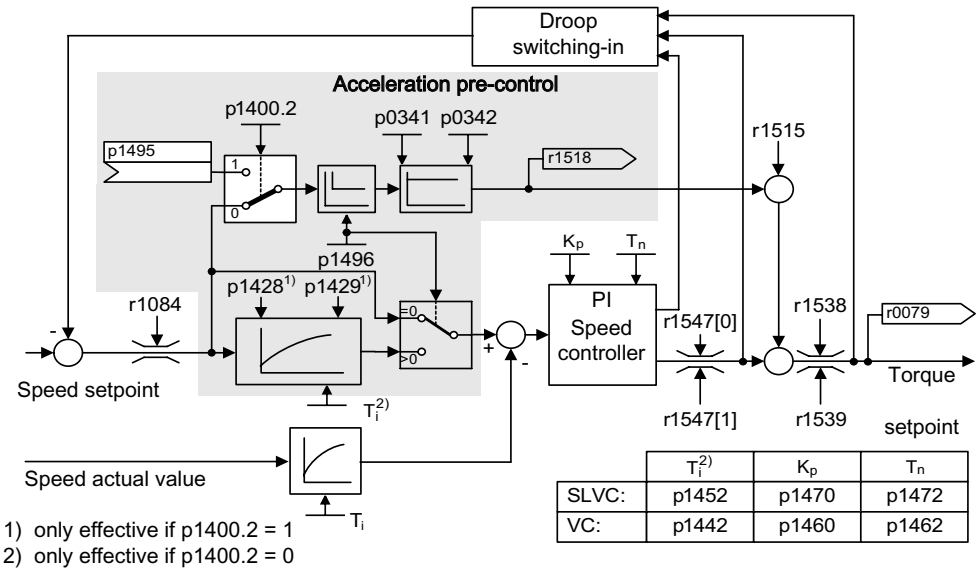
The motor moment of inertia p0341 is calculated when commissioning the drive system. The factor p0342 between the total moment of inertia J and the motor moment of inertia must be determined manually or by optimizing the speed controller. The acceleration is calculated from the speed difference over the time dn/dt.

Note

When using speed controller optimization

When speed controller optimization is carried out, the ratio between the total moment of inertia and that of the motor (p0342) is determined and acceleration pre-control scaling (p1496) is set to 100 %.

If p1400.2 = p1400.3 = 0, then the pre-control balancing is automatically set.



	T_i 2)	K_p	T_n
SLVC:	p1452	p1470	p1472
VC:	p1442	p1460	p1462

Figure 7-15 Speed controller with pre-control

When correctly adapted, when accelerating, the speed controller only has to compensate disturbance variables in its control loop. This is achieved with a relatively minor controlled variable change at the controller output.

The effect of the pre-control variable can be adapted according to the application using the weighting factor p1496. For p1496 = 100%, pre-control is calculated according to the motor and load moment of inertia (p0341, p0342). A balancing filter is used automatically to prevent the speed controller acting against the injected torque setpoint. The time constant of the balancing filter corresponds to the equivalent delay time of the speed control loop. Speed controller pre-control is correctly set (p1496 = 100%, calibration using p0342) if the I component of the speed controller (r1482) does not change while ramping-up or ramping-down in the range n > 20% x p0310. Thus, pre-control allows a new speed setpoint to be approached without overshoot (prerequisite: torque limiting does switch in and the moment of inertia remains constant).

If the speed controller is pre-controlled by means of injection, the speed setpoint (r0062) is delayed with the same smoothing time (p1442 or p1452) as the actual value (r1445). This ensures that no target/actual difference (r0064) occurs at the controller input during acceleration, which would be attributable solely to the signal propagation time.

When speed pre-control is activated, the speed setpoint must be specified continuously or without a higher interference level (avoids sudden torque changes). An appropriate signal can be generated by smoothing the speed setpoint or activating ramp-function generator rounding p1130 – p1131.

The startup time r0345 ($T_{startup}$) is a measure for the total moment of inertia J of the machine and describes the time during which the unloaded drive can be accelerated with the rated motor torque r0333 ($M_{mot,rated}$) from standstill to the rated motor speed p0311 ($n_{mot,rated}$).

$r0345 = T_{startup} = J \times (2 \times \pi \times n_{mot,rated}) / (60 \times M_{mot,rated}) = p0341 \times p0342 \times (2 \times \pi \times p0311) / (60 \times r0333)$

The ramp-up and ramp-down times should always be set to values larger than the startup time.

Note

Setting the ramp-function generator

The ramp-up and ramp-down times (p1120; p1121) of the ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel should be set accordingly so that the motor speed can track the setpoint during acceleration and braking. This will optimize the function of speed controller pre-control.

Acceleration pre-control using a connector input (p1495) is activated by the parameter settings p1400.2 = 1 and p1400.3 = 0. p1428 (dead time) and p1429 (time constant) can be set for balancing purposes.

Function diagram

FP 6031 Pre-control balancing reference/acceleration model

Parameter

- p0311 Rated motor speed
- r0333 Rated motor torque
- p0341 Motor moment of inertia
- p0342 Ratio between the total and motor moment of inertia
- r0345 Rated motor startup time
- p1400.2 Acceleration pre-control source
- p1428 Speed pre-control balancing dead time
- p1429 Speed pre-control balancing time constant
- p1496 Acceleration pre-control scaling
- r1518 Acceleration torque

7.4.4.2 Reference model

Description

The reference model is activated with p1400.3 = 1.

The reference model is used to emulate the speed control loop with a P speed controller.

The loop emulation can be set in p1433 to p1435. It becomes effective if p1437 is connected to the output of the model r1436.

The reference model delays the setpoint-actual value deviation for the integral component of the speed controller so that settling (stabilizing) operations can be suppressed.

The reference model can also be externally emulated and the external signal entered via p1437.

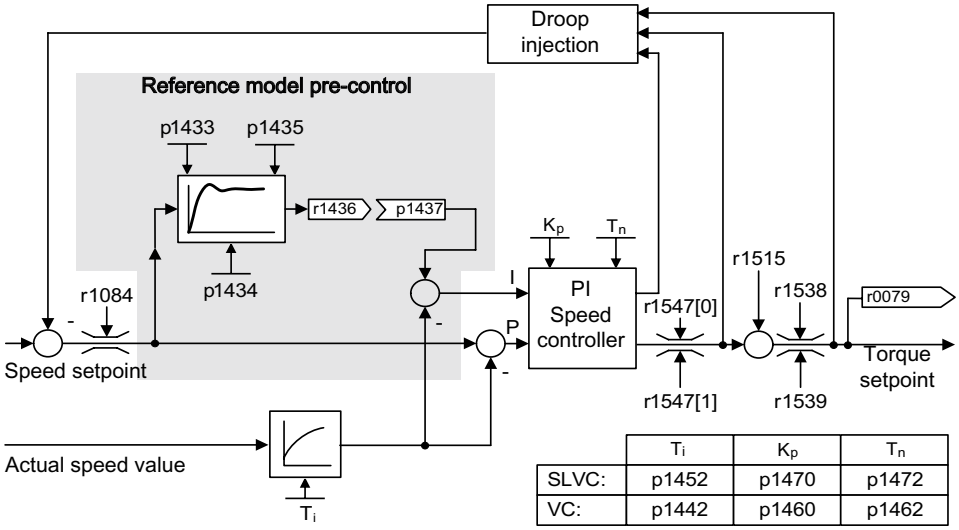


Figure 7-16 Reference model

Function diagram

FP 6031 Pre-control balancing reference/acceleration model

Parameter

- p1400.3 Reference model speed setpoint I component
- p1433 Speed controller reference model natural frequency
- p1434 Speed controller reference model damping
- p1435 Speed controller reference model dead time
- r1436 Speed controller reference model speed setpoint output
- p1437 Speed controller reference model I component input

7.4.4.3 Speed controller adaptation

Description

Two adaptation methods are available, namely free Kp_n adaptation and speed-dependent Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation.

Free Kp_n adaptation is also active in "operation without encoder" mode and is used in "operation with encoder" mode as an additional factor for speed-dependent Kp_n adaptation.

Speed-dependent Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation is only active in "operation with encoder" mode and also affects the Tn_n value.

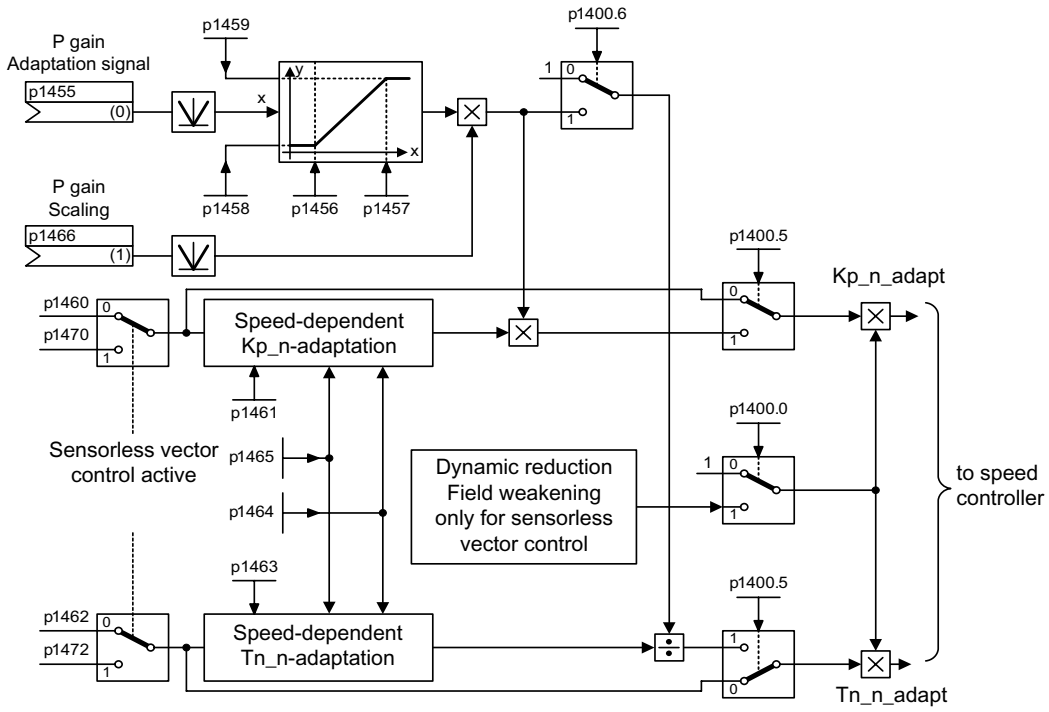


Figure 7-17 Free Kp adaptation

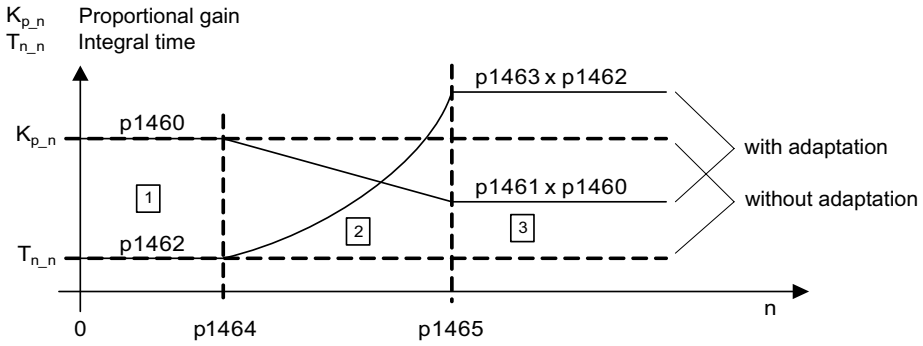
A dynamic response reduction in the field-weakening range can be activated in encoderless operation (p1400.0). This is activated when the speed controller is optimized in order to achieve a greater dynamic response in the base speed range.

Example of speed-dependent adaptation

Note

Only for operation with encoder

This type of adaptation is only active in "operation with encoder" mode.



1	Constant lower speed range	(n < p1464)
2	Adaptation range	(p1464 < n < p1465)
3	Constant upper speed range	(n > p1465)

Figure 7-18 Example of speed-dependent adaptation

Function diagram

FP 6050 Kp_n-/Tn_n adaptation

Parameters

- p1400.5 Speed control configuration: Kp/Tn adaptation active

Free Kp_n adaptation

- p1455 Speed controller P gain adaptation signal
- p1456 Speed controller P gain adaptation lower starting point
- p1457 Speed amplifier P gain adaptation upper starting point
- p1458 Adaptation factor lower
- p1459 Adaptation factor upper
- p1470 Speed controller encoderless operation P gain

Speed-dependent Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation (VC only)

- p1460 Speed controller P gain adaptation speed lower
- p1461 Speed controller P gain adaptation speed upper
- p1462 Speed controller integral time adaptation speed lower
- p1463 Speed controller integral time adaptation speed upper
- p1464 Speed controller adaptation speed lower
- p1465 Speed controller adaptation speed upper
- p1466 Speed controller P gain scaling

Dynamic response reduction field weakening (encoderless VC only)

- p1400.0 Speed control configuration: Automatic Kp/Tn adaptation active

7.4.4.4 Droop Function

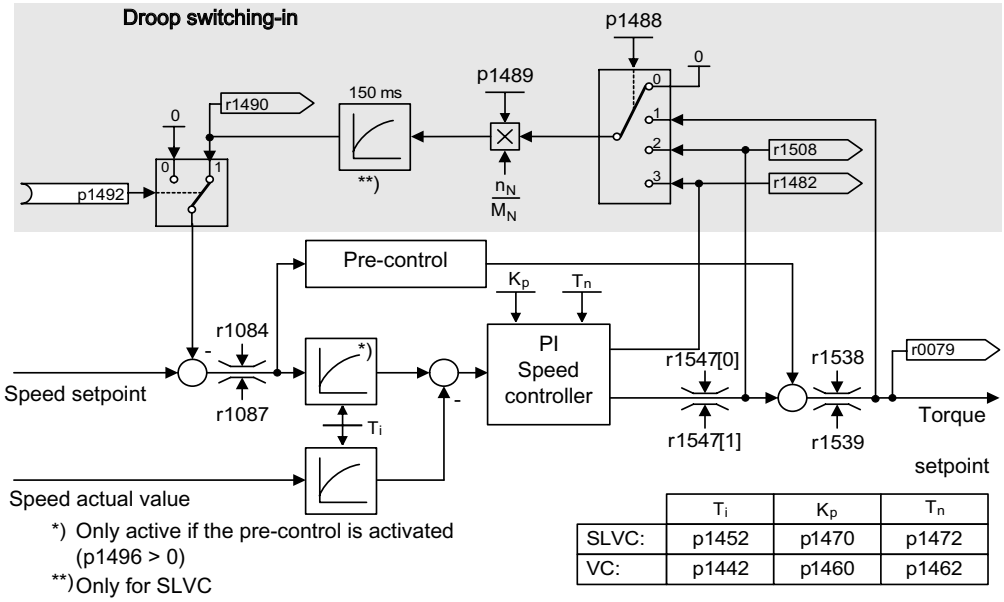
Description

Droop (enabled via p1492) ensures that the speed setpoint is reduced proportionally as the load torque increases.

The droop function has a torque limiting effect on a drive that is mechanically coupled to a different speed (e.g. guide roller on a goods train). In this way, a very effective load distribution can also be realized in connection with the torque setpoint of a leading speed-controlled drive. In contrast to torque control or load distribution with overriding and limitation, with the appropriate setting, such a load distribution controls even a smooth mechanical connection.

This method is only suitable to a limited extent for drives that are accelerated and braked with significant changes in speed.

The droop feedback is used, for example, in applications in which two or more motors are connected mechanically or operate with a common shaft and fulfill the above requirements. It limits the torque differences that can occur as a result of the mechanical connection between the motors by modifying the speeds of the individual motors (drive is relieved when the torque becomes too great).



	Ti	Kp	Tn
SLVC:	p1452	p1470	p1472
VC:	p1442	p1460	p1462

Figure 7-19 Speed controller with droop

Requirement

- All connected drives must be operated with vector and speed control (with or without speed actual value encoder).
- The setpoints at the ramp function generators of the mechanically connected drives must be identical; the ramp function generators must have identical ramp-up and ramp-down times.

Function diagram

FP 6030 Speed setpoint, droop

Parameter

- r0079 Total speed setpoint
- r1482 Speed controller I torque output
- p1488 Droop input source
- p1489 Droop feedback scaling
- r1490 Droop feedback speed reduction
- p1492 Droop feedback enable
- r1508 Torque setpoint before supplementary torque

7.4.4.5 Open actual speed value

Description

Via parameter p1440 (CI: speed controller, speed actual value) is the signal source for the speed actual value of the speed controller. The unsmoothed actual speed value r0063[0] has been preset as the signal source in the factory.

Depending on the machine, parameter p1440 can be used, for example, to switch on a filter in the actual value channel or feed in an external actual speed value.

Parameter r1443 is used to display the actual speed value present at p1440.

Note

Feed in an external actual speed value

When infeeding an external actual speed value, care should be taken that the monitoring functions continue to be derived from the motor model.

Behavior for speed control with an encoder (p1300 = 21)

A motor encoder must always be available for the speed or position signal of the motor model (e.g. evaluation via SMC, see p0400). The actual speed of the motor (r0061) and the position information for synchronous motors still come from this motor encoder and are not influenced by the setting in p1440.

Interconnection of p1440:
When interconnecting connector input p1440 with an external actual speed value, ensure the speed scaling is the same (p2000).

The external speed signal should correspond to the average speed of the motor encoder (r0061).

Behavior for speed control without an encoder (p1300 = 20)

Depending on the transmission path of the external speed signal, dead times will accumulate; these dead times must be taken into account in the speed controller's parameter assignment (p1470, p1472) and can lead to commensurate losses in dynamic performance.
Signal transmission times must therefore be minimized.

p1750.2 = 1 should be set so that the speed controller is also able to work at standstill (closed-loop controlled operation to zero frequency for passive loads). Otherwise, at low speeds it switches over to speed-controlled operation, so that the speed controller is switched off and the measured actual speed no longer has an influence.

Monitoring of the speed deviation between motor model and external speed

The external actual speed (r1443) is compared with the actual speed of the motor model (r2169). If the deviation is greater than the tolerance threshold set in p3236, after the switch-off delay time set in p3238 expires, fault F07937 (Drive: Speed deviation motor model to external speed) is generated and the drive switched-off corresponding to the set response (factory setting: OFF2).

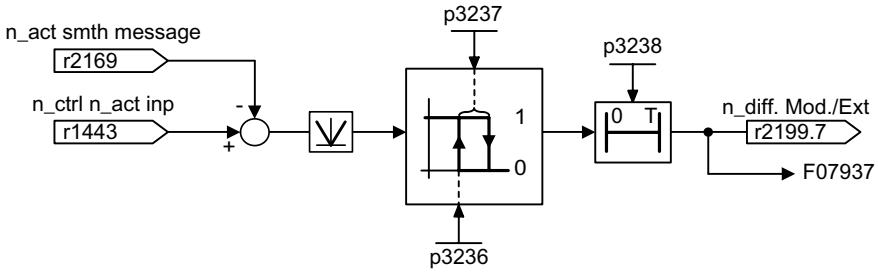


Figure 7-20 Monitoring "Speed deviation model / external in tolerance"

Function diagram

FP 6040	Vector control – speed controller with/without encoder
FP 8012	Signals and monitoring function – Torque messages, motor blocked/stalled

Parameter

- r0063[0] Actual speed value unsmoothed
- p1440 CI: Speed controller actual speed value
- r1443 CO: Speed controller actual speed value at actual value input
- r2169 CO: Actual speed value smoothed messages
- r2199.7 Speed deviation model / external in tolerance
- p3236 Speed threshold 7
- p3237 Hysteresis speed 7
- p3238 Switch-off delay n_act_motor model = n_act_external

7.4.5 Closed-loop torque control

Description

For sensorless closed-loop speed control (p1300 = 20) or closed-loop speed control with encoder VC (p1300 = 21), it is possible to change over to closed-loop torque control using BICO parameter p1501. It is not possible to change over between closed-loop speed and torque control if closed-loop torque control is directly selected with p1300 = 22 or 23. The torque setpoint and/or supplementary setpoint can be entered using BICO parameter p1503 (CI: torque setpoint) or p1511 (CI: supplementary torque setpoint). The supplementary torque acts both for closed-loop torque as well as for the closed-loop speed control. As a result of this characteristic, a pre-control torque can be implemented for the closed-loop speed control using the supplementary torque setpoint.

Note

No assignment to fixed torque setpoints

For safety reasons, assignments to fixed torque setpoints are currently not possible.

Note

Regenerative energy without feedback capability

If energy is regenerated and cannot be injected back into the line supply, then a Braking Module with connected braking resistor must be used.

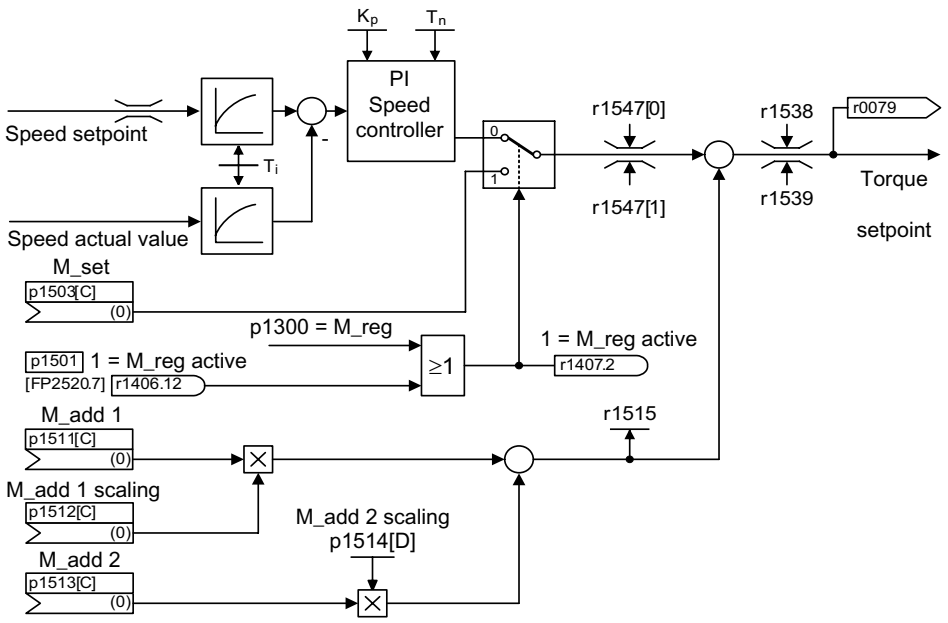


Figure 7-21 Closed-loop speed/torque control

The total of the two torque setpoints is limited in the same way as the speed control torque setpoint. Above the maximum speed (p1082), a speed limiting controller reduces the torque limits in order to prevent the drive from accelerating any further.

A "real" closed-loop torque control (with a speed that automatically sets itself) is only possible in the closed-loop control range but not in the open-loop control range of the sensorless closed-loop vector control. In the open-loop controlled range, the torque setpoint changes the setpoint speed via a ramp-up integrator (integrating time ~ p1499 x p0341 x p0342). This is the reason that sensorless closed-loop torque control close to standstill is only suitable for applications that require an accelerating torque there and no load torque (e.g. traversing drives). Closed-loop torque control with encoder does not have this restriction.

OFF responses

- OFF1 and p1300 = 22, 23
  - Response as for OFF2
- OFF1, p1501 = "1" signal and p1300 ≠ 22, 23
  - No separate braking response; the braking response is provided by a drive that specifies the torque.
  - The pulses are inhibited when the brake application time (p1217) expires. Standstill is detected when the speed actual value of the speed threshold (p1226) is undershot or when the monitoring time (p1227) started when speed setpoint ≤ speed threshold (p1226) expires.
  - Switching on inhibited is activated.
- OFF2
  - Immediate pulse suppression, the drive coasts to standstill.
  - The motor brake (if parameterized) is closed immediately.
  - Switching on inhibited is activated.
- OFF3
  - Switch to speed-controlled operation
  - n_set = 0 is input immediately to brake the drive along the OFF3 deceleration ramp (p1135).
  - When standstill is detected, the motor brake (if parameterized) is closed.
  - The pulses are inhibited when the motor brake closing time (p1217) has elapsed. Standstill is detected when the speed actual value of the speed threshold (p1226) is undershot or when the monitoring time (p1227) started when speed setpoint ≤ speed threshold (p1226) expires.
  - Switching on inhibited is activated.

Function diagram

FP 6060 Torque setpoint

Parameters

- p0341 Motor moment of inertia
- p0342 Ratio between the total and motor moment of inertia
- p1300 Open-loop/closed-loop control mode
- p1499 Accelerating for torque control, scaling
- p1501 Change over between closed-loop speed/torque control
- p1503 Torque setpoint
- p1511 Supplementary torque 1
- p1512 Supplementary torque 1 scaling
- p1513 Supplementary torque 2
- p1514 Supplementary torque 2 scaling
- r1515 Supplementary torque total

7.4.6 Torque limiting

Description

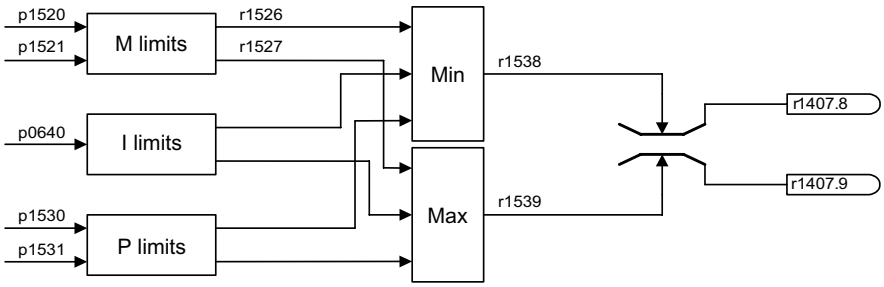


Figure 7-22 Torque limiting

The value specifies the maximum permissible torque whereby different limits can be parameterized for motor and regenerative mode.

- p0640 Current limit
- p1520 CO: Torque limit, upper/motoring
- p1521 CO: Torque limit, lower/regenerative
- p1522 CI: Torque limit, upper/motoring
- p1523 CI: Torque limit, lower/regenerative
- p1524 CO: Torque limit, upper/motoring, scaling
- p1525 CO: Torque limit, lower/regenerative scaling
- p1530 Power limit, motoring
- p1531 Power limit, regenerating

The currently active torque limit values are displayed in the following parameters:

- r0067 Maximum drive output current
- r1526 Torque limit, upper/motoring without offset
- r1527 Torque limit, lower/regenerative without offset

All of the following limits act on the torque setpoint – that is either available at the speed controller output for closed-loop speed control or as torque input, for closed-loop torque control. The minimum or the maximum is used for the various limits. This minimum or maximum is cyclically calculated and is displayed in r1538 or r1539.

- r1538 Upper effective torque limit
- r1539 Lower effective torque limit

These cyclical values therefore limit the torque setpoint at the speed controller output/torque input or indicate the instantaneous max. possible torque. If the torque setpoint is limited, then this is displayed using parameter p1407.

- r1407.8 Upper torque limit active
- r1407.9 Lower torque limit active

Function diagram

FP 6060 Torque setpoint
FP 6630 Upper/lower torque limit
FP 6640 Current/power/torque limits

7.4.7 Current setpoint filters

Description

The current setpoint filters are for suppressing cyclic disturbance variables that can be caused, for example, by mechanical vibrations in the drive train.

The current actual value filters can be set as follows:

- Low-pass 2nd order (PT2: -40 dB/decade)
- General 2nd order filter

STARTER converts band-stop and low-pass filters with reduction in the parameters of the general 2nd order filter.

The current actual value filters are activated with p1656.0 = 1 or p1656.1 = 1. The properties of the current actual value filters are set in p1657 to p1666.

While changes are being made in the data of the current value speed filters, conversion of the new filter data can be prevented with p1699 = 1.
If p1699 = 0 is set, the calculation will be performed and the new values applied.

Function block diagrams

FP 6710 Current setpoint filters

Parameter

- p1655[0] CI: Current setpoint filter 1 natural frequency tuning
- p1655[1] CI: Current setpoint filter 2 natural frequency tuning
- p1656.1 Current setpoint filter 1 activation
- p1657 Current setpoint filter 1 type
- p1658 Current setpoint filter 1 denominator natural frequency
- p1659 Current setpoint filter 1 denominator damping
- p1660 Current setpoint filter 1 numerator natural frequency
- p1661 Current setpoint filter 1 numerator damping
- p1656.2 Current setpoint filter 2 activation
- p1662 Current setpoint filter 2 type
- p1663 Current setpoint filter 2 denominator natural frequency
- p1664 Current setpoint filter 2 denominator damping
- p1665 Current setpoint filter 2 numerator natural frequency
- p1666 Current setpoint filter 2 numerator damping
- p1699 Filter data acceptance

7.4.8 Permanent-magnet synchronous motors

Description

Permanent-magnet synchronous motors without encoders are supported during operations without encoders.

Typical applications include direct drives with torque motors which are characterized by high torque at low speeds, e.g. Siemens complete torque motors of the 1FW3 series. When these drives are used, gear units and mechanical parts subject to wear can be dispensed with if the application allows this.

⚠ WARNING

Dangerous electrical voltage

As soon as the motor starts to rotate, a voltage is generated. When work is carried out on the converter, the motor must be safely disconnected. If this is not possible, the motor must be locked by a holding brake, for example.

Features

- Field weakening of up to approx. 1.2 x rated speed (depending on the supply voltage of the converter and motor data, also see supplementary conditions)
- Capture (only when using a VSM module to record the motor speed and phase angle (option K51))
- Speed and torque control vector
- U/f control for diagnostics vector
- Motor identification
- Speed controller optimization (rotary measurement)

Supplementary conditions

- Maximum speed or maximum torque depend on the converter output voltage available and the back EMF of the motor (calculation specifications: EMF must not exceed $U_{rated,\ converter}$).
- Calculating the maximum speed:

$$n_{max} = n_n \cdot \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}} \cdot \frac{U_{DC\ link\ max} \cdot I_n}{P_n}$$

- Depending on the terminal voltage and load cycle, the maximum torque can be taken from the motor data sheets / configuration instructions.
- No thermal model is available for the closed-loop control of a permanent-magnet synchronous motor. The motor can only be protected against overheating by using temperature sensors (PTC, KTY). To achieve a high level of torque accuracy, we recommend the use of a temperature sensor (KTY) to measure the motor temperature.

Commissioning

The following sequence is recommended for commissioning:

- Configure the drive

  When the drive is being commissioned using STARTER or the AOP30 operator panel, the permanent-magnet synchronous motor must be selected. The motor data specified in the table below must then be entered. Finally, the motor identification routine and speed optimization (p1900) are activated. Encoder adjustment is activated automatically together with the motor identification routine.
- Motor identification (standstill measurement, p1910)
- Speed controller optimization (rotary measurement, p1960)

Motor data for permanent-magnet synchronous motors

Table 7- 2 Motor data type plate

Parameter	Description	Comment
p0304	Rated motor voltage	If this value is not known, the value "0" can also be entered. Entering the correct value, however, means that the stator leakage inductance (p0356, p0357) can be calculated more accurately.
p0305	Rated motor current	
p0307	Rated motor power	
p0310	Rated motor frequency	
p0311	Rated motor speed	
p0314	Motor pole pair number	If this value is not known, the value "0" can also be entered.
p0316	Motor torque constant	If this value is not known, the value "0" can also be entered.

If the torque constant k_T is not stamped on the rating plate or specified in the data sheet, you can calculate this value from the rated motor data or from the stall current I_0 and stall torque M_0 as follows:

$$k_T = \frac{M_N}{I_N} = \frac{60\frac{s}{min} \times P_N}{2\pi \times n_N \times I_N} \quad \text{or} \quad k_T = \frac{M_0}{I_0}$$

The optional motor data can be entered if it is known. Otherwise, this data is estimated from the type plate data or determined by means of motor identification or speed controller optimization.

Table 7- 3 Motor data type plate

Parameter	Description	Comment
p0320	Rated motor short-circuit current	This is used for the field weakening characteristic
p0322	Maximum motor speed	Maximum mechanical speed
p0323	Maximum motor current	De-magnetization protection
p0325	Rotor position identification current, 1st phase	-
p0327	Optional load angle	Optional otherwise leave at 90°
p0328	Reluctance torque constant	-
p0329	Rotor position identification current	-
p0341	Motor moment of inertia	For speed controller pre-control
p0344	Motor weight	-
p0350	Stator resistance, cold	-
p0356	Quadrature axis stator inductance Lq	-
p0357	In-line stator inductance Ld	-

Short-circuit protection

For short circuits that can occur in the drive converter or in the motor cable, the rotating machine would supply the short-circuit until it comes to a standstill. An output contactor can be used for protection. This should be located as close as possible to the motor. This is particularly necessary if the motor can still be driven by the load when a fault develops. The contactor must be provided with a protective circuit against overvoltage on the motor side so that the motor winding is not damaged as a result of the shutdown.

Control signal r0863.1 (VECTOR) is used to control the contactor via a free digital output; the checkback contact of the contactor is connected to parameter p0864 via a free digital input.

This means that if the drive converter develops a fault with a shutdown response, at the instant in time that the pulses are inhibited, the motor is isolated from the drive converter so that energy is not fed back to the fault location.

Function diagram

FP 6721 Vector control - Id setpoint (PEM, p0300 = 2)
FP 6724 Vector control – field weakening controller (PEM, p0300 = 2)
FP 6731 Vector control - interface to Motor Module (PEM, p0300 = 2)

Output terminals

8

8.1 Chapter content

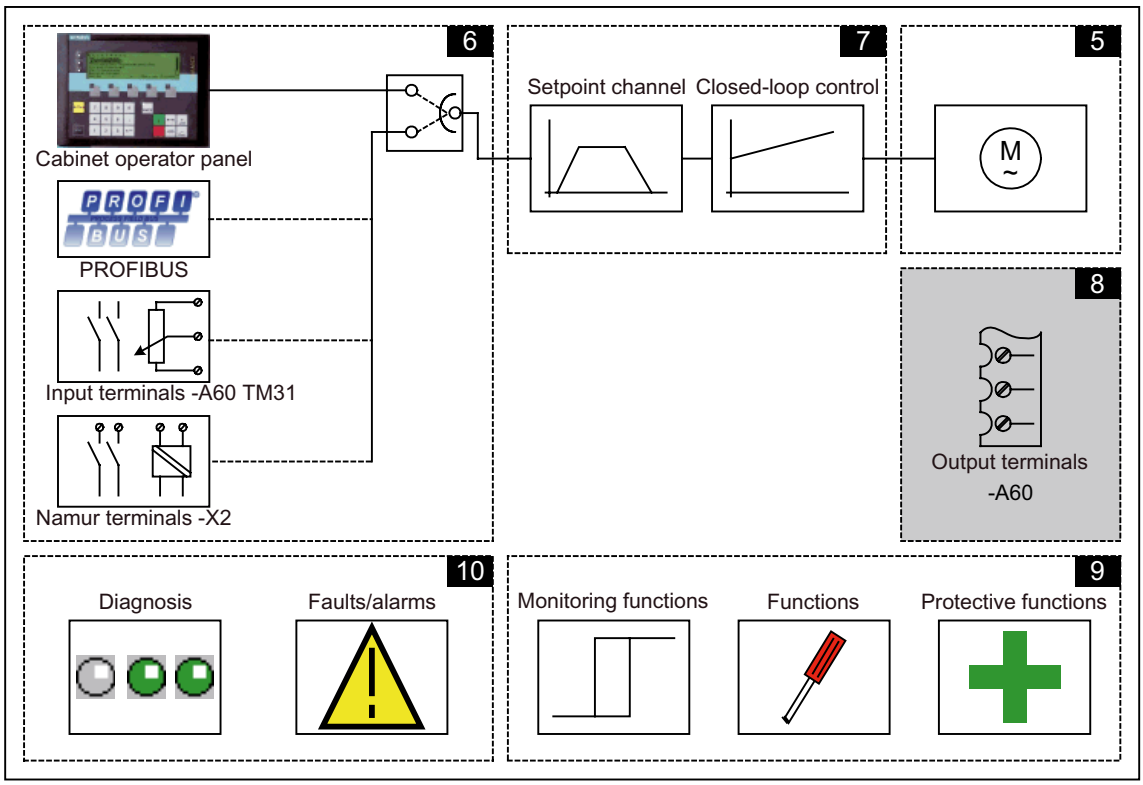
This chapter provides information on:

- Analog outputs
- Digital outputs

The analog/digital outputs described are located on the TM31 customer terminal block, which is available only with option G60.

As an alternative to the analog/digital outputs of the TM31, it is possible to use the terminals on the Control Unit or on the Terminal Board TB30 (option G62).

Some of the outputs on the Control Unit and on the TM31 are pre-assigned at the factory; the outputs on the TB30 are not pre-assigned at the factory.



Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

8.2 Analog outputs

Description

The Customer Terminal Block features two analog outputs for outputting setpoints via current or voltage signals.

Delivery condition:

- AO0: Actual speed value 0 to 20 mA
- AO1: Actual motor current, 0 to 20 mA

Signal flow diagram

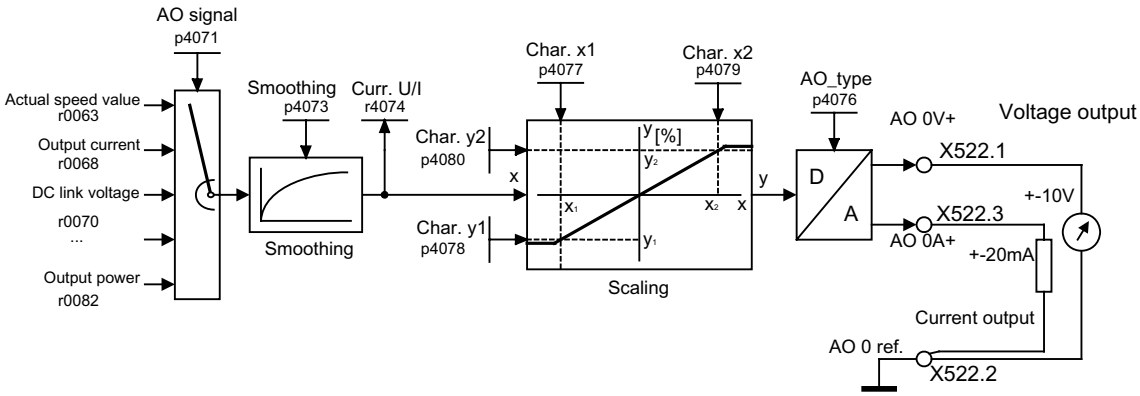


Figure 8-1 Signal flow diagram: analog output 0

Function diagram

FP 1840, FP 9572 TM31 - analog outputs (AO 0 to AO 1)

Parameter

- p4071 Analog outputs, signal source
- p4073 Analog outputs, smoothing time constant
- r4074 Analog outputs, actual output voltage/current
- p4076 Analog outputs, type
- p4077 Analog outputs, characteristic value x1
- p4078 Analog outputs, characteristic value y1
- p4079 Analog outputs, characteristic value x2
- p4080 Analog outputs, characteristic value y2

8.2.1 List of signals for the analog signals

List of signals for the analog outputs

Table 8- 1 List of signals for the analog outputs

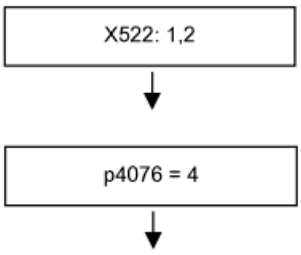
Signal	Parameters	Unit	Scaling (100 %=...) See table below
Speed setpoint before the setpoint filter	r0060	rpm	p2000
Motor speed unsmoothed	r0061	rpm	p2000
Actual speed smoothed	r0063	rpm	p2000
Output frequency	r0066	Hz	Reference frequency
Output current	r0068	Aeff	p2002
DC link voltage	r0070	V	p2001
Torque setpoint	r0079	Nm	p2003
Output power	r0082	kW	r2004
For diagnostic purposes			
Control deviation	r0064	rpm	p2000
Modulation depth	r0074	%	Reference modulation depth
Torque-generating current setpoint	r0077	A	p2002
Torque-generating actual current	r0078	A	p2002
Flux setpoint	r0083	%	Reference flux
Actual flux	r0084	%	Reference flux
For further diagnostic purposes			
Speed controller output	r1480	Nm	p2003
I component of speed controller	r1482	Nm	p2003

Scaling

Table 8- 2 Scaling

Size	Scaling parameter	Default for quick commissioning
Reference speed	100 % = p2000	p2000 = Maximum speed (p1082)
Reference voltage	100 % = p2001	p2001 = 1000 V
Reference current	100 % = p2002	p2002 = Current limit (p0640)
Reference torque	100 % = p2003	p2003 = 2 x rated motor torque
Reference power	100 % = r2004	r2004 = (p2003 x p2000 x π) / 30
Reference frequency	100 % = p2000/60	
Reference modulation depth	100 % = Maximum output voltage without overload	
Reference flux	100 % = Rated motor flux	
Reference temperature	100% = p2006	p2006 = 100°C

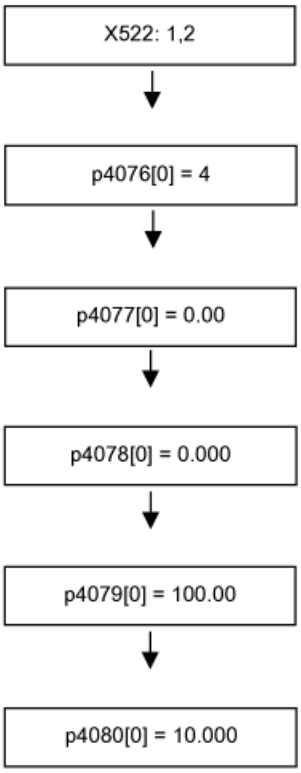
Changing analog output 0 from current to voltage output –10 V ... +10 V (example)



Voltage output present at terminal 1, ground is at terminal 2

Set analog output type 0 to -10 ... +10 V.

Changing the analog output 0 from current to voltage output –10 ... +10 V (example) and setting the characteristic



Voltage output present at terminal 1, ground is at terminal 2

Set TM31.AO_type [analog output 0] to -10 ... +10 V.

Set TM31.AO_char. x1 to 0.00%.

Set TM31.AO_char. y1 to 0.000 V.

Set TM31.AO_char. x2 to 100.00%.

Set TM31.AO_char. y2 to 10.000 V.

8.3 Digital outputs

Description

Four bi-directional digital outputs (terminal X541) and two relay outputs (terminal X542) are available. These outputs are, for the most part, freely parameterizable.

Signal flow diagram

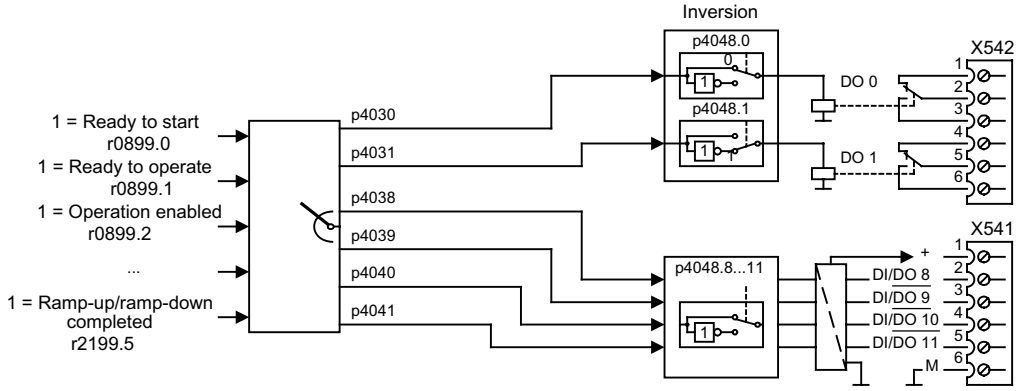


Figure 8-2 Signal flow diagram: Digital outputs

Delivery condition

Table 8- 3 Digital outputs, delivery condition

Digital output	Terminal	Delivery condition
DO0	X542: 2,3	"Enable pulses"
DO1	X542: 5,6	"No fault"
DI/DO8	X541: 2	"Ready to start"
DI/DO9	X541: 3	
DI/DO10	X541:4	
DI/DO11	X541: 5	

Selection of possible connections for the digital outputs

Table 8- 4 Selection of possible connections for the digital outputs

Signal	Bit in status word 1	Parameter
1 = Ready to start	0	r0899.0
1 = Ready	1	r0899.1
1 = Operation enabled	2	r0899.2
1 = Fault present	3	r2139.3
0 = Coast to stop active (OFF2 active)	4	r0899.4
0 = Fast stop active (OFF3 active)	5	r0899.5
1 = Closing lockout active	6	r0899.6
1 = Alarm present	7	r2139.7
1 = Speed setpoint/actual deviation within the tolerance band	8	r2197.7
1 = Master control requested	9	r0899.9
1 = f or n comparison value reached or exceeded	10	r2199.1
1 = I, M or P limit reached	11	r1407.7
1 = Open holding brake	12	r0899.12
0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature	13	r2135.14
1 = Motor rotates forward (n_act ≥ 0) 0 = Motor rotates backward (n_act < 0)	14	r2197.3
0 = Alarm thermal overload in power unit (A5000)	15	r2135.15
1 = Pulses enabled		r0899.11
1 = n_act ≤ p2155		r2197.1
1 = n_act > p2155		r2197.2
1 = Ramp-up/ramp-down completed		r2199.5
1 = |n_act| < p2161 (preferably as n_min or n=0 message)		r2199.0
1 = |M_set| < p2174		r2198.10
1 = LOCAL mode active (control via operator panel or control panel)		r0807.0
1 = Motor blocked		r2198.6

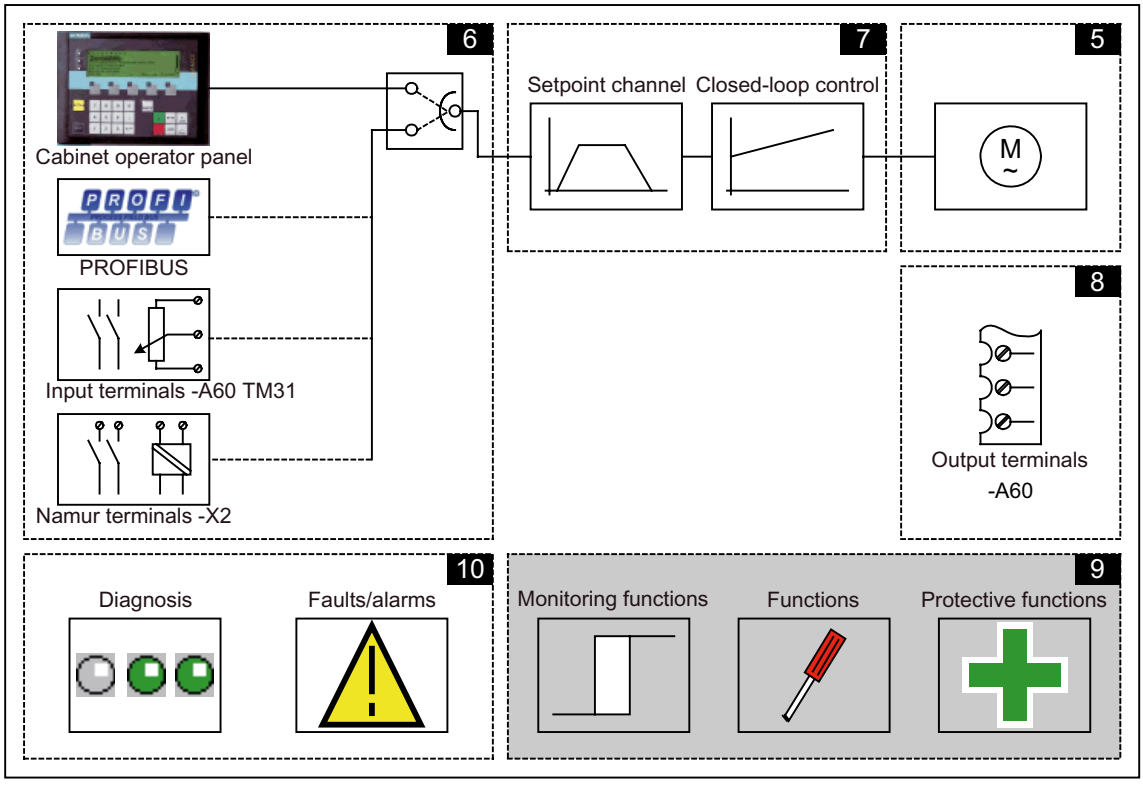
Functions, Monitoring, and Protective Functions

9

9.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on:

- Drive functions:
  Motor identification, efficiency optimization, quick magnetization for induction motors, Vdc control, automatic restart, flying restart, motor changeover, friction characteristic, armature short-circuit braking, DC braking, increase in the output frequency, pulse frequency wobbling, runtime, simulation operation, direction reversal, unit changeover, derating behavior with increased pulse frequency, simple brake control, energy savings indicator for fluid-flow machines
- Extended functions:
  Technology controller, bypass function, extended brake control, extended monitoring functions
- Monitoring and protective functions:
  Power unit protection, thermal monitoring functions and overload responses, blocking protection, stall protection, thermal motor protection.
-



Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

9.2 Drive Functions

9.2.1 Motor data identification and automatic speed controller optimization

Description

Two motor identification options, which are based on each other, are available:

- Motor identification with p1910 (standstill measurement)
- Rotating measurement with p1960 (speed controller optimization)

These can be selected more easily via p1900. p1900 = 2 selects the motor identification (motor not rotating). p1900 = 1 also activates the rotating measurement; setting p1910 = 1 and p1960 depending on the current control type (p1300).

Parameter p1960 is set depending on p1300 as follows:

- p1960 = 1, if p1300 = 20 or 22 (encoderless control)
- p1960 = 2, if p1300 = 21 or 23 (control with encoder)

The measurements parameterized using p1900 are started in the following sequence after the corresponding drive has been enabled:

- Motor identification at standstill, after the measurement has been completed, the pulses are inhibited and parameter p1910 is reset to 0.
- Encoder adjustment - after the measurement has been completed, the pulses are inhibited and parameter p1990 is reset to 0.
- Rotating measurement - after the measurement has been completed, the pulses are inhibited and parameter p1960 is reset to 0.
- After all of the measurements activated using p1900 have been successfully completed, p1900 itself is set to 0.

Note

Non-volatile saving

To set the new controller setting permanently, the data must be saved with p0977 or p0971 in a non-volatile memory.

⚠ DANGER
Danger due to movement of the motor
During motor identification, the drive might set the motor in motion.
The EMERGENCY OFF functions must be fully operational during commissioning. To protect machines and personnel, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.

9.2.1.1 Motor data identification

Description

Motor identification with p1910 is used for determining the motor parameters at standstill (see also p1960: speed controller optimization):

- Equivalent circuit diagram data p1910 = 1
- Magnetization characteristic p1910 = 3

For control engineering reasons, you are strongly advised to carry out motor identification because the equivalent circuit diagram data, motor cable resistance, IGBT on-state voltage, and compensation for the IGBT lockout time can only be estimated if the data on the type plate is used. For this reason, the stator resistance for the stability of sensorless vector control or for the voltage boost with the V/f characteristic is very important.

Motor identification is essential if long supply cables or third-party motors are used. When motor data identification is started for the first time, the following data is determined with p1910 = 1 on the basis of the data on the type plate (rated data):

Table 9- 1 Data determined using p1910

	Induction motor	Permanent-magnet synchronous motor
p1910 = 1	• Stator resistance (p0350) • Rotor resistance (p0354) • Stator leakage inductance (p0356) • Rotor leakage inductance (p0358) • Magnetizing inductance (p0360) • Drive converter valve threshold voltage (p1825) • Converter valve interlocking times (p1828 ... p1830)	• Stator resistance (p0350) • Stator resistance q axis (p0356) • Stator inductance d axis (p0357) • Drive converter valve threshold voltage (p1825) • Converter valve interlocking times (p1828 ... p1830)
p1910 = 3	• Saturation characteristics (p0362 ... p0366)	not recommended Notice: When encoder adjustment is complete, the motor is automatically rotated approx. one revolution in order to determine the zero marker of the encoder.

Since the type plate data provides the initialization values for identification, you must ensure that it is entered correctly and consistently (taking into account the connection type (star/delta)) so that the above data can be determined.

It is advisable to enter the motor supply cable resistance (p0352) before the standstill measurement (p1910) is performed, so that it can be subtracted from the total measured resistance when the stator resistance is calculated (p0350).

Entering the cable resistance improves the accuracy of thermal resistance adaptation, particularly when long supply cables are used. This governs behavior at low speeds, particularly during encoderless vector control.

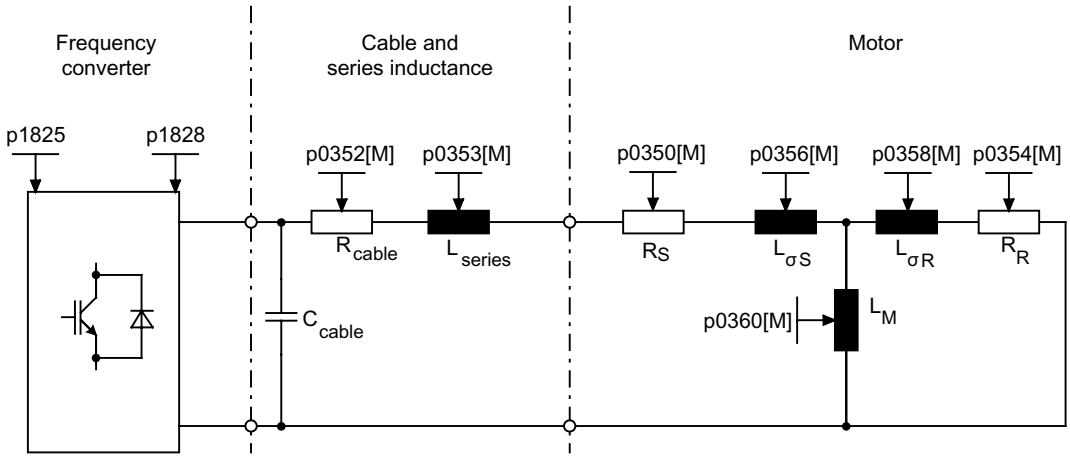


Figure 9-1 Equivalent circuit diagram for induction motor and cable

If an output filter (see p0230) or series inductance (p0353) is used, its data must also be entered before the standstill measurement is carried out.

The inductance value is then subtracted from the total measured value of the leakage. With sine-wave filters, only the stator resistance, valve threshold voltage, and valve interlocking time are measured.

Note

Large spread of the rated motor impedance

Leakage values in excess of 35 to 40% of the rated motor impedance will restrict the dynamic response of speed and current control in the voltage limit range and in field-weakening operation.

Note

Perform standstill measurement with the motor in a cold state

Standstill measurement must be carried out when the motor is cold. In p0625, enter the estimated ambient temperature of the motor during the measurement (with KTY sensor: set p0600, p0601 and read r0035). This is the reference point for the thermal motor model and thermal R_S/R_R adaptation.

In addition to the equivalent circuit diagram data, motor data identification (p1910 = 3) can be used for induction motors to determine the magnetization characteristic of the motor. Due to the higher accuracy, the magnetization characteristic should, if possible, be determined during rotating measurement (without encoder: p1960 = 1, 3; with encoder: p1960 = 2, 4). If the drive is operated in the field-weakening range, this characteristic should be determined for vector control in particular. The magnetization characteristic can be used to calculate the field-generating current in the field-weakening range more accurately, thereby increasing torque accuracy.

Note

Results of the rotating measurement

In comparison with standstill measurement (p1910) for induction motors, rotating measurement (p1960) allows the rated magnetization current and saturation characteristic to be determined more accurately.

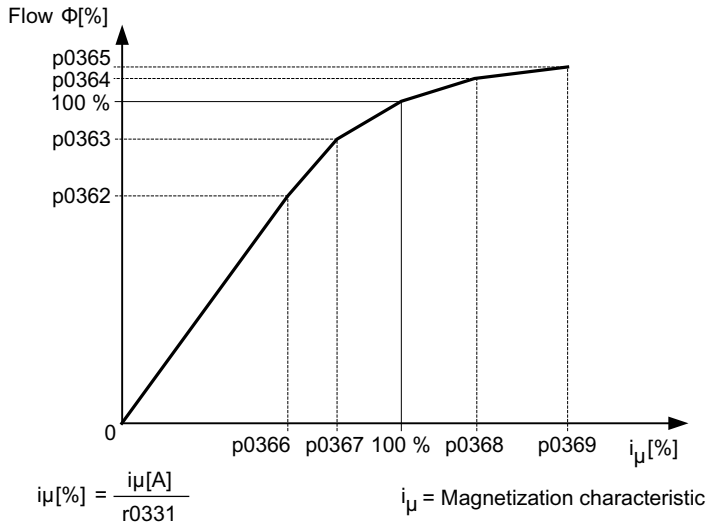


Figure 9-2 Magnetization characteristic

Carrying out motor identification

- Enter p1910 > 0. Alarm A07991 is displayed.
- Identification starts when the motor is switched on.
- p1910 resets itself to "0" (successful identification) or fault F07990 is output.
- r0047 displays the current status of the measurement.

Note

Non-volatile saving

To set the new controller setting permanently, the data must be saved with p0977 or p0971 in a non-volatile memory.

⚠WARNING

Danger due to movement of the motor

During motor identification, the drive might set the motor in motion.

The EMERGENCY OFF functions must be fully operational during commissioning. To protect machines and personnel, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.

9.2.1.2 Rotating measurement and speed controller optimization

Description

"Rotating measurement" can be activated via p1960 or p1900 = 1.

The main difference between rotating measurement and standstill measurement is speed control optimization, with which the drive's moment of inertia is ascertained and speed controller is set. On induction motors, the saturation characteristic and rated magnetization current are also measured.

If rotating measurement is not to be carried out at the speed set in p1965, this parameter can be changed before the measurement is started. Higher speeds are recommended.

The same applies to the speed in p1961, at which the saturation characteristic is determined and the encoder test is carried out.

The speed controller is set to the symmetrical optimum in accordance with dynamic factor p1967. p1967 must be set before the optimization run and only affects the calculation of the controller parameters.

If, during the measurement, it becomes clear that the the drive cannot operate in a stable manner with the specified dynamic factor or that the torque ripples are too great, the dynamic response is reduced automatically and the result displayed in r1968. The drive must also be checked to ensure that it is stable across the entire range. The dynamic response might need to be reduced or Kp/Tn adaptation for the speed controller parameterized accordingly.

When commissioning induction machines, you are advised to proceed as follows:

- Before connecting the load, a complete "rotating measurement" (without encoder: p1960 = 1; with encoder: p1960 = 2) should be carried out. Since the induction machine is idling, you can expect highly accurate results for the saturation characteristic and the rated magnetization current.
- When the load is connected, speed controller optimization should be repeated because the total moment of inertia has changed. This is realized by selecting parameter p1960 (without encoder: p1960 = 3; with encoder: p1960 = 4).
  During the speed optimization, the saturation characteristic recording is automatically deactivated in parameter p1959.

When permanent-magnet synchronous motors are commissioned, the speed controller should be optimized (p1960 = 2/4) when the load is connected.

Carrying out the rotating measurement (p1960 > 0)

The following measurements are carried out when the enable signals are set and a switch-on command is issued in accordance with the settings in p1959 and p1960.

- Encoder test
  If a speed encoder is used, the direction of rotation and the pulse number are checked.
- Only for induction motors:
  - Measurement of the magnetization characteristic (p0362 to p0369)
  - Measurement of the magnetization current (p0320) and determination of the offset voltage of the converter for offset compensation
  - Measurement of the saturation of the leakage inductance and setting of the current controller adaptation (p0391 to p0393)
    This is automatically activated with 1LA1 and 1LA8 motors (p0300 = 11, 18) (see p1959.5).
- Speed controller optimization
  - p1470 and p1472, if p1960 = 1 (encoderless operation)
  - p1460 and p1462, if p1960 = 2 (operation with encoder)
  - Kp adaptation switch-off
- Acceleration pre-control setting (p1496)
- Setting for ratio between the total moment of inertia and that of the motor (p0342)

Note

Non-volatile saving

To set the new controller setting permanently, the data must be saved with p0977 or p0971 in a non-volatile memory.

⚠ DANGER

Danger due to movement of the motor

During speed controller optimization, the drive triggers movements in the motor that can reach the maximum motor speed.

The EMERGENCY OFF functions must be fully operational during commissioning. To protect the machines and personnel, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.

Note

Speed controller optimization for operation with encoder

If speed controller optimization is carried out for operation with an encoder, the control mode will be temporarily changed over to encoderless speed control automatically, in order to be able to carry out the encoder test.

9.2.1.3 Shortened rotating measurement

A normal rotating measurement cannot always be performed when the load is connected. When switching on the motor for the first time, a moment of inertia measurement and the measurement of the magnetization current and the saturation characteristic can be performed with a simplified measuring procedure. There are two methods for this shortened rotating measurement:

- Measurement shortened (p1959.12 = 1)
- After measurement: Direct transfer to operation (p1959.13 = 1)

During the shortened rotating measurement, the drive is not moved up to the rated speed but up to the value set in p1965 (factory setting 40%). Parameter p1961 can be adjusted at the plant, but it must be high enough to ensure that the machine has left open-loop controlled operation. The machine should be operated in no-load operation (torque < 30% of M_{rated}) as far as is possible.

During the shortened rotating measurement the saving of parameters is disabled, because parameter adjustments are automatically made for the measurement, which are to be reassigned after the measurement.

Shortened measurement (p1959.12 = 1)

If p1959.12 = 1 is set, a shortened rotating measurement is carried out. In this case, the magnetizing current and moment of inertia are determined with a somewhat lower degree of accuracy; the vibration test is no longer required.

After the end of the measurement, the drive is moved to standstill and all the parameters modified for performing the measurement are set to their original values.

After measurement: Direct transfer to operation (p1959.13 = 1)

If p1959.13 = 1 is set, the drive is not stopped after the end of the shortened measurement, but is instead moved to the desired setpoint speed with the set ramp up.

Since braking to standstill cannot be performed during this measurement and no pulses are locked, no more parameters can be changed that could later be written back during operation.

Do not change controller parameters during the measurement (p1959.11 = 1)

With the rotating measurement, the drive independently changes its speed controller parameters during start-up. This also occurs if bits 3 and 4 of parameter 1959 are not set. In many cases, however, the decoupling of drives is linked to high cost. The loads have high moments of inertia. The controller parameters set by the drive do not always match the drive application and may therefore potentially cause damage to the mechanical system.

If p1959.11 = 1 is set, the recalculation of the speed controller parameters is prevented.

9.2.1.4 Parameters

- r0047 Motor data identification and speed controller optimization
- p1300 Open-loop/closed-loop control operating mode
- p1900 Motor data identification and rotating measurement
- p1959 Rotating measurement configuration
- p1960 Rotating measurement selection
- p1961 Saturation characteristic speed to determine
- p1965 Speed controller optimization speed
- p1967 Speed controller optimization dynamic factor
- r1968 Speed controller optimization actual dynamic factor
- r1969 Speed controller optimization inertia identified
- r1973 Rotating measurement encoder test pulse number determined
- p1980 Pole position identification procedure
- r3925 Identification final display
- r3927 Motor data identification, control word
- r3928 Rotating measurement configuration

9.2.2 Efficiency optimization

Description

The following can be achieved when optimizing efficiency using p1580:

- Lower motor losses in the partial load range
- Minimization of noise in the motor

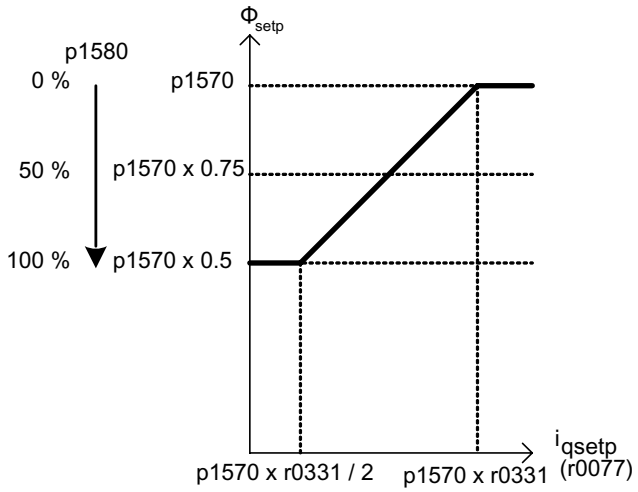


Figure 9-3 Efficiency optimization

It only makes sense to activate this function if the dynamic response requirements of the speed controller are low (e.g. pump and fan applications).

For p1580 = 100%, the flux in the motor under no-load operating conditions is reduced to half of the setpoint (reference flux) (p1570/2). As soon as load is connected to the drive, the setpoint (reference) flux increases linearly with the load and, reaching the setpoint set in p1570 at approx. r0077 = r0331 x p1570.

In the field-weakening range, the final value is reduced by the actual degree of field weakening. The smoothing time (p1582) should be set to approx. 100 to 200 ms. Flux differentiation (see also p1401.1) is automatically deactivated internally following magnetization.

Function diagram

FP 6722	Field weakening characteristic, Id setpoint (ASM, p0300 = 1)
FP 6723	Field weakening controller, flux controller for induction motor (p0300 = 1)

Parameter

- r0077 Current setpoints, torque-generating
- r0331 Motor magnetizing current/short-circuit current (actual)
- p1570 Flux setpoint
- p1580 Efficiency optimization

9.2.3 Fast magnetization for induction motors

Description

Fast magnetization for induction motors is used to reduce delay time during magnetization.

Features

- Rapid flux build-up by impressing a field-producing current at the current limit, which considerably reduces the magnetization time.
- If the "Flying restart" function is activated, the excitation build-up time set in p0346 is still used.

Commissioning

Parameter setting p1401.6 = 1 is necessary to activate fast magnetization.

This setting initiates the following sequence during motor starting:

- The field-producing current setpoint jumps to its limit value: 0.9 x r0067 (I_{max}).
- The flux increases as fast as physically possible with the specified current.
- The flux setpoint r0083 is made to follow accordingly.
- As soon as the flux threshold value programmed in p1573 is reached (min.: 10%, max. 200%, factory setting: 100%), excitation ceases and the speed setpoint is enabled. The flux threshold value must not be set too low for a large load because the torque-producing current is limited during magnetization.

  Note

  Influence of the flux threshold value

  The flux threshold value set in parameter p1573 is effective only if the actual flux during magnetization reaches the value programmed in p1573 before the timer set in p0346 runs down.

- The flux is increased further until the flux setpoint in p1570 has been reached.
- The field-producing current setpoint is reduced by means of a flux controller with P gain (p1590) and the parameterized smoothing factor (p1616).

Notes

When quick magnetization is selected (p1401.6 = 1), smooth starting is deactivated internally and alarm A07416 displayed.

When the stator resistance identification function is active (see p0621 "Identification of stator resistance after restart") is active, quick magnetization is deactivated internally and alarm A07416 displayed.

The parameter does not work when combined with the "flying restart" function (see p1200), i.e. flying restart is performed without quick magnetization.

Function diagram

FP 6491	Flux control configuration
FP 6722	Field weakening characteristic, Id setpoint (ASM, p0300 = 1)
FP 6723	Field weakening controller, flux controller (ASM, p0300 = 1)

Parameter

- p0320 Motor rated magnetization current/short-circuit current
- p0346 Motor excitation build-up time
- p0621 Stator resistance identification after restart
- p0640 Current limit
- p1401 Flux control configuration
- p1570 Flux setpoint
- p1573 Flux threshold value magnetization
- p1590 Flux controller P gain
- p1616 Current setpoint smoothing time

9.2.4 Vdc control

Description

The “Vdc control” function can be activated using the appropriate measures if an overvoltage or undervoltage is present in the DC link.

- Overvoltage in the DC link
  - Typical cause:
    The drive operates in regenerative mode and is supplying too much energy to the DC link.
  - Remedy:
    By reducing the regenerative torque, the DC link voltage is maintained within permissible limits.

  Note

  Fault F30002 "DC link overvoltage"

  When switching off or during rapid load changes, if failure often arises and fault F30002 "DC link overvoltage" is reported, you may be able to improve the situation by increasing the gain factor for the Vdc controller p1250 (p1290), e.g. from "1.00" to "2.00".

- Undervoltage in the DC link
  - Typical cause:
    Failure of the supply voltage or infeed for the DC link.
  - Remedy:
    Specify a regenerative torque for the rotating drive to compensate the existing losses, thereby stabilizing the voltage in the DC link. This process is known as kinetic buffering.
    Kinetic buffering is only possible as long as energy is generated by the movement of the drive.

Characteristics

- Vdc control
  - This comprises Vdc_max control and Vdc_min control (kinetic buffering), which are independent of each other.
  - It contains a joint PI controller. The dynamic factor is used to set Vdc_min and Vdc_max control independently of each other.
- Vdc_min control (kinetic buffering)
  - With this function, the kinetic energy of the motor is used for buffering the DC link voltage in the event of a momentary power failure, thereby delaying the drive.

- Vdc_max control
  - This function can be used to control momentary regenerative load without shutdown using "overvoltage in the DC link".
  - Vdc_max control is only recommended for a supply without active closed-loop control for the DC link and without feedback.

Description of Vdc_min control (kinetic buffering)

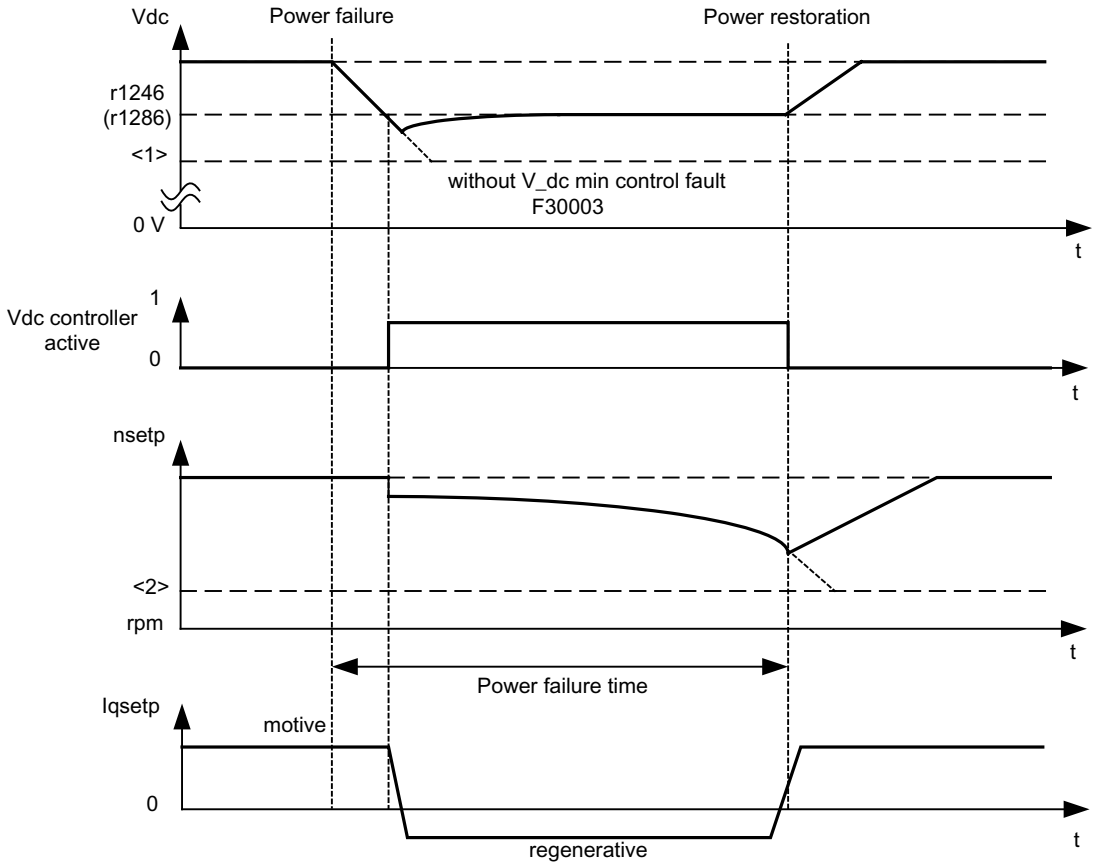


Figure 9-4 Switching Vdc_min control on/off (kinetic buffering)

Note

Activation of kinetic buffering

Kinetic buffering must only be activated in version A in conjunction with an external power supply.

When Vdc_min control is enabled with p1240 = 2.3 (p1280), it is activated if the power fails when the Vdc_min switch-in level (r1246 (r1286)) is undershot. In general, the regenerative power (braking energy) of the drive machine generated when the motor speed is reduced is used to buffer the DC link voltage of the drive; in other words, when Vdc_min control is active, the motor speed no longer follows the main setpoint and can be reduced to zero. The drive continues operating until the shutdown threshold of the DC link voltage is undershot (see "Switching Vdc_min control on/off" <1>).

Note

Parameter specifications in brackets

All parameter specifications in parentheses refer to U/f control.

Distinction between U/f control and speed control:

- U/f control
  The Vdc_min controller acts on the speed setpoint channel. When Vdc_min control is active, the drive setpoint speed is reduced so that the drive becomes regenerative.
- Speed control
  The Vdc_min controller acts on the speed controller output and affects the torque-generating current setpoint. When Vdc_min control is active, the torque-generating current setpoint is reduced so that the drive becomes regenerative.

If the power fails, the DC link voltage decreases due to the lack of power from the supply system. When the DC link voltage threshold set via parameter p1245 (p1285) is reached, the Vdc_min controller is activated. Due to the PID properties of the controller, the motor speed is reduced to the extent that the regenerative drive energy maintains the DC link voltage at the level set in p1245 (p1285). The kinetic energy of the drive governs the dropout characteristic of the motor speed and, in turn, the buffering duration. In centrifugal mass drives (e.g. fans), buffering can last a few seconds. In drives with a low centrifugal mass (e.g. pumps), however, buffering can last just 100 to 200 ms. When the power is restored, the Vdc_min controller is deactivated and the drive is ramped up to its setpoint speed at the ramp-function generator ramp. As long as the Vdc_min controller is active, an alarm A7402 (drive: DC link voltage minimum controller active) will be issued.

If the drive can no longer generate any regenerative energy (because, for example, it is almost at a standstill), the DC link voltage continues to drop. If the minimum DC link voltage is undershot (see "Switching Vdc_min control on/off" <1>), the drive will shut down with fault F30003 (power unit: DC link undervoltage).

If a speed threshold set with parameter p1257 (p1297) is undershot when Vdc_min control is active (see diagram "Switching Vdc_min control on/off" <2>), the drive is shut down with F7405 (drive: kinetic buffering minimum speed not reached).

If a shutdown with undervoltage in the DC link (F30003) occurs without the drive coming to a standstill despite the fact that Vdc_min control is active, the controller may have to be optimized via dynamic factor p1247 (p1287). Increasing the dynamic factor in p1247 (p1287) causes the controller to intervene more quickly. The default setting for this parameter, however, should be sufficient for most applications.

Parameter p1256 = 1 (p1296) can be used to activate time monitoring for kinetic buffering. The monitoring time can be set in parameter p1255 (p1295). If buffering (i.e. the power failure) lasts longer than the time set here, the drive is switched off with fault F7406 (drive: kinetic buffering maximum time exceeded). The standard fault reaction for this fault is OFF3, which means that this function can be used for controlled drive deceleration in the event of a power failure. In this case, excess regenerative energy can only be dissipated via an additional braking resistor.

Description of Vdc_max control

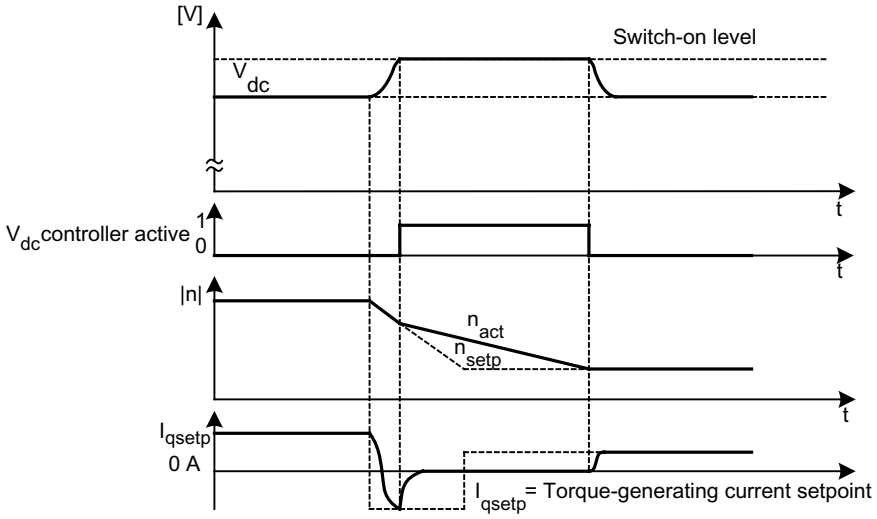


Figure 9-5 Activating/deactivating the Vdc_max control

The switch-on level of the Vdc_max control (r1242 or r1282) is calculated as follows:

- when the automatic switch-on level sensing is disabled (p1254 (p1294) = 0)
  - ACAC device: r1242 (r1282) = 1.15 x √2 x p0210 (device supply voltage)
  - DCAC device: r1242 (r1282) = 1.15 x p0210 (device supply voltage)
- when the automatic switch-on level sensing is enabled (p1254 (p1294) = 1)
  r1242 (r1282) = Vdc_max - 50 V (Vdc_max: overvoltage threshold of the converter)

Function diagram

FP 6220 (FP 6320) Vdc_max controller and Vdc_min controller

Parameters

- p1240 (p1280) Vdc controller configuration
- r1242 (r1282) Vdc_min controller switch-in level
- p1243 (p1283) Vdc_max controller dynamic factor
- p1245 (p1285) Vdc_min controller switch-in level
- r1246 (r1286) Vdc_min controller switch-in level
- p1247 (p1287) Vdc_min controller dynamic factor
- (p1288) Vdc_max controller ramp-function generator feedback factor (V/f)
- p1249 (p1289) Vdc_max controller speed threshold
- p1250 (p1290) Vdc controller proportional gain
- p1251 (p1291) Vdc controller integral action time
- p1252 (p1292) Vdc controller derivative-action time
- (p1293) Vdc_min controller output limit (V/f)
- p1254 (p1294) Vdc_max controller automatic ON level detection
- p1255 (p1295) Vdc_min controller time threshold
- p1256 (p1296) Vdc_min controller response
- p1257 (p1297) Vdc_min controller speed threshold
- r1258 (r1298) Vdc controller output

9.2.5 Automatic restart function

Description

The automatic restart function automatically restarts the cabinet unit after an undervoltage or a power failure. The alarms present are acknowledged and the drive is restarted automatically.

The drive can be restarted using:

- The standard procedure starting from standstill, or
- The flying restart function.
  For drives with low moments of inertia and load torques facilitating the stopping of the drive within a matter of seconds (e.g. pump drives with water gauges), starting from standstill is recommended.

Note

Drives with high moments of inertia

The flying restart function can also be activated for drives with large moments of inertia (such as fan drives). This enables you to switch to the motor that is still rotating.

⚠WARNING

Automatic restart

If p1210 is set to values >1, the motor can be restarted automatically without the need to issue the ON command.

In the event of prolonged power failures and when the automatic restart function is activated (p1210 > 1), the drive may have been at a standstill for a long time and mistakenly considered to have been switched off.

For this reason, entering the area around the drive when it is in this condition can cause death, serious injury, or considerable material damage.

Automatic restart mode

Table 9- 2 Automatic restart mode

p1210	Mode	Meaning
0	Disables automatic restart	Automatic restart inactive
1	Acknowledges all faults without restarting	If p1210 = 1, pending faults will be acknowledged automatically once their cause has been rectified. If further faults occur after faults have been acknowledged, these will also be acknowledged automatically. A minimum time of p1212 + 1 s must expire between successful fault acknowledgement and a fault re-occurring if the signal ON/OFF1 (control word 1, bit 0) is at a HIGH signal level. If the ON/OFF1 signal is set to LOW, the time between when a fault is acknowledged and another one occurs must be at least 1 s. If p1210 = 1, fault F07320 will not be generated if the acknowledge attempt fails (e.g., because the faults occurred too frequently).
4	Automatic restart after power failure, without additional startup attempts	If p1210 = 4, an automatic restart will only be performed if in addition fault F30003 occurs on the Motor Module or there is a high signal at binector input p1208[1], or in the case of an infeed drive object (A_Infeed), F06200 is pending. If additional faults are pending, then these faults will also be acknowledged; if this is successful, the startup attempt will be resumed. The failure of the CU's 24 V power supply will be interpreted as a line supply failure.
6	Restart after fault with additional startup attempts	If p1210 = 6, an automatic restart will be performed after any fault or at p1208[0] = 1. If the faults occur one after the other, then the number of startup attempts is defined using p1211. Monitoring over time can be set using p1213.
14	Restart after power failure after manual acknowledgement	As for p1210 = 4. But pending faults must be acknowledged manually.
16	Restart after fault after manual acknowledgement	As for p1210 = 6. But pending faults must be acknowledged manually.

Startup attempts (p1211) and waiting time (p1212)

p1211 is used to specify the number of startup attempts. The number is decremented internally after each successful fault acknowledgement (line supply voltage must be restored or the infeed signals that it is ready). Fault F07320 is output when the number of parameterized startup attempts is reached.

If p1211 = x, x + 1 startup attempts will be made.

Note

Start of a startup attempt

A startup attempt starts immediately when the fault occurs.

The faults are acknowledged automatically at intervals of half the waiting time p1212.

Following successful acknowledgement and restoration of the voltage, the system is automatically powered up again.

The startup attempt has been completed successfully once the flying restart and magnetization of the motor (induction motor) has been completed (r0056.4 = 1) and one additional second has expired. The startup counter is not reset to the initial value p1211 until this point.

If additional faults occur between successful acknowledgement and the end of the startup attempt, then the startup counter, when it is acknowledged, is also decremented.

Automatic restart monitoring time (p1213)

- p1213[0] = Monitoring time for restart

  The monitoring time starts when the faults are detected. If the automatic acknowledgements are not successful, the monitoring time will continue. If the drive has not successfully restarted by the time the monitoring time expires (flying restart and motor magnetization must have been completed: r0056.4 = 1), fault F07320 is output.

  Monitoring is deactivated by setting p1213 = 0. If p1213 is set to a value lower than the sum of p1212, the magnetization time r0346 and the additional delay time due to flying restart, then fault F07320 will be generated on every restart attempt. If, for p1210 = 1, the time in p1213 is set to a value lower than p1212, then fault F07320 will also be generated on every restart attempt.

  The monitoring time must be extended if the faults that occur cannot be immediately and successfully acknowledged (e.g. when faults are permanently present).

  For p1210 = 14, 16 manual acknowledgement of the pending fault must take place within the time in p1213[0]. Otherwise the fault F07320 is generated after the time set.

- p1213[1] = Monitoring time for resetting the starting counter

  The starting counter (see r1214) is only reset to starting value p1211 once the time in p1213[1] has expired after a successful restart. The delay time is not effective for error acknowledgment without an automatic restart (p1210 = 1). If the power supply fails (blackout), the wait time only starts once the power has been restored and the Control Unit is ramped up. The starting counter is reset to the starting value p1211, if F07320 occurred, the switch-on command is recalled and the fault acknowledged.

  If starting value p1211 or mode p1210 is changed, the starting counter is immediately updated.

Faults without automatic restart (p1206)

Up to 10 fault numbers for which the automatic restart should not be effective can be selected via p1206[0...9].

The parameter is only effective if p1210 = 6 and p1210 = 16.

Parameter

- p1206[0...9] Faults without automatic restart
- p1210 Automatic restart mode
- p1211 Automatic restart, start attempts
- p1212 Automatic restart, delay time start attempts
- p1213 Automatic restart monitoring time
- r1214 Automatic restart status

Settings

To prevent the motor from switching to phase opposition when the drive is being restarted, there is a delay while the motor demagnetizes (t = 2.3 x motor magnetization time constant). Once this time has elapsed, the inverter is enabled and the motor is supplied with power.

9.2.6 Flying restart

Description

The "Flying restart" function (enabled via p1200) allows the converter to switch to a motor that is still rotating. Switching on the converter without the flying restart function would not allow any flux to build up in the motor while it is rotating. Since the motor cannot generate any torque without flux, this can cause it to switch off due to overcurrent (F07801).

The flying restart function first determines the speed of the drive with which V/f or vector control is initialized so that the converter and motor frequency can be synchronized.

During the standard start-up procedure for the converter, the motor must be at a standstill. The converter then accelerates the motor to the setpoint speed. In many cases, however, the motor is not at a standstill.

Two different situations are possible here:

1. The drive rotates as a result of external influences, such as water (pump drives) or air (fan drives). In this case, the drive can also rotate against the direction of rotation.
2. The drive rotates as a result of a previous shutdown (e.g. OFF 2 or a power failure). The drive slowly coasts to a standstill as a result of the kinetic energy stored in the drive train (example: induced-draft fan with a high moment of inertia and a steeply descending load characteristic in the lower speed range).

In accordance with the setting chosen (p1200), the flying restart function is activated in the following situations:

- Once power has been restored and the automatic restart function is active
- After a shutdown with the OFF2 command (pulse inhibit) when the automatic restart function is active
- When the ON command is issued.

Note

Applications for flying restart function

The flying restart function must be used when the motor may still be running or is being driven by the load to prevent shutdowns due to overcurrent (F7801).

Note

Information on flying restart function

If the value set for parameter p1203 (search speed factor) is higher, the search curve is flatter and, as a result, the search time is longer. A lower value has the opposite effect.

In motors with a low moment of inertia, the flying restart function can cause the drive to accelerate slightly.

In group drives, the flying restart function should not be activated due to the different coasting properties of the individual motors.

9.2.6.1 Flying restart without encoder

Description

Depending on parameter p1200, the flying restart function is started with the maximum search speed $n_{search,max}$ once the de-excitation time (p0347) has elapsed (see diagram "Flying restart").

$n_{Search,max}$ = 1.25 x n_{max} (p1082)

The flying restart function behaves differently with V/f control and vector control:

- U/f characteristic (p1300 < 20):
  The search speed yielded from parameter p1203 reduces the search frequency in accordance with the motor current. The parameterizable search current (p1202) is injected here. If the search frequency is similar to the rotor frequency, a current minimum occurs. Once the frequency has been found, the motor is magnetized. The output voltage during the magnetization time (p0346) is increased to the voltage value yielded from the V/f characteristic (see "Flying restart").
- Vector control without encoder:
  The motor speed is determined using the speed adaptation control loop for the electric motor model. To begin with, the search current (p1202) is injected and then the controller is activated starting from the maximum search frequency. The dynamic response of the controller can be altered using the search speed factor (p1203). If the deviation of the speed adaptation controller is not too great, the motor continues to be magnetized for the duration parameterized in p0346.

Once the excitation build-up time (p0346) has elapsed, the ramp-function generator is set to the actual speed value and the motor ramped up to the current setpoint frequency.

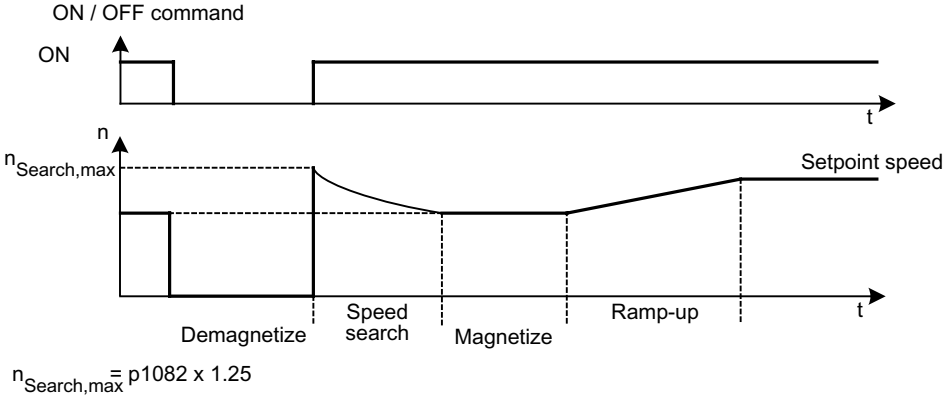


Figure 9-6 Flying restart

⚠ WARNING

Danger due to movement of the motor

When the flying restart (p1200) function is active, the drive may still be accelerated by the detection current despite the fact that it is at standstill and the setpoint is 0!

For this reason, entering the area around the drive when it is in this condition can cause death, serious injury, or considerable material damage.

Flying restart without encoder for long cables

In the case of long motor cables, the procedure described above can lead to problems during a flying restart. In such cases, the following settings can improve the flying restart function:

- Enter the cable resistance in parameter p0352 before motor data identification.
- Set parameter p1203 to at least 300%.
  With this setting, flying restart takes longer than for values below 300%.

Note

Optimize the flying restart function

To optimize the flying restart, a trace recording should be used to check the function. If necessary, you can improve the result by making settings for parameters p1202 and p1203.

Fast flying restart (only for induction motors)

The "Fast flying restart" function can be activated during operation without encoder (vector control, U/f control linear and parabolic). For fast flying restart the starting frequency is set to zero.
In this procedure, the flying restart function is performed successfully for a period of approximately 200 ms.

Fast flying restart function only works under the following conditions:

- With a current regulator cycle time of 250 µs or 400 µs (without motor-side filter and without long cables)
- Up to 4x rated speed for vector control
- Up to the rated speed for U/f control

Note

The "Fast flying restart" function is only possible with induction motors.

The settings for fast flying restart are configured in the expert list.

1. The "Fast flying restart" procedure is selected by setting p1780.11 = 1.

   For operation with encoder, the settings of this bit are ignored, because no fast flying restart is possible here.

2. Fast flying restart is activated using the p1200 parameter, as with the normal flying restart.

3. For the determination of the line resistance, a motor data identification must be carried out at standstill (p1900 = 2).

   The critical parameters are the motor stator resistance (p0350) and the motor stator leakage inductance (p0356).

For fast flying restart condition codes are the following:

- For V/f control: r1204.14 (Fast flying start activated).
- For vector control: r1205.16 (fast flying restart activated) or r1205.17 (fast flying restart finished).

Note

Search current must not be too small

If you have any problems with the fast flying restart it can be useful to set the search current (p1202) to values > 30%. Problems can occur if the drive is operated far into the field weakening, or if it is operated with motor-side filters or long lines.

9.2.6.2 Flying restart with encoder

Description

The flying restart function behaves differently with V/f control and vector control:

- V/f characteristic (p1300 < 20):
  Flying restart without an encoder (see section "Flying restart without an encoder")
- Vector control with a speed encoder:
  Since the speed is known from the start, the motor can be magnetized immediately at the appropriate frequency. The duration of magnetization is specified in p0346. Once the excitation build-up time has elapsed, the ramp-function generator is set to the actual speed value and the motor ramped up to the current setpoint speed.

⚠WARNING

Danger due to movement of the motor

When the flying restart (p1200) function is active, the drive may still be accelerated by the detection current despite the fact that it is at standstill and the setpoint is 0.

For this reason, entering the area around the drive when it is in this condition can cause death, serious injury, or considerable material damage.

9.2.6.3 Parameters

- p0352 Cable resistance
- p1200 Flying restart operating mode
  - 0: Flying restart inactive
  - 1: Flying restart always active (start in setpoint direction)
  - 2: Flying restart active after On, error, OFF2 (start in setpoint direction)
  - 3: Flying restart active after error, OFF2 (start in setpoint direction)
  - 4: Flying restart always active (start only in setpoint direction)
  - 5: Flying restart active after On, error, OFF2 (start only in setpoint direction)
  - 6: Flying restart active after error, OFF2 (start only in setpoint direction)
- p1202 Flying restart search current
- p1203 Flying restart search speed factor
- r1204 Flying restart, V/f control status
- r1205 Flying restart, vector control status

Note

Set search direction for the flying restart

For p1200 = 1, 2, 3, the following applies: Search in both directions, start only in the setpoint direction.

For p1200 = 4, 5, 6, the following applies: Search only in the setpoint direction.

9.2.7 Motor changeover/selection

9.2.7.1 Description

The motor data set changeover is, for example, used for:

- Changing over between different motors
- Motor data adaptation

Note

Switch to a rotating motor

To switch to a rotating motor, the "flying restart" function must be activated.

9.2.7.2 Example of changing over between two motors

Preconditions

- The drive has been commissioned for the first time.
- 2 motor data sets (MDS), p0130 = 2
- 2 drive data sets (DDS), p0180 = 2
- 2 digital outputs to control the auxiliary contactors
- 2 digital inputs to monitor the auxiliary contactors
- 1 digital input to select the data set
- 2 auxiliary contactors with auxiliary contacts (1 NO contact)
- 2 motor contactors with positively-driven auxiliary contacts (1 NC contact, 1 NO contact)

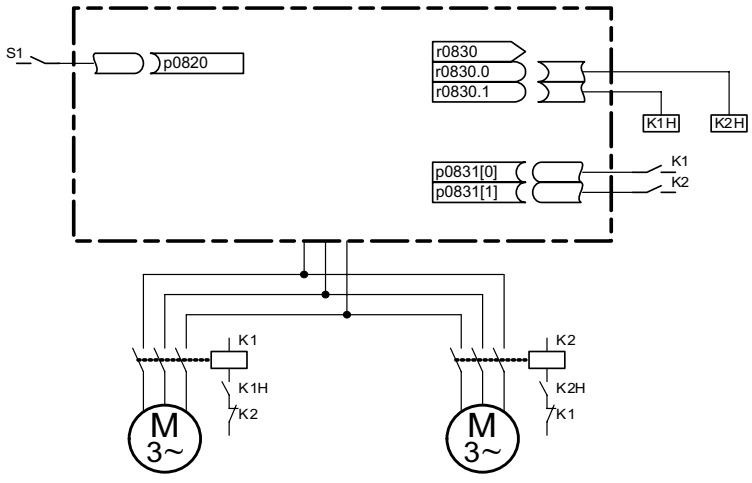


Figure 9-7 Example of motor changeover

Table 9- 3 Settings for the motor changeover example

Parameter	Settings	Comment
p0130	2	Configure 2 MDS
p0180	2	Configure 2 DDS
p0186[0..1]	0, 1	The MDS are assigned to the DDS.
p0820	Digital input, DDS selection	The digital input to change over the motor is selected via the DDS. Binary coding is used (p0820 = bit 0, etc.).
p0821 to p0824	0	
p0826[0..1]	1, 2	Different numbers mean different thermal models.
p0827[0..1]	0, 1	The bits of r0830 are assigned to the MDSs. If p0827[0] = 0, for example, bit r0830.0 is set via DDS0 when MDS0 is selected.
r0830.0 and r0830.1	Digital outputs, auxiliary contactors	The digital outputs for the auxiliary contactors are assigned to the bits.
p0831[0..1]	Digital inputs, auxiliary contacts	The digital inputs for the feedback signal of the motor contactors are assigned.
p0833.00 and .01	0, 0	The drive controls the contactor circuit and pulse inhibition.

Motor changeover sequence

1. Pulse suppression:
   The pulses are suppressed following the selection of a new drive data set using p0820 to p0824.
2. Open motor contactor:
   Motor contactor 1 is opened (r0830 = 0) and the status bit "Motor changeover active" (r0835.0) is set.
3. Change over drive data set:
   The requested data set is activated (r0051 = data set currently effective, r0837 = requested data set).
4. Energize motor contactor:
   After the feedback signal (motor contactor opened) from motor contactor 1, the appropriate bit of r0830 is set and motor contactor 2 is energized.
5. Enable pulses:
   After the feedback signal (motor contactor closed) from motor contactor 2, the bit "motor data set changeover active" (r0835.0) is reset and the pulses are enabled. The motor has now been changed over.

9.2.7.3 Function diagram

FP 8565 Drive Data Set (DDS)
FP 8575 Motor Data Sets (MDS)

9.2.7.4 Parameters

- r0051 Drive data set DDS effective
- p0130 Motor data sets (MDS) number
- p0180 Drive data set (DDS) number
- p0186 Motor data sets (MDS) number
- p0819[0...2] Copy drive data set DDS
- p0820 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 0
- p0821 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 1
- p0822 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 2
- p0823 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 3
- p0824 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 4
- p0826 Motor changeover, motor number
- p0827 Motor changeover status word bit number
- p0828 Motor changeover, feedback signal
- r0830 Motor changeover, status
- p0831 Motor changeover, contactor feedback signal
- p0833 Data set changeover configuration

9.2.8 Friction characteristic curve

Description

The friction characteristic is used to compensate for the frictional torque of the motor and driven load. A friction characteristic allows the speed controller to be pre-controlled and improves the control response..

10 points along the characteristic are used for the friction characteristic. The coordinates of every interpolation point are defined by a speed parameter (p382x) and a torque parameter (p383x) (point 1 = p3820 and p3830, point 10 = p3829 and p3839).

Features

- There are 10 points along the characteristic to represent the friction characteristic.
- An automatic function supports the friction characteristic plot.
- A connector output (r3841) can be interconnected as friction torque (p1569).
- The friction characteristic can be activated and deactivated (p3842).

Commissioning

Speeds for making measurements as a function of the maximum speed p1082 are pre-assigned in p382x when commissioning the drive system for the first time. These can be appropriately changed corresponding to the actual requirements.

The automatic friction characteristic plot can be activated using p3845. The characteristic is then plotted the next time that it is enabled.

The following settings are possible:

- p3845 = 0 Friction characteristic plot deactivated
- p3845 = 1 Friction characteristic plot activated, all directions
  The friction characteristic is plotted in both directions of rotation. The result of the positive and negative measurement is averaged and entered into p383x.
- p3845 = 2 Friction characteristic plot activated, positive direction
- p3845 = 3 Friction characteristic plot activated, negative direction

p3847 (friction characteristic plot warm-up period) can be used to set a time for the drive to warm up to the specified operating temperature. During this time, the drive is brought up to and kept at the greatest speed set for plotting the friction characteristic, so that the drive warms up to the operating temperature. Then measurement is started with the highest speed.

⚠DANGER

Danger due to movement of the motor

When the friction characteristic is plotted, the drive can cause the motor to move. As a result, the motor may reach maximum speed.

When commissioning the drive, the EMERGENCY STOP functions must function perfectly. To protect the machines and personnel, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.

Function diagram

FP 7010 Friction characteristic curve

Parameter

- p3820 Friction characteristic, value n0
- ...
- p3839 Friction characteristic, value M9
- r3840 Friction characteristic status word
- r3841 Friction characteristic, output
- p3842 Activate friction characteristic
- p3843 Friction characteristic smoothing time friction moment difference
- p3844 Friction characteristic number changeover point at the top
- p3845 Activate friction characteristic plot
- p3846 Friction characteristic plot ramp-up/ramp-down time
- p3847 Friction characteristic plot warm-up period

9.2.9 Armature short-circuit braking, DC braking

9.2.9.1 General

The "External armature short-circuit" function for permanent-magnet synchronous motors initiates an external contactor which short-circuits the motor via resistors when the pulses are canceled. This reduces the kinetic energy of the motor.

The "Internal armature short-circuit braking" function for permanent-magnet synchronous motors short-circuits a half-bridge in the power unit to control the motor power consumption, thus braking the motor.

The "DC braking" function for induction motors injects direct current into the motor, thus braking the motor.

9.2.9.2 External armature short-circuit braking

Description

External armature short-circuit braking is only available for synchronous motors. It is used preferably when braking in a hazardous situation, if controlled braking via the drive is no longer possible (for example, in the event of a power failure, an EMERGENCY OFF, etc.) or if no regenerative infeed is used. In this case, the motor stator windings are short-circuited via external braking resistors. This means that an additional resistance is inserted in the motor circuit that supports reducing the kinetic energy of the motor.

The external armature short circuit is activated via p1231 = 1 (with contactor feedback signal) or p1231 = 2 (without contactor feedback signal). It is initiated when the pulses are canceled.

This function controls an external contactor via output terminals, which then short-circuits the motor through resistors when the pulses are canceled.

A prerequisite for the use of the external armature short circuit is the use of a permanent-magnet synchronous motor (p0300 = 2xx).

NOTICE
Only use short-circuit-proof motors
Only short-circuit proof motors may be used, or suitable resistances must be used for short-circuiting the motor.

Note

Consequences of incorrect parameterization

In case of incorrect parameterization (e.g., induction motor and external armature short-circuit selected), fault F07906 "Armature short circuit / internal voltage protection: Parameterization error" is output.

Function diagram

FP 7014 Technology functions - External armature short circuit

Parameter

- p0300: Mot type selection
- p1230 BI: Armature short-circuit/DC braking activation
- p1231 Armature short-circuit/DC braking configuration
  - 1: External armature short-circuit with contactor feedback signal
  - 2: External armature short-circuit without contactor feedback signal
- p1235 BI: External armature short-circuit, contactor feedback signal
- p1236 External armature short-circuit, contactor feedback signal monitoring time
- p1237 External armature short-circuit, delay time when opening
- r1238 CO: External armature short-circuit state
- r1239 CO/BO: Armature short-circuit/DC braking status word

9.2.9.3 Internal armature short-circuit braking

Description

Internal armature short-circuit braking is only available for synchronous motors. It is used preferably when braking in a hazardous situation, if controlled braking via the drive is no longer possible (for example, in the event of a power failure, an EMERGENCY OFF, etc.) or if no regenerative infeed is used. In this case, the motor stator windings are short-circuited via a half-bridge in the power unit. This means that an additional resistance is inserted in the motor circuit that supports reducing the kinetic energy of the motor.

The internal armature short circuit is configured via p1231 = 4 and activated via p1230. It is initiated when the pulses are canceled.

A permanent-magnet synchronous motor (p0300 = 2xx) is required in order to use the internal armature short-circuit.

⚠DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage

When the armature short-circuit is active, after the pulses have been cancelled all the motor terminals are at half the DC-link potential.

NOTICE

Only use short-circuit-proof motors

Only short-circuit proof motors may be used.

The Power Module / Motor Module must be designed to handle 1.8 times the short-circuit current of the motor.

Function diagram

FP 7016 Technology functions - Internal armature short circuit

Parameter

- p0300: Mot type selection
- p1230 BI: Armature short-circuit/DC braking activation
- p1231 Armature short-circuit/DC braking configuration
  - 4: Internal armature short-circuit/DC braking
- r1239 CO/BO: Armature short-circuit/DC braking status word

9.2.9.4 DC braking

Description

DC braking is only available for induction motors. It is used preferably when braking in a hazardous situation, if controlled braking via the drive is no longer possible (for example, in the event of a power failure, an EMERGENCY OFF, etc.) or if no regenerative infeed is used. .

DC braking is activated via p1231 = 4 or via p1231 = 14. It can be initiated via an input signal p1230 (signal = 1) or a fault response.

Activation of DC braking via input signal

p1231 = 4 (internal armature short-circuit/DC braking)

If DC braking is activated by the digital input signal, the first step is that the pulses are blocked for the duration of the demagnetization time (p0347) of the motor in order to demagnetize the motor - the parameter p1234 (speed at the start of DC braking) is ignored.

Then the braking current (p1232) is applied as long as the input is initiated in order to brake the motor or hold it at standstill.

p1231 = 14 (DC braking below the starting speed)

DC braking is initiated, if during operation a 1-signal is pending at the binector input p1230 and the actual speed is below the starting speed (p1234).

After the preceding demagnetization (p0347) of the motor for the period set in p1233, the braking current p1232 is applied and subsequently switched off automatically.

Cancellation of the input signal for DC braking

If DC braking is withdrawn, the drive returns to its selected operating mode.

The following applies:

- With vector control (closed-loop controlled with or without encoder):
  The drive is synchronized with the motor frequency if the "Flying restart" function is activated, and then returns to closed-loop controlled mode. If the "Flying restart" function is not active, the drive can only be restarted from standstill without overcurrent fault.
- In U/f mode:
  With the "Flying restart" function activated, the converter frequency is synchronized with the motor frequency, and the drive will then return to U/f mode. If the "Flying restart" function is not activated, the drive can only be restarted from standstill without overcurrent fault.

DC braking as a fault response

Activation via p0491 = 4, p2101 = 6 (armature short-circuit, internal/DC braking)

If DC braking is activated as a fault response, the motor is initially braked in field-oriented mode along the braking ramp up to the threshold set in p1234 (speed at the start of DC braking). The slope of the ramp is identical with that of the OFF1 ramp (parameterized using p1082, p1121). Subsequently, the pulses are disabled for the period in p0347 (demagnetizing time) in order to demagnetize the motor. DC braking will start for the duration set in p1233 (DC braking duration).

- If an encoder is present, braking will continue until the speed drops to below standstill threshold p1226.
- If no encoder is present, only the period in p1233 is effective.

Activation via p1231 = 5 (DC braking for OFF1/OFF3)

DC braking is activated with OFF1 or OFF3

- If the motor speed ≥ p1234, the motor is braked down to p1234. As soon as the motor speed is < p1234, the pulses are disabled and the motor is demagnetized.
- If the motor speed at OFF1/OFF3 is already < p1234, the pulses are immediately inhibited and the motor is demagnetized.

DC braking is activated for the period set in p1233 (DC braking duration), then switched off.

When OFF1/OFF3 is prematurely canceled, then normal operation is resumed.

DC braking as emergency braking of a fault response remains active.

Function diagram

FP 7017 Technology functions - DC braking

Parameter

- p0300: Mot type selection
- p0491 Motor encoder fault response: ENCODER
- p1226 Standstill recognition speed threshold
- p1230 BI: Armature short-circuit/DC braking activation
- p1231 Armature short-circuit/DC braking configuration
  - 4: Internal armature short-circuit/DC braking
  - 5: DC braking OFF1/OFF3
  - 14: DC braking below starting speed
- p1232 DC braking, braking current
- p1233 DC braking duration
- p1234 Speed at the start of DC braking
- r1239 CO/BO: Armature short-circuit/DC braking status word
- p1345 I_max voltage controller proportional gain
- p1346 I_max voltage controller integral time
- p2101 Setting the fault response

9.2.10 Increasing the output frequency

9.2.10.1 Description

In applications that require higher output frequencies, the pulse frequency of the converter may have to be increased.

It may also be necessary to change the pulse frequency to prevent resonances from occurring.

Since increasing the pulse frequency also increases the switching losses, a derating factor for the output current must be taken into account when the drive is configured.

Once the pulse frequency has been increased, the new output currents are automatically included in the calculation for power unit protection.

Note

Use of a sine-wave filter

Use of a sine-wave filter (option L15) must be selected using p0230 = 3 when commissioning. This setting fixes the pulse frequency to 4 kHz or 2.5 kHz and it cannot be changed.

9.2.10.2 Default pulse frequencies

The specified maximum output frequencies can be achieved with the default pulse frequencies listed below.

Table 9- 4 Maximum output frequency with default pulse frequency

Converter rating [kW]	Default pulse frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]
Line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V		
110 ... 250	2	160
315 ... 900	1.25	100
Line voltage 3 AC 500 ... 600 V		
110 ... 1000	1.25	100
Line voltage 3 AC 660 ... 690 V		
75 ... 1500	1.25	100

The pulse frequencies set in the factory are also the minimum frequencies.

The scanning times for the inputs and outputs of the customer terminal block TM31 are set in the factory to 4000 µs. This is also the minimum limit.

9.2.10.3 Increasing the pulse frequency

Description

The pulse frequency can be increased in a virtually continuously variable manner to between the value preassigned in the factory and the maximum pulse frequency which can be set.

Procedure

1. Parameter p0009 on the Control Unit must be set to 3 "Basic drive configuration".
2. Parameter p0112 "Sampling times default setting p0115" of the DO VECTOR must be set to 0 "Expert".
3. Use p0113 to enter any pulse frequency between 1 kHz and 2 kHz. If a higher pulse frequency is to be set (e.g., 2.2 kHz), this value must be divided by 2 or by 4 to obtain a result between 1 kHz and 2 kHz (e.g., 2.2 kHz divided by 2 is 1.1 kHz).
4. Not all pulse frequencies are accepted in parameter p0113; in such cases, the alarm "Impermissible value" is output.
5. If the frequency entered in parameter p0113 is not accepted, parameter r0114[0] recommends a different frequency that can deviate from the entered pulse frequency by several Hertz. This frequency should be entered in p0113.

6. After entering the frequency in p0113, parameter p0009 on the Control Unit must be set to 0 "Ready" again.
7. The Control Unit re-initializes. After booting, the pulse frequencies recommended in r0114[i] (i = 1, 2, ...) can be entered in parameter p1800 "Pulse frequency" of the DO VECTOR.

Note

Entering the pulse frequency

The pulse frequency entered in p1800 must correspond precisely to the value given in r0114[i]; otherwise, the entry will be rejected.

9.2.10.4 Maximum output frequency achieved by increasing the pulse frequency

By multiplying the basis pulse frequency (with integers), the following output frequencies can be achieved (taking into account the derating factors):

Table 9- 5 Maximum output frequency achieved by increasing the pulse frequency

Pulse frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]
1.25	100
2	160
2.5	200
4	300 [1)]
5	300 [1)]

[1)] The maximum output frequency is limited to 300 Hz due to the closed-loop control.

9.2.10.5 Parameters

- p0009 Device commissioning parameter filter
- p0112 Sampling times pre-setting p0115
- p0113 Selects the minimum pulse frequency
- p0115 Sampling times
- p1800 Pulse frequency

9.2.11 Derating behavior at increased pulse frequency

Description

To reduce motor noise or to increase output frequency, the pulse frequency can be increased relative to the factory setting.

The increase in the pulse frequency normally results in a reduction of the maximum output current (see "Technical data/current derating depending on the pulse frequency").

When commissioning the converter the behavior at overload is adjusted in such a manner that the pulse frequency is variably reduced so that the required power can be obtained.

Characteristics:

- The reaction to overload depends on the setting of parameter p0290:
  - p0290 = 0: Reduce output current or output frequency
  - p0290 = 1: No reduction, shutdown when overload threshold is reached
  - p0290 = 2: Reduce the output current or output and pulse frequency (not using I^2t).
  - p0290 = 3: Reduce the pulse frequency (not using I^2t)
- For p0290 = 2 at overload first reduce the pulse frequency (and consequently the output frequency) until it has dropped to rated pulse frequency, then reduce the output frequency if overload continues to persist.
  The rated pulse frequency is half the inverse value of the current controller clock cycle: 0.5 x 1/p0115[0].
- Reduction of the pulse frequency is executed in whole multiples based on the rated pulse frequency (5 kHz -> 2.5 kHz -> 1.25 kHz or 4 kHz -> 2 kHz).
- After entering the maximum speed in p1082 the system automatically calculates whether the pulse frequency is sufficient for the entered maximum speed, if necessary the pulse frequency is increased automatically to a value that is necessary for this.
  At overload, then also for p0290 = 2 or 3, this new pulse frequency will no longer be underranged, the downstream reaction (reduce output voltage or switch off) will be triggered.

Exceptions:

- With an activated sinus filter (p0230 = 3, 4), this behavior is not permitted because the factory set pulse frequency (2.5 kHz or 4 kHz) should not be changed through this measure. Consequently in this case the selection possibility for the parameter p0290 is limited to "0" and "1".

Activation of the variable pulse frequency

At commissioning the parameter p 0290 is automatically set to the value "2". This activates pulse frequency reduction at overload.

Deactivation of the variable pulse frequency

By changing the parameter p0290 to "0" or "1" the variable pulse frequency is deactivated.

Function diagram

FP 8014	Signals and monitoring functions - thermal monitoring power unit

Parameter

- r0036 Power unit overload I2t
- r0037 CO: Power unit temperatures
- p0115 Sampling times for internal control loops
- p0230 Drive filter type, motor side
- p0290 Power unit overload response
- p1082 Maximum speed
- r2135.13 Fault thermal overload power unit
- r2135.15 Thermal overload in power unit alarm

9.2.12 Pulse frequency wobbling

Description

Pulse frequency wobbling is when the pulse frequency is varied slightly according to a statistical process. The average pulse frequency value is still the value set; the statistical variation of the instantaneous value results in a modified noise spectrum.

This procedure reduces the subjectively noticeable motor noise, especially for the relatively low pulse frequencies set in the factory.

Pulse frequency wobbling is activated with p1810.2 = 1. The amplitude of the static wobbling signal can be set in the range from 0% to 20% via p1811.

For units connected in parallel, pulse frequency wobbling is activated automatically during commissioning.

Restrictions

- Pulse frequency wobbling can only be activated under the following conditions (p1810.2 = 1):
  - The drive is pulse suppressed.
  - p1800 < 2 x 1000 / p0115[0]
- p1811 (Pulse frequency wobbling amplitude) can only be set under the following conditions:
  - p1802.2 = 1
  - p0230 (output filter) < 3 (no sine-wave filter)
- When pulse frequency wobbling is activated and impulses are enabled, the maximum pulse frequency (p1800) can be set as follows:
  - For p1811 = 0: p1800 ≤ 2 x 1000 / p0115[0]
  - For p1811 > 0: p1800 ≤ 1000 / p0115[0]
- When pulse frequency wobbling is activated and impulses are enabled, if the maximum pulse frequency (p1800) is set to be greater than 1000 / p0115[0], then p1811 is set to 0.
- When pulse frequency wobbling is activated and impulses are suppressed, if the maximum pulse frequency (p1800) is set to be greater than 2 x 1000 / p0115[0], then p1811 and p1810.2 are set to 0.

Note

Disable pulse frequency wobbling

If pulse frequency wobbling is deactivated (p1810.2 = 0), then all the indices of parameter p1811 are set to 0.

Parameters

- p1800 Pulse frequency setpoint
- p1810.2 Wobbling activated
- p1811[D] Pulse frequency wobbling amplitude

9.2.13 Runtime (operating hours counter)

Total system runtime

The entire system runtime is displayed in r2114 (Control Unit); it is made up of r2114[0] (milliseconds) and r2114[1] (days).
Index 0 indicates the system runtime in milliseconds; after reaching 86.400.000 ms (24 hours), the value is reset. Index 1 indicates the system runtime in days.

The value is saved when the system is switched off.
Once the drive unit has been switched on, the counter continues to run with the value that was saved the last time the drive was switched off.

Relative system runtime

The relative system runtime since the last POWER ON is displayed in p0969 (Control Unit). The value is indicated in milliseconds and the counter overflows after 49 days.

Actual motor operating hours

The motor operating hours counter p0650 (drive) resumes when the pulses are enabled. When the pulse enable is withdrawn, the counter is stopped and the value saved.

To store the value, you need a CONTROL UNIT with order number 6SL3040-....-0AA1 and version C or higher.

The counter is deactivated with p0651 = 0.

If the maintenance interval set in p0651 is reached, alarm A01590 is triggered. Once the motor has been maintained, the maintenance interval must be reset.

Operating hours counter for the fan

The operating hours of the fan in the power unit are displayed in p0251 (drive).

The number of hours operated can only be reset to 0 in this parameter (e.g. after a fan has been replaced).

The service life of the fan is entered in p0252 (drive).

Alarm A30042 (service life of the fan reached or exceeded) is output when this figure is reached, and also 500 hours beforehand. Evaluation of the fault value in the alarm provides details of the cause of the alarm.

Monitoring is deactivated with p0252 = 0.

9.2.14 Simulation operation

Description

The simulation function is predominantly used to simulate the drive without a motor being connected and without a DC link voltage. In this case, it should be noted that the simulation mode can only be activated under an actual DC link voltage of 40 V. If the voltage lies above this threshold, the simulation mode is reset, and a fault message F07826 is issued.

Communications with a higher-level automation system can be tested using the simulation mode. If the drive is also to return actual values, note that it must be switched over to encoderless operation during simulation mode. This means that large parts of the SINAMICS software (e.g., software channel, sequence control, communications, technology function, etc.) can be tested in advance without requiring a motor.

Another application is to test the correct functioning of the Power Module. Especially for drive units with higher power ratings 75 kW (690 V) and 110 kW (400 V), after repairs, it is necessary to test the gating of the power semiconductors. This is done by injecting a low DC voltage as DC link voltage (e.g. 12 V). The drive unit is then powered-up and the pulses enabled. It must be possible to run through all of the pulse patterns of the gating unit software.

This means that the software must allow the pulses to be switched-in and various frequencies approached. If a speed encoder is not being used, then this is generally implemented using V/f control or sensorless closed-loop speed control.

Note

Deactivated functions in simulation mode

The following functions are deactivated in the simulation mode:

- Motor data identification
- Motor data identification, rotating without encoder
- Pole position identification

No flying restart is carried-out for V/f control and sensorless closed-loop vector control.

Commissioning

Simulation is activated using p1272 = 1; the following pre-requisites must be fulfilled:

- The drive unit must have been commissioned for the first time (default: Standard induction motors).
- The DC link voltage must lie below 40 V (observe the tolerance of the DC link voltage sensing).

Alarm A07825 (simulation mode activated) must be output during simulation operation.

Parameters

- p1272 Simulation operation

9.2.15 Direction reversal

Description

The direction of rotation of the motor can be reversed using direction reversal via p1821 without having to change the motor rotating field by interchanging two phases on the motor and inverting the encoder signals using p0410.

Reversal via p1821 can be detected from the motor direction of rotation. The speed setpoint and actual value, torque setpoint and actual value remain unchanged, as does the relative position change.

A pulse inhibit must be set prior to attempting reversal.

Reversing can be set differently for each drive data set.

Note

Drive data set changeover with differently set direction reversal

When changing over the drive data set to differently set reversing and with pulse approval, fault F7434 is issued.

Reversing can be observed by checking parameters r0069 (phase currents) and r0089 (phase voltage). The absolute position reference is lost on reversal.

Function diagram

FD 4704, 4715	Encoder evaluation
FD 6730, 6731	Current control

Parameters

- r0069 Phase currents actual value
- r0089 Phase voltage actual value
- p1820 Reverse output phase sequence
- p1821 Direction of rotation

9.2.16 Unit changeover

Description

Parameters and process variables for input and output can be switched to a suitable units system (SI units, US units or referenced variables (%)) with the help of the unit changeover function.

The following constraints apply to the unit changeover:

- Unit changeover is only possible for the "VECTOR" drive object.
- Parameters of the rating plate of the drive converter or the motor rating plate can be changed over between SI/US units; however, a per unit representation is not possible.
- Once the changeover parameter has been changed, all parameters that are assigned to a unit group depending on this parameter are jointly changed over to the new unit.
- A separate parameter is available for selecting technological units (p0595) for the representation of technological variables in the technology controller.
- If a changeover is made to referenced variables and the reference variable is subsequently changed, the % value entered in a parameter will not change.

  Example:

  – With a reference speed of 1500 1/min, a fixed speed of 80 % corresponds to a value of 1200 1/min.
  – If the reference speed is changed to 3000 1/min, the value of 80 % is retained and is now 2400 1/min.

Restrictions

- When a unit changeover occurs, rounding to the decimal places is carried out. This can mean that the original value might change by up to one decimal place.
- If a referenced form is selected and the reference parameters (e.g. p2000) are changed retrospectively, the physical significance of some of the control parameters is also adjusted, which can affect the control behavior.
- If the reference variables (p2000 to p2007) are changed in the offline mode in STARTER, there is a risk that the parameter value ranges will be violated. In this case, appropriate fault messages will be displayed when the parameters are loaded to the drive unit.

Changing over the units

The units can be changed over via the AOP30 and via STARTER.

- Unit changeover via AOP30 is always carried out immediately. Once the corresponding parameters have been changed, the values affected are displayed in the new selected unit.
- If STARTER is used, unit changeover can only take place in offline mode in the configuration screen of the corresponding drive object. The new units are not displayed until after the download ("Load project to target system") and subsequent upload ("Load project to PG") have been completed.

Unit groups

Each parameter that can be switched is assigned to a unit group which can be switched within certain limits depending on the group.

This assignment and the units groups for each parameter appear in the parameter list in the SINAMICS List Manual.

The unit groups can be individually switched using 4 parameters (p0100, p0349, p0505 and p0595).

Parameters

- p0010 Commissioning parameter filter
- p0100 IEC/NEMA mot stds
- p0349 Selection of units system, motor equivalent circuit diagram data
- p0505 Selection of units system
- p0595 Selection of technological unit
- p0596 Reference variable of technological unit
- p2000 Reference frequency/speed
- p2001 Reference voltage
- p2002 Reference current
- p2003 Reference torque
- p2004 Reference power
- p2005 Reference angle
- p2007 Reference acceleration

9.2.17 Simple brake control

Description

The "Simple brake control" is used exclusively for the control of holding brakes. The holding brake is used to secure drives against unwanted motion when deactivated.

The control command for releasing and applying the holding brake is transmitted directly to the converter via DRIVE-CLiQ from the control unit, which logically combines the signals with the system-internal processes and monitors these signals.

The converter then performs the action and controls the output for the holding brake appropriately.
The operating principle of the holding brake can be configured using parameter p1215.

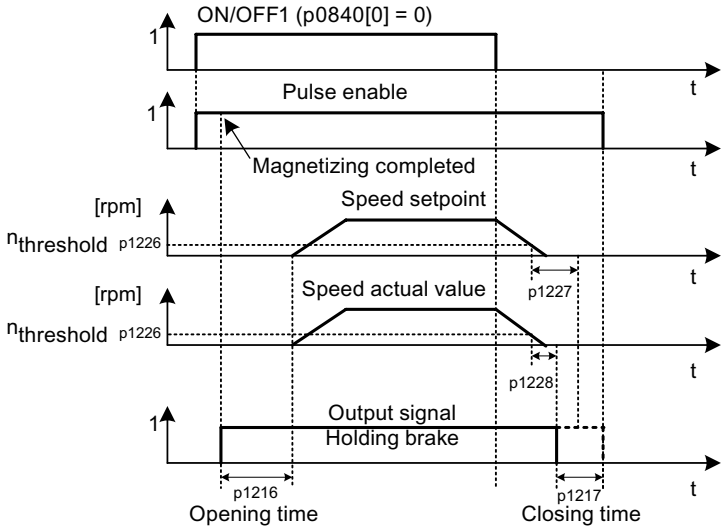


Figure 9-8 Sequence diagram, simple brake control

The start of the closing time for the brake depends on the expiration of the shorter of the two times p1227 (standstill detection monitoring time) and p1228 (pulse cancellation delay time).

⚠ WARNING

Use of the holding brake

The holding brake must not be used as a service brake.

When holding brakes are used, the special technological and machine-specific conditions and standards for ensuring personnel and machine safety must be observed.

The risks involved must also be evaluated, such as risks associated with suspended axes.

Features

- Automatic activation by means of sequence control
- Standstill (zero-speed) monitoring
- Forced brake release (p0855, p1215)
- Application of brake for a 1 signal "unconditionally close holding brake" (p0858)
- Application of brake after "Enable speed controller" signal has been canceled (p0856)

Signal connections

The holding brake is controlled using free digital outputs on the Control Unit or the TM31 (for option G60). If necessary, control must be realized by means of a relay to connect a holding brake with higher voltage or with higher power demand.

For this, parameter p1215 must be set to "3" (motor holding brake the same as sequence control, connection via BICO) and the appropriate BICO parameters of the selected digital outputs must be interconnected.

Commissioning

If p1215 is set to "0" (no brake available) during initial commissioning and a connected brake is recognized, simple brake control is activated automatically (p1215 = 1). In this case, fault F07935 "Motor holding brake detected" appears and must be acknowledged.

NOTICE
Destroying the brake If parameter p1215 is set to "0" (no brake available) when a brake is actually present, the drive operates against applied brake. This can destroy the brake.

Notes on setting the release (opening) time (p1216):

- The release time (p1216) should be set longer than the actual release time of the holding brake. As a result, the drive will not accelerate when the brake is closed.

Notes for setting the closing time (p1217):

- The closing time (p1217) should be set longer than the actual closing time of the holding brake. As a result, the pulses are suppressed only after the holding brake is closed.
- If the closing time (p1217) is set too low compared to the actual closing time of the holding brake, the load may drop suddenly.
- If the closing time (p1217) is set too high compared to the actual closing time of the holding brake, the controller acts against the holding brake and thus reduces its service life.

Function diagram

FP 2701	Simple brake control (r0108.14 = 0)

Parameter

- r0056.4 Magnetizing completed
- r0060 CO: Speed setpoint before the setpoint filter
- r0063[0...2] CO: Speed actual value
- r0108.14 Extended brake control
- p0855[C] BI: Unconditionally release holding brake
- p0856 BI: Speed controller enabled
- p0858 BI: Unconditionally apply holding brake
- r0899.12 BO: Holding brake open
- r0899.13 BO: Command, close holding brake
- p1215 Motor holding brake configuration
- p1216 Motor holding brake release time
- p1217 Motor holding brake closing time
- p1226 Threshold for standstill detection
- p1227 Standstill detection monitoring time
- p1228 Pulse suppression delay time
- p1278 Brake control diagnostic evaluation

9.2.18 Energy saving indicator for pumps, fans, and compressors

Function of the energy savings indicator

This function determines the amount of energy used by pumps, fans, and compressors and compares it with the interpolated energy requirement for similar equipment controlled using conventional throttle control.
The amount of energy saved is calculated over the last 100 operating hours and is displayed in kWh. For an operating time of less than 100 hours, the potential energy-saving is interpolated up to 100 operating hours.
The pump, fan or compressor characteristic with the conventional throttle control is specified using 5 adjustable interpolation points.

Background

In a conventionally controlled pump, fan or compressor, the flow rate of the medium is controlled using valves or throttles. In so doing, the machine runs constantly at the rated speed. The system efficiency decreases significantly if the flow rate is reduced by means of valves or throttles. The pressure in the system increases. The motor even consumes energy when the valves or throttles are completely closed, i.e., with flow rate Q = 0. In addition, undesirable process-related situations can occur; for example, cavitation in the pumps, fans, and compressors or increased temperature rise of pumps, fans, and compressors and the medium.

As a result of variable speed operation, a drive operating under partial load conditions consumes considerably less energy than with conventional process control using valves or throttles. This applies in particular for pumps, fans, and compressors with parabolic load characteristics. With SINAMICS, a closed-loop control of the flow rate or pressure is achieved by employing closed-loop speed control of the pump, fan or compressor. As a consequence, the plant or system is controlled close to its maximum efficiency over the complete operating range.

In comparison to pumps, fans, and compressors, machines with linear or constant load characteristic (e.g. conveyor drives or positive displacement pumps) have lower potential savings.

Energy saving by using a variable speed drive

When a variable speed drive is used, the flow rate of the pump, fan, or compressor is controlled as a function of speed. The flow rate changes proportionally with the speed of the continuous-flow machine. Any existing valve or throttle remains open. Therefore, the equipment works close to optimum efficiency and consumes considerably less energy, particularly in the partial load range, than equipment controlled by means of valves or throttles.

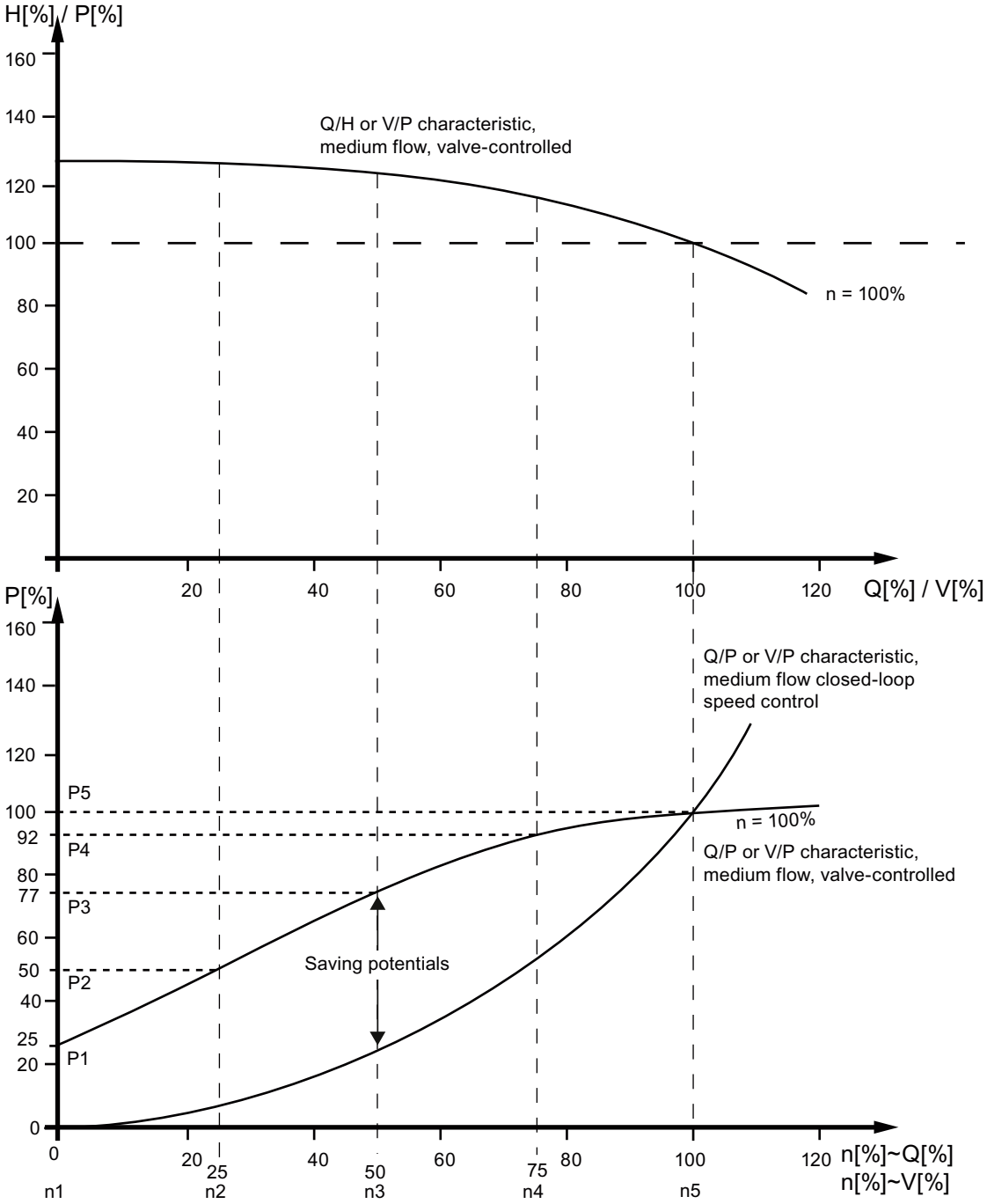


Figure 9-9 Potential for energy savings

Legend for top characteristic:
H[%] = Head, P[%] = Flow pressure, Q[%] = Flow rate, V[%] = Volumetric flow

Legend for bottom characteristic:
P[%] = Power drawn by the conveyor motor, n[%] = Speed of conveyor motor
Interpolation points p3320 to p3329 for system characteristic with n = 100%:

P1...P5 = Power drawn, n1...n5 = Speed in accordance with variable speed motor

Adapting the pump, fan, or compressor characteristic

The 5 interpolation points of the pump, fan, or compressor characteristic are entered using parameters p3320 to p3329. This characteristic can be configured individually for each drive data set.

Table 9- 6 Interpolation points of the pump, fan, or compressor characteristic

Interpolation point	Parameter	Factory setting: P: Power in % n: Speed in %	
1	p3320	P1 = 25.00	
	p3321	n1 = 0.00	
2	p3322	P2 = 50.00	
	p3323	n2 = 25.00	
3	p3324	P3 = 77.00	
	p3325	n3 = 50.00	
4	p3326	P4 = 92.00	
	p3327	n4 = 77.00	
5	p3328	P5 = 100.00	
	p3329	n5 = 100.00	

Note

Consequences of not adjusting the pump, fan, or compressor curve

If the interpolation points of the pump, fan, or compressor curve are not adapted, the factory setting will be used to calculate the energy saving indicator. The values of the factory setting could then deviate from the equipment characteristic and cause incorrect calculation of the actual energy savings.

Energy saving indication

The energy saving is displayed in parameter r0041.

By setting p0040 = 1, the value of parameter r0041 is reset to 0. Parameter p0040 is then automatically set to 0.

9.2.19 Write protection

Description

Write protection is used to prevent setting parameters from being accidentally changed. No password is required for write protection.

Activating write protection

Write protection can be activated as follows:

- With STARTER in the online mode, after selecting the drive unit via **Project > Write protection drive unit > Activate**.
- Using the AOP30 operator panel via p7761 = 1.

All setting parameters involved with write protection can no longer be changed.

In STARTER all write-protected setting parameters have a gray background in the expert list and in the operating screen forms.

If, in AOP30, an attempt is made to change a write-protected setting parameter, then this is rejected with the corresponding error message.

Write requests from write-protected setting parameters via communication are treated in different ways:

- Parameter changes involving class 1 controllers (controls, e.g. SIMATIC) are executed.
- Parameter changes of class 2 controllers (engineering or commissioning total, e.g. STARTER) are not executed.

Deactivating write protection

Write protection can be deactivated as follows:

- With STARTER in the online mode, after selecting the drive unit via **Project > Write protection drive unit > Deactivate**.
- Using the AOP30 operator panel via p7761 = 0.

Write protection status

The status of write protection can be displayed using parameter r7760.0:

- r7760.0 = 0: Write protection is not active
- r7760.0 = 1: Write protection is active

Exceptions when write protection is active

The following functions or adjustable parameters are excluded from the write protection:

- Changing the access level (p0003)
- Commissioning the parameter filter (p0009)
- Module detection via LED (p0124, p0144, p0154)
- Resetting parameters (p0972, p0976)
- Saving parameters (p0977)
- Acknowledge a fault (p2102, p3981)
- RTC time stamp, set time, synchronization (p3100, p3101, p3103)
- Master control mode selection (p3985)
- Trace (p 4700ff.)
- Function generator (p4800ff.)
- Activating/deactivating write protection (p7761)
- Flashing component (p9210, p9211)

Note

List of the exceptions for activated write protection

A list of the adjustable parameters which, in spite of the write protection, can be changed is provided in the List Manual.
The list has the designation "WRITE_NO_LOCK".

Write protection for multi-master fieldbus systems

For fieldbus systems (e.g. CAN bus), which can be operated as multi-master bus systems, when write protection is activated, all setting parameters can be accessed.

For these bus systems, parameter p7762 can be used to set the behavior when write protection is activated:

- p7762 = 0: Write access independent of p7761
- p7762 = 1: Write access dependent on p7761

Parameter

- r7760 Write protection/know-how protection status
- p7761 Write protection
- p7762 Write protection multi-master fieldbus system access behavior

9.2.20 Know-how protection

9.2.20.1 Description

The know-how protection is used, for example, so that a machine manufacturer can encrypt his configuration know-how and protect it against changes and copying.

For know-how protection, a password is required; saved data is encrypted.

When know-how protection is activated, most of the setting parameters cannot be changed and cannot be read out. The display parameters are shown unchanged. The contents of screen forms in STARTER are not displayed.

Know-how protection can be combined with copy protection.

Functions, which can be executed when know-how protection is active

The following functions can be executed although know-how protection is active:

- Restoring factory settings
- Saving parameters
- Acknowledging faults
- Displaying faults and alarms
- Displaying the history of faults and alarms
- Reading out the diagnostic buffer
- Switching over to the control panel (complete control panel functionality: Fetch master control, all buttons and setting parameters)

Note

List of the exceptions when know-how protection is activated

A list of the adjustable parameters which, in spite of activated know-how protection, can be changed, is provided in the List Manual.
The list has the designation "KHP_WRITE_NO_LOCK".

Functions, which cannot be executed when know-how protection is active

The following functions cannot be executed when know-how protection is active:

- Download
- Export/import
- Trace function
- Function generator
- Measuring functions
- Automatic controller setting
- Stationary/rotating measurement
- Clear fault buffer

Setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is active

The following setting parameters cannot be changed, but can be read, when know-how protection is activated:

- Motor parameters (p0100, p0300, p0304, p0305, p0349)
- Data sets (p0120, p0130, p0140, p0150, p0170, p0180)
- Encoder type (p0400)
- Reference quantities (p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, p2005, p2006, p2007)

These parameters are shown in STARTER in the expert list with a gray background.

Note

List of the setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is active

A list of the setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is activated, are provided in the List Manual.
The list has the designation "KHP_ACTIVE_READ".

AOP30 with activated know-how protection

When know-how protection is activated, the AOP30 operator panel does not show protected parameters.

The setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is active, are displayed. An attempt to change such an adjustable parameter, will be rejected and an error message displayed.

9.2.20.2 Activating know-how protection

Know-how protection can be activated via STARTER in the online mode.

Activating know-how protection

Know-how protection is activated via STARTER in the online mode as follows:

- Select the drive unit via **Project > Know-how protection drive unit > Activate**.
- A dialog appears in which the following settings can be made:
  - It can be selected as to whether know-how protection should be realized with or without copy protection.
  - By clicking on **Define** an additional dialog opens, in which the password can be entered and acknowledged. The password must comprise at least one character, it may not exceed a length of 30 characters, all characters are permissible.
  - By selecting **Copy from RAM to ROM** the settings are permanently saved after exiting the screen form.
    If **Copy RAM to ROM** is not selected, then the settings for know-how protection are only saved in a volatile fashion and are no longer available after the system has been switched on the next time.
- After closing the dialog with **OK** know-how protection is activated, the data (parameters, DCC) are saved, encrypted on the memory card.
  In all of the protected setting parameters, in the expert list, instead of the parameter value, the "know-how protected" text is displayed.

Note

Password check for know-how protection and Windows language settings

A change to the Windows language settings after activating know-how protection can cause errors for a subsequent password verification. As a consequence, only characters from the ASCII character set should be used for the password.

Note regarding know-how protection

NOTICE
Safely deleting existing unencrypted data If unencrypted data have already been saved on the memory card before saving encrypted data, then this data will not be safely deleted. No special deletion method is applied in order to completely and finally remove unencrypted data from the memory card. In this case, users must ensure that the unencrypted data are safely and reliably deleted, for instance by using special PC-based tools.

9.2.20.3 Deactivating know-how protection

Know-how protection can be deactivated via STARTER in the online mode.

Deactivating know-how protection

Know-how protection is deactivated via STARTER in the online mode as follows:

- Select the drive unit via **Project > Know-how protection drive unit > Deactivate**.
- A dialog appears in which the know-how protection can be temporarily or permanently deactivated:
  - Temporary deactivation:
    Select **temporary** and enter the password, accept using **OK**.
  - Final deactivation:
    Select **final** and enter the password, select **Copy RAM to ROM** and accept using **OK**.

Note when deactivating know-how protection

Note

Permanently or temporarily deactivating know-how protection

Temporary deactivation means that know-how protection is active again after a POWER ON. Data is still saved on the memory card in an encrypted form. The existing password is used to reactivate know-how protection.

Final deactivation means that know-how protection is no longer active, even after a POWER ON. Data is saved on the memory card in an unencrypted form (i.e. data is no longer encrypted).

Even if know-how protection has been finally deactivated, it can still be reactivated when required.

9.2.20.4 Changing the know-how protection password

Changing the password for know-how protection can be realized via STARTER in the online mode.

Changing the password

The password for know-how protection can be changed as follows via STARTER in the online mode:

- Select the drive unit via **Project > Know-how protection drive unit > Change password**.

- A dialog appears in which the following entries can be made:
  - Enter the old password
  - Enter the new password
    The password must comprise at least one character, it may not exceed a length of 30 characters, all characters are permissible.
  - Confirm the new password
- After closing the dialog with **OK**, the changed password is activated.

9.2.20.5 OEM exception list

Setting parameters can be excluded from know-how protection using the OEM exception list. The parameters contained in the exception list can also be read and changed even when know-how protection is activated.

The exception list can only be generated via the expert list in STARTER in online mode. Parameter p7763 is used to define the number of parameters that should be contained in the exception list. In parameter p7764, in each index, the parameter number that should be included in the exception list is entered. The exception list can be separately generated for each drive object.

Note

Changing parameter p7763

After parameter p7763 has been changed, a "Load to PG" must be realized so that the index field of parameter p7764 is adapted.

In the factory setting, the exception list of the Control Unit consists of one parameter (p7763 = 1). p7766 (password input) is entered into parameter p7764[0] of the Control Unit; this means that when know-how protection is activated, the password for deactivation can be entered.

NOTICE

Absolute know-how protection

If parameter p7766 is removed from the exception list and know-how protection is activated, then a password can no longer be entered. This means that know-how protection can no longer be deactivated!
In this case, the drive can only be accessed by restoring the factory settings.

9.2.20.6 Memory card copy protection

Using the memory card copy protection function, it can be ensured that the encrypted data saved on the memory card (parameter and DCC data) cannot be copied to another memory card where they are then subsequently used.

The memory card copy protection can be activated when activating the know-how protection via STARTER.

When know-how protection is activated and the memory card copy protection is activated, data (parameters and DCC) is encrypted, taking into account the serial number of the memory card (r7843) and the Control Unit (r7758).

When the drive unit is powered up, the serial numbers saved on the memory card and the Control Unit are compared to the actual serial numbers. If these serial numbers do not match, then fault F13100 is output and the device can no longer be operated. The individual cause can be determined by evaluating the default value.

9.2.20.7 Replacing devices for know-how protection with copy protection

When transferring configuration data with know-how protection and memory card copy protection between machine manufacturers (OEMs) and end customers, it may be necessary to replace a damaged memory card or a defective Control Unit.

For this particular case, there is a sequence which is then applied when transferring data between the machine manufacturer (OEM) and end customer.

Replacing a defective memory card or a defective Control Unit at the end customer

Assumptions:

- The drive is protected with know-how protection and memory card copy protection
- The end customer has a replacement memory card and/or a replacement Control Unit on-site
- The required STARTER project has not been saved by the end customer.
- The machine manufacturer has the same type of Control Unit as the end customer.

Sequence:

- The end customer tells the machine manufacturer the serial number of the memory card and the Control Unit.
- The machine manufacturer links the STARTER project with the serial numbers of the memory card (p7769) and the Control Unit (p7759).
- The machine manufacturer loads the STARTER project into the drive unit.
- Online, the machine manufacturer activates, after the download, the copy protection and the know-how protection (p7765, p7767, p7768).
- The machine manufacturer saves the project using p0971 or p0977 onto the memory card.
- The machine manufacturer takes the PS-ACX and possibly generated DCC-YDB files from the "..\USER\SINAMICS\DATA" area of the memory card and sends them to the end customer. (for example by E-mail).
- The end customer copies the files into the "..\USER\SINAMICS\DATA" area of his memory card, inserts this into the Control Unit and switches on the drive unit.
- After power-up, the end customer saves the project (using p0971 or p0977); if required, parameters must be reentered from the OEM exception list.

9.2.20.8 Overview of important parameters

- r7758[0...19] KHP Control Unit serial number
- p7759[0...19] KHP Control Unit reference serial number
- r7760 Write protection/know-how protection status
- p7761 Write protection
- p7762 Write protection multi-master fieldbus system access behavior
- p7763 KHP OEM exception list number of indices for p7764
- p7764[0...n] KHP OEM exception list
- p7765 KHP memory card copy protection
- p7766[0...29] KHP password input
- p7767[0...29] KHP password new
- p7768[0...29] KHP password confirmation
- p7769}0...20] KHP memory card reference serial number
- r7843[0...20] Memory card serial number

KHP: Know-how protection (know-how protection)

9.2.21 Essential service mode

Description

Essential **S**ervice **M**ode (ESM) enables the the drive to be operated for as long as possible if needed, even when errors occur.

This function can, for example, be used in applications in which an unwanted standstill can cause considerable consequential damage.
For example, fan drives in large buildings should enable the evacuation of persons using the escape routes in the event of fire by extracting developing smoke gases.

Features

- In essential service mode, the automatic restart function is activated irrespective of the setting of parameter p1210. The result of this is that the drive is automatically switched back on if an OFF2 occurs due to an internal fault.
- In essential service mode, converter shutdown due to faults is suppressed. Exceptions to this rule are faults that would lead to the destruction of the device.
- Essential service mode is triggered by a continuous signal via the digital input, which is set as a signal source via p3880.
- If the drive is in bypass mode when essential service mode is activated, the motor will automatically switch over to converter operation.
- When essential service mode ends, the converter returns to normal operation and responds according to the currently pending commands and setpoints.

⚠ WARNING

Loss of warranty for an converter operated in the essential service mode

Should essential service mode apply, the customer can no longer lodge any claims for warranty.

The essential service mode is an exceptional state, and is not suitable for continuous operation.

Please note that the essential service mode can result in exceptionally high temperatures, including open fire, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. can occur inside and outside the converter.

The converter logs the essential service mode, and the faults that occur while in essential service mode in a password-protected memory. This data is only accessible for the service and repair organization.

Activating essential service mode

Essential service mode is activated through a continuous signal to the digital input, which is set as a signal source via p3880.

Only the digital inputs on the Control Unit are permitted as signal sources:

- r0722.x (high active)
- r0723.x (low active)

x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 20, 21

Setpoint source for essential service mode

When essential service mode is activated, the setpoint which is set via p3881 is switched to:

- p3881 = 0: Last known setpoint (r1078 smoothed) - factory setting
- p3881 = 1: Fixed speed setpoint 15 (p1015)
- p3881 = 3: Setpoint from the fieldbus
- p3881 = 5: Analog setpoint from TB30/TM31
- p3881 = 6: Enable of response OFF1
- p3881 = 7: Enable of response OFF2

When using the analog setpoint value from TB30/TM31 (p3881 = 5) the setpoint is used that is set via p3886.

If, when setting p3881 = 3 or 5, the setpoint is lost (e.g. cable break or fieldbus failure), then the alternative setpoint that is set via p3882 is automatically switched to:

- p3882 = 0: Last known setpoint (r1078 smoothed) - factory setting
- p3882 = 1: Fixed speed setpoint 15 (p1015)
- p3882 = 2: Maximum speed (p1082)

Direction of rotation in essential service mode

Depending on your system, you may have to invert the setpoint locally for essential service mode. To do this, parameter p3883 can be linked with a free digital input:

- Signal in p3883 = 0: The direction of rotation of the setpoint parameterized for essential service mode is maintained
- Signal in p3883 = 1: Reversal of the direction of rotation of the setpoint parameterized for essential service mode

Automatic restart

In essential service mode, if the automatic restart function is activated and the settings of parameters p1206, 1210 and p1212 then have no effect. The settings in p1211 (automatic restart, start attempts) and p1213 (automatic restart monitoring time) are still effective. The setting of p1213 [0] = p1213 [1] = 0.0 s allows an unlimited number of startup attempts.

Bypass as a fallback strategy

If the converter fails due to an internal, non-acknowledgeable fault, essential service mode is no longer possible. In this case, the motor can be operated via the controller in bypass mode in the event of converter failure. For this purpose, bit 7 of the status word for the automatic restart (r1214.7) must be interconnected with p1266.
The bypass function must also be activated (p1260 ≠ 0). and the changeover source for the bypass must be set to "Bypass via signal (BI:I: p1266)" (p1267 = 1).

Behavior in the event of an encoder error

When operating in vector control with encoder in the essential service mode, there is an automatic switchover to sensorless operation and movement of the drive continues in the event of an encoder error.

Function diagram

FP 3040	Setpoint channel - Direction limitation and direction reversal
FP 7033	Technology functions - essential service mode (ESM)

Parameters

- p3880 BI: ESM activation signal source
- p3881 ESM setpoint source
- p3882 ESM alternative setpoint source
- p3883 BI: ESM direction of rotation signal source
- p3886 CI: ESM setpoint TB30/TM31 analog input
- p3887[0 to 1] ESM activations/faults, quantity
- p3888 ESM activations/faults, reset quantity
- r3889.0 to 8 CO/BO: ESM status word

9.2.22 Web server

9.2.22.1 Description

General information

The integrated web server provides information about the drive unit via its web pages. This is accessed via an Internet browser.

The properties of the web server are:

- Provision of diagnostic information
- Acknowledging faults
- Modification of selected drive parameters for subsequent optimization
- Downloading projects and firmware

Transfer

Access is performed by unsecured (http) or secured transmission (https).

The type of transmission is defined by entering the corresponding address.

If necessary, secure transmission can be forced by deactivation of the http port.

Access

The web server is accessed via the following interfaces:

- LAN interface of the Control Unit CU320-2 DP or CU320-2 PN
- PROFINET interface of the CU320-2 PN

Addressing of the drive is based on the IP address.
The IP address can be taken from the following parameters.

- Integrated Ethernet interface (LAN interface): r8911[0...3]
- PROFINET interface: r8931[0...3]

Activation/configuration

The web server is already active in the factory settings.

The web server is configured via parameter p8986 (web server configuration).

Access rights

There are two users, who have different authorizations:

- User "SINAMICS" (activated in the factory setting):
  - Calling diagnostics pages
  - Resetting the fault memory
  - Creating/expanding/removing parameter lists
  - Reading/writing/saving parameters
- User "Administrator," additionally:
  - Updating the configuration
  - Updating the firmware
  - Loading user-defined pages to the drive

The settings of the write and know-how protection also apply to the drive parameters and configuration when accessing the web server.

Browsers supported

Access to the web server is possible with the following Internet browsers:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer, Version 7 or later
- Mozilla Firefox, Version 3.5 or later
- Opera, Version 10.50 or later

9.2.22.2 Starting the web server

Requirements

- The web server is already active in the factory settings.
- A functional commissioned drive project.
- PG/PC is connected to the Control Unit (to the target device).

Starting the web server

1. Enter the IP address of the SINAMICS drive in the address line of the Internet browsers (e.g. http://169.254.11.22.
   The start page of the web server opens.

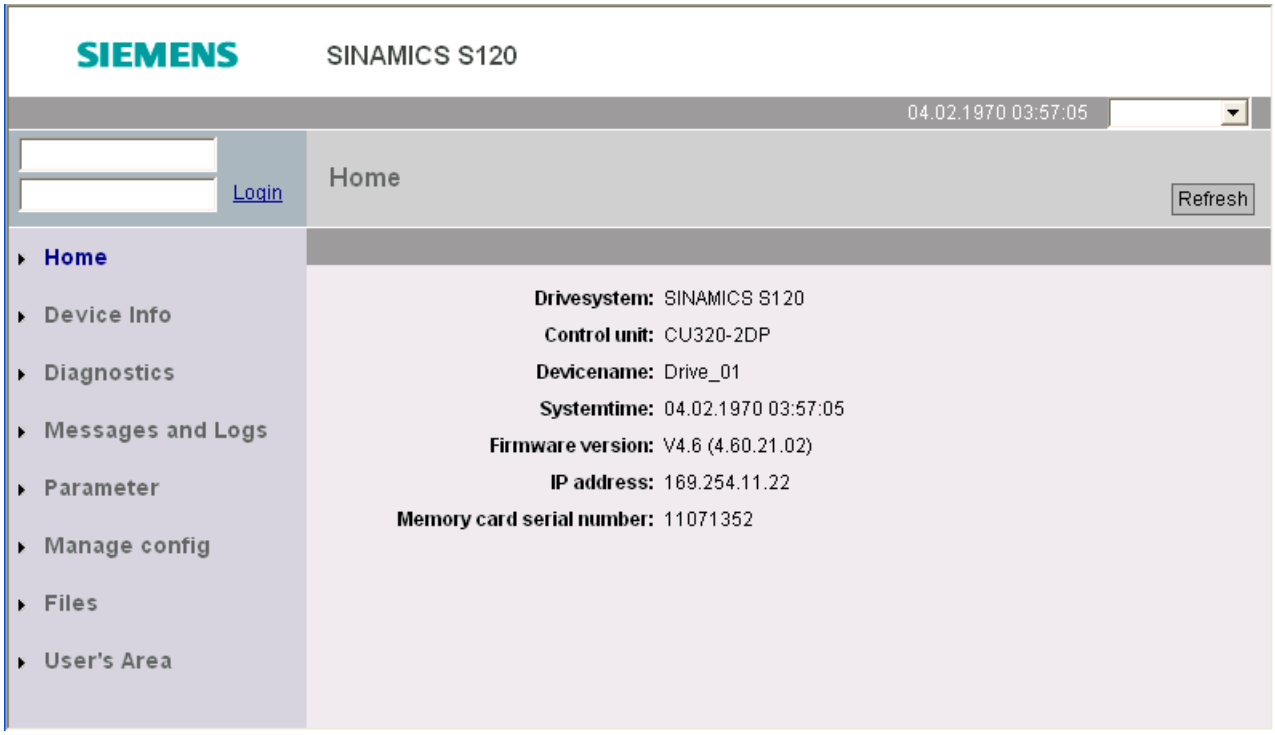


Figure 9-10 Start page of the web server

2. Enter the login name (e.g. SINAMICS) top left and the password if necessary.
   In the factory settings, only the user "SINAMICS" is enabled and no password is assigned.
3. Click "Login" to confirm the input.
4.

Figure 9-11 Start page after logging in

After login, you can go to the various display areas of the web server using the navigation on the left-hand side.

Logout

If you no longer require the web server or want to block the detailed display areas, you can log out.

Click "Logout" at the top left in the navigation.

9.2.22.3 Web server configuration

Configuration via STARTER

The configuration dialog box is opened by selecting the drive in the project navigator and clicking "Web server" in the shortcut menu.

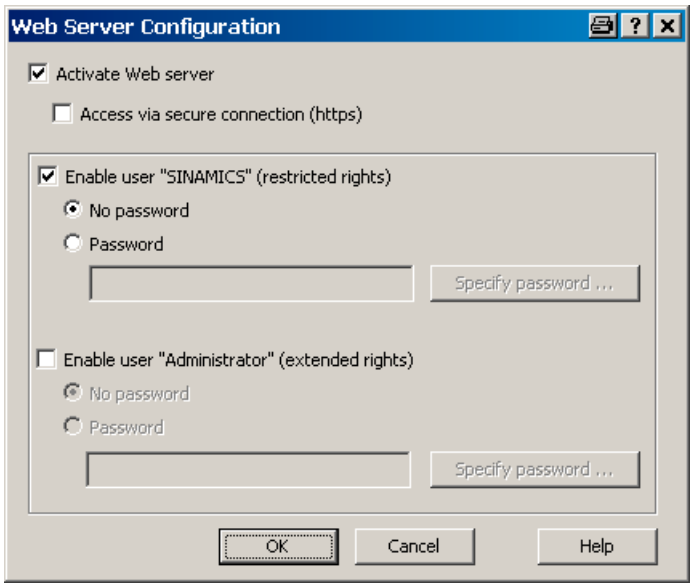


Figure 9-12 Configuring web server via STARTER

Activating the web server

The web server is already active in the factory settings.

Access can be restricted to a secure connection (https) if necessary.

Note

Access via a secure connection (https)

You require security certificates for both SINAMICS and the Internet browser to access the web server via an https connection. These security certificates must be installed on every computer, from which the web server is to be called.

Contact your system administrator about this.

Enabling users

The user "SINAMICS" is enabled in the factory settings. A password can be defined for this if necessary.

The user "Administrator" is not enabled in the factory settings. If it is enabled, a password can also be defined.

Note

Secure passwords

No password rules are defined for the assignment of passwords. You can assign any passwords without restriction. No checks are made for illegal characters or passwords which have already been used. Therefore, as the user, you are responsible for the required password security.

Use a sufficiently long password (e.g. 10 characters). Use special characters and avoid passwords which you have already used elsewhere.

Please note that if the Windows language settings are changed, errors can occur when subsequently checking the password. If you use language-specific special characters, you must ensure that the same language setting is active when the password is entered subsequently.

Configuration via AOP30 or via the expert list

Configuration is performed in parameters p8986 (web server configuration):

Bit 00: Activating the web server (factory settings: activated)
Bit 01: Access only permitted with https (factory setting: not activated)
Bit 02: Activating user "SINAMICS" (factory setting: activated)
Bit 03: Activating the user "Administrator" (factory setting: not activated)

Note

Password assignment after assignment of the user "Administrator"

After the user "Administrator" has been activated via parameter p8986 (via AOP30 or via the expert list), it is necessary to assign a password via STARTER. Otherwise, the user "Administrator" will not be able to access the web server.

9.2.22.4 Display areas

The web server has different display areas, which are opened via the menu items in the navigation.

Home

The start page of the web server is opened via this menu item.

Device Info

This menu item shows the most important device information.

Diagnostics

The operating state is displayed for each drive object with this menu item.

A color code is also displayed indicating whether each drive object is pending as a disturbance or warning.

Messages and Logs

The diagnostics buffer is displayed on the "Diagbuffer" tab via this menu item.

The faults and warnings of the drive are shown on the "Alarms drive" tab. With the "Reset alarms" button, you can reset the acknowledgeable faults.

Parameter

With this menu item, you can create and manage self-defined parameter lists. Up to 20 parameter lists with 40 parameters each can be managed.

For each parameter list access rights (read, write, modify) of the two users ("SINAMICS" and "Administrator") can be defined separately.

The settings of the write and know-how protection also apply to the parameters when accessing the web server.

The created parameter lists are saved on the memory card of the drive.

Manage config

Via this menu item, the user "Administrator" can upload and update firmware and project files.

Files

Via this menu item, the user "Administrator" can load user-defined pages into the drive.

User's Area

Via this menu item, the user "Administrator" can open user-defined pages.

9.2.22.5 Overview of important parameters

- p8986 Web server configuration
- p8987[0...1] Web server port assignment

9.3 Extended functions

9.3.1 Technology controller

Description

The "technology controller" function module allows simple control functions to be implemented, e.g.:

- Liquid level control
- Temperature control
- Dancer position control
- Pressure control
- Flow control
- Simple control without higher-level control
- Tension control

The technology controller features:

- Two scalable setpoints
- Scalable output signal
- Separate fixed values
- Separate motorized potentiometer
- The output limits can be activated and deactivated via the ramp-function generator.
- The D component can be switched to the system deviation or actual value channel.
- The motorized potentiometer of the technology controller is only active when the drive pulses are enabled.

The technology controller is designed as a PID controller, whereby the differentiator can be switched to the control deviation channel or the actual value channel (factory setting). The P, I, and D components can be set separately.

A value of 0 deactivates the corresponding component. Setpoints can be specified via two connector inputs. The setpoints can be scaled via parameters p2255 and p2256.

A ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel can be used to set the setpoint ramp-up/ramp-down time via parameters p2257 and p2258. The setpoint and actual value channel each have a smoothing element. The smoothing time can be set via parameters p2261 and p2265.

The setpoints can be specified via separate fixed setpoints (p2201 to p2215), the motorized potentiometer, or via the field bus (e.g. PROFIBUS).

Pre-control can be integrated via a connector input.

The output can be scaled via parameter p2295 and the control direction reversed. It can be limited via parameters p2291 and p2292 and interconnected as required via a connector output (r2294).

The actual value can be integrated, for example, via an analog input on the TM31.

If a PID controller has to be used for control reasons, the D component is switched to the setpoint/actual value difference (p2263 = 1) unlike in the factory setting. This is always necessary when the D component is to be effective, even if the reference variable changes. The D component can only be activated when p2274 > 0.

Note

Ramp-up/down time freeze

With the entry "0" sec. as power up time or ramp-down time for the ramp function generator of the technology controller, the current values of the respective ramp function generator will be frozen.

Commissioning

The "technology controller" function module can be activated by running the commissioning Wizard. Parameter r0108.16 indicates whether the function module has been activated.

Function diagram

FD 7950	Technology controller – fixed values, binary selection
FP 7951	Technology controller – fixed values, direct selection
FD 7954	Technology controller – motorized potentiometer
FD 7958	Technology controller – closed-loop controller

Example: liquid level control

The objective here is to maintain a constant level in the container.

This is carried out by means of a variable-speed pump in conjunction with a sensor for measuring the level.

The level is determined via an analog input (e.g. AI0 TM31) and sent to the technology controller. The level setpoint is defined in a fixed setpoint. The resulting controlled variable is used as the setpoint for the speed controller.

In this example, a Terminal Module (TM31) is used.

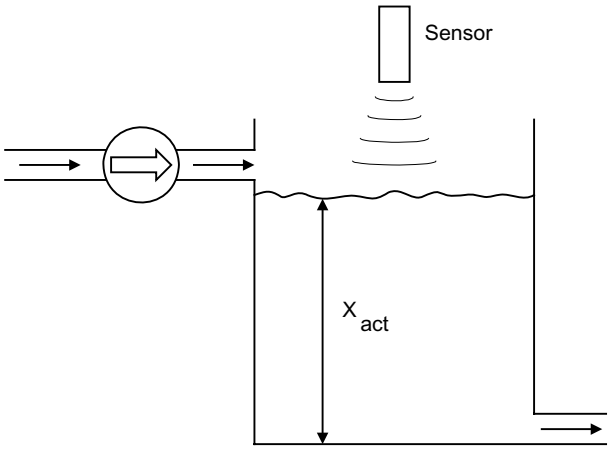


Figure 9-13 Level control: Application

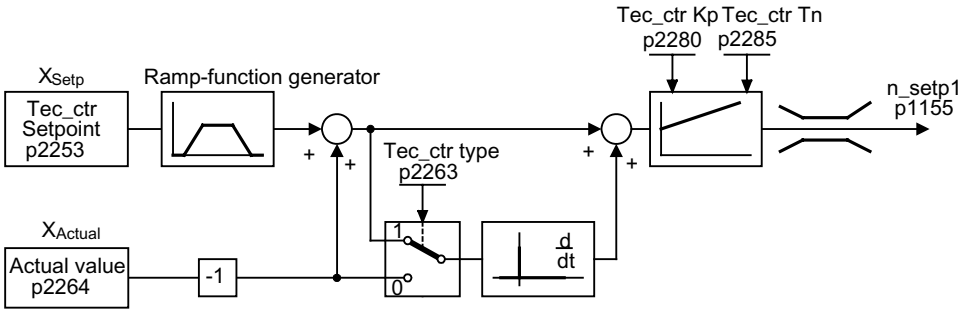


Figure 9-14 Level control: Controller structure

Key control parameters

- p1155 = r2294 CI: Speed controller speed setpoint 1 [FP 3080]
- p2253 = r2224 Technology controller setpoint effective via fixed setpoint [FD 7950]
- p2263 = 1 D component in fault signal [FD 7958]
- p2264 = r4055 Actual value signal X_{actual} via AI0 of TM31 [FP 9566]
- p2280 = Kp Calculate P gain by means of optimization
- p2285 = Tn Calculate integral time by means of optimization
- p2200 = 1 Technology controller enabled

9.3.2 Bypass function

The bypass function uses digital drive outputs to activate two contactors and uses digital inputs to evaluate the contactor's feedback (e.g., via TM31). This circuit allows the motor to be operated using the converter or directly on the supply line. The contactors are activated by the converter. The feedback signals for the contactor positions have to be returned to the converter.

The bypass circuit can be implemented in two ways:

- without synchronizing the motor to the supply and
- with synchronizing the motor to the supply.

The following applies to all bypass versions:

- The bypass switch is also shut down when one of the "OFF2" or "OFF3" control word signals is canceled.
- Exception:
  If necessary, the bypass switch can be interlocked by a higher-level controller such that the drive can be shut down completely (i.e., including the controller electronics) while the motor is operated on the supply.
  The protective interlocking must be implemented on the system side.
- When the converter is started up again after POWER OFF, the status of the bypass contactors is evaluated. After powering up, the converter can thereby change straight into "Ready to start and bypass" status. This is only possible if the bypass is activated via a control signal, the control signal (p1266) is still present once the system has been ramped up, and the automatic restart function (p1200 = 4) is active.
- Changing the converter into "Ready to start and bypass" status after powering up, is of a higher priority than switching back on automatically.
- Monitoring of the motor temperatures using temperature sensors is active while the converter is in one of two statuses "Ready to start and bypass" or "Ready for operation and bypass".
- The two motor contactors must be designed for switching under load.

Note

Information on the examples

The examples contained in the following descriptions are only basic circuits designed to explain the basic function. The dimensions of specific circuit configurations (contactors, protective equipment) must be calculated for specific systems.

Preconditions

The bypass function is only available for sped control without encoders (p1300 = 20) or V/f-control (p1300 = 0...19) and when using an asynchronous motor.

Establishing the bypass function

The bypass function is part of the "technology controller" function module that can be activated by running the commissioning Wizard. Parameter r0108.16 indicates whether the function module has been activated.

9.3.2.1 Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1)

Description

When “Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1)” is activated, the synchronized motor is transferred to the supply and retrieved again. During the changeover, both contactors K1 and K2 are closed at the same time for a period (phase lock synchronization).

A reactor is used to de-couple the drive converter from the line supply - the uk value for the reactor is 10 (± 2) %.

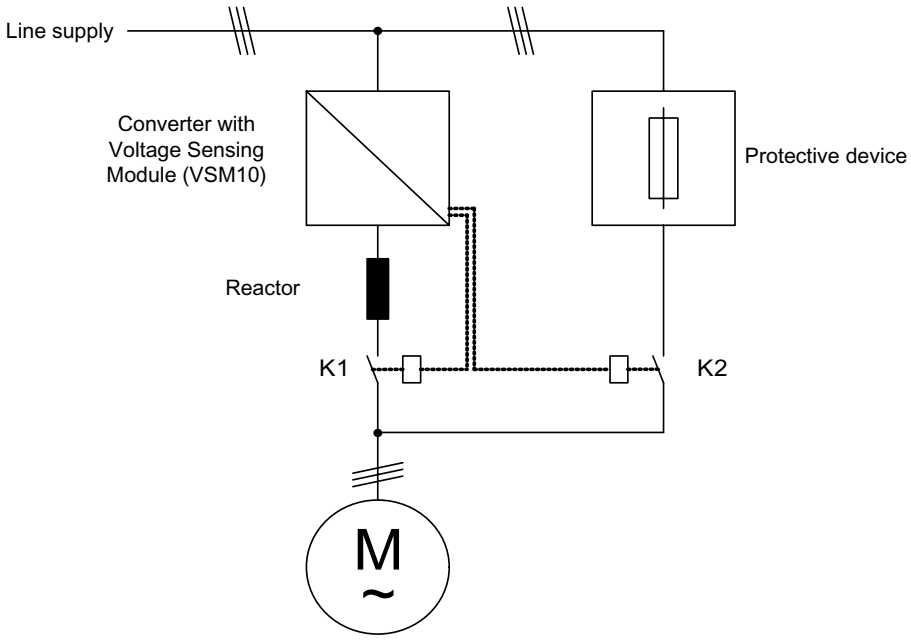


Figure 9-15 Typical circuit diagram for bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping

Activation

The function with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1) function can only be activated using a control signal. It cannot be activated using a speed threshold or a fault.

Parameterization

Once the bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1) function has been activated, the following parameters must be set:

Table 9- 7 Parameter settings for bypass function with synchronizer with degree of overlapping

Parameters	Description
p1266 =	Control signal setting when p1267.0 = 1
p1267.0 = 1 p1267.1 = 0	Bypass function is initiated by the control signal
p1269[0] =	Signal source for contactor K1 feedback
p1269[1] =	Signal source for contactor K2 feedback
p3800 = 1	The internal voltages are used for synchronization.
p3802 = r1261.2	Synchronizer activation is triggered by the bypass function.

Transfer process

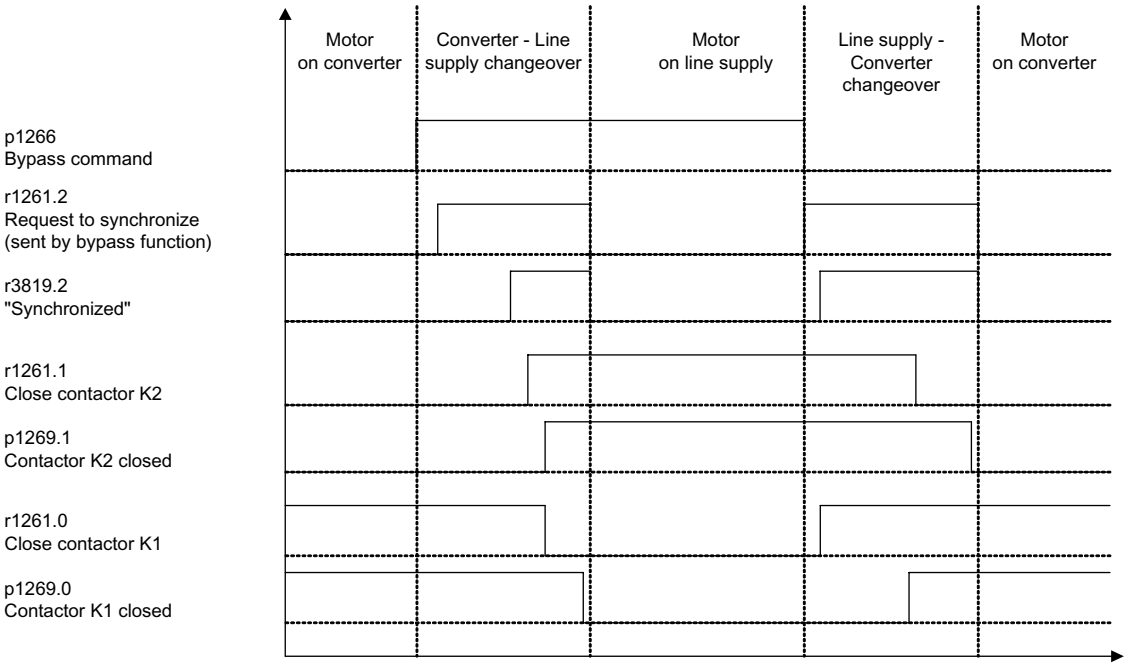


Figure 9-16 Signal diagram, bypass with synchronization with overlap

Transfer of motor to line supply
(contactors K1 and K2 are activated by the converter):

- The initial state is as follows: Contactor K1 is closed, contactor K2 is open and the motor is fed from the converter.
- The control bit "bypass command" (p1266) is set (e.g., by the higher-level automation).
- The bypass function sets the control word bit "synchronizing" (r1261.2).

- Since the bit is set while the converter is running, the "Transfer motor to line supply" synchronization process is started.
- Once motor synchronization to line frequency, line voltage and line phasing is complete, the synchronization algorithm reports this state (r3819.2).
- The bypass mechanism evaluates this signal and closes contactor K2 (r1261.1 = 1). The signal is evaluated internally - BICO wiring is not required.
- After contactor K2 has fed back the "closed" state (r1269[1] = 1), contactor K1 is opened and the converter inhibits the pulses. The converter is in "Ready for operation and bypass" state.
- If the On command is cancelled in this phase, the converter will change to "Ready to start and bypass" status. If the appropriate contactors are being used, the converter will be isolated from the line supply and the DC link discharged.

To transfer the motor back from the line supply, the sequence is simply reversed: At the start of the process, contactor K2 is closed and contactor K1 is open.

- The "Command bypass" control bit is canceled (e.g., by the higher-level automation).
- The bypass function sets the control word bit "synchronizing".
- The pulses are enabled. Since "synchronizing" is set before "pulse enable", the converter interprets this as a command to retrieve the motor from the line supply.
- Once converter synchronization to line frequency, line voltage and line phasing is complete, the synchronization algorithm reports this state.
- The bypass mechanism evaluates this signal and closes contactor K1. The signal is evaluated internally - BICO wiring is not required.
- Once contactor K1 has reported "closed" status, contactor K2 is opened and the motor returns to operation on the converter.

9.3.2.2 Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2)

Description

When “Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2)” is activated, contactor K2 (to be closed) is only closed when contactor K1 is opened (anticipatory type synchronization). During this time, the motor is not connected to a line supply so that its speed is determined by the load and the friction. The phase position of the motor voltage before synchronization must be set to establish a "lead" before the line supply to which the system should be synchronized. This is realized by setting the synchronization setpoint (p3809). A phase and frequency difference of around zero is produced when closing contactor K2 by braking the motor in the brief period in which both contactors are open.

For the function to run correctly, the moment of inertia of the drive and the load must be sufficiently high.

Note

Sufficiently high moment of inertia

A sufficiently high moment of inertia is characterized by a change in the motor speed when contactors K1 and K2 are opened, which is approximately equal to the rated slip. The electrical angular difference of the motor relative to the phase difference of the line supply may only change to the extent that it can still be compensated using p3809.

It is no longer necessary to use the de-coupling reactor after having determined the synchronizing setpoint (p3809) in the manner described above.

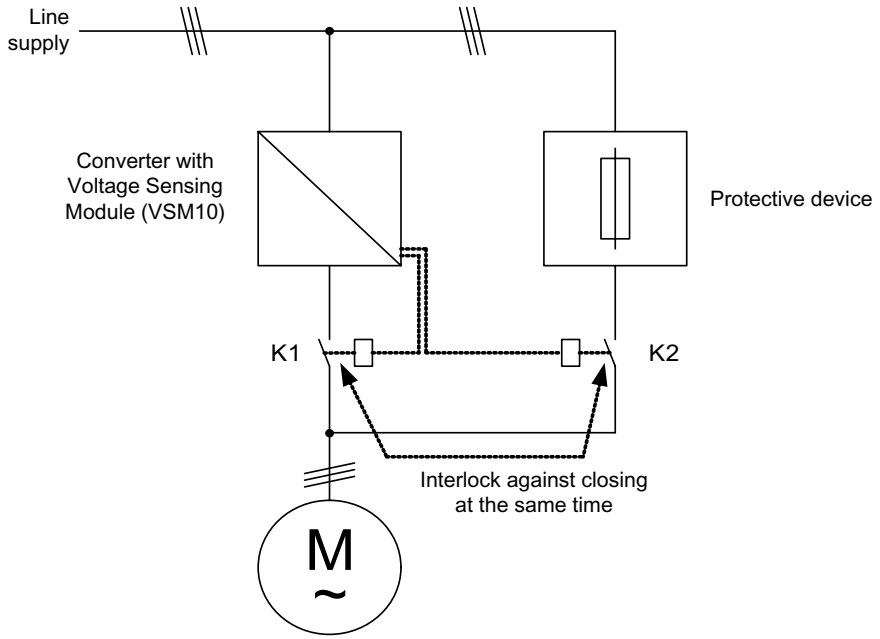


Figure 9-17 Example circuit for bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping

Activation

The bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2) function can only be activated using a control signal. It cannot be activated using a speed threshold or a fault.

Parameterization

Once the bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2) function has been activated, the following parameters must be set:

Table 9- 8 Parameter settings for bypass function with synchronizer without degree of overlapping

Parameter	Description
p1266 =	Control signal setting when p1267.0 = 1
p1267.0 = 1 p1267.1 = 0	Bypass function is initiated by the control signal
p1269[0] =	Signal source for contactor K1 feedback
p1269[1] =	Signal source for contactor K2 feedback
p3800 = 1	The internal voltages are used for synchronization.
p3802 = r1261.2	Synchronizer activation is triggered by the bypass function.
p3809 =	Setting the phase setpoint for synchronizing the drive to the line supply

9.3.2.3 Bypass without synchronizer (p1260 = 3)

Description

When the motor is transferred to the supply, contactor K1 is opened (following converter's pulse inhibit). The system then waits for the motor excitation time to elapse after which contactor K2 is closed and the motor is run directly on the supply.
If the motor is switched on in a non-synchronized manner, when activated an equalizing current flows and this must be taken into account when designing the protective equipment (see diagram "Circuit bypass without synchronization").

When the motor is being transferred from the supply by the converter, initially contactor K2 is opened and after the excitation time, contactor K1 is closed. The converter then captures the rotating motor and the motor is operated on the converter.

Contactor K2 must be designed for switching under load.

Contactors K1 and K2 must be interlocked against closing at the same time.

The "flying restart" function must be activated (p1200 = 1).

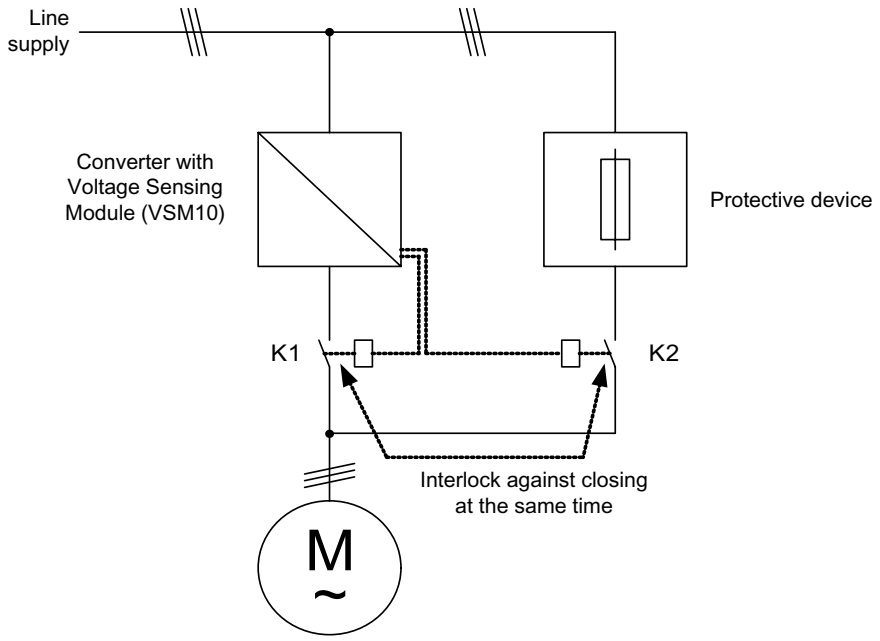


Figure 9-18 Example circuit for bypass without synchronization

Activation

The bypass with synchronizer (p1260 = 3) can be triggered by the following signals (p1267):

- Bypass by means of control signal (p1267.0 = 1):
  The bypass can be activated by means of a digital signal (p1266) (e.g. from a higher-level automation system). If the digital signal is canceled, a changeover to converter operations is triggered once the debypass delay time (p1263) has expired.
- Bypass at speed threshold (p1267.1 = 1):
  Once a certain speed is reached, the system switches to bypass (i.e. the converter is used as a start-up converter). The bypass cannot be connected until the speed setpoint is greater than the bypass speed threshold (p1265).
  The system reverts to converter mode when the setpoint (on the input of the ramp-function generator, r1119) falls below the bypass speed threshold (p1265). The setpoint > comparison value condition prevents the bypass from being reactivated straight away if the actual speed is still above the bypass speed threshold (p1265) after switching back to converter operations.

The bypass time, debypass time, bypass speed variables and the command source for changing over are set using parameters.

Parameterization

Once the bypass without synchronizer (p1260 = 3) function has been activated, the following parameters must be set:

Table 9- 9 Parameter settings for bypass function with synchronizer without degree of overlapping

Parameter	Description
p1262 =	Bypass dead time setting
p1263 =	Debypass dead time setting
p1264 =	Bypass delay time setting
p1265 =	Speed threshold setting when p1267.1 = 1
p1266 =	Control signal setting when p1267.0 = 1
p1267.0 = p1267.1 =	Trigger signal setting for bypass function
p1269[1] =	Signal source for contactor K2 feedback
p3800 = 1	The internal voltages are used for synchronization.
p3802 = r1261.2	Synchronizer activation is triggered by the bypass function.
P1200 = 1	The "flying restart" function is always active.

9.3.2.4 Function diagram

FP 7020 Synchronization

9.3.2.5 Parameters

Bypass function

- p1200 Flying restart operating mode
- p1260 Bypass configuration
- r1261 CO/BO: Bypass control/status word
- p1262 Bypass dead time
- p1263 Debypass delay time
- p1264 Bypass delay time
- p1265 Bypass speed threshold
- p1266 BI: Bypass control command
- p1267 Bypass changeover source configuration
- p1268 BI: Bypass feedback signal synchronization completed
- p1269 BI: Bypass switch feedback signal
- p1274 BI: Bypass switch monitoring time

Synchronization

- p3800 Sync–supply–drive activation
- p3801 Sync–supply–drive drive object number
- p3802 BI: Sync–supply–drive enable
- r3803 CO/BO: Sync–supply–drive control word
- r3804 CO: Sync–supply–drive target frequency
- r3805 CO: Sync–supply–drive frequency difference
- p3806 Sync–supply–drive frequency difference threshold
- r3808 CO: Sync–supply–drive phase difference
- p3809 Sync–supply–drive phase setpoint
- p3811 Sync–supply–drive frequency limitation
- r3812 CO: Sync–supply–drive correction frequency
- p3813 Sync–supply–drive phase synchronism threshold
- r3814 CO: Sync–supply–drive voltage difference
- p3815 Sync–supply–drive voltage difference threshold
- r3819 CO/BO: Sync–supply–drive status word

9.3.3 Extended brake control

Description

The "Extended brake control" function module allows complex braking control for motor holding brakes and holding brakes for example.

The brake is controlled as follows (the sequence reflects the priority):

- Via parameter p1215
- Via binector parameters p1219[0..3] and p0855
- Via zero speed detection
- Via a connector interconnection threshold value

Commissioning

The "Extended brake control" function module can be activated by running the commissioning wizard. Parameter r0108.14 indicates whether the function module has been activated.

Parameter p1215 must be set to "3" and the brake controlled via a digital output (for example at the customer terminal block TM31).

Extended brake control when braking with feedback

When braking with a feedback signal (p1275.5 = 1), the brake control reacts to the feedback signal contacts of the brake. If the timer p1216 is greater than the time to the feedback signal, then the approach is delayed by the corresponding time difference.

In order to be able to approach with as little delay as possible, the opening time set in p1216 must be shorter than the time to the feedback signal. However, if the timer in p1216 is set shorter, then alarm A07931 "Brake does not open" appears.

Remedy:

1. Activate the "Release with feedback signal" (p1275.6 = 1).

   The pulse release (BO: r1229.3) and setpoint release (BO: r0899.15) are now independent of the set timer (p1217, p1216). The respective release is determined exclusively by the feedback signal (BI: p1222, BI: p1223). The timers (p1216, p1217) only affect the warnings A07931 "Brake does not open" and A07932 "Brake does not close".

2. Optional: To make the two warnings stop appearing, set both timers (p1217, p1216) to 0 ms.

   Result: The monitoring of the brake and the display of the alarms are switched off.

Example 1: Starting against applied brake

When the device is switched on, the setpoint is enabled immediately (if other enable signals are issued), even if the brake has not yet been released (p1152 = 1). The factory setting p1152 = r0899.15 must be separated here. The drive first establishes a torque against the applied brake. The brake is not released until the motor torque or current (p1220) has exceeded braking threshold 1 (p1221).

Depending on the type and design of the brake, the time required to completely release the brake differs. It must be taken into consideration that, once the braking threshold torque has been exceeded, the operation enable signal (p0899.2) is interrupted for the time interval that the brake is being released (p1216) to ensure that the motor current does not exceed the permissible limit values during this period and the motor torque generated does not damage the brake. Time interval p1216 must be set depending on the time the brake actually requires to release.

This configuration is used, for example, when the drive is connected to a belt that is under tension (loop accumulator in the steel industry).

Example 2: Emergency brake

In the case of emergency braking, electrical and mechanical braking should be realized at precisely the same time. This can be achieved if OFF3 is used as a tripping signal for emergency braking:

p1219[0] = r0898.2 and p1275.00 = 1 (OFF3 to "apply brake immediately" and invert signal).

To prevent the converter working in opposition to the brake, the OFF3 ramp (p1135) should be set to 0 seconds. Any prevailing regenerative energy must be converted into heat via a braking resistor.

This is often used, for example, in calendar stacks, cutting tools, running gears, and presses.

Example 3: Service brake on crane drives

For cranes with manual control, it is important that the drive responds immediately when the control lever is moved (master switch). To this end, the drive is powered up using the on command (p0840) (the pulses are enabled). Speed setpoint (p1142) and speed controller (p0856) are inhibited. The motor is magnetized. The magnetization time generally applicable for three-phase motors (1 to 2 seconds) is, therefore, eliminated.

Now, only the brake opening time will delay the motor starting to rotate following activation of the master switch. Movement of the master switch generates a "setpoint enable from the control" (bit interconnected with p1142, p1229.2, p1224.0). The speed controller is enabled immediately and the speed setpoint is enabled once the brake opening time (p1216) has elapsed. When the master switch is in the zero position, the speed setpoint is inhibited and the drive ramps down along the ramp-function generator's ramp-down ramp. The brake closes once the standstill limit (p1226) is undershot. Once the brake closing time (p1217) has elapsed, the speed controller is inhibited (the motor is no longer generating any force). Extended braking control is used with the modifications described below.

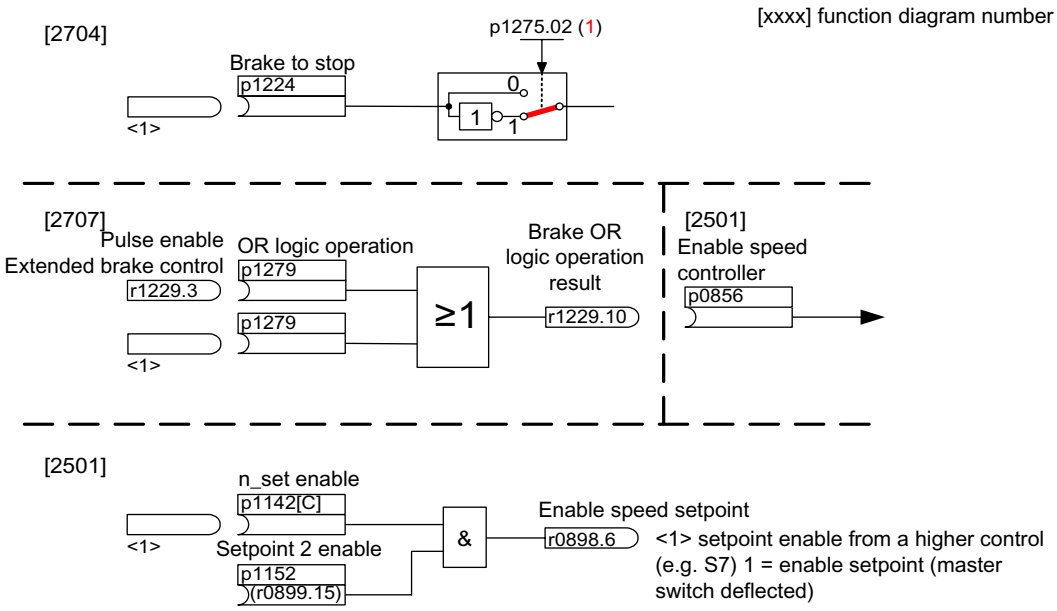


Figure 9-19 Example: Service brake on a crane drive

Control and status messages for extended brake control

Table 9- 10 Control of extended brake control

Signal name	Binector input	Control word sequence control/interconnection parameters
Enable speed setpoint	p1142 BI: Enable speed setpoint	STWA.6
Enable setpoint 2	p1152 BI: Setpoint 2 enable	p1152 = r899.15
Unconditionally release holding brake	p0855 BI: Unconditionally release holding brake	STWA.7
Enable speed controller	p0856 BI: Enable speed controller	STWA.12
Unconditionally apply holding brake	p0858 BI: Unconditionally apply holding brake	STWA.14

Table 9- 11 Status message of extended brake control

Signal name	Parameter	Brake status word
Command, release brake (continuous signal)	r1229.1	B_STW.1
Pulse enable, extended brake control	r1229.3	B_STW.3
Brake does not release	r1229.4	B_STW.4
Brake does not close	r1229.5	B_STW.5
Brake threshold exceeded	r1229.6	B_STW.6
Brake threshold fallen below	r1229.7	B_STW.7
Brake monitoring time expired	r1229.8	B_STW.8

Signal name	Parameter	Brake status word
Request, pulse enable missing/n_ctrl inhibited	r1229.9	B_STW.9
Brake OR logic operation result	r1229.10	B_STW.10
Brake AND logic operation result	r1229.11	B_STW.11

Function diagram

FP 2704	Extended brake control – standstill detection (r0108.14 = 1)
FP 2707	Extended brake control – release/close brake (r0108.14 = 1)
FP 2711	Extended brake control – signal outputs (r0108.14 = 1)

Parameter

- r0108.14 Extended brake control
- r0899 CO/BO: Status word sequence control

Standstill (zero-speed) monitoring

- r0060 CO: Speed setpoint before the setpoint filter
- r0063[0...2] CO: Speed actual value
- p1224[0...3] BI: Apply motor holding brake at standstill
- p1225 CI: Standstill detection threshold value
- p1226 Standstill monitoring speed threshold
- p1227 Standstill detection monitoring time
- p1228 Standstill detection delay time
- p1276 Motor holding brake standstill detection bypass

Release/apply brake

- p0855 BI: Unconditionally release holding brake
- p0858 BI: Unconditionally apply holding brake
- p1216 Motor holding brake release time
- p1217 Motor holding brake closing time
- p1218[0...1] BI: Release motor holding brake
- p1219[0...3] BI: Immediately apply motor holding brake
- p1220 CI: Release motor holding brake, signal source, threshold
- p1221 Release motor holding brake, threshold
- p1277 Motor holding brake, delay, braking threshold exceeded
- p1279 BI: Motor holding brake OR/AND logic operation

Brake monitoring functions

- p1222 BI: Motor holding brake, feedback signal, brake closed
- p1223 BI: Motor holding brake, feedback signal, brake released

Configuration, control/status words

- p1215 Motor holding brake configuration
- r1229 CO/BO: Motor holding brake status word
- p1275 Motor holding brake control word
- p1278 Motor holding brake type

9.3.4 Extended monitoring functions

Description

The "extended monitoring functions" function module enables additional monitoring functions:

- Speed setpoint monitoring: |n_set| ≤ p2161
- Speed setpoint monitoring: n_set > 0
- Load monitoring

Description of load monitoring

This function monitors power transmission between the motor and the working machine. Typical applications include V-belts, flat belts, or chains that loop around the belt pulleys or cog wheels for drive and outgoing shafts and transfer the peripheral speeds and forces. Load monitoring can be used here to identify blockages in the working machine and interruptions to the power transmission.
During load monitoring, the current speed/torque curve is compared with the programmed speed/torque curve (p2182 to p2190). If the current value is outside the programmed tolerance bandwidth, a fault or alarm is triggered depending on parameter p2181. The fault or alarm message can be delayed by means of parameter p2192 to prevent false alarms caused by brief transitional states.

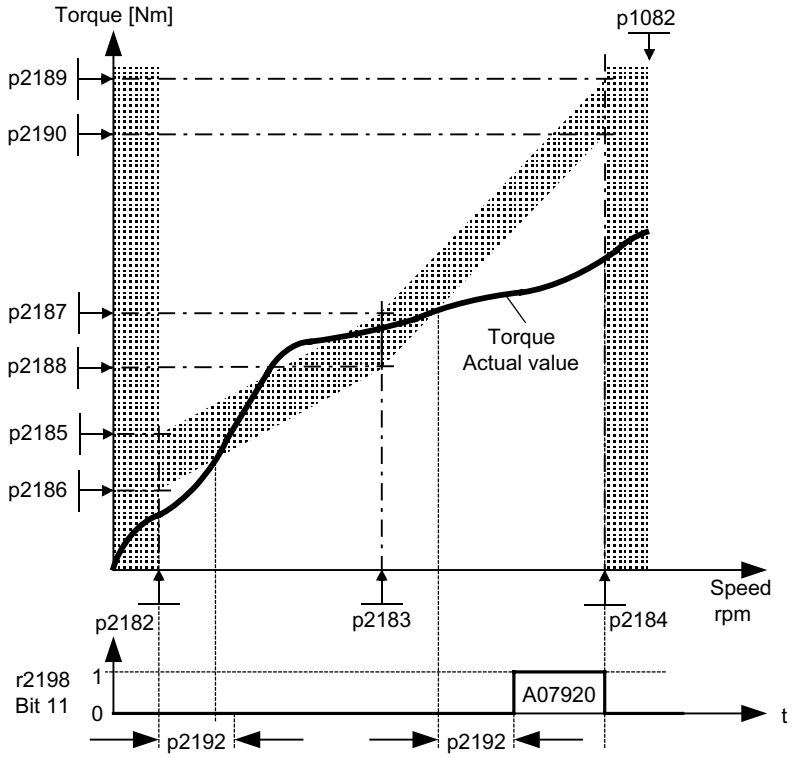


Figure 9-20 Load monitoring (p2181 =1)

Commissioning

The "extended monitoring functions" function module can be activated by running the commissioning wizard. Parameter r0108.17 indicates whether it has been activated.

Function diagram

FD 8010	Speed messages 1
FP 8011	Speed messages 2
FD 8013	Load monitoring

Parameter

- p2150 Hysteresis speed 3
- p2151 CI: Speed setpoint for messages
- p2161 Speed threshold 3
- p2181 Load monitoring, response
- p2182 Load monitoring, speed threshold 1
- p2183 Load monitoring, speed threshold 2
- p2184 Load monitoring, speed threshold 3
- p2185 Load monitoring, speed threshold 1 upper
- ...
- p2190 Load monitoring, speed threshold 3 lower
- p2192 Load monitoring, delay time
- r2198.4 |n_set| ≤ p2161
- r2198.5 n_set > 0
- r2198.11 Load monitoring displays alarm
- r2198.12 Load monitoring displays fault

9.4 Monitoring and protective functions

9.4.1 Protecting power components

Description

SINAMICS power modules offer comprehensive protection of power components.

Table 9- 12 General protection for power units

Protection against:	Protective measure	Response
Overcurrent[1)]	Monitoring with two thresholds: • First threshold exceeded	A30031, A30032, A30033 Current limiting in phase U has responded. Pulsing in this phase is inhibited for one pulse period. F30017 -> OFF2 is triggered if the threshold is exceeded too often.
	• Second threshold exceeded	F30001 "Overcurrent" -> OFF2
DC link overvoltage [1)]	Comparison of DC link voltage with hardware shutdown threshold	F30002 "Overvoltage" -> OFF2
DC link undervoltage [1)]	Comparison of DC link voltage with hardware shutdown threshold	F30003 "Undervoltage" -> OFF2
Short-circuit[1)]	Second monitoring threshold checked for overcurrent Uce monitoring for IGBT module	F30001 "Overcurrent" -> OFF2 F30022 "Monitoring Uce" -> OFF2
Ground fault	Monitoring the sum of all phase currents	After threshold in p0287 is exceeded: F30021 "power unit: Ground fault" -> OFF2 Note: The sum of all phase currents is displayed in r0069[6]. For operation, the value in p0287[1] must be greater than the sum of the phase currents when the insulation is intact.
Line phase-failure detection [1)]		F30011 "Line phase-failure in main circuit" -> OFF2

[1)] The monitoring thresholds are permanently set in the converter and cannot be changed by the user.

9.4.2 Thermal monitoring and overload responses

Description

The thermal power module monitor is responsible for identifying critical situations. Possible reactions can be assigned and used when alarm thresholds are exceeded to enable continued operation (e.g., with reduced power) and prevent immediate shutdown. The parameterization options, however, only enable intervention below the shutdown thresholds, which cannot be changed by the user.

The following thermal monitoring options are available:

- i²t monitoring – A07805 – F30005
  i²t monitoring is used to protect components that have a high thermal time constant compared with semi-conductors. Overload with regard to i²t is present when the converter load (r0036) is greater than 100% (load as a % of rated operation).
- Heat sink temperature – A05000 – F30004
  Used to monitor the temperature r0037[0] of the heat sinks on the power semiconductors (IGBT).
- Chip temperature – A05001 – F30025
  Significant temperature differences can occur between the barrier layer of the IGBT and the heatsink. The calculated barrier junction temperature is displayed in r0037[13...18]; the monitoring ensures that the specified maximum barrier junction temperature is not exceeded.

If an overload occurs with respect to any of these three monitoring functions, an alarm is first output. The alarm threshold p0294 (i²t monitoring) can be parameterized relative to the shutdown (trip) values.

Example

The temperature difference between two sensors must not exceed 15 Kelvin (K); a temperature difference of 5 K is set for the temperature monitoring of the heat sink and the air intake. This means that 15 K or 5 K below the shutdown threshold an alarm is issued regarding the pending overtemperature. Parameter p0294 merely allows a change in the alarm threshold so that an alarm is received earlier and, if necessary, steps can be taken to intervene in the drive process (e.g., reduce the load, reduce the ambient temperature).

Overload responses

The power module responds with alarm A07805. The control unit initiates the responses assigned via p0290 at the same time that the alarm is issued. Possible responses include:

- Reduction in pulse frequency (p0290 = 2, 3)
  This is a highly effective method of reducing losses in the power unit, since switching losses account for a high proportion of overall losses. In many applications, a temporary pulse frequency reduction in favor of maintaining the process can be tolerated.
  Disadvantage:
  The pulse frequency reduction increases the current ripple, which can cause increased torque ripple on the motor shaft (when moment of inertia is low) and increased noise level. Reducing the pulse frequency does not affect the dynamic response of the current control circuit, since the sampling time for the current control circuit remains constant.
- Reducing the output frequency (p0290 = 0, 2)
  This variant is recommended when you do not need to reduce the pulse frequency or the pulse frequency has already been set to the lowest level. Further, the load should also have a characteristic similar to a fan, that is, a square law torque characteristic with decreasing speed. Reducing the output frequency has the effect of significantly reducing the converter output current which, in turn, reduces losses in the power unit.
- No reduction (p0290 = 1)
  You should choose this option if it is neither possible to reduce the pulse frequency nor reduce the output current. The converter does not change its operating point once an alarm threshold has been overshot, which means that the drive can be operated until it reaches its shutdown values. Once the shutdown threshold is reached, the converter switches off with an "overtemperature" or "overload" fault. The time until shutdown, however, is not defined and depends on the degree of overload. Only the alarm threshold can be changed so that an alarm is received earlier and, if necessary, steps can be taken to intervene in the drive process (e.g., reduce the load, reduce the ambient temperature).

Function diagram

FP 8014 Thermal monitoring, power unit

Parameter

- r0036 CO: Power module overload I2t
- r0037 CO: Power module temperatures
- p0290 Power unit overload response
- r0293 CO: Power unit alarm threshold model temperature
- p0294 Power module alarm I2t overload
- r2135.13 Fault: thermal overload in power unit
- r2135.15 Alarm: thermal overload in power unit

9.4.3 Block protection

Description

The "Motor blocked" fault is only triggered when the speed of the drive is below the adjustable speed threshold in p2175. With vector control, it must also be ensured that the speed controller is at the limit. With V/f control, the current limit must already have been reached.
Once the ON delay (p2177) has elapsed, the message "Motor blocked" and fault F07900 are generated.

The blocking monitoring enable can be deactivated via p2144.

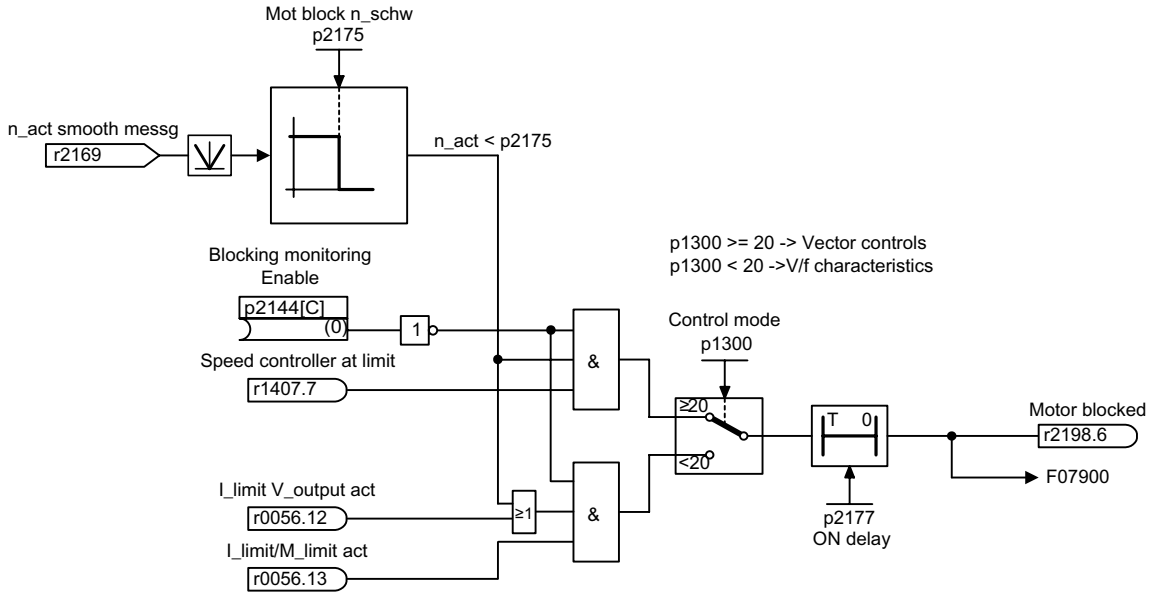


Figure 9-21 Blocking protection

Function diagram

FP 8012 Messages and monitoring - Torque messages, motor blocked/stalled

Parameter

- p2144 BI: Motor stall monitoring enable (negated)
- p2175 Motor locked speed threshold
- p2177 Motor locked delay time

9.4.4 Stall protection (only for vector control)

Description

If, for closed-loop speed control with encoder, the speed threshold set in p1744 for stall detection is exceeded, then r1408.11 (speed adaptation, speed deviation) is set.

If the fault threshold value set in p1745 is exceeded when in the low speed range (less than p1755 x (100% - p1756)), r1408.12 (motor stalled) is set.

If one of these two signals is set, then after the delay time in p2178, fault F07902 (motor stalled) is returned.

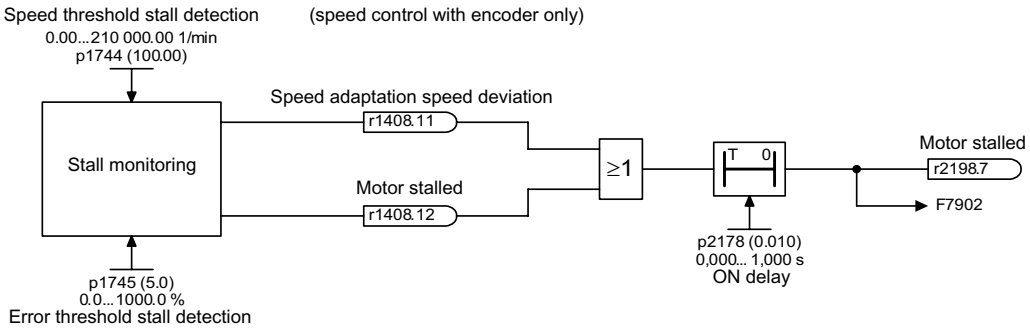


Figure 9-22 Stall protection

Function diagram

FP 6730	Current control
FP 8012	Messages and monitoring - Torque messages, motor blocked/stalled

Parameters

- r1408 CO/BO: Control status word 3
- p1744 Motor model speed threshold stall detection
- p1745 Motor model error threshold stall detection
- p1755 Motor model changeover speed encoderless operation
- p1756 Motor model changeover speed hysteresis encoderless operation
- p2178 Motor stalled delay time

9.4.5 Thermal motor protection

9.4.5.1 Description

Description

The priority of thermal motor protection is to identify critical situations. Possible reactions can be assigned (p0610) and used when alarm thresholds are exceeded to enable continued operation (e.g., with reduced power) and prevent immediate shutdown.

- Effective protection is also possible without a temperature sensor (p0600 = 0 or p4100 = 0). The temperatures of different motor components (stators, core, rotors) can be determined indirectly using a temperature model.
- Connecting temperature sensors allows the motor temperature to be determined directly. In this way, accurate start temperatures are available immediately when the motor is switched on again or after a power failure.

9.4.5.2 Temperature sensor connection at the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60)

Temperature measurement via KTY

The device is connected to terminals X522:7 (Temp+) and X522:8 (Temp-) on the customer terminal block (TM31) in the forward direction of the diode. The measured temperature is limited to between –140 °C up to +188.6 °C and is available for further evaluation.

- Activating the motor temperature measurement via the external sensor: p0600 = 10
  If the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) is present and on completion of commissioning, the source for the external sensor is set to the customer terminal block (p0603 = {TM31} r4105).
- Set the KTY temperature sensor type: p4100 = 2

Temperature measurement via PTC

The device is connected to terminal X522:7/8 at the customer terminal block (TM31). The threshold for switching to an alarm or fault is 1650 Ω. If the threshold is exceeded, the system switches internally from an artificially generated temperature value of -50 °C to +250 °C and makes it available for further evaluation.

- Activating the motor temperature measurement via the external sensor: p0600 = 10
  If the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) is present and on completion of commissioning, the source for the external sensor is set to the customer terminal block (p0603 = {TM31} r4105).
- Set the PTC temperature sensor type: p4100 = 1

9.4.5.3 Temperature sensor connection at a Sensor Module (option K50)

Temperature measurement via KTY

The device is connected to the appropriate terminals Temp- and Temp+ on the Sensor Module in the forward direction of the diode (see corresponding section in chapter "Electrical installation").

- Activate motor temperature measurement via encoder 1: p0600 = 1.
- Set the KTY temperature sensor type: p0601 = 2

Temperature measurement via PTC

The device is connected to the appropriate terminals Temp- and Temp+ on the Sensor Module (see corresponding section in chapter "Electrical installation"). The threshold for changing over to an alarm or fault is 1650 Ω.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via encoder 1: p0600 = 1.
- Set the PTC temperature sensor type: p0601 = 1

9.4.5.4 Temperature sensor connection directly to the Control Interface Module

Temperature measurement via KTY

The device is connected to terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) on the Control Interface Module in the forward direction of the diode.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the KTY temperature sensor type: p0601 = 2

Temperature measurement via PTC

The connection is made at the terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) at the Control Interface Module. The threshold for changing over to an alarm or fault is 1650 Ω.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the PTC temperature sensor type: p0601 = 1

Temperature measurement using the bimetal normally closed contact

The connection is made at the terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) at the Control Interface Module. The threshold for changing over to an alarm or fault is 100 Ω.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the temperature sensor type bimetal normally closed contact: p0601 = 4

Temperature measurement via PT100

The connection is made at the terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) at the Control Interface Module. p0624 can be used to set the temperature offset for the PT100 measured value.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the PT100 temperature sensor type: p0601 = 5

Sensor connection to units connected in parallel

In the case of units connected in parallel, the number of the power unit to which the temperature sensor is connected must be specified in p0602.

9.4.5.5 Temperature sensor evaluation

Temperature measurement via KTY or PT100

- When the alarm threshold is reached (set via p0604; delivery state after commissioning 120 °C), alarm A07910 is triggered.

  Parameter p0610 can be used to set how the drive responds to the alarm triggered:

  – 0: No response, only alarm, no reduction of I_max
  – 1: Alarm and reduction of I_max and fault (F07011)
  – 2: Alarm and fault (F07011), no reduction of I_max
- When the fault threshold is reached (set via p0605, delivery state after commissioning 155 °C), fault F07011 is triggered in conjunction with the setting in p0610.

Temperature measurement via PTC or bimetallic normally closed contact

- Once the PTC or the bimetallic normally closed contact responds, alarm A07910 is initiated.
- Fault F07011 is triggered once the waiting time defined in p0606 has elapsed.

Sensor monitoring for wire breakage/short-circuit

If the temperature of the motor temperature monitor is outside the range -140 to +250 °C, then the sensor cable is broken or has a short-circuit – and Alarm A07015 "Motor temperature sensor alarm" is triggered. Fault F07016 (“Drive: Motor temperature sensor fault”) is triggered once the waiting time defined in p0607 has elapsed.

Fault F07016 can be suppressed using p0607 = 0. If an induction motor is connected, the drive continues operating with the data calculated in the thermal motor model.

If the system detects that the motor temperature sensor set in p0600 is not connected, alarm A07820 "Temperature sensor not connected" is triggered.

Thermal motor model 1 (for permanent-magnet synchronous machines)

By using the thermal I2t motor model, the temperature rise of the motor windings as a result of dynamic motor loads is also determined in addition to data acquired using a temperature sensor.

If the thermal I2t motor model is activated via p0612.0 = 1, it calculates the motor load (r0034) from the following values:

- Absolute value of the actual current, unsmoothed (r0068[0])
- Motor stall current (p0318)
- I2t motor model thermal time constant (p0611)
- Measured motor temperature (r0035) or motor ambient temperature (p0625) for operation without temperature sensor

If the fault threshold is exceeded (set via p0605; delivery state after commissioning 155 °C), alarm A07012 "I2t motor model overtemperature" is triggered.

When the I2t motor model fault threshold is reached (p0615), fault F07011 is triggered in conjunction with the setting in p0610.

Thermal motor model 2 (for induction motors)

The thermal motor model 2 is used for induction motors. It is a thermal 3-mass model.

This makes thermal motor protection possible, even for operation without temperature sensor or with the temperature sensor deactivated (p0600 = 0).

The thermal 3-mass model is activated with p0612.1 = 1. The total motor mass is entered in p0344.

The 3-mass model splits up the total motor mass as follows:

- p0617 = thermally active iron mass (stator): laminated cores and frame) as a percentage of p0344
- p0618 = thermally active copper mass (stator:windings) as a percentage of p0344
- p0619 = thermally active rotor mass (rotor) as a percentage of p0344
- p0625 = ambient temperature
- p0626 = overtemperature, stator iron
- p0627 = overtemperature, stator winding
- p0628 = rotor winding temperature rise

Motor temperature rises are calculated on the basis of motor measured values. The calculated temperature rises are indicated in the following parameters:

- r0630 Motor temperature model ambient temperature
- r0631 Motor temperature model stator iron temperature
- r0632 Motor temperature model stator winding temperature
- r0633 Motor temperature model rotor temperature

For operation with a KTY sensor, the calculated temperature value of the 3-mass model permanently tracks the measured temperature value. After the temperature sensor is switched off (p0600 = 0), the last temperature value continues to be used for calculation.

9.4.5.6 Function diagram

FP 8016	Thermal monitoring motor
FP 8017	Thermal motor models
FP 9576	TM31 - temperature evaluation (KTY/PTC)

9.4.5.7 Parameters

Temperature sensor evaluation

- r0035 CO: Motor temperature
- p0600 Motor temperature sensor for monitoring
- p0601 Motor temperature sensor type
- p0603 Motor temperature signal source
- p0604 Motor overtemperature fault threshold
- p0605 Motor overtemperature fault threshold
- p0606 Motor overtemperature timer
- p0607 Temperature sensor fault timer
- p0610 Motor overtemperature response
- p0624 Motor temperature offset PT100
- p4100 TM31 temperature evaluation sensor type
- r4105 CO: TM31 temperature evaluation actual value

Thermal motor model 1 (for permanent-magnet synchronous machines)

- r0034 CO: Motor utilization
- r0068[0] CO: Absolute value of actual current, unsmoothed
- p0318 Motor stall current
- p0605 Motor overtemperature fault threshold
- p0610 Motor overtemperature response
- p0611 I2t motor model thermal time constant
- p0612 Thermal motor model configuration
- p0615 I2t motor model fault threshold
- p0625 Motor ambient temperature

Thermal motor model 2 (for induction motors)

- p0344 Motor weight
- p0612 Thermal motor model configuration
- p0617 Stator thermally relevant iron component
- p0618 Stator thermally relevant copper component
- p0619 Rotor thermally relevant mass
- p0625 Motor ambient temperature
- p0626 Motor overtemperature, stator iron
- p0627 Motor overtemperature, stator winding
- p0628 Motor overtemperature, rotor winding
- r0630 Mot_temp_mod ambient temperature
- r0631 Mot_temp_mod stator iron temperature
- r0632 Mot_temp_mod stator winding temperature
- r0633 Mot_temp_mod rotor temperature

9.4.6 Temperature measurement via TM150 (option G51)

9.4.6.1 Description

The Terminal Module 150 (TM150) has 6x 4-pole terminals for temperature sensors. Temperature sensors can be connected in a 1x2, 1x3 or 1x4-wire system. In a 2x2-wire system, up to 12 input channels can be evaluated. 12 input channels can be evaluated in the factory setting. The temperature channels can be combined into 3 groups and evaluated together.

PTC, KTY84, bimetallic NC contact, PT100 and PT1000 temperature sensors can be connected and evaluated. The fault and/or alarm thresholds of the temperature values can be set from -99 °C up to 251°C.

The temperature sensors are connected at terminal strips X531 to X536 according to the following table.

The TM150 temperature inputs are not electrically isolated.

Selecting the sensor types

- p4100[0...11] sets the sensor type for the respective temperature channel.
- r4105[0...11] indicates the actual value of the temperature channel.
  - For switching temperature sensors, such as e.g. PTC and bimetallic NC contact, symbolically two limit values are displayed:

    - r4105[0...11] = -50 °C: The temperature actual value is below the rated response temperature.

    - r4105[0...11] = +250 °C: The temperature actual value is above the rated response temperature.

Note

PTC and bimetallic NC contact

What is shown in r4105[0...11] does not correspond to the actual temperature value.

Table 9- 13 Selecting the sensor types

Value of p4100[0...11]	Temperature sensor	Temperature display range r4105[0...11]
0	Evaluation disabled	-
1	PTC thermistor	-50 °C or +250 °C
2	KTY84	-99 °C to +250 °C
4	Bimetallic NC contact	-50 °C or +250 °C
5	PT100	-99 °C to +250 °C
6	PT1000	-99 °C to +250 °C

Measuring the cable resistances

When using 2-wire sensors (1x2, 2x2 wire systems), to increase the measuring accuracy, the cable resistance can be measured and saved.

Procedure for determining the cable resistance:

1. Select the measuring method (1x2/2x2) for the corresponding terminal block (p4108[0...5] = 0, 1).
2. Set the required sensor type for the relevant channel (p4100[x] = 1 ... 6, x = 0...5 or 0...11).
3. Bypass/jumper the sensor to be connected (short-circuit the sensor cable close to the sensor).
4. Connect the sensor cables to the relevant terminals 1(+), 2(-) or 3(+), 4(-).
5. For the corresponding channel, start measurement of the cable resistance (p4109[x] = 1).
6. After p4109[x] = 0, check the measured resistance value in p4110[x].
7. Remove the jumper across the temperature sensor.

The measured cable resistance is then taken into account when evaluating the temperature. The cable resistance value is saved in p4110[0...11].

Note
Cable resistance

The value for the cable resistance can also be directly entered into p4110[0...11].

Line filter

A line filter is available to suppress radiated noise. Using p4121, the filter can be set to a 50 Hz or 60 Hz rated line frequency.

9.4.6.2 Measurement with up to 6 channels

Temperature measurement with a sensor in 2-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 0, you sense the signals from a sensor in 2-wire technology at a 4-wire connection at terminals 1(+) and 2(-).
Terminals 3 and 4 remain open.

Temperature measurement with a sensor in 3-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 2, you sense the signals from a sensor in 3-wire technology at a 4-wire connection at terminals 3(+) and 4(-).
The measuring cable is connected at terminal 1 (+).
You must short-circuit terminals 2 (-) and 4 (-).

Temperature measurement with a sensor in 4-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 3, you sense the signals from a sensor in 4-wire technology at a 4-wire connection at terminals 3(+) and 4(-).
The measuring cable is connected at terminal 1(+) and 2(-).

9.4.6.3 Measurement with up to 12 channels

Temperature measurement with two sensors in 2-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 1 you can acquire the signals from two sensors in 2-wire technology.
The first sensor is connected at terminal 1(+) and 2(-).
The second sensor (number = first sensor + 6) is connected at terminals 3(+) and 4(-).

When connecting two sensors in 2-wire technology to terminal X531, the first sensor is assigned to temperature channel 1 and the second sensor is assigned to channel 7 (1+6).

Note

Connection diagram for 12 temperature channels

The temperature sensors connected to a TM150 are not numbered consecutively. The first 6 temperature channels retain their numbering of 0 to 5. The other 6 temperature channels are consecutively numbered from 6 to 11, starting at terminal X531.

Example of 8 temperature channels:

- 2x2 conductors at terminal X531: p4108[0] = 1 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 0 and sensor 2 is at channel 6
- 2x2 conductor at terminal X532: p4108[1] = 1 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 1 and sensor 2 is at channel 7
- 1x3 conductor at terminal X533: p4108[2] = 2 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 2
- 1x3 conductor at terminal X534: p4108[3] = 2 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 3
- 1x4 conductor at terminal X535: p4108[4] = 3 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 4
- 1x2 conductor at terminal X536: p4108[5] = 0 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 5

9.4.6.4 Forming groups of temperature sensors

Using p4111[0...2], temperature channels can be combined to form groups. For each group, the following calculated values are provided from the temperature actual values (r4105[0...11]):

- Maximum: r4112[0...2], (index 0,1,2 = group 0,1,2)
- Minimum: r4113[0...2]
- Average value: r4114[0...2]

Example:

The temperature actual value from channels 0, 3, 7, and 9 should be combined in group 1:

- p4111[1].0 = 1
- p4111[1].3 = 1
- p4111[1].7 = 1
- p4111[1].9 = 1

The calculated values from group 1 are available in the following parameters for interconnection:

- r4112[1] = maximum
- r4113[1] = minimum
- r4114[1] = average value

Note

Forming groups of temperature channels

Only form groups of continuously measuring temperature sensors. Depending on the status, the switching temperature sensors PTC and bimetal NC contacts are only assigned two temperatures - 50 °C and +250 °C.
Within a group with continuously measuring temperature sensors, the calculation of the maximum/minimum/average values, is significantly falsified when taking into account switching temperature sensors.

9.4.6.5 Evaluating temperature channels

For each of the individual 12 temperature channels, using p4102[0...23] an alarm threshold and a fault threshold can be set (straight parameter indices: Alarm thresholds, odd parameter indices: Fault thresholds). The temperature thresholds can be set for each channel from -99 °C to +251 °C. For p4102[0...23] = 251, the evaluation of the corresponding threshold is deactivated.
Using p4118[0...11], for each channel a hysteresis for the fault/alarm thresholds can be set in p4102[0...23].

The following applies for the alarm thresholds:

- If the temperature actual value associated with a channel exceeds the set alarm threshold (r4105[x] > p4102[2x]), the corresponding alarm is output. Timer p4103[0...11] is started at the same time.
- The alarm remains until the temperature actual value (r4105[x]) has reached or fallen below the alarm threshold (p4102 [2x]) - hysteresis (p4118 [x]).
- If, after the timer has expired, the temperature actual value is still above the alarm threshold, then the appropriate fault is output.

The following applies for the fault thresholds:

- If the temperature actual value associated with a channel exceeds the set fault threshold (r4105[x] > p4102[2x+1]), the corresponding fault is output.
- The fault remains until the temperature actual value (r4105[x]) has reached or fallen below the fault threshold (p4102 [2x+1]) - hysteresis (p4118 [x]) and the fault has been acknowledged.

Using p4119[0...11], for each channel, a filter can be activated to smooth the temperature signal.
The time constant of the filter depends on the number of active temperature channels and can be read in r4120.

Failure of a sensor within a group

Using parameter p4117[0...2], the response to the failure of a temperature sensor can be set within a group:

- p4117[x] = 0: The failed sensor is not taken into account in the group.
- p4117[x] = 1: When a sensor fails, for the maximum value, minimum value and the average value of the group, a value of 300 °C is output.

9.4.6.6 Function diagram

FP 9625	TM150 - temperature evaluation structure (channel 0 ... 11)
FP 9626	TM150 - temperature evaluation 1x2, 3, 4-wire (channel 0 ... 5)
FP 9627	TM150 - temperature evaluation 2x2-wire (channel 0 ... 11)

9.4.6.7 Parameter

- p4100[0...11] TM150 sensor type
- r4101[0...11] TM150 sensor resistance
- p4102[0...23] TM150 fault threshold/alarm threshold
- p4103[0...11] TM150 delay time
- r4104.0...23 BO: TM150 temperature evaluation status
- r4105[0...11] CO: TM150 temperature actual value
- p4108[0...5] TM150 terminal block measurement method
- p4109[0...11] TM150 cable resistance measurement
- p4110[0...11] TM150 cable resistance value
- p4111[0...2] TM150 group channel assignment
- r4112[0...2] CO: TM150 group, temperature actual value maximum value
- r4113[0...2] CO: TM150 group, temperature actual value minimum value
- r4114[0...2] CO: TM150 group temperature actual value, average
- p4117[0...2] TM150 group, sensor fault effect
- p4118[0...11] TM150 fault threshold/alarm threshold hysteresis
- p4119[0...11] TM150 activate/deactivate smoothing
- r4120 TM150 temperature filter time constant
- p4121 TM150 filter, rated line frequency

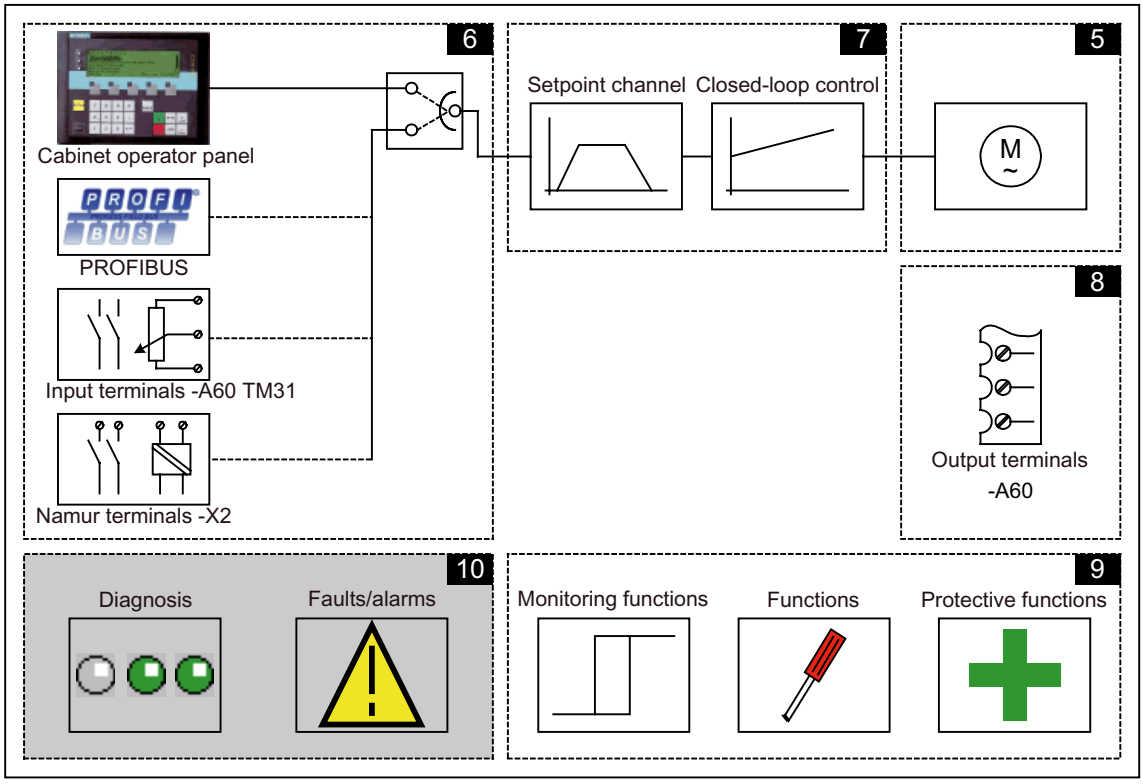
Diagnosis / faults and alarms

10

10.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Troubleshooting
- Service and support offered by Siemens AG



10.2 Diagnosis

Description

This section describes procedures for identifying the causes of problems and the measures you need to take to rectify them.

Note

Errors or malfunctions

If errors or malfunctions occur in the device, you must carefully check the possible causes and take the necessary steps to rectify them. If you cannot identify the cause of the problem or you discover that components are defective, your regional office or sales office should contact Siemens Service and describe the problem in more detail. Addresses of contact persons are listed in the preface.

10.2.1 Diagnostics using LEDs

Control Unit (-A10)

Table 10- 1 Description of the LEDs on the CU320-2 DP Control Unit

LED	Color	State	Description
RDY (READY)	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The control unit is waiting for initial commissioning.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Commissioning/reset
		2 Hz flashing light	Writing to CompactFlash card.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	General faults
	Red/green	0.5 Hz flashing light	Control Unit is ready for operation. However, there are no software licenses.
	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for the connected DRIVE-CLiQ components.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware update of components has been completed. Wait for POWER ON of the respective component.
	Green/orange or red/orange	2 Hz flashing light	Component detection via LED is activated (p0124[0]). Note: The two options depend on the LED status when component detection is activated via p0124[0] = 1.

LED	Color	State	Description
DP PROFIdrive cyclic operation	---	OFF	Cyclic communication is not (yet) running. Note: PROFIdrive is ready for communication when the control unit is ready for operation (see RDY LED).
	Green	Continuous light	Cyclic communication is taking place.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Cyclic communication has still not been fully established. Possible causes: - The controller is not transmitting any setpoints. - In isochronous mode, the controller did not send a Global Control or it sent a defective Global Control (GC).
	Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	PROFIBUS master is sending incorrect parameter assignment/configuration
		2 Hz flashing light	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established.
OPT (OPTION)	---	OFF	Electronic power supply outside permissible tolerance range. The component is not ready for operation. The Option Board is missing or an associated drive object has not been created.
	Green	Continuous light	Option Board is ready.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Depends on the Option Board used.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	This component has at least one fault. The option board is not ready (e.g., after switching on).
RDY and DP	Red	2 Hz flashing light	Bus error - communication has been interrupted.
RDY and OPT	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for connected option board CBE20.

Table 10- 2 Description of the LEDs on the CU320-2 PN control unit

LED	Color	State	Description
RDY (READY)	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The control unit is waiting for initial commissioning.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Commissioning/reset
		2 Hz flashing light	Writing to CompactFlash card.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	General faults
	Red/green	0.5 Hz flashing light	Control Unit is ready for operation. However, there are no software licenses.
	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for the connected DRIVE-CLiQ components.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware update of components has been completed. Wait for POWER ON of the respective component.
	Green/orange or red/orange	2 Hz flashing light	Component detection via LED is activated (p0124[0]). Note: The two options depend on the LED status when component detection is activated via p0124[0] = 1.
PN PROFIdrive cyclic operation	---	OFF	Cyclic communication is not (yet) running. Note: PROFIdrive is ready for communication when the control unit is ready for operation (see RDY LED).
	Green	Continuous light	Cyclic communication is taking place.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Cyclic communication is still not completely running. Possible causes: - The controller is not transferring any setpoints. - For isochronous operation, either none or a faulty Global Control (GC) has been transferred from the controller. - "Shared Device" has been selected (p8929 = 2) and only one controller connected.
	Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Bus error, incorrect parameter assignment/configuration
		2 Hz flashing light	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established.
OPT (OPTION)	---	OFF	Electronic power supply outside permissible tolerance range. The component is not ready for operation. The option board is missing or an associated drive object has not been created.
	Green	Continuous light	Option board is ready.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Depends on the option board used.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	This component has at least one fault. The option board is not ready (e.g., after switching on).
RDY and DP	Red	2 Hz flashing light	Bus error - communication has been interrupted.
RDY and OPT	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for connected option board CBE20.

Customer Terminal Block TM31 (-A60)

Table 10- 3 Description of the LEDs on the TM31

LED	Color	State	Description
READY	---	OFF	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	Continuous light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	At least one fault is present for this component. Note: LED is activated irrespective of the corresponding messages being reconfigured.
	Green/red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being downloaded.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON.
	Green/orange or red/orange	Flashing light	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0154). Note: Both options depend on the LED state when activated via p0154 = 1.

Control Interface Module – Interface module in the Power Module (-T1)

Table 10- 4 Description of the LEDs "READY" and "DC LINK" on the Control Interface Module

LED state		Description
READY	DC LINK	
OFF	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
Green	OFF	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
Red	---	At least one fault is pending on this component. Note: LED is controlled irrespective of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.
Flashing, 0.5 Hz: Green/red	---	Firmware is being downloaded.
Flashing, 2 Hz: Green/red	---	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON.
Flashing, 2 Hz: Green/orange or red/orange	---	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0124). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0124 = 1.

Table 10- 5 Meaning of the LED "POWER OK" on the Control Interface Module

LED	Color	State	Description
POWER OK	Green	OFF	DC link voltage < 100 V and voltage at -X9:1/2 less than 12 V.
		ON	The component is ready for operation.
		Flashing light	There is a fault. If the LED continues to flash after you have performed a POWER ON, please contact your Siemens service center.

⚠WARNING

Dangerous electrical voltage

Hazardous DC link voltages may be present at any time regardless of the state of the "DC LINK" LED.
The warning information on the component must be carefully observed!

SMC30 – encoder evaluation (-B83)

Table 10- 6 Description of the LEDs on the SMC30

LED	Color	State	Description
READY	---	OFF	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	Continuous light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	At least one fault is present for this component. Note: LED is activated irrespective of the corresponding messages being reconfigured.
	Green/red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being downloaded.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON.
	Green/orange or red/orange	Flashing light	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0144). Note: Both options depend on the LED state when activated via p0144 = 1.
OUT>5 V	---	OFF	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range. Power supply ≤ 5 V.
	Orange	Continuous light	Electronic power supply for measuring system present. Supply voltage > 5 V. Notice: You must ensure that the connected encoder can be operated with a 24 V supply. Operating an encoder designed for a 5 V supply with a 24 V supply can destroy the encoder electronics.

CBE20 – Communication Board Ethernet

Table 10- 7 Description of the LEDs at ports 1-4 of the X1400 interface on the CBE20

LED	Color	State	Description
Link port	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range (link missing or defective).
	Green	Continuous light	A different device is connected to port x and a physical connection exists.
Activity port	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range (no activity).
	Yellow	Continuous light	Data is being received or sent at port x.

Table 10- 8 Description of the Sync and Fault LEDs on the CBE20

LED	Color	State	Description
Fault	---	OFF	If the link port LED is green: The CBE20 is operating normally, data is being exchanged with the configured IO Controller.
	Red	Flashing light	- The response monitoring time has elapsed. - Communication has been interrupted. - The IP address is incorrect. - Incorrect or missing configuration. - Incorrect parameter assignment. - Incorrect or missing device name. - IO controller not present/switched off but Ethernet connection present. - Other CBE20 errors.
		Continuous light	CBE20 bus fault - No physical connection to a subnet/switch. - Incorrect transmission rate. - Full-duplex transmission not activated.
Sync	---	OFF	If the link port LED is green: Control Unit task system is not synchronized with the IRT clock. An internal substitute clock is generated.
	Green	Flashing light	Control Unit task system has synchronized with the IRT clock and data is being exchanged.
		Continuous light	Task system and MC-PLL have synchronized with the IRT clock.

Table 10- 9 Description of the OPT LED on the control unit

LED	Color	State	Description
OPT	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range. Communication Board either defective or not inserted.
	Green	Continuous light	Communication Board is ready and cyclic communication is taking place.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	The Communication Board is ready, but cyclic communication is not yet taking place. Possible causes: - At least one fault is pending. - Communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	Cyclic communication via PROFINET has not yet been established. However, acyclic communication is possible. SINAMICS is waiting for a parameterization/configuration telegram.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	The firmware download to the CBE20 has failed. Possible causes: - The CBE20 is defective. - The memory card for the Control Unit is defective. In this state, the CBE20 cannot be used.
		2 Hz flashing light	Communication between the Control Unit and the CBE20 is faulty. Possible causes: - The CBE20 was removed following power-up. - The CBE20 is defective.
	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being updated.

TM150 - temperature sensor module (-A151)

Table 10- 10 Description of the LEDs on the TM150

LED	Color	State	Description
READY	-	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	Continuous light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	At least one fault is present in this component. Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.
	Green/red	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Firmware is being downloaded.
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Firmware has been downloaded. Wait for POWER ON.
	Green / orange or red / orange	Flashing light 2 Hz	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0154). Note: Both options depend on the LED state when activated via p0154 = 1.

10.2.2 Diagnostics via parameters

All Objects: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0945	Fault code
	Displays the fault number. Index 0 is the most recent fault (last fault to have occurred).
r0948	Fault time received in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the fault occurred.
r0949	Fault value
	Displays additional information about the fault. This information is required for detailed fault diagnosis.
r2109	Fault time removed in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the fault was rectified.
r2122	Alarm code
	Displays the numbers of alarms that have occurred
r2123	Alarm time received in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the alarm occurred.
r2124	Alarm value
	Displays additional information about the alarm. This information is required for detailed alarm diagnosis.
r2125	Alarm time removed in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the alarm was rectified.

Control Unit: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0002	Control Unit status display
	Status display for the Control Unit
r0018	Control Unit firmware version
	Displays the firmware version of the Control Unit. For the display parameters for the firmware version of the other connected components, see the parameter description in the List Manual.
r00037	Control Unit temperature
	Displays the measured temperature on the Control Unit.
r0721	CU digital inputs, terminal actual value
	Displays the actual value at the digital input terminals on the CU. This parameter shows the actual value, uninfluenced by simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r0722	CO/BO: CU digital inputs, status
	Displays the status of the digital inputs on the CU. This parameter shows the status of the digital inputs under the influence of simulation mode of the digital inputs.

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0747	CU, digital outputs status
	Display of the CU digital output status. This parameter shows the status of the digital inputs under the influence of simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r2054	PROFIBUS status
	Displays the status of the Profibus interface.
r8937	PN diagnostics
	Display to diagnose the cyclic PROFINET connections.
r9976[0..7]	System utilization
	Displays the system load. The individual values (computation load and cyclic load) are measured over short time slices; from these values, the maximum, the minimum and the average value are generated and displayed in the appropriate indices. Further, the degree of memory utilization of the data and program memory is displayed.

VECTOR: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0002	Drive operating display
	The value provides information about the current operating status and the conditions necessary to reach the next status.
r0020	Speed setpoint smoothed
	Displays the actual smoothed speed/velocity setpoint at the input of the speed/velocity controller or V/f characteristic (after the interpolator).
r0021	CO: Actual speed value smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual value of the motor speed/velocity.
r0024	CO: Output frequency, smoothed
	Displays the smoothed converter frequency.
r0026	CO: DC link voltage smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual value of the DC link.
r0027	CO: Absolute actual current, smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual value of the current.
r0031	Actual torque smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual torque.
r0034	CO: Motor utilization
	Displays the motor utilization from the thermal I2t motor model.
r0035	CO: Motor temperature

Parameter	Name
	Description
	If r0035 does not equal -200.0 °C, the following applies: • This temperature indicator is valid. • An KTY sensor is connected. • If using an asynchronous motor, the thermal motor model is activated (p0600 = 0 or p0601 = 0). If r0035 equals -200.0 °C, the following applies: • This temperature indicator is invalid (temperature sensor fault). • An PTC sensor is connected. If using a synchronous motor, the thermal motor model is activated (p0600 = 0 or p0601 = 0).
r0037	CO: Power unit temperatures
	Displays the measured temperatures in the Power Module.
r0046	CO/BO: Missing enable signals
	Displays missing enable signals that are preventing the closed-loop drive control from being commissioned.
r0049	Motor data set/encoder data set active (MDS, EDS)
	Displays the effective motor data set (MDS) and the effective encoder data sets (EDS).
r0050	CO/BO: Command Data Set CDS effective
	Displays the effective command data set (CDS)
r0051	CO/BO: Drive Data Set DDS effective
	Effective drive data set (DDS) display.
r0056	CO/BO: Status word, closed-loop control
	Displays the status word of the closed-loop control.
r0063	CO: Speed actual value
	Displays the actual speed for speed control and U/f control.
r0066	CO: Output frequency
	Displays the output frequency of the Motor Module.
r0070	CO: Actual DC link voltage
	Displays the measured actual value of the DC link voltage.
r0072	CO: Output voltage
	Displays the actual output voltage of the power unit (Motor Module).
r0082	CO: Active power actual value
	Displays the instantaneous active power.
r0206	Rated power module power
	Displays the rated power module power for various load duty cycles.
r0207	Rated power module current
	Displays the rated power module power for various load duty cycles.
r0208	Rated power module line supply voltage
	Displays the rated line supply voltage of the power unit.
r0209	Power unit, maximum current
	Displays the maximum output current of the power unit.

TM31: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0002	TM31 operating display
	Operating display for terminal board 31 (TB31).
r4021	TM31 digital inputs, terminal actual value
	Displays the actual value at the digital input terminals on the TM31. This parameter shows the actual value, uninfluenced by simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r4022	CO/BO: TM31 digital inputs, status
	Displays the status of the digital inputs on the TM31. This parameter shows the status of the digital inputs under the influence of simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r4047	TM31 digital outputs, status
	Displays the status of the TM31 digital outputs. Inversion via p4048 is taken into account.

Additional diagnostic parameters for units that are connected in parallel (details in List Manual)

For units that are connected in parallel, there are additional diagnostic parameters that provide detailed information about individual Power Modules for a parallel circuit configuration.

- For 3 AC 380 to 480 V:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 3 AC 500 to 600 V:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 3 AC 660 to 690 V:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

r7000 to r7252 Special parameters for Power Modules in a parallel circuit configuration

10.2.3 Indicating and rectifying faults

The device features a wide range of functions that protect the drive against damage if a fault occurs (faults and alarms).

Indicating faults and alarms

If a fault occurs, the drive displays the fault and/or alarm on the AOP30 operator panel. Faults are indicated by the red "FAULT" LED and a fault screen is automatically displayed. You can use the F1 Help function to call up information about the cause of the fault and how to remedy it. You can use F5 Ack. to acknowledge a stored fault.

Any alarms are displayed by the yellow flashing "ALARM" LED. The system also displays a note in the status bar providing information on the cause.

Every fault and alarm is entered in the fault/alarm buffer along with time the error occurred. The time stamp refers to the relative system time in milliseconds (r0969).

Activate the "Set date/time - AOP synchronization -> Drive" setting to date- and time-stamp errors on the AOP30.

What is a fault?

A fault is a message from the drive indicating an error or other exceptional (unwanted) status. This could be caused by a fault within the converter or an external fault triggered, for example, from the winding temperature monitor for the induction motor. The faults are displayed and can be reported to a higher-level control system via PROFIdrive. In the delivery condition, the message "Drive fault" is also sent to a relay output. Once you have rectified the cause of the fault, you have to acknowledge the fault message.

What is an alarm?

An alarm is the response to a fault condition identified by the drive. It does not result in the drive being switched off and does not have to be acknowledged. Alarms are "self acknowledging", that is, they are reset automatically when the cause of the alarm has been eliminated.

10.3 Overview of warnings and faults

If a fault occurs, the drive indicates the fault and/or alarm. Faults and alarms are listed in a fault/alarm list, together with the following information:

- Fault/alarm number
- Standard drive response
- Description of the possible cause of the fault/alarm
- Description of the procedure for rectifying the problem
- Standard fault acknowledgement after it has been rectified

Note

List of faults and alarms

The list of faults and alarms is included on the customer DVD!

It also contains descriptions of possible fault responses (OFF1, OFF2, ...).

Note

Faults and alarms wired and preset at the factory

The faults and alarms described below have been wired specially for the cabinet units listed in this document and preset via macro. In this way, the appropriate reaction is triggered by the additional components in the cabinet unit when faults and alarms are signaled.

It is possible to reprogram the faults and alarms described, provided that the stated options are not included in the scope of the equipment.

10.3.1 "External alarm 1"

Causes

Alarm A7850 ("External alarm 1") is triggered by the following optional protection devices in the cabinet unit:

- Temperature sensor for triggering the alarm threshold in the Line Harmonics Filter compact (option L01)
- Thermistor motor protection unit alarm (option L83)
- PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86)

Remedy

When a fault is indicated, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Identify the cause by examining the specified devices (display or LEDs).
2. Check the fault display on the relevant protection device and establish the fault.
3. Rectify the displayed fault with the help of the appropriate operating instructions provided in "Additional Operating Instructions".

10.3.2 "External fault 1"

Causes

Fault code F7860 ("External Fault 1") is triggered by the following optional protection devices in the cabinet unit:

- Temperature sensor for triggering the fault threshold in the Line Harmonics Filter compact (option L01)
- Thermistor motor protection unit shutdown (option L84)
- PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86)

Remedy

When a fault is indicated, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Identify the cause by examining the specified devices (display or LEDs).
2. Check the fault display on the relevant protection device and establish the fault.
3. Rectify the displayed fault with the help of the appropriate operating instructions provided in "Additional Operating Instructions".

10.3.3 "External fault 2"

Causes

Fault code F7861 ("External Fault 2") is triggered when the braking resistor available with options L61 and L62 is subject to thermal overload, thereby activating the thermostat. The drive is switched off with OFF2.

Remedy

The cause of the braking resistor overload must be eliminated and the fault code acknowledged.

10.3.4 "External fault 3"

Causes

Fault code F7862 "External fault 3" is triggered when the braking unit fitted for options L61 and L62 triggers a fault. The drive is switched off with OFF2.

Remedy

The cause of the braking unit overload must be eliminated and the fault code acknowledged.

10.4 Service and Support

Technical support

We offer technical support in both German and English for deploying products, systems, and solutions in drive and automation technology.

In special cases, help is available from professional, trained, and experienced specialists via teleservice and video conferencing.

If you have any questions, please contact our hotline:

Time zone Europe/Africa	
Phone	+49 (0) 911 895 7222
Fax	+49 (0) 911 895 7223
Internet	http://www.siemens.com/automation/support-request

Time zone America	
Phone	+1 423 262 2522
Fax	+1 423 262 2200
Internet	techsupport.sea@siemens.com

Time zone Asia/Pacific	
Phone	+86 1064 757 575
Fax	+86 1064 747 474
Internet	support.asia.automation@siemens.com

10.4.1 Spare parts

The spare parts available for the ordered cabinet unit can be found in the spare parts list.

This list is provided on the customer DVD.

Maintenance and servicing 11

11.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Maintenance and servicing procedures that have to be carried out on a regular basis to ensure the availability of the cabinet units.
- Exchanging device components when the unit is serviced
- Forming the DC link capacitors
- Upgrading the cabinet unit firmware
- Loading the new operator panel firmware from the PC.

⚠DANGER

Five safety rules

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the "five safety rules" according to EN 50110 must always be observed:

1. Disconnect the system
2. Protect against reconnection.
3. Make sure that the equipment has zero potential
4. Ground and short-circuit.
5. Cover or fence off adjacent components that are still live.

⚠DANGER

Discharging the capacitors

Before carrying out any maintenance or repair work on the de-energized cabinet unit, wait for 5 minutes after switching off the supply voltage. This allows the capacitors to discharge to a harmless level (< 25 V) after the supply voltage has been switched off.

Before starting work, you should also measure the voltage after the 5 minutes have elapsed. The voltage can be measured on DC link terminals DCP and DCN.

⚠DANGER

Dangerous electrical voltage as a result of of external infeeds

When the external power supply for individual options (L50 / L55) or the external 230 V AC auxiliary supply is connected, dangerous voltages are still present in the cabinet unit even when the main circuit breaker is open.

⚠DANGER

Disconnect both sub-cabinets electrically from the grid

During connection, installation and repair work on units that are connected in parallel, it must be ensured that both sub-cabinets are electrically disconnected from the power supply.

11.2 Maintenance

The cabinet unit mainly comprises electronic components. Apart from the fan(s), the unit contains very few components that are subject to wear or require maintenance or servicing. Maintenance aims to preserve the specified condition of the cabinet unit. Dirt and contamination must be removed regularly and parts subject to wear replaced.

The following points must generally be observed.

11.2.1 Cleaning

Dust deposits

Dust deposits inside the cabinet unit must be removed at regular intervals (or at least once a year) by qualified personnel in line with the relevant safety regulations. The unit must be cleaned using a brush and vacuum cleaner, and dry compressed air (max. 1 bar) for areas that cannot be easily reached.

Ventilation

The ventilation openings in the cabinet must never be obstructed. The fan must be checked to make sure that it is functioning correctly.

Cable and screw terminals

Cable and screw terminals must be checked regularly to ensure that they are secure in position, and if necessary, retightened. Cabling must be checked for defects. Defective parts must be replaced immediately.

Note

Maintenance intervals

The actual intervals at which maintenance procedures are to be performed depend on the installation conditions (cabinet environment) and the operating conditions.

Siemens offers its customers support in the form of a service contract. For further details, contact your regional office or sales office.

11.3 Maintenance

Servicing involves activities and procedures for maintaining and restoring the specified condition of the device.

Required tools

The following tools are required for replacing components:

- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench
- Screwdriver size 1 / 2
- Screwdriver Torx T20 / T25 / T30

A socket wrench set with two long extensions is recommended.

Tightening torques for screw connections

The following tightening torques apply when tightening connections of operating current-conducting parts (DC link/motor connections, general busbars), non-operating current-conducting parts (ground connections, ground terminal connections), and general steel threaded connections.

Table 11- 1 Tightening torques for screw connections

Thread	Ground connections, protective conductor connections, steel threaded connections (fault current-conducting)	Plastic, busbars (operating current-conducting)
M3	1.3 Nm	0.8 Nm
M4	3 Nm	1.8 Nm
M5	6 Nm	3 Nm
M6	10 Nm	6 Nm
M8	25 Nm	13 Nm
M10	50 Nm	25 Nm
M12	88 Nm	50 Nm
M16	215 Nm	115 Nm

NOTICE
Screw connections for protective covers The threaded connections for the protective covers made of Makrolon may only tightened with 2.5 Nm.

11.3.1 Installation device

Description

The installation device is used for installing and removing the power blocks.

It is used as an installation aid, which is placed in front of and secured to the module. The telescopic guide support allows the withdrawable device to be adjusted according to the height at which the power blocks are installed. Once the mechanical and electrical connections have been removed, the power block can be removed from the module, whereby the power block is guided and supported by the guide rails on the withdrawable devices.

Figure 11-1 Installation device

Order number

Order number for the installation device: 6SL3766-1FA00-0AA0.

11.3.2 Using crane lifting lugs to transport power blocks

Crane lifting lugs

The power blocks are fitted with crane lifting lugs for transportation on a lifting harness in the context of replacement.

The positions of the crane lifting lugs are illustrated by arrows in the figures below.

⚠ WARNING

Use a lifting harness

A lifting harness with vertical ropes or chains must be used to prevent any risk of damage to the housing.

NOTICE

Do not use busbars for transportation

The power block busbars must not be used to support or secure lifting harnesses for the purpose of transportation.

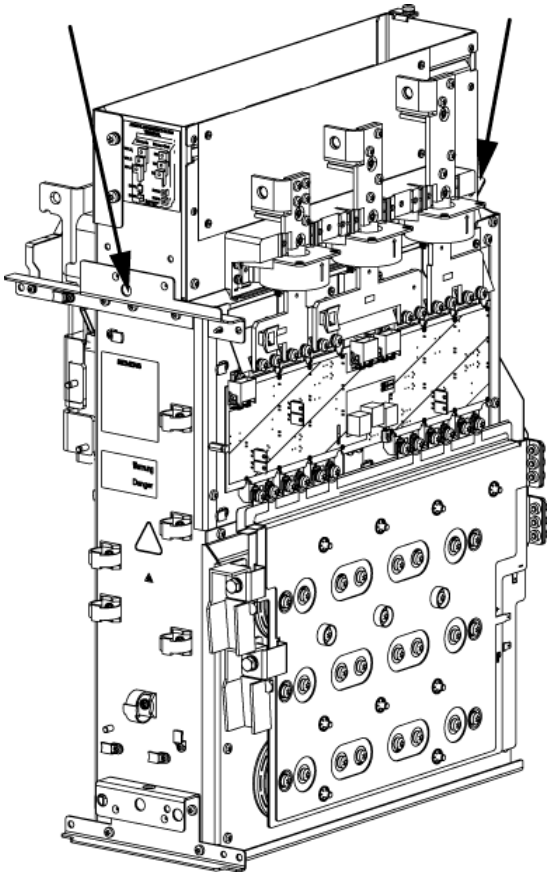


Figure 11-2 Crane lifting lugs on FX, GX power block

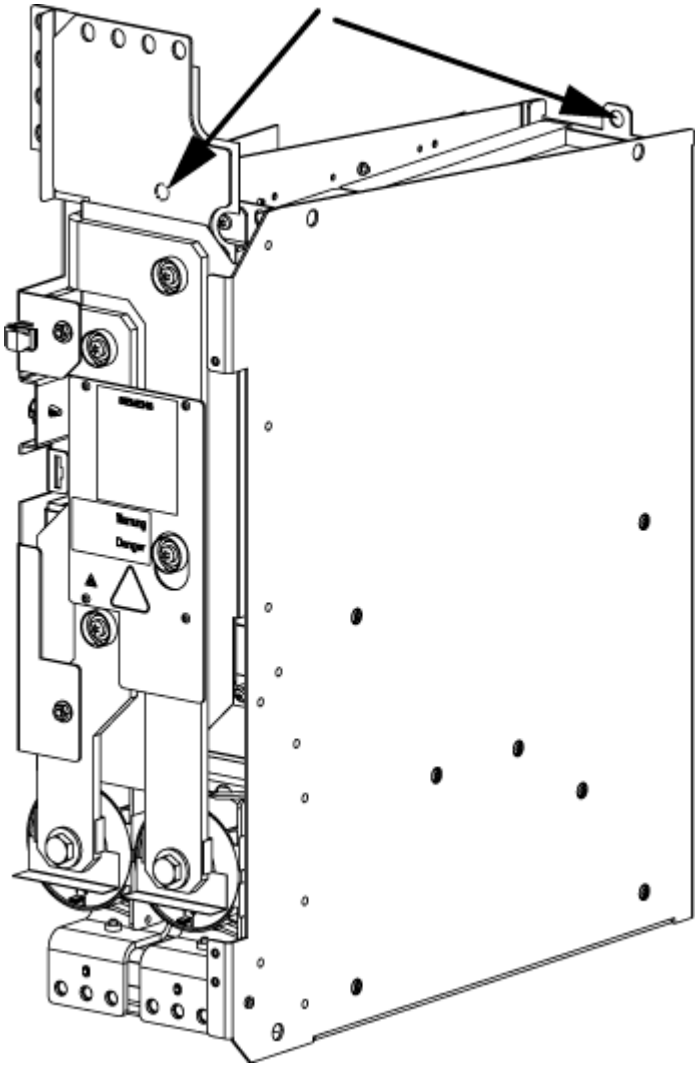


Figure 11-3 Crane lifting lugs on HX, JX power block

Note

Crane lifting lugs on power blocks HX, JX

On HX and JX power blocks, the front crane lifting lug is located behind the busbar.

11.4 Replacing components

⚠WARNING

Transportation of the devices

The following must be taken into account when the devices are transported:

- The devices are heavy or generally top heavy. The center of gravity is marked on the devices.
- Due to their weight, the devices must be handled with care by trained personnel.
- Serious injury or even death and substantial material damage can occur if the devices are not lifted or transported properly.

⚠WARNING

Dangerous electrical voltage

The devices are operated with high voltages.

All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized!

All work on the device must be carried out by trained personnel only. Non-observance of these warnings can result in death, serious personal injury, or substantial property damage.

Work on an open device must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.

Dangerously high voltage levels are still present in the device up to five minutes after it has been disconnected due to the DC link capacitors. For this reason, the unit should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

⚠DANGER

Five safety rules

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the "five safety rules" according to EN 50110 must always be observed:

1. Disconnect the system
2. Protect against reconnection
3. Make sure that the equipment is de-energized
4. Ground and short-circuit
5. Cover or isolate nearby components that are still live

11.4.1 Replacing the filter mats

The filter mats must be checked at regular intervals. If the mats are too dirty to allow the air supply to flow normally, they must be replaced.

Note

Replacing the filter mats

Filter mat replacement is only relevant for options M23, M43 and M54.

Not replacing contaminated filter mats can cause premature drive shutdown.

11.4.2 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

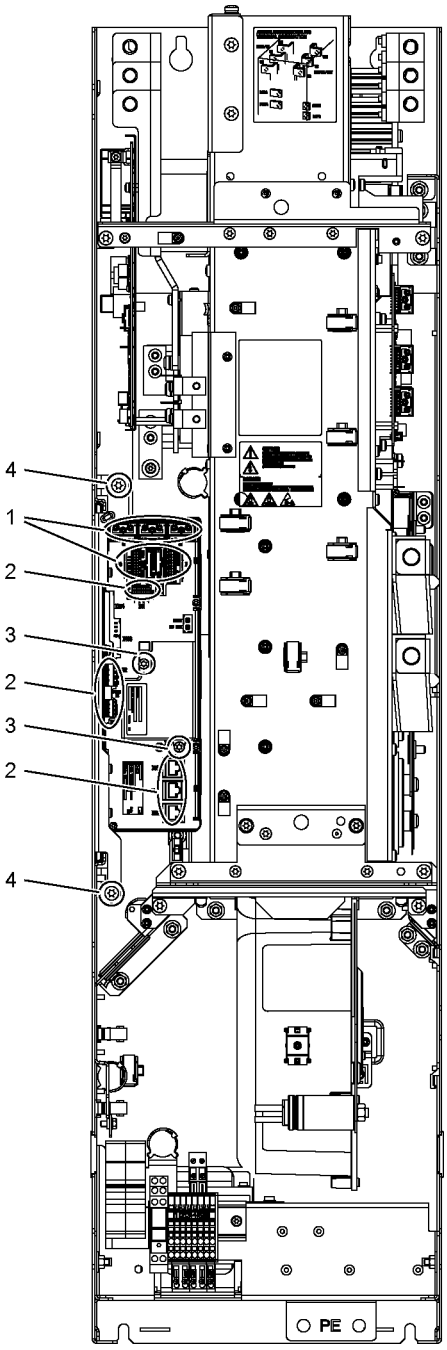


Figure 11-4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE
Specifications for the installation
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.
Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.
The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.3 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

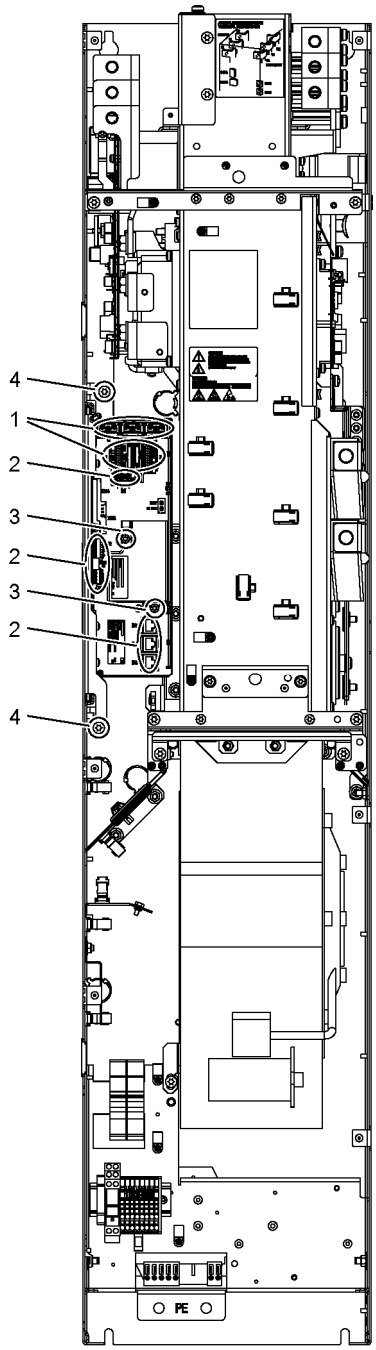


Figure 11-5 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws)

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Information on the installation
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.
Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.
The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled accordingly for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

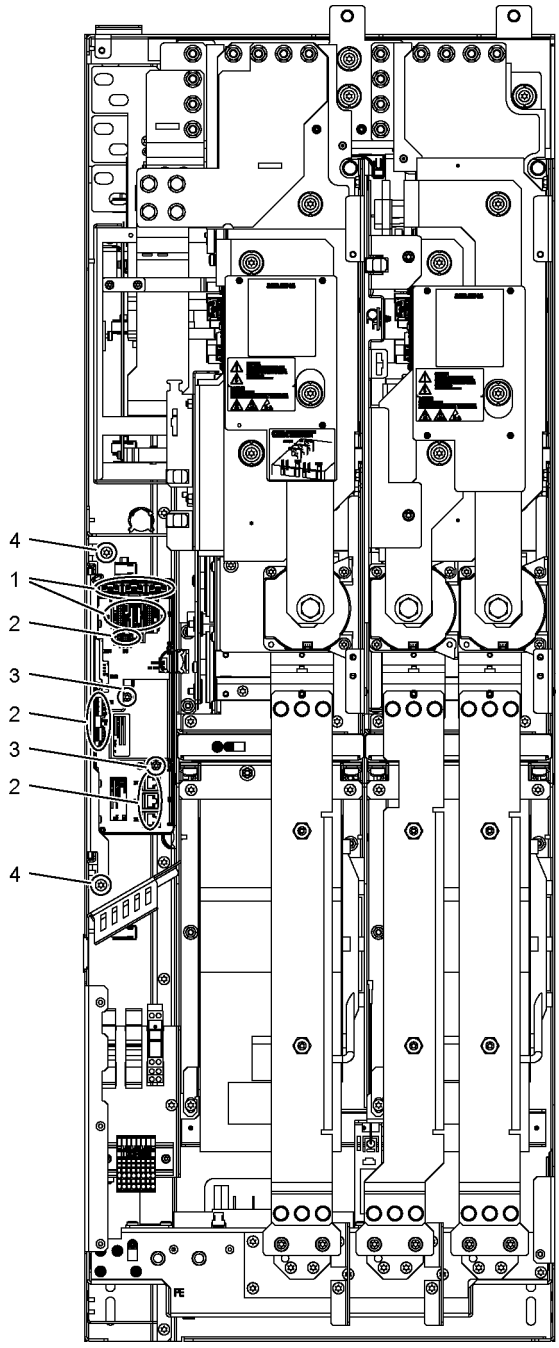


Figure 11-6 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Specifications for the installation
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.
Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.
The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled accordingly for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.5 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

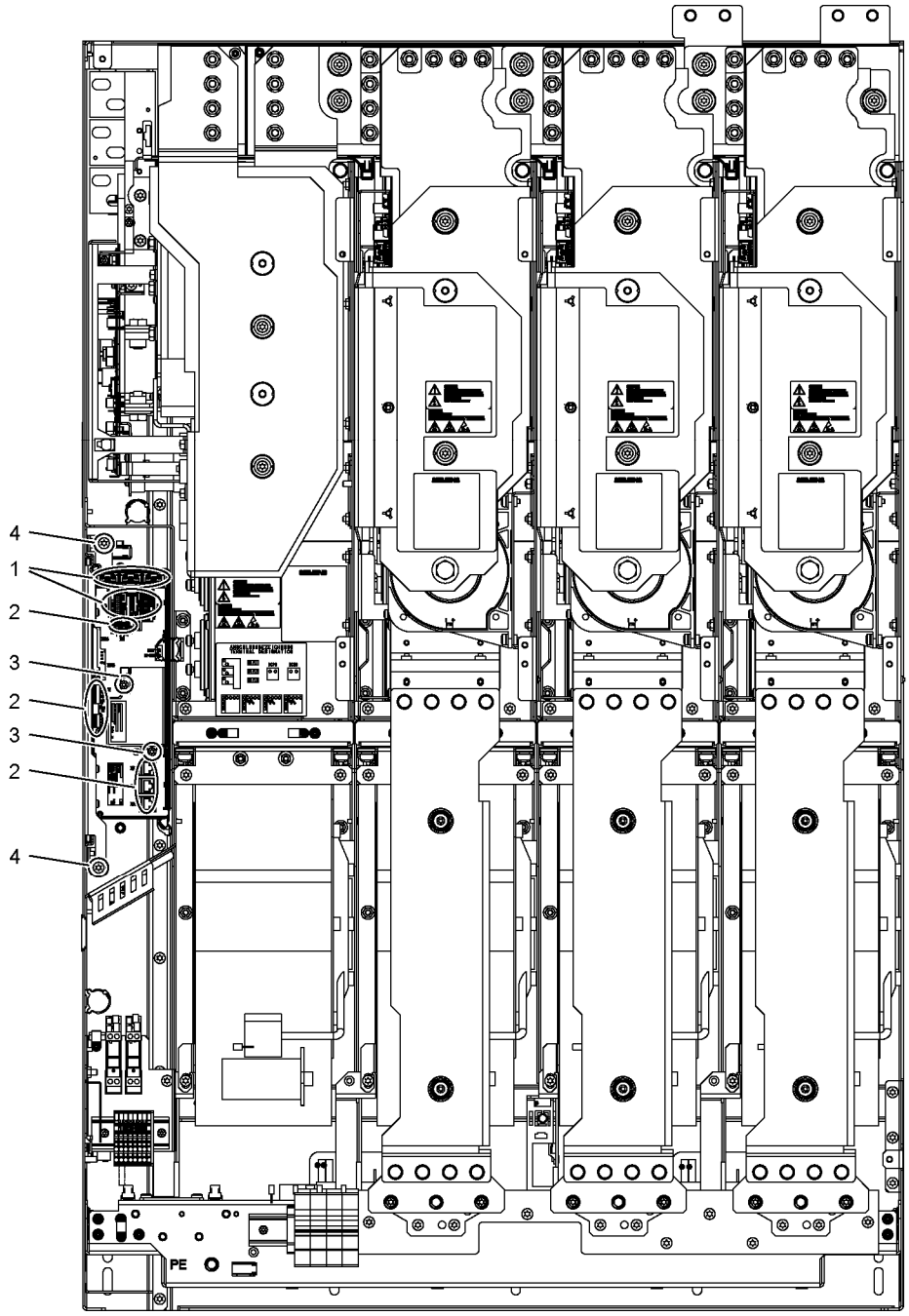


Figure 11-7 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Specifications for the installation
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.
Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.
The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled accordingly for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.6 Replacing the power block (type FX)

Replacing the power block

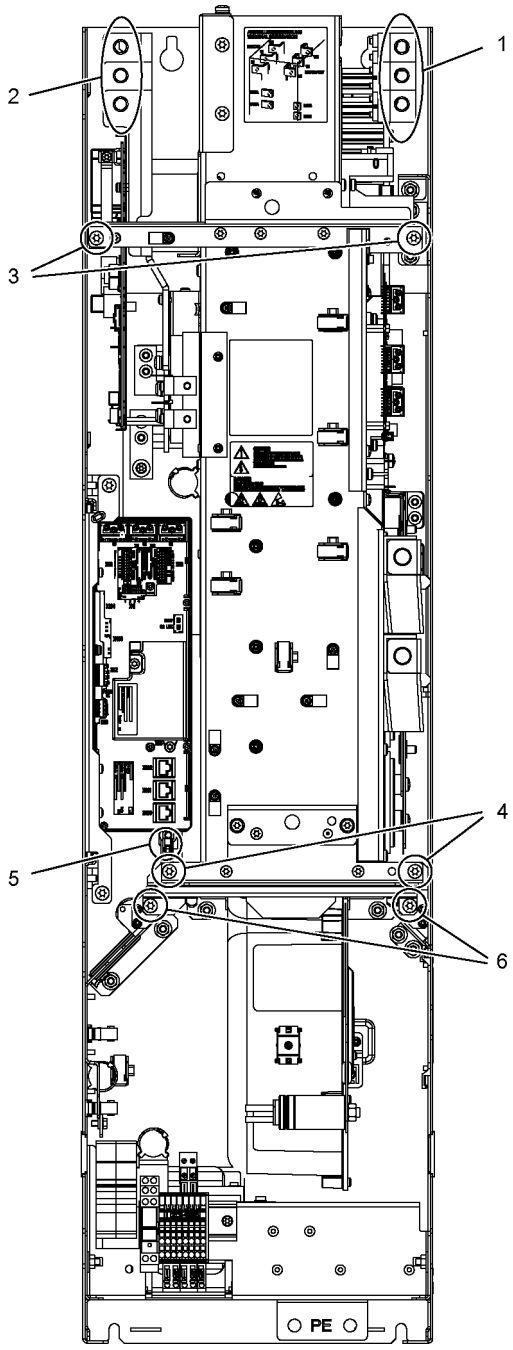


Figure 11-8 Replacing the power block, frame size FX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.
- Removing the Control Interface Module (see corresponding section)

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Unscrew the connection to the outgoing motor section (3 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the line supply (3 screws).
3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
6. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the equipment for assembling the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 70 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in Chapter "Removing the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

11.4.7 Replacing the power block (type GX)

Replacing the power block

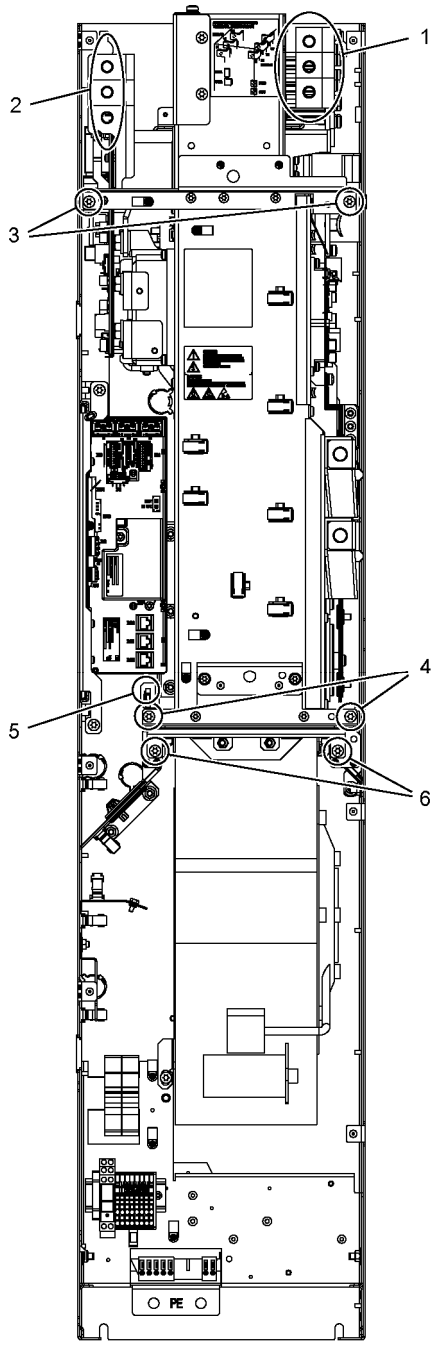


Figure 11-9 Replacing the power block, frame size GX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.
- Removing the Control Interface Module (see corresponding section)

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Unscrew the connection to the outgoing motor section (3 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the line supply (3 screws).
3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
6. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the equipment for assembling the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 102 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in the section "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

11.4.8 Replacing the power block (type HX)

Replacing the left power block

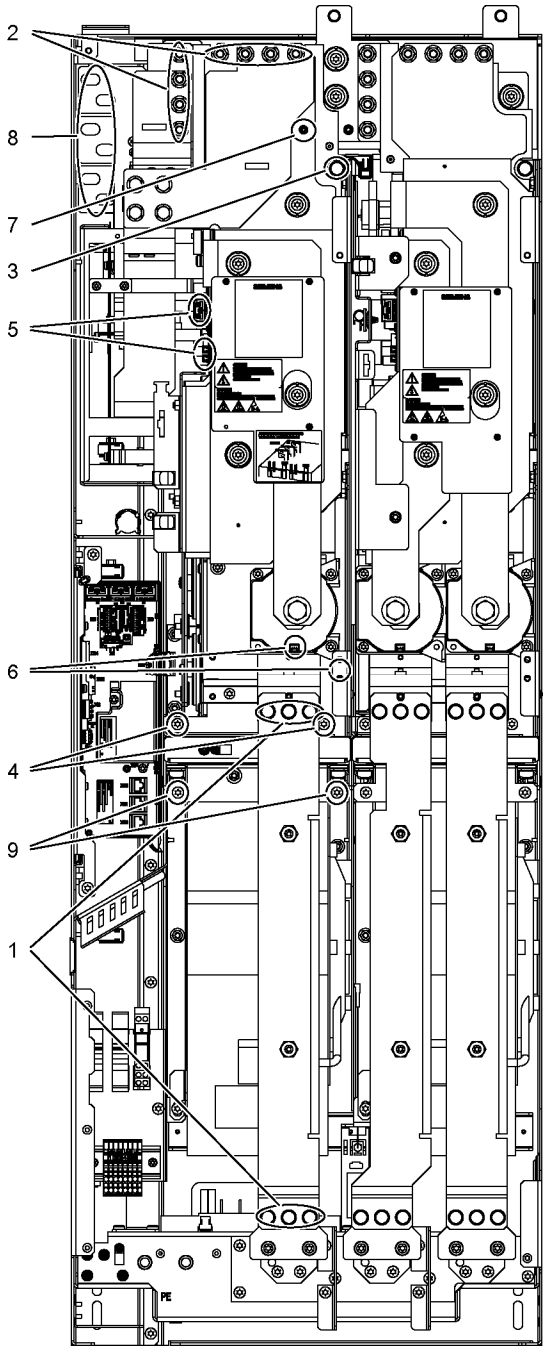


Figure 11-10 Replacing the power block, frame size HX, left power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (6 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (3 plugs).
6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (1 plug).
7. Remove the connection for the DC link sensor (1 nut).
8. Remove the power connections (6 screws).
9. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 94 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in the section "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

Replacing the right power block

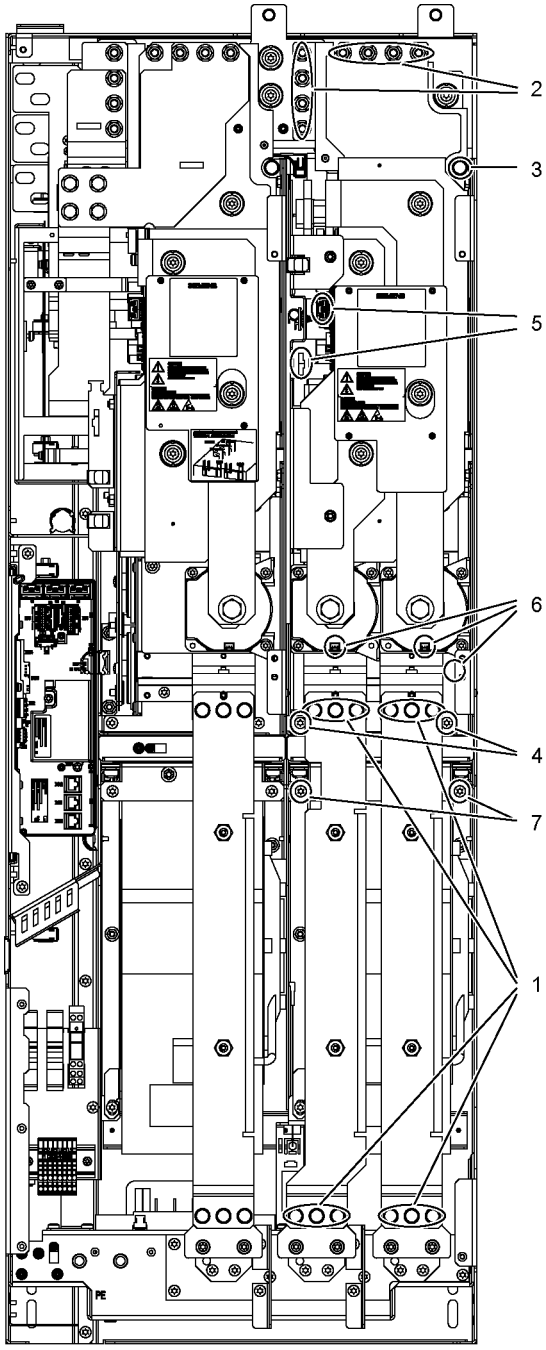


Figure 11-11 Replacing the power block, frame size HX, right power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbars (12 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (3 plugs).
6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (2 plugs).
7. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

⚠ CAUTION
Caution when removing The power block weighs approx. 88 kg! When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE
Specifications for the installation The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed. Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

11.4.9 Replacing the power block (type JX)

Replacing the left power block

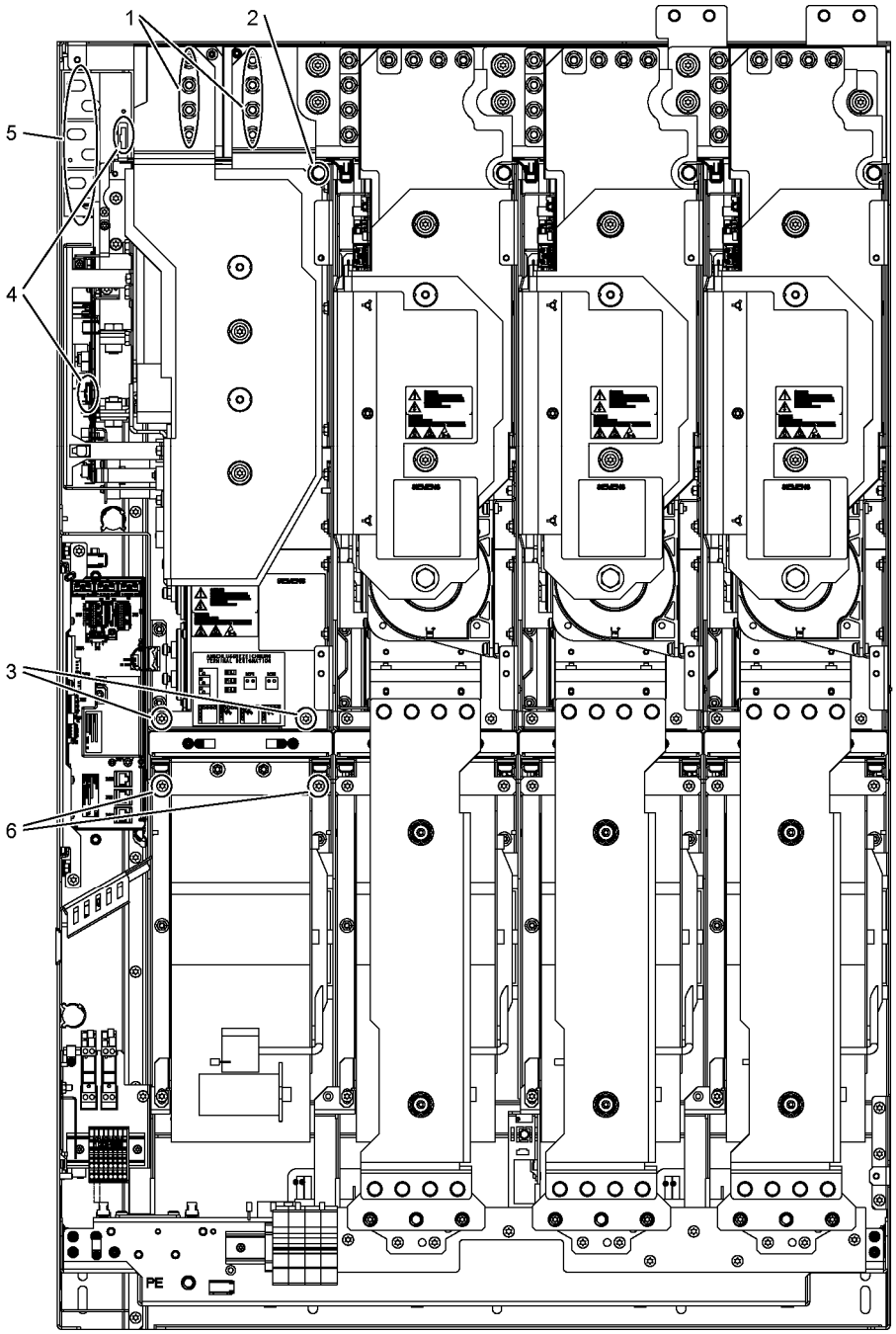


Figure 11-12 Replacing the power block, frame size JX, left power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
2. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
3. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
4. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs).
5. Remove the connections to the mains supply (6 screws).
6. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

⚠ CAUTION
Caution when removing
The power block weighs approx. 102 kg!
When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Specifications for the installation
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.
Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in the section "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

Replacing the right power block

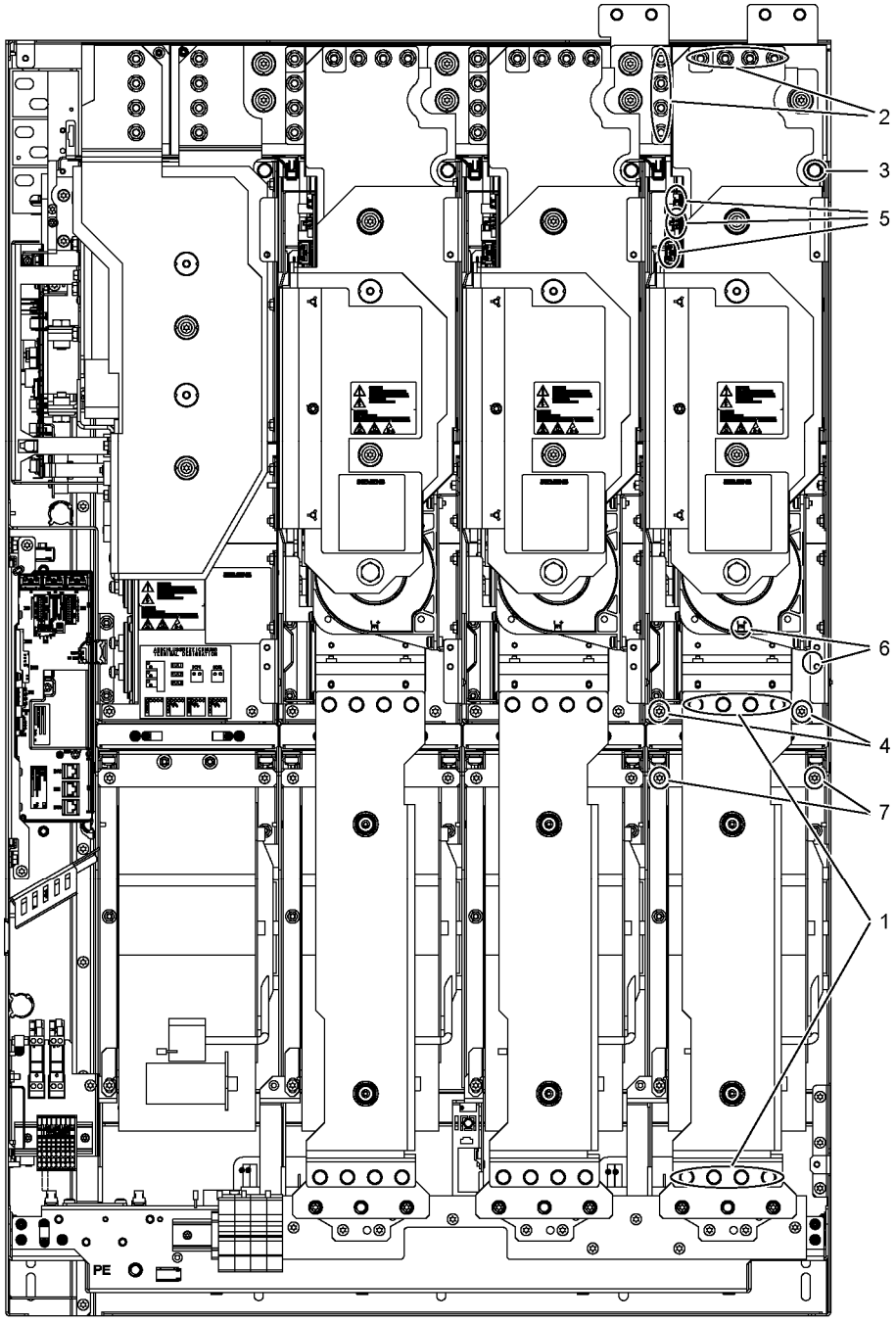


Figure 11-13 Replacing the power block, frame size JX, right power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (8 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs).
6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (1 plug).
7. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 90 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

11.4.10 Replacing the fan (type FX)

Replacing the fan

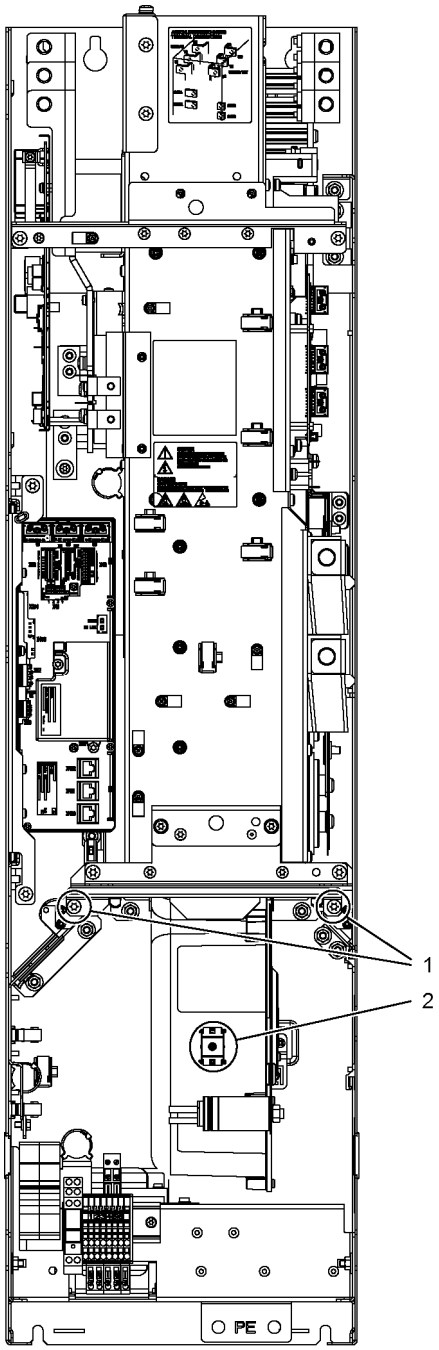


Figure 11-14 Replacing the fan, frame size FX

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (2 screws)
2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Pay attention to the tightening torques
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset via p0251 = 0.

11.4.11 Replacing the fan (type GX)

Replacing the fan

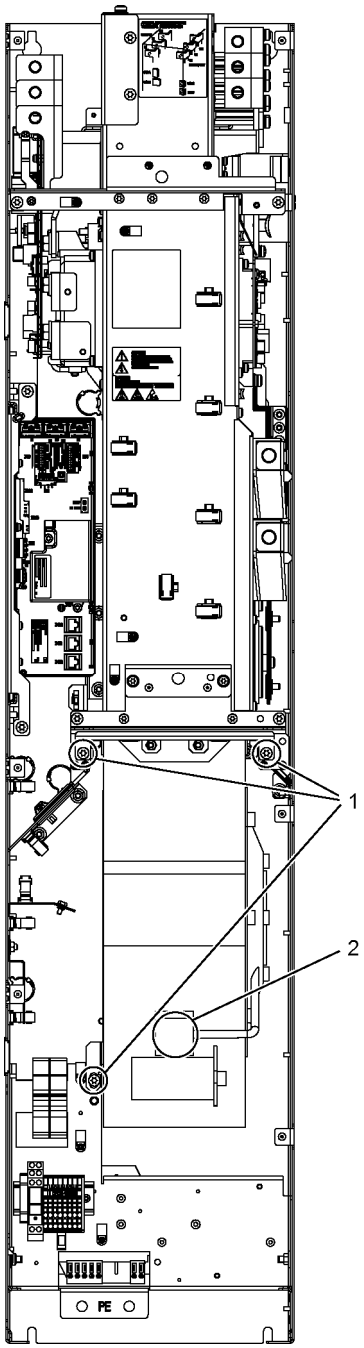


Figure 11-15 Replacing the fan, frame size GX

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Pay attention to the tightening torques
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset via p0251 = 0.

11.4.12 Replacing the fan (type HX)

Replacing the fan, left power block

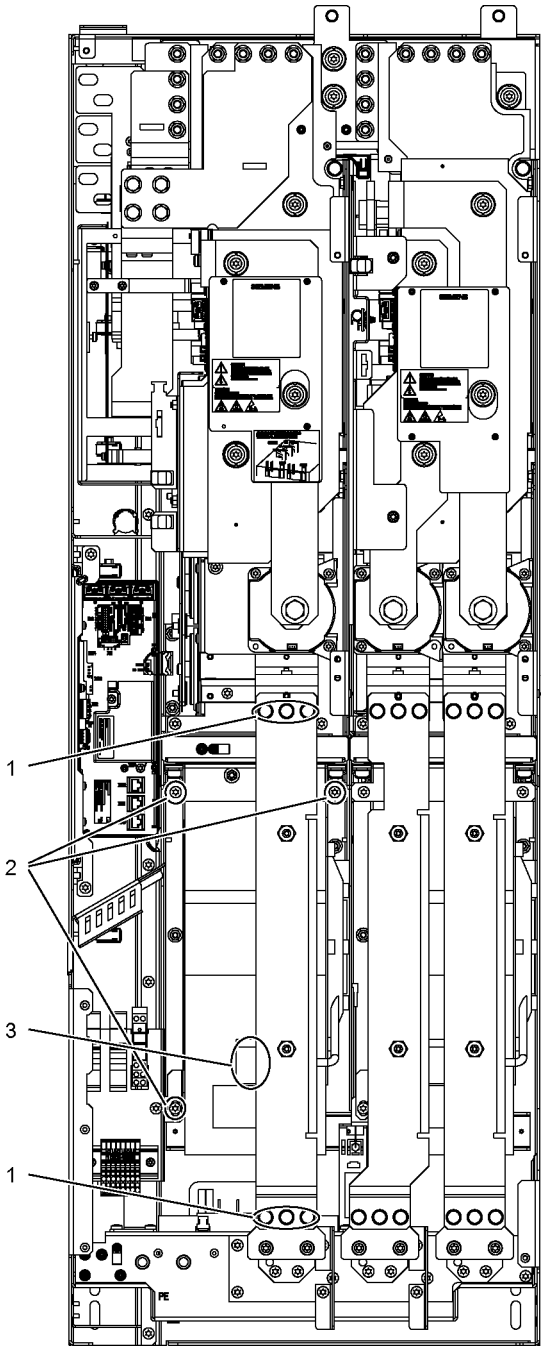


Figure 11-16 Replacing the fan, frame size HX, left power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (6 screws).
2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Pay attention to the tightening torques The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset via p0251 = 0.

Replacing the fan, right power block

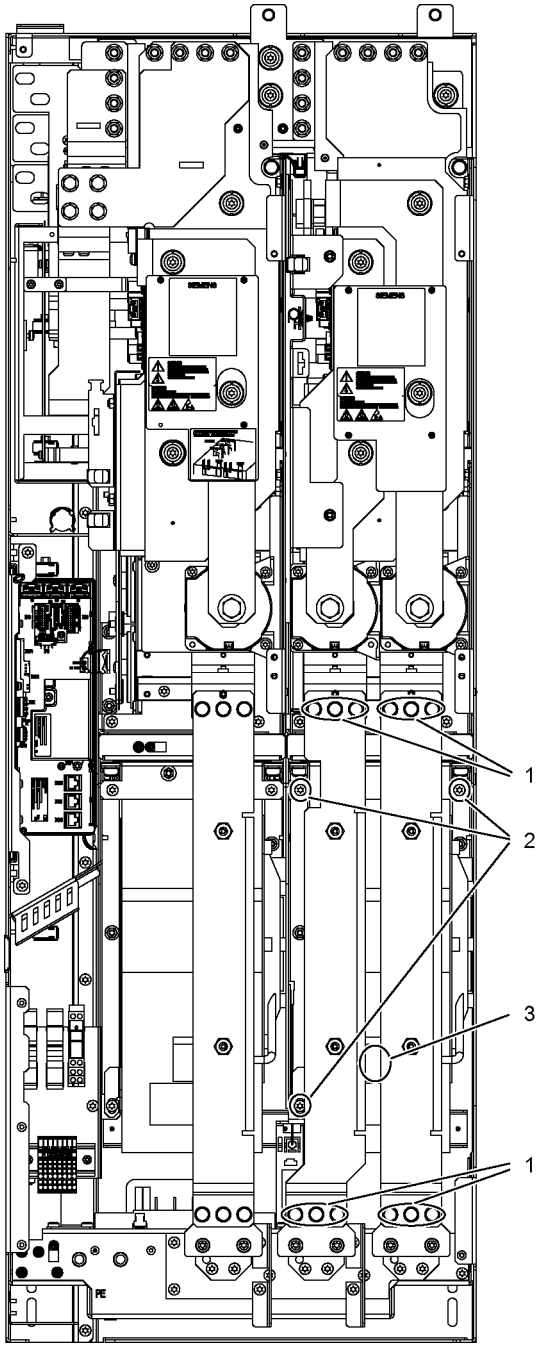


Figure 11-17 Replacing the fan, frame size HX, right power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (12 screws).
2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Pay attention to the tightening torques The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset via p0251 = 0.

11.4.13 Replacing the fan (type JX)

Replacing the fan, left power block

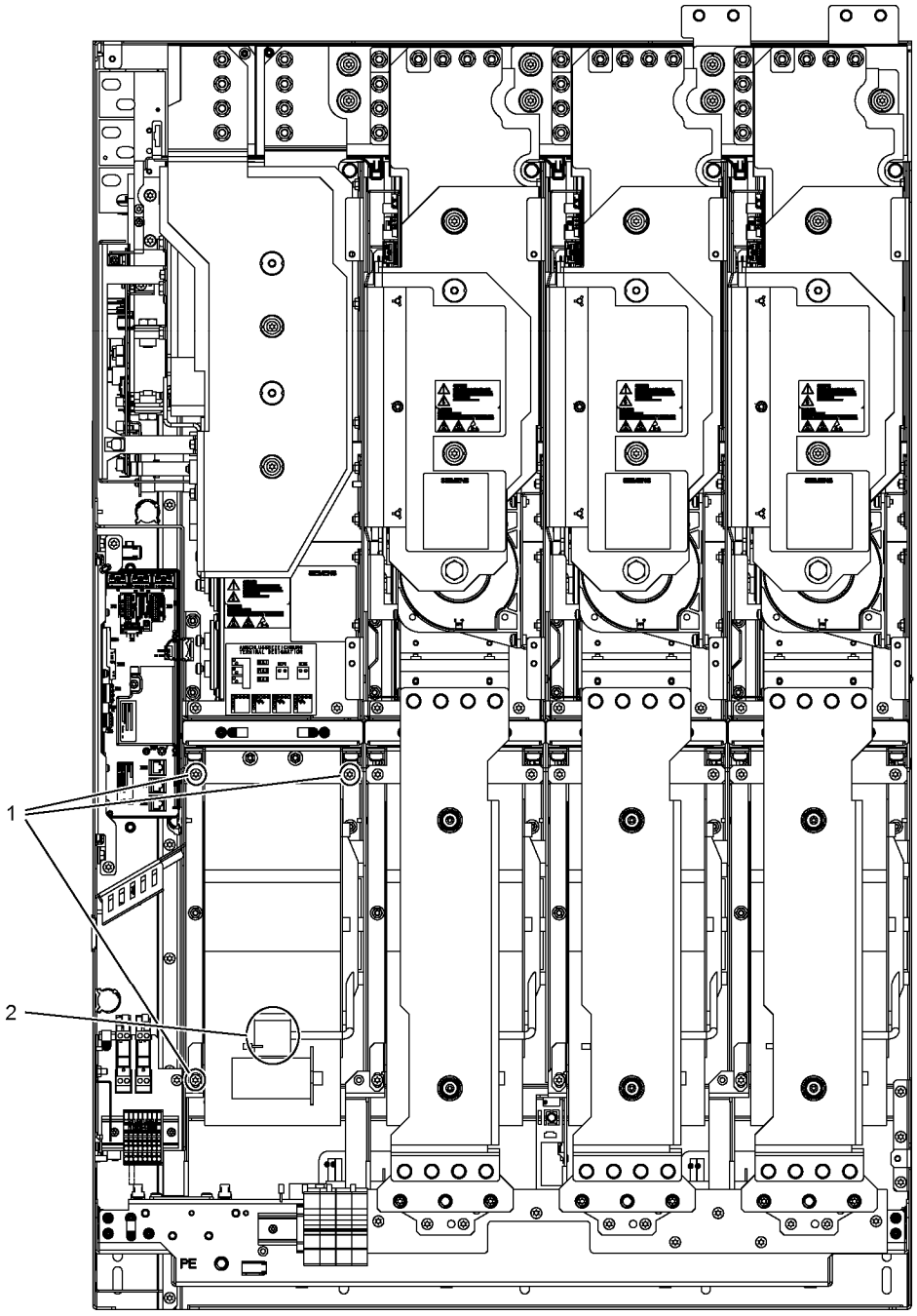


Figure 11-18 Replacing the fan, frame size JX, left power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables
When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Pay attention to the tightening torques
The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset via p0251 = 0.

Replacing the fan, right power block

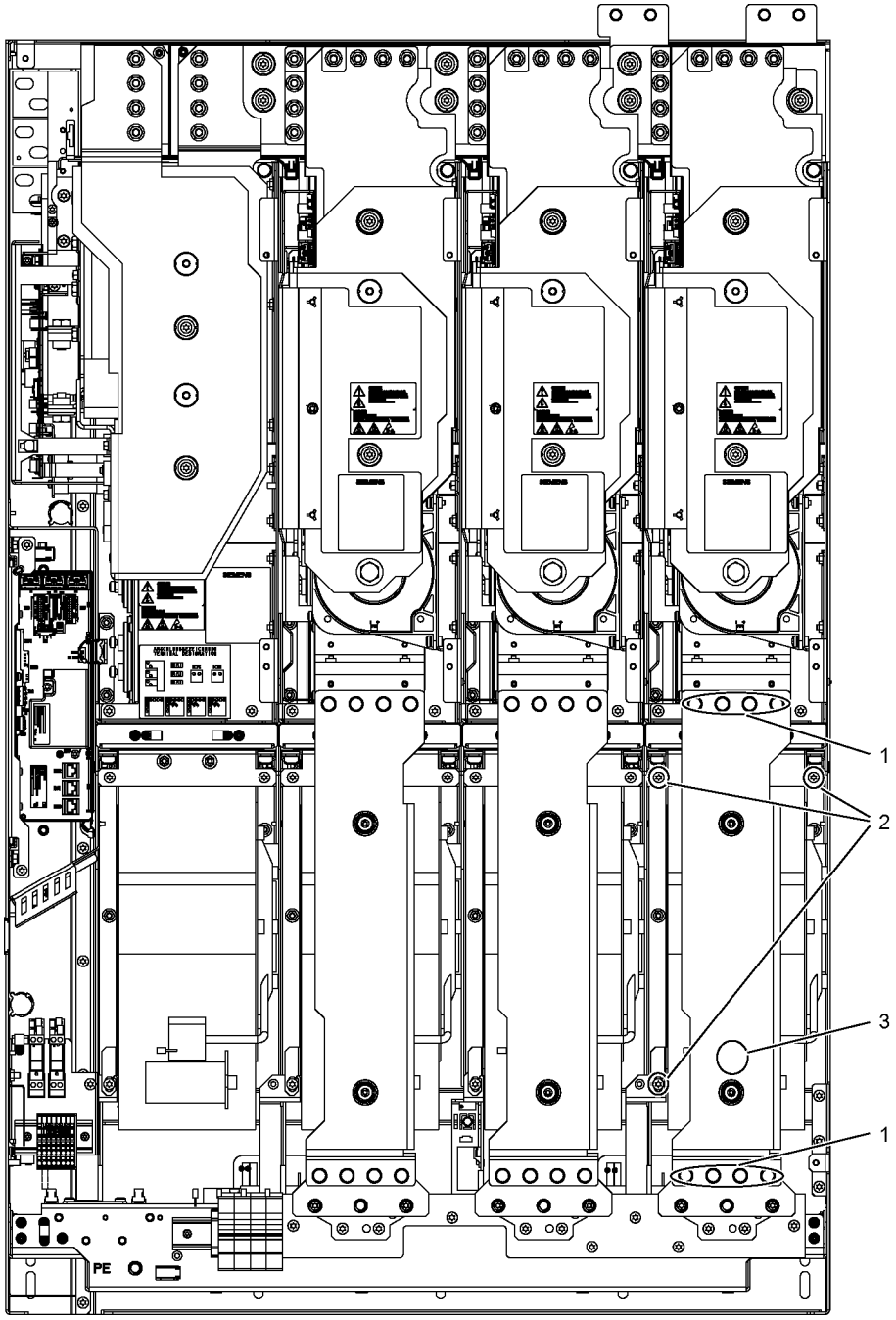


Figure 11-19 Replacing the fan, frame size JX, right power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (8 screws).
2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Do not damage any signal cables When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installation is the same as removing but in reverse order.

NOTICE
Pay attention to the tightening torques The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset via p0251 = 0.

11.4.14 Replacing cylindrical fuses

The following fuses are cylindrical fuses:

- Fan fuses (-T1 -F10, -T1 -F11)
- Fuses for auxiliary power supply (-F11, -F12)
- Fuse for the internal 230 V AC supply (-F21)

Figure 11-20 Fuse holder

Order numbers for replacing fuses that have blown can be found in the spare parts list.

⚠ WARNING

Sequence when replacing fuses

When replacing a fuse, you must follow these steps:

- First disconnect the cabinet from the power supply.
- Then, eliminate the cause of the fault.
- Finally, replace the fuse.

11.4.15 Replacing the LV HRC fuses

Description

NH fuses (low-voltage high-breaking-capacity fuses), also called knife fuses, are used, for example, in the on/off switches of the power supplies.

Figure 11-21 NH fuse

Preparatory steps

- Have the fuse equipment ready: NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuse-links
- National safety regulations must be followed.

Figure 11-22 NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuses

Note

The NH fuse puller can be ordered from Siemens with order number 3NX1 if required.

Removal steps

The NH fuse is removed in the following steps:

1. Switch the main switch to OFF
2. Front shock protection cover of the cabinet

⚠ CAUTION

Cover over the line connections

Do not remove the cover (shock protection) over the line connections!

3. Put the NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuse-links over the fuse
4. Remove the defective fuse.

Note

Replacing all NH fuses at the same time

After one NH fuse trips, always replace all NH fuses at the same time.

Installation steps

The NH fuse is installed in the following steps:

1. Attach the new fuse onto the NH fuse grip.
2. Insert the fuse into the fuse holder
3. Press the release button on the NH fuse puller to release the grip from the new fuse.
4. Attach the front shock protection cover

The power switch can then be closed.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only identical fuses

Only fuses of the same type may be installed.

11.4.16 Replacing the cabinet operator panel

1. Switch the unit into a no-voltage condition.
2. Open the cabinet.
3. Disconnect the power supply and communications line on the operator panel.
4. Release the fastenings on the operator panel.
5. Remove the operator panel.
6. Install the new operator panel.
7. Carry out any other work by reversing the sequence.

11.4.17 Replacing the Backup Battery for the Cabinet Operator Panel

Table 11- 2 Technical specifications of the backup battery

Type	CR2032 3 V lithium battery
Manufacturer	Maxell, Sony, Panasonic
Nominal capacity	220 mAh
Self-discharge at 20 °C	1 %/year
Service life (in backup mode)	> 1 year at 70 °C; >1.5 years at 20 °C
Service life (in operation)	> 2 years

Replacement

1. Switch the unit into a no-voltage condition.
2. Open the cabinet.
3. Disconnect the 24 V DC power supply and communications line on the operator panel.
4. Open the cover of the battery compartment.
5. Remove the old battery.
6. Insert the new battery.
7. Close the cover of the battery compartment.
8. Reconnect the 24 V DC power supply and communications line.
9. Close the cabinet.

Note

Time for replacing the battery

The battery must be replaced within one minute to ensure that no AOP settings are lost.

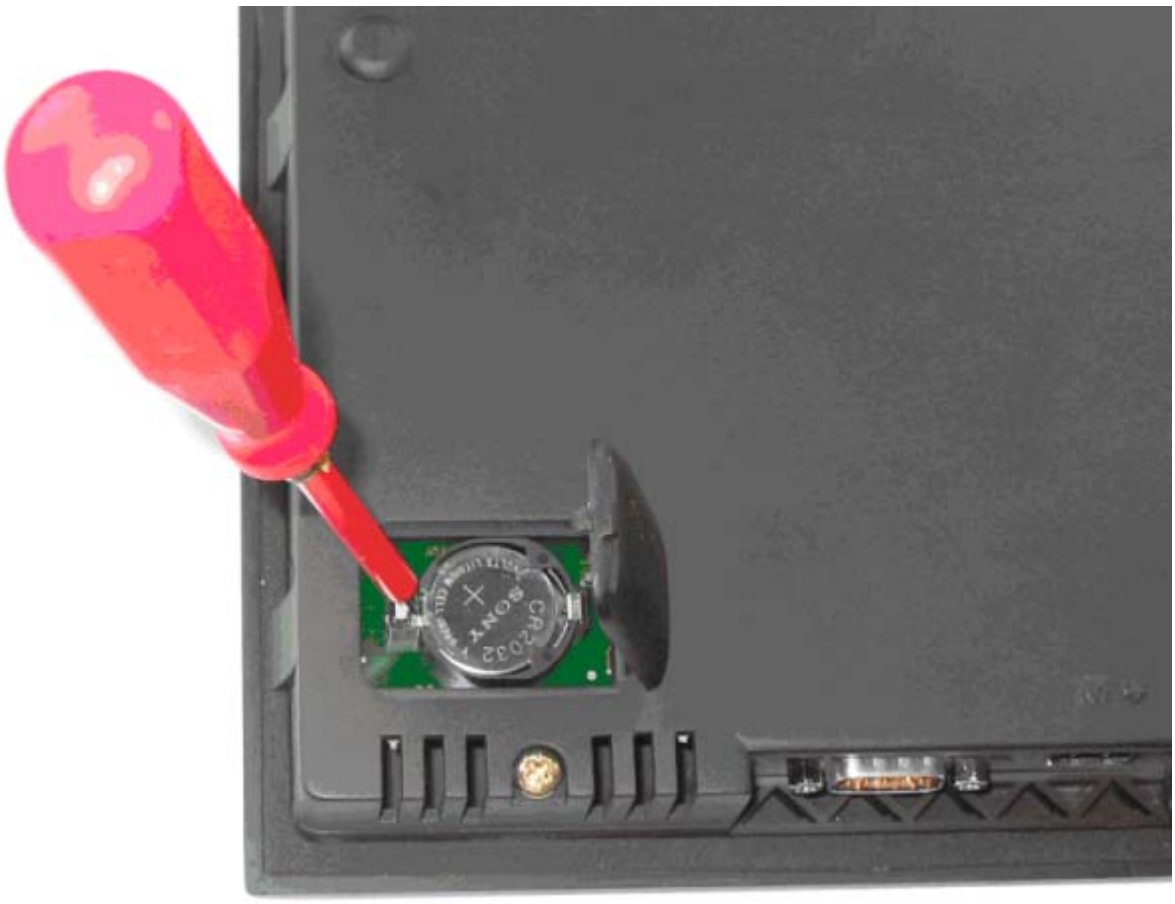


Figure 11-23 Replacing the backup battery for the cabinet operator panel

Note

Battery disposal

The battery must be disposed of in accordance with the applicable country-specific guidelines and regulations.

11.5 Forming the DC link capacitors

Description

If the device is kept in storage for more than 2 years, the DC link capacitors have to be re-formed. If this is not done, the unit could be damaged when it is operated under load.

If the cabinet is commissioned within two years of its date of manufacture, the DC link capacitors do not need to be re-formed. The date of manufacture is indicated in the serial number on the type plate (see "Device Overview").

Note

Storage period

It is important that the storage period is calculated from the date of manufacture and not from the date that the equipment was shipped.

Procedure

The DC link capacitors are re-formed by applying the rated voltage without load for at least 30 minutes at room temperature.

- Operation via PROFIBUS:
  - Set bit 3 of control word 1 (operation enable) permanently to "0".
  - Switch on the converter by means of an ON signal (bit 0 of the control word); all the other bits must be set in such a way that the converter can be operated.
  - Once the delay time has elapsed, switch off the converter and restore the original PROFIBUS setting.
- Operation via terminal block:
  - Set p0852 to "0" (factory setting is "1").
  - Switch on the converter (via digital input 0 on the customer terminal block).
  - Once the delay time has elapsed, switch off the converter and restore the original setting for p0852.

Note

Reforming via AOP30

Reforming cannot be carried out in LOCAL mode via the AOP30.

11.6 Messages after replacing DRIVE-CLiQ components

After DRIVE-CLiQ components are replaced (Control Interface Module, TM31, SMCxx) when service is required, generally no message is output after power-up, since an identical component is identified and accepted as component when the system boots.

The reason for this is that an identical component is detected and accepted as spare part when running-up. If, unexpectedly, a fault message of the "topology fault" category is displayed, then when replacing a component, one of the following faults/errors should have occurred:

- A Control Interface Module with different firmware data was installed.
- When connecting-up DRIVE-CLiQ cables, connections were interchanged.

Automatic firmware update

A firmware update for the replaced DRIVE-CLiQ component may run automatically after switching on the electronics.

- The following LEDs will flash slowly to indicate that an automatic firmware update is in progress: the "RDY" LED on the Control Unit (orange, 0.5 Hz) and an LED on the relevant DRIVE-CLiQ component (green/red, 0.5 Hz).

NOTICE
Do not shut down the converter The drive converter must not be shut down during this process!

- Once the automatic firmware update is complete, the "RDY" LED on the Control Unit will flash quickly (orange, 2 Hz) along with an LED on the relevant DRIVE-CLiQ component (green/red, 2 Hz).
- To complete the automatic firmware update process, a POWER ON is required (switch the device off and back on again).

11.7 Upgrading the cabinet unit firmware

When you upgrade the cabinet unit firmware (by installing a new CompactFlash Card with a new firmware version, for example), you might also have to upgrade the firmware for the DRIVE-CLiQ components in the cabinet unit.

If the system detects that the firmware in the DRIVE-CLiQ components needs to be updated, it will trigger this process automatically when the automatic firmware update is performed.

Automatic firmware update sequence

1. During an automatic firmware update, the "RDY" LED on the Control Unit flashes slowly (orange, 0.5 Hz).
2. The firmware update is performed automatically and in sequence on the DRIVE-CLiQ components; during the update process, an LED on the component whose firmware is being updated will flash slowly (green/red, 0.5 Hz).
3. Once the firmware update on an individual DRIVE-CLiQ component is complete, the LED on that component will flash quickly (green/red, 2 Hz).
4. Once the firmware update on all components is complete, the LED on the Control Unit will flash quickly (orange, 2 Hz).
5. To complete the automatic firmware update process, a POWER ON is required (switch the device off and back on again).

NOTICE
Do not interrupt the power supply of the components The power supply to the components must not be interrupted while the firmware is being upgraded.

NOTICE
Install new firmware New firmware should only be installed if there is a problem with the cabinet unit.

11.8 Load the new operator panel firmware from the PC.

Description

Firmware might need to be loaded to the AOP if the AOP functionality needs to be upgraded.

If, once the drive has powered up, the CompactFlash Card is found to contain a newer version of the firmware, a message will appear on the AOP30 prompting you to load the new firmware. You should click "YES" in response to this prompt.
The firmware will then be loaded automatically on the operator panel and the following dialog screen will appear.

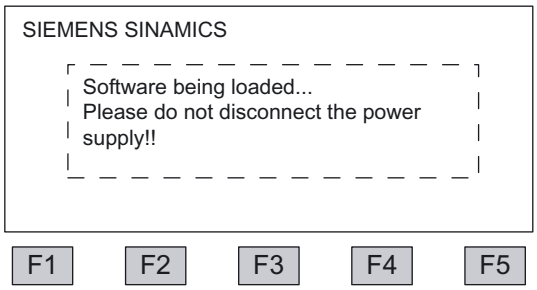


Figure 11-24 Dialog screen: loading firmware

If the firmware cannot be loaded successfully, it can be loaded using the following manual method.

The load program LOAD_AOP30 and the firmware file can be found on the customer DVD.

Loading the firmware

1. Establish the RS232 connection from the PC to the AOP30.
2. Provide the supply voltage (24 V DC).
3. Start the LOAD_AOP30 program on the PC.
4. Choose the PC interface (COM1, COM2).
5. Choose and open the firmware (AOP30.H86).
6. Follow the instructions in the status window of the program and connect the power supply for the AOP30 while pressing the red key (O).
7. The load procedure is started automatically.
8. Switch the power on (switch the power supply off and then back on).

12 Technical specifications

12.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- General and specific technical specifications for the devices.
- Information on restrictions that apply when the devices are used in unfavorable ambient conditions (derating)

12.2 General data

Table 12- 1 General technical data

Electrical data			
Line system configurations	Grounded TN/TT systems or ungrounded IT systems (a grounded phase conductor is not permissible in 690 V line supplies)		
Line frequency	47 ... 63 Hz		
Output frequency	0 ... 300 Hz		
Power factor - Fundamental mode - Total	 ≥ 0.96 0.75 ... 0.93		
Converter efficiency	> 98 %		
Switching at input	Once every 3 minutes		
Overvoltage category	III per EN 61800-5-1		
Mechanical data			
Degree of protection	IP20 (higher degrees of protection up to IP54 optional)		
Class of protection	I per EN 61800-5-1		
Cooling method	Forced air cooling AF per EN 60146		
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m)	• at 50 Hz line frequency ≤ 72 dB(A) (single units) / ≤ 75 dB(A) (units connected in parallel) • at 60 Hz line frequency ≤ 75 dB(A) (single units) / ≤ 78 dB(A) (units connected in parallel)		
Touch protection	EN 50274 and BGV A3 when used as intended		
Cabinet system	Rittal TS 8, doors with double-barb lock, three-section base plates for cable entry		
Paint finish	RAL 7035 (indoor requirements)		
Compliance with standards			
Standards	EN 60146-1, EN 61800-2, EN 61800-3, EN 61800-5-1, EN 60204-1, EN 60529 [2]		
CE mark	To EMC Directive No. 2004/108/EC and Low-Voltage Directive No. 2006/95/EC and Machinery Directive No. 2006/42/EC		
RI suppression	In accordance with the EMC product standard for variable-speed drives EN 61800-3, "second environment." Application in "first environment" possible with line filters (option L00) [1].		
Ambient conditions	**Storage**	**Transport**	**Operation**
Ambient temperature	-25 ... +55 °C	-25 ... +70°C as of *–40 °C* for 24 hours	*0* ... +40 °C up to 50 °C with derating
Humidity range [2] (non-condensing) corresponds to class	*5 to 95 %* 1K4 to EN 60721-3-1	5 ... 95 % at 40 °C 2K3 to EN 60721-3-2	5 ... *95 %* 3K3 to EN 60721-3-3
Environmental class/harmful chemical substances [2]	1C2 to EN 60721-3-1	2C2 to EN 60721-3-2	3C2 to EN 60721-3-3
Organic/biological influences [2]	1B1 to EN 60721-3-1	2B1 to EN 60721-3-2	3B1 to EN 60721-3-3
Degree of pollution	2 according to EN 61800-5-1		
Installation altitude	Up to 2000 m above sea level without derating, > 2000 m above sea level with derating (see "Derating data")		

Mechanical strength	Storage	Transport	Operation
Vibrational load [2] - Displacement - Acceleration corresponds to class	 1.5 mm at *5* to 9 Hz 5 m/s² at > 9 to 200 Hz 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1	 *3.1 mm* at *5* ... 9 Hz 10 m/s² at > 9 ... 200 Hz 2M2 to EN 60721-3-2	 0.075 mm at 10 ... 58 Hz 10 m/s² at >58 ... 200 Hz -
Shock load [2] - Acceleration corresponds to class	 40 m/s² at 22 ms 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1	 100 m/s² at 11 ms 2M2 to EN 60721-3-2	 100 m/s² at 11 ms 3M4 to EN 60721-3-3

Deviations from the defined classes are shown in *italics*.

[1] Applies to cable lengths of up to 100 m.

[2] The EN standards specified are the European editions of the international IEC standards with the same designations.

12.2.1 Derating data

Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature

The cabinet devices and the associated system components are rated for an ambient temperature of 40 °C and installation altitudes up to 2000 m above sea level. The output current must be reduced if the cabinet devices are operated at ambient temperatures above 40 °C. Ambient temperatures above 50 °C are not permissible. The following tables specify the permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature for the different degrees of protection .

Table 12- 2 Current derating factors as a function of the ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP20/IP21/IP23/IP43

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of						
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %

Table 12- 3 Current derating factors as a function of the hambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP54

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of						
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %	80.0 %

Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m above sea level

If the SINAMICS G150 cabinet units are operated at an installation altitude >2000 m above sea level, it must be taken into account that the air pressure and, consequently, the air density decreases. The lower air density also reduces the cooling efficiency and the insulation capacity of the air.

Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m can be achieved by applying the following measures.

Reduce the ambient temperature and the output current

Due to the reduced cooling efficiency, it is necessary, on the one hand, to reduce the ambient temperature and, on the other, to lower heat loss in the cabinet unit by reducing the output current, whereby ambient temperatures lower than 40 °C may be offset to compensate and are taken into account in the tables. The following tables specify the permissible output currents as a function of installation altitude and ambient temperature for the different degrees of protection. The specified values already include a permitted correction in respect of installation altitude and ambient temperatures less than 40 °C(incoming air temperature at the inlet to the cabinet unit). The values apply under the precondition that the cabinet layout ensures a cooling air flow though the units as stated in the technical specifications.

Table 12- 4 Current derating as a function of ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP20/IP21/IP23/IP43

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of						
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %
... 2500	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	96.3 %		
... 3000	100 %	100 %	100 %	98.7 %			
... 3500	100 %	100 %	100 %				
... 4000	100 %	100 %	96.3 %				
... 4500	100 %	97.5 %					
... 5000	98.2 %						

Table 12- 5 Current derating as a function of the ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP54

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of						
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %	80.0 %
... 2500	100 %	100 %	100 %	96.3 %	89.8 %		
... 3000	100 %	100 %	98.7 %	92.5 %			
... 3500	100 %	100 %	94.7 %				
... 4000	100 %	96.3 %	90.7 %				
... 4500	97.5 %	92.1 %					
... 5000	93.0 %						

Using an isolating transformer to reduce transient overvoltages according to IEC 61800-5-1

This drops overvoltage category III to overvoltage category II, thereby reducing the requirements for insulation capacity of the air. Additional voltage derating (reduction of the input voltage) is not required if the following framework conditions are observed:

- The isolating transformer must be fed from a low-voltage or medium-voltage network and must not be power directly from a high-voltage supply system.
- The isolating transformer may be connect to one or more cabinet units.
- The cables between the isolating transformer and the cabinet unit(s) must be routed in such a manner as to rule out direct lightening strike, i.e. overland lines must not be used.
- The following types of system are permissible:
  - TN systems with grounded star point (no grounded outer conductor).
  - IT systems (operation with a ground fault must be restricted to the shorted possible time).

Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency

When the pulse frequency is increased, the derating factor of the output current must be taken into account. This derating factor must be applied to the currents specified in the technical specifications for the cabinet units.

Table 12- 6 Derating factor of the output current as a function of the pulse frequency for devices with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Power [kW]	Output current at 2 kHz [A]	Derating factor at 4 kHz
Supply voltage 380 V ... 480 V 3 AC			
1GE32-1_Ax	110	210	82 %
1GE32-6_Ax	132	260	83 %
1GE33-1_Ax	160	310	88 %
1GE33-8_Ax	200	380	87 %
1GE35-0_Ax	250	490	78 %

Table 12- 7 Derating factor of the output current as a function of the pulse frequency for units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Power [kW]	Output current at 1.25 kHz [A]	Derating factor at 2.5 kHz	Derating factor at 5 kHz
Supply voltage 380 V ... 480 V 3 AC				
1GE36-1_Ax	315	605	72 %	60 %
1GE37-5_Ax	400	745	72 %	60 %
1GE38-4_Ax	450	840	79 %	60 %
1GE41-0_Ax	560	985	87 %	60 %
2GE41-1AAx	630	1120	72 %	60 %
2GE41-4AAx	710	1380	72 %	60 %
2GE41-6AAx	900	1560	79 %	60 %
Supply voltage 500 V ... 600 V 3 AC				
1GF31-8_Ax	110	175	87 %	60 %
1GF32-2_Ax	132	215	87 %	60 %
1GF32-6_Ax	160	260	88 %	60 %
1GF33-3_Ax	200	330	82 %	55 %
1GF34-1_Ax	250	410	82 %	55 %
1GF34-7_Ax	315	465	87 %	55 %
1GF35-8_Ax	400	575	85 %	55 %
1GF37-4_Ax	500	735	79 %	55 %
1GF38-1_Ax	560	810	72 %	55 %
2GF38-6AAx	630	860	87 %	55 %
2GF41-1AAx	710	1070	85 %	55 %
2GF41-4AAx	1000	1360	79 %	55 %

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Power [kW]	Output current at 1.25 kHz [A]	Derating factor at 2.5 kHz	Derating factor at 5 kHz
Supply voltage 660 V ... 690 V 3 AC				
1GH28-5_Ax	75	85	89 %	60 %
1GH31-0_Ax	90	100	88 %	60 %
1GH31-2_Ax	110	120	88 %	60 %
1GH31-5_Ax	132	150	84 %	55 %
1GH31-8_Ax	160	175	87 %	60 %
1GH32-2_Ax	200	215	87 %	60 %
1GH32-6_Ax	250	260	88 %	60 %
1GH33-3_Ax	315	330	82 %	55 %
1GH34-1_Ax	400	410	82 %	55 %
1GH34-7_Ax	450	465	87 %	55 %
1GH35-8_Ax	560	575	85 %	55 %
1GH37-4_Ax	710	735	79 %	55 %
1GH38-1_Ax	800	810	72 %	55 %
2GH41-1AAx	1000	1070	85 %	55 %
2GH41-4AAx	1350	1360	79 %	55 %
2GH41-5AAx	1500	1500	72 %	55 %

For pulse frequencies in the range between the fixed values, the relevant derating factors can be determined by means of linear interpolation.

The following formula applies for this: $$Y_2 = Y_0 + \frac{Y_1 - Y_0}{X_1 - X_0}(X_2 - X_0)$$

Example:
The derating factor is required for when X_2 = 2 kHz for 6SL3710-1GE41-0_Ax.

X_0 = 1.25 kHz, Y_0 = 100%, X_1 = 2.5 kHz, Y_1 = 87%, X_2 = 2 kHz, Y_2 = ??

$$Y_2 = 100\ \% + \frac{87\ \% - 100\ \%}{2.5\ \text{kHz} - 1.25\ \text{kHz}}(2\ \text{kHz} - 1.25\ \text{kHz}) =$$

$$100\ \% + \frac{-13\ \%}{1.25\ \text{kHz}}(0.75\ \text{kHz}) = 100\ \% - 7.8\ \% = \underline{\underline{92.2\ \%}}$$

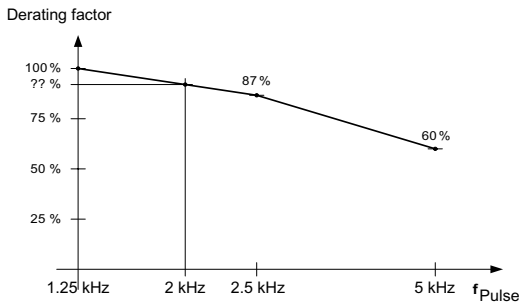


Figure 12-1 Calculating derating factors by means of linear interpolation

12.2.2 Overload capability

The converter is equipped with an overload reserve to deal with breakaway torques, for example.

In drives with overload requirements, the appropriate base load current must, therefore, be used as a basis for the required load.

The overloads apply under the precondition that the converter is operated at its base-load current before and after the overload (a duty cycle duration of 300 s is used as a basis here).

Low overload

The base-load current for low overload (I_L) is based on a load duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s.

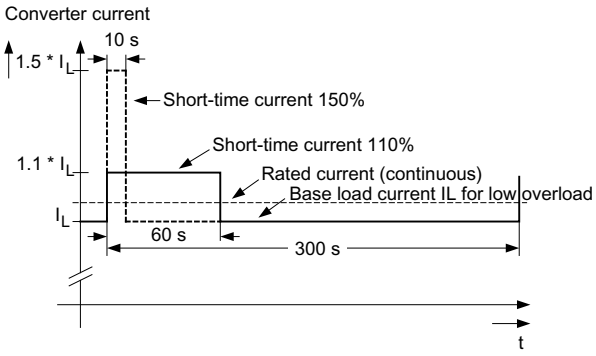


Figure 12-2 Low overload

High overload

The base-load current for a high overload I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s.

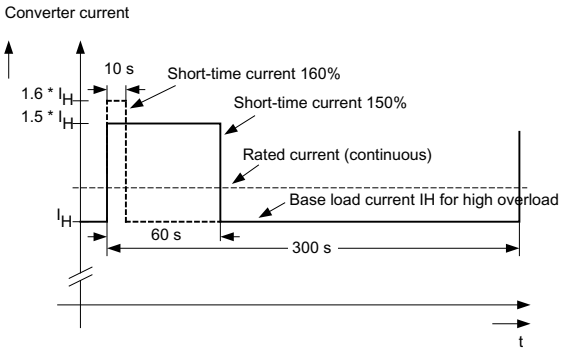


Figure 12-3 High overload

12.3 Technical specifications

Note

Notes on the technical specifications

Current, voltage and power figures in these tables are rated values.

The cables to the device are protected by fuses of operating class gG.

The cable cross-sections have been determined for three-core copper cables routed horizontally in air at 40 °C ambient temperature (according to DIN VDE 0276-1000 and IEC 60364-5-52) with a permissible operating temperature of 70°C (e.g. Protodur NYY or NYCWY) and the recommended conductor protection according to DIN VDE 0100 section 430 and IEC 60364-4-43.

NOTICE

Cable cross-sections

When the conditions differ from the above stated (cable routing, cable grouping, ambient temperature), the following instructions for routing the cables must be taken into account:

The required cable cross-section depends on the amperage which flows through the cable. The permissible current loading of cables is defined, for example, in DIN VDE 0276-1000 and IEC 60364-5-52. It depends partly on ambient conditions such as temperature and partly on the type of routing. If the cables are routed individually, they will be cooled relatively well. If several cables are routed together, they may heat each other up. Please note the corresponding derating factors for these supplementary conditions in DIN VDE 0276-1000 and IEC 60364-5-52.

12.3.1 Cabinet unit version A, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC

Table 12- 8 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1AAx	1GE32-6AAx	1GE33-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	125	150	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	210	260	310
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	205	250	302
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	178	233	277
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	229	284	338
- Input current, max.	A	335	410	495
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.9	3.8	4.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.23	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 50	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	460	670

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1AAx	1GE32-6AAx	1GE33-1AAx
Recommended protection - Line protection (with option L26) Rated current frame size to IEC 60269 - Line and semiconductor protection (without option L26) Rated current Frame size to IEC 60269	 A A 	 3NA3144 250 2 3NE1230-2 315 1	 3NA3250 300 2 3NE1331-2 350 2	 3NA3254 355 3 3NE1334-2 500 2
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	3000	3600	4400

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

[3] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[5] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[6] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[7] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[8] Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 9 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8AAx	1GE35-0AAx	1GE36-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	300	400	500
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	250	350	350
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	380	490	605
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	370	477	590
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	340	438	460
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	395	509	629
- Input current, max.	A	606	781	967
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.3	6.4	8.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	70/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 150	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1000	1000	1200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	750
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3260	3NA3372	3NA3475
Rated current	A	400	630	800
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	4
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1334-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1438-2
Rated current	A	500	630	800
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8AAx	1GE35-0AAx	1GE36-1AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	4400	8000	10000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 10 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5AAx	1GE38-4AAx	1GE41-0AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	400	450	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	315	400	450
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	600	600	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	450	500	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	745	840	985
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	725	820	960
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	570	700	860
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	775	873	1024
- Input current, max.	A	1188	1344	1573
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.6	10.1	14.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	70/73	70/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	3 x 185	4 x 150	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (10 holes)	M12 (16 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1200	1200	1600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	750	780	1100
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3475	3NA3365	3NA3472
Rated current	A	800	2 x 500	2 x 630
frame size to IEC 60269		4	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1448-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1437-2
Rated current	A	850	2 x 630	2 x 710
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5AAx	1GE38-4AAx	1GE41-0AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	10500	16000 / 1800 [9]	18400 / 2000 [9]

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

9) For option L26 the low value applies.

Table 12- 11 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	2GE41-1AAx	2GE41-4AAx	2GE41-6AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	630	710	900
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	500	560	710
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	900	1000	1250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	700	900	1000
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	1120	1380	1560
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	1092	1340	1516
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	850	1054	1294
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	1174	1444	1624
- Input current, max.	A	1800	2215	2495
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	2.8	2.8	3.0
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	16.2	19.0	19.9
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.56	1.56	1.56
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	73/76	73/76	73/76
Line connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (10 holes)	M12 (16 holes)
Max. motor cable length				
shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	2400	2400	2400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	1700	1710	2130
Recommended protection				
- Line protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(with option L26)		3NA3475	3NA3475	3NA3365
Rated current	A	800	800	2 x 500
frame size to IEC 60269		4	4	3
- Line and semiconductor protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(without option L26)		3NE1438-2	3NE1448-2	3NE1436-2
Rated current	A	800	850	2 x 630
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	2GE41-1AAx	2GE41-4AAx	2GE41-6AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	2 x 65	2 x 65	2 x 55
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2 x 10000	2 x 10500	2 x 1800

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.2 Cabinet unit version C, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC

Table 12- 12 Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1CAx	1GE32-6CAx	1GE33-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	125	150	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	210	260	310
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	205	250	302
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	178	233	277
Input current				
Rated input current [5]	A	229	284	338
- Input current, max.	A	335	410	495
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.9	3.8	4.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.23	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 50	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	225	225	300
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	315	350	500
frame size to IEC 60269		1	2	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1CAx	1GE32-6CAx	1GE33-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	3000	3600	4400

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 13 Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8CAx	1GE35-0CAx	1GE36-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	300	400	500
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	250	350	350
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	380	490	605
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	370	477	590
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	340	438	460
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	395	509	629
- Input current, max.	A	606	781	967
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.3	6.4	8.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	70/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 150	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	300	670
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1334-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1438-2
Rated current	A	500	630	800
frame size to IEC 60269		2	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8CAx	1GE35-0CAx	1GE36-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	4400	8000	10000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 14 Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5CAx	1GE38-4CAx	1GE41-0CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	400	450	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	315	400	450
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	600	600	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	450	500	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	745	840	985
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	725	820	960
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	570	700	860
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	775	873	1024
- Input current, max.	A	1188	1344	1573
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.6	10.1	14.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	70/73	70/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	3 x 185	4 x 150	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (8 holes)	M12 (8 holes)	M12 (10 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	600	600	1000
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	880
Recommended protection				
Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1448-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1437-2
Rated current	A	850	2 x 630	2 x 710
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5CAx	1GE38-4CAx	1GE41-0CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	10500	16000	18400

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.3 Cabinet unit version A, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC

Table 12- 15 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8AAx	1GF32-2AAx	1GF32-6AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	150	200	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	175	215	260
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	171	208	250
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	157	192	233
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	191	224	270
- Input current, max.	A	279	341	410
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	3.8	4.2	5.0
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	120	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 185
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	460	460

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8AAx	1GF32-2AAx	1GF32-6AAx
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3244-6	3NA3252-6	3NA3354-6
Rated current	A	250	315	355
frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2
Rated current	A	250	315	350
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	2
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2400	3000	3600

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

[3] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[5] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[6] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[7] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[8] Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 16 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3AAx	1GF34-1AAx	1GF34-7AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	300	400	450
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	250	350	450
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	330	410	465
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	320	400	452
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	280	367	416
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	343	426	483
- Input current, max.	A	525	655	740
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	6.1	8.1	7.8
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.78	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	1200	1200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	HX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	750	750
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3352-6
Rated current	A	500	500	2 x 315
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	2
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1435-2
Rated current	A	500	500	560
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3AAx	1GF34-1AAx	1GF34-7AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	5200	5200	6200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 17 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8AAx	1GF37-4AAx	1GF38-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	400	500	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	315	450	500
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	600	700	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	500	700	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	575	735	810
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	560	710	790
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	514	657	724
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	598	764	842
- Input current, max.	A	918	1164	1295
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.5	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	8.7	12.7	14.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	1.48	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1200	1600	1600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	JX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	860	1150	1150
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 355	2 x 500	2 x 500
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	670	850	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8AAx	1GF37-4AAx	1GF38-1AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	8400	10500	10400 / 1800 [9]

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

9) For option L26 the low value applies.

Table 12- 18 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	2GF38-6AAx	2GF41-1AAx	2GF41-4AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	630	710	1000
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	560	630	800
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	900	1000	1250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	800	900	1000
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	860	1070	1360
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	836	1036	1314
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	770	950	1216
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	904	1116	1424
- Input current, max.	A	1388	1708	2186
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	2.8	2.8	3.0
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	15.4	17.2	23.8
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.56	1.56	2.96
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	75/78	75/78	75/78
Line connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 185	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		Per sub-cabinet: M12 (2 holes)	Per sub-cabinet: M12 (2 holes)	Per sub-cabinet: M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	2400	2400	3200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	1700	1700	2620
Recommended protection				
- Line protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(with option L26)		3NA3352-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 315	2 x 500	2 x 500
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(without option L26)		3NE1435-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	560	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	2GF38-6AAx	2GF41-1AAx	2GF41-4AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	2 x 65	2 x 65	2 x 84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2 x 6200	2 x 8400	2 x 10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.4 Cabinet unit version C, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC

Table 12- 19 Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8CAx	1GF32-2CAx	1GF32-6CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	150	200	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	175	215	260
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	171	208	250
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	157	192	233
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	191	224	270
- Input current, max.	A	279	341	410
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	3.8	4.2	5.0
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	120	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 185
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	300	300
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2
Rated current	A	250	315	350
frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8CAx	1GF32-2CAx	1GF32-6CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2400	3000	3600

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

[3] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[5] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[6] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[7] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[8] Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 20 Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3CAx	1GF34-1CAx	1GF34-7CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	300	400	450
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	250	350	450
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	330	410	465
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	320	400	452
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	280	367	416
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	343	426	483
- Input current, max.	A	525	655	740
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	6.1	8.1	7.8
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.78	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	600	600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	HX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	670	670
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1435-2
Rated current	A	500	500	560
frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3CAx	1GF34-1CAx	1GF34-7CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	5200	5200	6200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 21 Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8CAx	1GF37-4CAx	1GF38-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	400	500	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	315	450	500
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	600	700	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	500	700	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	575	735	810
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	560	710	790
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	514	657	724
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	598	764	842
- Input current, max.	A	918	1164	1295
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.5	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	8.7	12.7	14.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	1.48	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	600	1000	1000
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	JX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	940	960
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	670	850	2 x 500
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8CAx	1GF37-4CAx	1GF38-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	8400	10500	10400

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.5 Cabinet unit version A, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC

Table 12- 22 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5AAx	1GH31-0AAx	1GH31-2AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	75	90	110
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	55	75	90
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	85	100	120
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	80	95	115
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	76	89	107
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	93	109	131
- Input current, max.	A	131	155	188
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.1
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	1.7	2.1	2.7
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.17	0.17
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/68	67/68
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	50	50	70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	35	50	70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	FX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	460	460

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5AAx	1GH31-0AAx	1GH31-2AAx
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3132-6	3NA3132-6	3NA3136-6
Rated current	A	125	125	160
frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	1
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1022-2	3NE1022-2	3NE1224-2
Rated current	A	125	125	160
Frame size to IEC 60269		00	00	1
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6)]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7)]	A	1050	1050	1200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 23 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5AAx	1GH31-8AAx	1GH32-2AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	132	160	200
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	150	175	215
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	142	171	208
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	134	157	192
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	164	191	224
- Input current, max.	A	232	279	341
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.8	3.8	4.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/73	67/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	70	95	120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	670	670
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3240-6	3NA3244-6	3NA3252-6
Rated current	A	200	250	315
frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	2
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1225-2	3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2
Rated current	A	200	250	315
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5AAx	1GH31-8AAx	1GH32-2AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1600	2400	3000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 24 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6AAx	1GH33-3AAx	1GH34-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	250	315	400
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	260	330	410
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	250	320	400
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	233	280	367
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	270	343	426
- Input current, max.	A	410	525	655
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.0	6.1	8.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/73	67/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection				
Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length				
shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	1200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	780
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	355	500	500
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	350	500	500
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6AAx	1GH33-3AAx	1GH34-1AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	3600	5200	5200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 25 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7AAx	1GH35-8AAx	1GH37-4AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	450	560	710
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	400	450	560
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	465	575	735
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	452	560	710
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	416	514	657
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	483	598	764
- Input current, max.	A	740	918	1164
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.1	10.8	13.5
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 185	3 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1200	1200	1600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	780	840	1320
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3352-6	3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 315	2 x 355	2 x 500
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1435-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	560	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7AAx	1GH35-8AAx	1GH37-4AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	84	84	85
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	6200	8400	10500

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[3] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[5] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[6] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[7] Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 26 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 5

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1AAx	2GH41-1AAx	2GH41-4AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	800	1000	1350
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	710	900	1200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	810	1070	1360
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	790	1036	1314
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	724	950	1216
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	842	1116	1424
- Input current, max.	A	1295	1708	2186
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.5	2.8	2.8
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	14.7	21.3	26.6
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.48	1.56	2.96
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	75/78	75/78
Line connection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC [4]	mm^2	4 x 150	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	8 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (4 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	3 x 185	2 x 185	3 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	6 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (3 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
Fixing screw		M12 (18 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length				
shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1600	2400	3200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		JX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	1360	1700	2620
Recommended protection				
- Line protection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(with option L26)		3NA3365-6	3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 500	2 x 355	2 x 500
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(without option L26)		3NE1334-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	2 x 500	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1AAx	2GH41-1AAx	2GH41-4AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	85	2 x 65	2 x 84
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	10400 / 2000 [8]	2 x 8400	2 x 10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

8) For option L26 the low value applies.

Table 12- 27 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 6

Order number	6SL3710-	2GH41-5AAx		
Unit rating - for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1] - for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	 kW kW	 1500 1350		
Output current - Rated current I_N - Base load current I_L [2] - Base load current I_H [3]	 A A A	 1500 1462 1340		
Input current - Rated input current [4] - Input current, max. - Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	 A A A	 1568 2406 3.0		
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency - Electronic power supply	 V_{ACrms} Hz V_{DC}	 660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 to 63 Hz 24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	29.0		
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	2.96		
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	75/78		
Line connection - Recommended: IEC [4] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	Per sub-cabinet: 4 x 150 8 x 240 M12 (4 holes)		
Motor connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	Per sub-cabinet: 3 x 185 6 x 240 M12 (3 holes)		
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		Per sub-cabinet: M12 (18 holes)		
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	 m	 300 / 450		
Dimensions (standard version) - Width - Height - Depth	 mm mm mm	 3200 2000 600		
Power block frame size		JX		
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	2700		
Recommended protection - Line protection (with option L26) Rated current frame size to IEC 60269 - Line and semiconductor protection (without option L26) Rated current Frame size to IEC 60269	 A A 	 Per sub-cabinet: 3NA3365-6 2 x 500 3 Per sub-cabinet: 3NE1334-2 2 x 500 2		

Order number	6SL3710-	2GH41-5AAx		
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	2 x 84		
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	2 x 1800		

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.6 Cabinet unit version C, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC

Table 12- 28 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5CAx	1GH31-0CAx	1GH31-2CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	75	90	110
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	55	75	90
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	85	100	120
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	80	95	115
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	76	89	107
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	93	109	131
- Input current, max.	A	131	155	188
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.1
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	1.7	2.1	2.7
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.17	0.17
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/68	67/68
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	50	50	70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	35	50	70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	FX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	225	225	225
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1022-2	3NE1022-2	3NE1224-2
Rated current	A	125	125	160
frame size to IEC 60269		00	00	1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5CAx	1GH31-0CAx	1GH31-2CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1050	1050	1200

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[3] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[5] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[6] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[7] Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 29 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5CAx	1GH31-8CAx	1GH32-2CAx
Unit rating - for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1] - for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	 kW kW	 132 110	 160 132	 200 160
Output current - Rated current I_N - Base load current I_L [2] - Base load current I_H [3]	 A A A	 150 142 134	 175 171 157	 215 208 192
Input current - Rated input current [4] - Input current, max. - Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	 A A A	 164 232 1.1	 191 279 1.35	 224 341 1.35
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency - Electronic power supply	 V_{ACrms} Hz V_{DC}	 660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 to 63 Hz 24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.8	3.8	4.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/73	67/73
Line connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 95 2 x 240 M12 (1 hole)	 120 2 x 240 M12 (1 hole)	 2 x 70 2 x 240 M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 70 2 x 150 M12 (1 hole)	 95 2 x 150 M12 (1 hole)	 120 2 x 150 M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		 M12 (2 holes)	 M12 (2 holes)	 M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	 m	 300 / 450	 300 / 450	 300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version) - Width - Height - Depth	 mm mm mm	 400 2000 600	 400 2000 600	 400 2000 600
Power block frame size		FX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	225	300	300
Recommended protection - Line and semi-cond. protection Rated current frame size to IEC 60269	 A 	 3NE1225-2 200 1	 3NE1227-2 250 1	 3NE1230-2 315 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5CAx	1GH31-8CAx	1GH32-2CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1600	2400	3000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 30 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6CAx	1GH33-3CAx	1GH34-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	250	315	400
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	260	330	410
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	250	320	400
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	233	280	367
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	270	343	426
- Input current, max.	A	410	525	655
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.0	6.1	8.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/73	67/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	300	670
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	350	500	500
frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6CAx	1GH33-3CAx	1GH34-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	3600	5200	5200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 31 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7CAx	1GH35-8CAx	1GH37-4CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	450	560	710
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	400	450	560
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	465	575	735
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	452	560	710
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	416	514	657
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	483	598	764
- Input current, max.	A	740	918	1164
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.1	10.8	13.5
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 185	3 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	600	600	1000
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	940
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1435-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	560	670	850
frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7CAx	1GH35-8CAx	1GH37-4CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	84	84	85
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	6200	8400	10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 32 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 5

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1CAx		
Unit rating - for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1] - for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	 kW kW	 800 710		
Output current - Rated current I_N - Base load current I_L [2] - Base load current I_H [3]	 A A A	 810 790 724		
Input current - Rated input current [4] - Input current, max. - Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	 A A A	 842 1295 1.5		
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency - Electronic power supply	 V_{ACrms} Hz V_{DC}	 660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 to 63 Hz 24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	14.7		
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.48		
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75		
Line connection - Recommended: IEC [4] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 4 x 150 8 x 240 M12 (4 holes)		
Motor connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 3 x 185 6 x 240 M12 (3 holes)		
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		 M12 (18 holes)		
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	 m	 300 / 450		
Dimensions (standard version) - Width - Height - Depth	 mm mm mm	 1000 2000 600		
Power block frame size		JX		
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	980		
Recommended protection - Line and semi-cond. protection Rated current frame size to IEC 60269	 A	 3NE1334-2 2 x 500 2		

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1CAx		
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	85		
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	10400		

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[3] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[5] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[6] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[7] Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Appendix

A

A.1 List of abbreviations

A	
A...	Alarm
AC	Alternating current
AI	Analog input
AO	Analog output
AOP	Advanced operator panel (with plain-text display)
B	
BI	Binector input
BICO	Binector/connector
BO	Binector output
C	
C	Capacitance
CAN	Serial bus system
CB	Communication board
CDS	Command data set
CI	Connector input
COM	Center contact on a changeover contact
CU	Control Unit
D	
DC	Direct current
DDS	Drive data set
DI	Digital input
DI/DO	Digital input/output bidirectional
DO	Digital output
E	
ESD	Electrostatic devices
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
EN	European standard
F	
F ...	Fault
FAQ	Frequently asked questions
FW	Firmware
H	
RFG	Ramp-function generator
HW	Hardware

I	
I/O	Input/output
IEC	International electrical engineering standard
IGBT	Insulated gate bipolar transistor
J	
JOG	Jog mode
L	
L	Inductance
LED	Light-emitting diode
M	
M	Ground
MDS	Motor data set
N	
NC	Normally closed contact
NEMA	Standardization body in the USA (United States of America)
NO	Normally open contact
P	
p ...	Adjustable parameter
PDS	Power unit data set
PE	Protective earth
PROFIBUS	Serial data bus
PTC	Positive temperature coefficient
R	
r...	Visualization parameter (read-only)
RAM	Read and write memory
RS 232	Serial interface
RS 485	Standard. Describes the physical characteristics of a digital serial interface.
S	
SI	Safety Integrated
STW	PROFIdrive control word
SW	Software
T	
TIA	Totally Integrated Automation
TM	Terminal Module
U	
UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
V	
Vdc	DC link voltage
Z	
ZSW	PROFIdrive status word

A.2 Parameter macros

Parameter macro p0015 = G150 cabinet unit

This macro is used to make default settings for operating the cabinet unit.

Table A- 1 Parameter macro p0015 = G150 cabinet unit

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0400[0]	Encoder type selection	Vector	9999	User-defined	Vector
p0404[0]	Encoder configuration	Vector	200008h		Vector
p0405[0]	Square-wave encoder track A/B	Vector	9h	Bipolar, like A/B track	Vector
p0408[0]	Rotary encoder pulse no.	Vector	1024	1024 pulses per revolution	Vector
p0420[0]	Encoder connection	Vector	0x2	Encoder connection = terminal	Vector
p0500	Technology application	Vector	1	Pumps, fans	Vector
p0600	Motor temperature sensor for monitoring	Vector	0	No sensor	Vector
p0601	Motor temperature sensor type	Vector	0	No sensor	Vector
p0603	CI: Motor temperature	Vector	r4105	Sensor on TM31	TM31
p0604	Motor overtemperature alarm threshold	Vector	120	120 °C	Vector
p0605	Motor overtemperature fault threshold	Vector	155	155 °C	Vector
p0606	Motor overtemperature timer	Vector	0	0 s	Vector
p0610	Response to motor overtemperature condition	Vector	1	Alarm with reduction of I_max and fault	Vector
p0700[0]	Macro binector input (BI)	Vector	70005	PROFIdrive	Vector
p0864	BI: Infeed operation	Vector	1		Vector
p1000[0]	Macro connector inputs (CI) for speed setpoints	Vector	100001	PROFIdrive	Vector
p1001	CO: Fixed speed setpoint 1	Vector	300	300 rpm	Vector
p1002	CO: Fixed speed setpoint 2	Vector	600	600 rpm	Vector
p1003	CO: Fixed speed setpoint 3	Vector	1500	1500 rpm	Vector
p1083	CO: Speed limit in positive direction of rotation	Vector	6000	6000 rpm	Vector
p1086	CO: Speed limit in negative direction of rotation	Vector	-6000	-6000 rpm	Vector
p1115	Ramp-function generator selection	Vector	1	Extended ramp-function generator	Vector
p1120	Ramp-function generator ramp-up time	Vector	20	20 s	Vector
p1121	Ramp-function generator ramp-down time	Vector	30	30 s	Vector
p1135	OFF3 ramp-down time	Vector	10	10 s	Vector
p1200	Flying restart operating mode	Vector	0	Flying restart not active	Vector
p1240	Vdc controller configuration	Vector	1	Vdc-max controller enabled	Vector

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p1254	Vdc controller automatic ON level detection	Vector	1	Automatic detection enabled	Vector
p1280	Vdc controller configuration (V/f)	Vector	1	Vdc-max controller enabled	Vector
p1300	Open-loop/closed-loop control operating mode	Vector	20	Encoderless speed control	Vector
p1911	Number of phases to be identified	Vector	3	3 phases	Vector
p2051[0]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r2089[0]	ZSW1	Vector
p2051[1]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0063[0]	n-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[2]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0068[0]	I-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[3]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0080[0]	M-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[4]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0082[0]	P-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[5]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r2131	FAULT	Vector
p2080[0]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p2080[1]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.1	Ready for operation	Vector
p2080[2]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.2	Operation	Vector
p2080[3]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p2080[4]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.4	No OFF2	Vector
p2080[5]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.5	No OFF3	Vector
p2080[6]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p2080[7]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2139.7	Alarm active	Vector
p2080[8]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2197.7	No setpoint/actual value deviation	Vector
p2080[9]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.9	Control request	Vector
p2080[10]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2199.1	Comparison value reached	Vector
p2080[11]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r1407.7	M/I/P limiting not active	Vector
p2080[12]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	0		Vector
p2080[13]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2129.14	No alarm for motor overtemperature	Vector
p2080[14]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2197.3	Clockwise	Vector
p2080[15]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2129.15	No Therm. alarm Power unit overload	Vector
p2088	PROFIBUS Invert status word	Vector	B800h		Vector
p2128[14]	Select fault/alarm code for trigger	Vector	7910	A7910: Alarm, motor overtemperature	Vector
p2128[15]	Select fault/alarm code for trigger	Vector	5000	A5000: Therm. alarm Power unit overload	Vector
p2153	Time constant revolutions actual value filter	Vector	20	20 ms	Vector
p4053[0]	TM31 analog inputs, smoothing time constant	TM31	0	0 ms	TM31
p4053[1]	TM31 analog inputs, smoothing time constant	TM31	0	0 ms	TM31
p4056[0]	Type of analog inputs	TM31	2	Current 0...20 mA	TM31

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p4056[1]	Type of analog inputs	TM31	2	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4076[0]	Type of analog outputs	TM31	0	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4076[1]	Type of analog outputs	TM31	0	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4071[0]	Signal analog output 0	TM31	r0063	Actual speed value smoothed	Vector
p4071[1]	Signal analog output 1	TM31	r0068	Absolute current actual value	Vector
p4100	Type of temperature sensor	TM31	0	Evaluation disabled	TM31
p4102[0]	Alarm threshold, temperature sensing	TM31	251 °C	When this value is exceeded, alarm A35211 is triggered.	TM31
p4102[1]	Fault threshold for temperature sensing	TM31	251 °C	When this value is exceeded, fault F35207 is triggered.	TM31
p7003	Winding system	Vector	1	Separate winding systems	Vector

Parameter macro p0700 = 5: PROFIdrive (70005)

This macro is used to set the PROFIdrive interface as the default command source.

Table A- 2 Parameter macro p0700 = 5: PROFIdrive

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	r2090.0	PZD 1 bit 0	Vector
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	r2090.1	PZD 1 bit 1	Vector
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	r2090.2	PZD 1 bit 2	Vector
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	r0722.2	CU DI2	CU
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	r2090.3	PZD 1 bit 3	Vector
p0854	Control request	Vector	r2090.10	PZD 1 bit 10	Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	999	Free telegram configuration	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	0		Vector
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	r2090.13	PZD 1 bit 13	Vector
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	r2090.14	PZD 1 bit 14	Vector
p1113	Setpoint inversion	Vector	r2090.11	PZD 1 bit 11	Vector
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	r2090.4	PZD 1 bit 4	Vector
p1141	Continue RFG	Vector	r2090.5	PZD 1 bit 5	Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	r2090.6	PZD 1 bit 6	Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	Vector	r2090.7	PZD 1 bit 7	Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	Vector	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	r2090.7	PZD 1 bit 7	Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	r0899.11	Pulses enabled	Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p4048.1	Invert DO1	TM31	1	Inverted	
p4038	DO8	TM31	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	1	Output	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p0700 = 6: Terminal block TM31 (70006)

This macro is used to set customer terminal block TM31 as the command source.

Table A- 3 Parameter macro p0700 = 6: Terminal block TM31

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	r4022.0	TM31 DI0	TM31
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	1		CU
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	1		Vector
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	r0722.2	CU DI2	CU
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	r4022.4	TM31 DI4	TM31
p0854	Control request	Vector	1		Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	999	Free telegram configuration	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1113	Direction of rotation reversal	Vector	0		TM31
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1141	Start RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	1		Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	Vector	0		Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	Vector	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	0		TM31
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	r0899.11	Pulses enabled	Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p4048.1	Invert DO1	TM31	1	Inverted	
p4038	DO8	TM31	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	1	Output	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p0700 = 7: NAMUR (70007)

This macro is used to set the NAMUR terminal block as the default command source.

Table A- 4 Parameter macro p0700 = 7: NAMUR

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	r4022.0	TM31 DI0	TM31
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	r4022.4	TM31 DI4	TM31
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	r4022.5	TM31 DI5	TM31
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	1		Vector
p0854	Control request	Vector	1		Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	999	Free telegram configuration	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1113	Direction of rotation reversal	Vector	r4022.6	TM31 DI6	TM31
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1141	Start RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	1		Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	Vector	0		Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	Vector	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	0		TM31
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	r0899.11	Pulses enabled	Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p4048.1	Invert DO1	TM31	1	Inverted	
p4038	DO8	TM31	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	1	Output	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p0700 = 10: PROFIdrive NAMUR (70010)

This macro is used to set the PROFIdrive NAMUR interface as the default command source.

Table A- 5 Parameter macro p0700 = 10: PROFIdrive NAMUR

Sink			Source		
Parameter	Description	DO	Parameter	Description	DO
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0854	Control request	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	20	PROFIdrive NAMUR	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	0		Vector
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	0		Vector
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	0		Vector
p1113	Direction of rotation reversal	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p1141	Start RFG	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault_1	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p2104	Acknowledge faults_2	Vector	0		Vector
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	0		TM31
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	0		TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	0		Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	0		Vector
p4038	DO8	TM31	0		Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p1000 = 1: PROFIdrive (100001)

This macro is used to set the default setpoint source via PROFIdrive.

Table A- 6 Parameter macro p1000 = 1: PROFIdrive

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r2050[1]	PROFIdrive PZD2	Vector
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Parameter macro p1000 = 2: Terminal TM31 (100002)

This macro is used to set analog input 0 on customer terminal block TM31 as the setpoint source.

Table A- 7 Parameter macro p1000 = 2: TM31 terminals

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r4055	AI0 TM31	TM31
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Parameter macro p1000 = 3: Motorized potentiometer (100003)

This macro is used to set the motorized potentiometer as the setpoint source.

Table A- 8 Parameter macro p1000 = 3: Motorized potentiometer

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r1050	Motorized potentiometer	Vector
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Parameter macro p1000 = 4: Fixed setpoint (100004)

This macro is used to set the fixed setpoint as the setpoint source.

Table A- 9 Parameter macro p1000 = 4: Fixed setpoint

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r1024	Active fixed setpoint	Vector
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Index

3

3-mass model, 537

A

A7850 – External alarm 1, 562
Accessory kit
  Original roof screws, 53
Acknowledge error from the AOP, 321
Actual speed value filter, 411
Acyclic communication, 337
  Determining drive object numbers, 345
  DPV1 parameter request and response, 340
  Error values in DPV1 parameter responses, 342
  Parameter request and parameter response, 339
Additional customer terminal block TM31 (option G61), 182
Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52), 181
Alarms, 561
Analog inputs, 297
Analog outputs, 434
AOP setpoint, 320
AOP30, 253
Application classes, 327
Armature short-circuit braking
  external, 469
  Internal, 471
Assembly
  Line connection from above, 64
  Motor connection from above, 64
Automatic restart, 456
Automatic speed controller optimization, 440
Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74), 188
Auxiliary supply, 97
  230 V AC, 98
  24 V DC, 98
Auxiliary Voltage, 119

B

B00, 206
B02, 208
B03, 208
Basic commissioning
  Enter the motor data, 257
  Entering the basic parameters, 262
  Entering the encoder data., 259
  Motor identification, 264
  Selecting the motor type, 257
  Settings for units that are connected in parallel, 265
Basic information
  BICO technology, 283
  Binector input (BI), 284
  Binector output (BO), 284
  Command data set (CDS), 278
  Connector input (CI), 284
  Connector output (CO), 284
  Copy motor data set (MDS), 282
  Copying the command data set (CDS), 282
  Copying the drive data set (DDS), 282
  Data sets, 277
  Drive data set (DDS), 279
  Drive objects, 276
  Encoder data set (EDS), 280
  Interconnecting signals, 285
  Motor data set (MDS), 281
  Parameter categorization, 274
  Parameter types, 273
  Parameters, 273
Basic information about the drive system, 273
BICO technology, 283
  Interconnecting signals, 285
Bimetallic NC contact, 536
Binector input (BI), 284
Binector output (BO), 284
Blocking protection, 532
brake control
  Extended, 522
  Simple, 485
Braking unit 25 kW (option L61), 146
Braking unit 50 kW (option L62), 146
Bypass
  Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping, 514
  Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping, 517
  Without synchronization, 518
Bypass function, 513

C

Cabinet anti-condensation heating (option L55), 141

Cabinet lighting with service socket (option L50), 140
Cable lengths, 86
Cable lugs, 85
CAN bus, 160
CBC10, 160
CBC10 Communication Board
CAN bus, 160
CBE20, 163
CDS (command data set), 278
Copy, 282
CDS changeover via AOP, 321
Center of gravity of cabinet, 52
Certificate of compliance with order, 17
Certification, 17
Changing the language, 317
Checklist
Electrical installation, 68
Mechanical installation, 45
Circuit breaker (option L26), 137
Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact (Option L01), 121
Cleaning, 566
Closed-loop torque control, 424
Command data set, 278
Command sources
General information, 272
NAMUR, 293
PROFIdrive, 289
PROFIdrive NAMUR, 295
TM31 terminals, 291
Communication
via PROFIdrive, 326
Communication Board Ethernet CBE20 (option G33), 163
Communication interfaces
Parallel operation, 379
CompactFlash card
Slot, 205
Connecting the DC link connections, 83
Connecting the PE busbars, 82
Connecting the power supply and the signal cables, 84
Connection cross-sections, 86
Connection for External Auxiliary Equipment (Option L19), 134
Connector input (CI), 284
Connector output (CO), 284
Control Interface Module
Frame size FX, replacement, 573
Frame size GX, replacement, 575
Frame size HX, replacement, 577
Frame size JX, replacement, 579
Control Unit CU320-2 DP, 99
Control Unit CU320-2 PN,
Control via PROFIBUS, 356
Crane transport aids, 52
Removal, 53
CU320-2 DP, 99
CU320-2 PN, 195
Current setpoint filters, 428
Customer terminal block, 112
Customer terminal block TM31 (option G60), 181
Cyclic communication, 332

D

Data sets, 277
Data transfer
PROFINET, 368
Date of manufacture, 36
DC braking, 472
DCC, 383
DDS (drive data set), 279
Copy, 282
Decrease Key, 320
Derating behavior at increased pulse frequency, 477
Derating data, 617
Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency, 620
Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m above sea level, 618
Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature, 617
Reduce the ambient temperature and the output current, 618
Using an isolating transformer, 619
Design, 25
Determining drive object numbers, 345
Determinism, 365
Diagnostics, 548
LEDs, 548
Parameter, 556
digital inputs, 116
Digital inputs, 117
Digital inputs/outputs, 201
Digital outputs, 437
Direction of motor rotation, 89
Direction reversal, 482
Disconnect the basic interference suppression module, 92
Downloading the firmware (operator panel), 613
DPV1 parameter request and response, 340
Drive Control Chart, 383
Drive Control Chart (DCC), 24
Drive data set, 279

Drive objects,
DRIVE-CLiQ interface, 199
Droop Function, 421
dV/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07), 125
dV/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10), 128

E

EC declaration of conformity, 17
EDS (encoder data set), 280
Efficiency optimization, 448
Electrical connection of units connected in parallel, 81
Electromagnetic compatibility
  EMC compliant design, 79
  Introduction, 77
  Noise emissions, 78
  Operational reliability and noise immunity, 77
EMERGENCY OFF category 0 (option L57), 142
EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton (option L45), 139
EMERGENCY STOP category 1 (option L59), 144
EMERGENCY STOP Category 1 (option L60), 145
Encoder data set, 280
Energy-saving display, 488
Error values in DPV1 parameter responses, 342
Essential service mode,
Ethernet interface, 248
Extended brake control, 522
Extended monitoring functions, 526
External alarm 1, 562
External fault 1, 562
External fault 2, 563
External fault 3, 563
External supply, 97

F

F7860 – External fault 1, 562
F7861 – External fault 2, 563
F7862 – External fault 3, 563
Factory setting, 268
Fan
  Frame size FX, replacement, 593
  Frame size GX, replacement, 595
  Frame size HX, replacement, 597
  Frame size JX, replacement, 601
Fan voltage, adjustment, 90
Fast magnetization, 449
Faults, 561
Faults and alarms, 561
  BICO interconnections, 288
  Forwarding, 288
  Propagation, 288
Faults and alarms, 561
Features, 24
Field of applications, 23
Filtermatten, Austausch, 572
Firmware update, 612
Firmware, upgrading, 612
Fixed setpoints, 300
Fixed speed setpoints, 300
Floor levelness, 46
Flying restart, 460
  Fast flying restart, 462
  with encoder, 463
  without encoder, 461
Forming the DC link capacitors, 610
Friction characteristic curve, 467
Fuse
  Auxiliary power supply (-F11 / -F12), 605
  Fan -T1 -F10 / -T1 -F11, 605
  Internal 230 V AC supply (-F21), 605
  NH fuse, replacement, 606

G

G20, 160
G33, 163
G51, 166
G60, 181
G61, 182
G62, 182

H

High overload, 622

I

I2t motor model, 537
IF1, 379
IF2, 379
Increase Key, 320
Increasing the output frequency, 474
Installation
  Connection to the foundation, 54
  Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet, 51
Installation device, 568
Installation location, 46
Insulation Monitor (Option L87), 158
Insulation test, 74
IO controller, 364

IO Device, 364
IO supervisor, 364
IT system, 92

J

Jog, 319
JOG, 319

K

K01, 188
K50, 172
K51, 180
K52, 181
K74, 188
K82, 190
K82, terminal module for activating Safe Torque Off and "Safe STOP 1, 190
K87, 191
K88, 193
K95, 195
Kinetic buffering, 452
Knife fuse
  Replacement, 606
Know-how protection, 493
  Activating, 495
  Changing the password, 496
  Copy protection, 497
  Deactivate, 496
  OEM exception list, 497
  Replacing the device, 498
KTY, 536

L

L01, 121
L07, 125
L10, 128
L13, 131
L15, 132
L19, 134
L21, 136
L26, 137
L45, 139
L50, 140
L55, 141
L57, 142
L59, 144
L60, 145
L61, 146
L62, 146
L76, 156
L83, 156
L84, 156
L86, 157
L87, 158
Load monitoring, 527
LOCAL/REMOTE key, 318
Lock AOP LOCAL Mode, 321
Low overload, 622

M

M13, 64
M21, 60
M23, 61
M43, 61
M54, 61
M78, 64
Main Contactor (Option L13), 131
Main switch incl. fuses (option L26), 137
Maintenance, 567
Maintenance and servicing, 565
MDS (motor data set), 281
  Copy, 282
Mechanical connection of units connected in parallel, 54
Mechanical installation
  Checklist, 45
Menu
  AOP diagnostics, 316
  AOP30 settings, 310
  Basic Commissioning, 308
  Battery status, 316
  Commissioning / service, 308
  Complete commissioning, 308
  Control settings, 310
  Curve recorder, 309
  Curve recorder settings, 316
  Database version, 316
  Date format, 315
  Defining the operation screen, 311
  Device commissioning, 308
  Display settings, 310
  DO name display mode, 315
  Drive commissioning, 308
  Drive diagnostics, 309
  Fault/alarm memory, 306
  Keyboard test, 317
  LED test, 317
  Motor identification, 308
  Normalization to motor current, 315

Operation screen, 304
Reset AOP settings, 315
Reset fan operating time, 308
Setting the date, 313
Setting the time, 313
Software Version, 316
Sprachauswahl/Language selection, 317
Structure, 303
Minimum cable lengths, 87
Minimum speed, 388
Monitoring Functions, 529
Motor changeover/selection, 465
Motor data identification, 441
Motor data set, 281
Motor identification, 440
Motorized potentiometer, 299
Mounting
Canopies and hoods, 58
Canopy to increase the degree of protection to IP21, 60
Hood to increase the degree of protection to IP23/IP43/IP54, 61

N

NAMUR
Outlet for external auxiliaries (option B03), 208
Separate 24 V DC power supply (option B02), 208
NAMUR terminal block (option B00), 206
NH fuse
Replacement, 606

O

OFF Key, 318
ON Key, 318
Online operation with STARTER, 360
open actual speed value, 422
Operating hours counters, 480
Operation in the IT system (option L21), 136
Operation on a non-grounded system, 92
Operation screen, 304
Operator input inhibit / parameters inhibit key, 322
Operator panel, 253
Overview, 302
Option K95, 195
Option L01 Quick starting (option L76), 156
Option M90 (crane transport aids), 52
Option short codes, 37
Original roof screws, 53
Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment for NAMUR (option B03), 208
Output terminals, 433
Overload capability, 622
Overload responses, 530

P

Parallel operation of communication interfaces, 379
Parameter request and parameter response, 339
Parameter reset, 268
Parameter reset via STARTER, 268
Resetting Parameters via AOP30, 268
Parameterization errors, 325
Permanent-magnet synchronous motors, 429
Power block
Crane lifting lugs, 569
Frame size FX, replacement, 581
Frame size GX, replacement, 583
Frame size HX, replacement, 585
Frame size JX, replacement, 589
Power connections, 85
Connecting the motor and power cables, 88
Preparation
Mechanical installation, 46
PROFIBUS, 351
Address switches, 357
Bus terminating resistor, 353
Connectors, 352
Setting the address, 356
Setting the PROFIBUS Address, 356
PROFIBUS connection, 351
PROFIdrive, 326
Acyclic communication, 337
Application classes, 327
Controller, 326
Cyclic communication, 332
Drive Unit, 326
Supervisor, Drive Unit, 326
PROFIenergy, 370
PROFINET
Connection channels, 369
Data transfer, 368
PROFINET interface, 203
PROFINET IO, 364
Addresses, 366
Device name (NameOfStation), 367
IP address, 367
IP address assignment, 367
MAC address, 366
RT and IRT, 365
PROFINET IO with IRT, 366

PROFINET IO with RT, 365
Propagation, 288
Protecting power components, 529
Protective functions, 529
PT100, 536
PT100 evaluation unit (option L86), 157
PTC, 536
Pulse frequency wobbling, 478

Q

Quality, 25

R

Ramp-function generator, 390
Ramp-function generator tracking, 391
Rating plate
  Option short codes, 37
Real-time communication, 365
Reference model, 418
Relay outputs, 121
Replacement
  Control Interface Module, frame size FX, 573
  Control Interface Module, frame size GX, 575
  Control Interface Module, frame size HX, 577
  Control Interface Module, frame size JX, 579
  Crane lifting lugs, 569
  Fan, frame size FX, 593
  Fan, frame size GX, 595
  Fan, frame size HX, 597
  Fan, frame size JX, 601
  Filter mats, 572
  Installation device, 568
  Operator panel, 608
  Operator panel battery, 608
  Power block, frame size FX, 581
  Power block, frame size GX, 583
  Power block, frame size HX, 585
  Power block, frame size JX, 589
Replacing
  Automatic firmware update, 611
  Error messages, 611
Replacing components, 571
Replacing the Backup Battery of the Cabinet Operator Panel, 608
Replacing the cabinet operator panel, 608
Residual risks, 20
Resonance damping, 399
Rotating measurement, 444
  Shortened, 446
Runtime, 480

S

S5 – Selector for voltage/current AI0, AI1, 118
Safe Brake Adapter, 193
  230 V AC, 193
Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC (option K88), 193
Safe brake control, 193
Safety license for one axis (option K01), 188
Saving the Parameters, Permanently, 325
SBC (Safe Brake Control), 193
Separate 24 V DC power supply for NAMUR (option B02), 208
Serial interface (RS232), 203
Service, 25
Service and Support, 564
Setpoint addition, 386
Setpoint channel, 386
Setpoint sources, 297
  Analog inputs, 297
  Fixed speed setpoints, 300
  General information, 272
  Motorized potentiometer, 299
Setting the PROFIBUS Address, 356
Shield support, 112
Shipping and handling monitors, 48
  Shock indicator, 48
  Tilt indicator, 48
Shock indicator, 48
Shortened rotating measurement, 446
Signal connections, 112
Simple brake control, 485
Simulation operation, 481
SINAMICS Link, 371
  Activation, 375
  Bus cycle, 372
  Commissioning, 374
  Communication failure, 378
  Configuration example, 375
  Diagnostics, 378
  Number of nodes, 372
  Preconditions, 371
  Receive data, 371
  Receiving data, 374
  Sending data, 374
  Topology, 373
  Transmission time, 372
  Transmit data, 371
Sine-wave filter (option L15), 132
Skip frequency bands, 388
Slip compensation, 400

SMC30, 172
SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50), 172
SMC30:connection examples, 178
Speed controller, 412
Speed controller adaptation, 419
Speed controller optimization, 444
Speed controller pre-control, 415
Speed limitation, 389
Stall protection, 533
STARTER, 210
  Access point, 246
  Commissioning, 213
  Creating a project, 213
  DEVICE, 246
  Installation, 212
  Online operation via PROFINET, 360
  S7ONLINE, 246
  Target device selection, 246
  Transferring the drive project, 247
  User interface, 212
STARTER via Ethernet, 248
  Parameter, 252
  Setting the IP Address of the drive, 250
  Setting the IP address of the PC interface, 249
Stationary measurement, 441
Storage, 43
Switching between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation, 319

T

TB30, 182
Technical data
  General, 616
  Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, 624
  Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, 638
  Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, 652
  Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, 632
  Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, 646
  Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, 664
Technical specifications, 623
Technology controller, 510
Telegram selection, user defined, 333
Telegrams and process data, 333
Temperature sensor, 118
Temperature sensor connection
  Control Interface Module, 535
  Sensor Module, 535
  TM31, 534
Temperature sensor evaluation, 534
  3-mass model, 537
  Bimetallic NC contact, 536
  I2t motor model, 537
  KTY, 536
  PT100, 536
  PTC, 536
  Wire-break monitoring, 536
Terminal Board TB30 (option G62), 182
Terminal Module TM150, 166
The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected, 84
Thermal monitoring, 530
Thermal motor protection, 534
Thermistor Motor Protection Unit (Option L83/L84), 156
Tightening torques, 567
Tilt indicator, 48
Timeout monitoring, 321
TM150, 166
  Connecting, 167
  Forming groups, 542
  Protective conductor connection and shield support, 169
  Sensor failure in a group, 544
  Temperature evaluation, 543
  Temperature measurement, 540
  Temperature sensor types, 540
TM31, 181
TM31, connection overview, 115
TM31, front view, 114
TM54F, 191
TM54F Terminal Module, 191
TM54F Terminal Module (option K87), 191
Tool, 567
Torque limiting, 426
Transport eyebolts, 52
Transport units
  Connecting PE buses, 82
  Connecting the DC link connections, 83
  Connecting the DRIVE-CLiQ nodes, 84
  Connecting the signal cables, 84
  Connecting the voltage supply, 84
  Electrical connection, 81
Transportation, 42
Type plate, 35
  Date of manufacture, 36

U

U/f control, 393
Ungrounded system, 92
Unit changeover, 483
Units connected in parallel
  Mechanical connection, 54
Unpacking, 50

V

Vdc control, 451
Vdc_max control, 454
Vdc_min control, 452
Vector control
  sensorless, 403
  with encoder, 410
Vector speed/torque control with/without encoder, 402
Version A, Design, 26
Version C, Design, 29
Voltage boost, 396
  at startup, 398
  During acceleration, 398
  Permanent, 397
VSM10, 180
VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module (option K51), 180

W

Web server, 503
  Login, 505
  Logout, 506
  Start page, 505
Wire-break monitoring, 536
Wiring principle, 30
Write protection, 491

X

X100, 199
X101, 199
X102, 199
X103, 199
X122, 200
X126, 106
X127, 202
X132, 201
X140, 203
X1400, 165
X150, 203
X451 (CAN bus), 161
X452 (CAN bus), 162
X520, 116
  SMC30, 176
X521, 117
  SMC30, 177
X522, 118
X530, 117
X531
  SMC30, 177
X540, 119
X541, 120
X542, 121

Siemens AG
Industry Sector
Drive Technologies
Large Drives
P.O. Box 4743
90025 NUREMBERG
GERMANY

www.siemens.com/automation

Subject to change without prior notice
© Siemens AG, 2003 - 2013